Mercedes-Benz

SLS AMG

Operator's Manual

Symbols

Trademarks:

- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG Inc.
- DTS is a registered trademark of DTS, Inc.
- Dolby and MLP are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Prince, a Johnson Controls Company.
- iPod® and iTunes® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Microsoft® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- SIRIUS and related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS XM Radio Inc.
- Windows media® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Gracenote® is a registered trademark of Gracenote, Inc.
- ZAGAT® Rating Service and related marks are trademarks of ZAGAT.

The following symbols are found in this Operator's Manual:

⚠ **Warning!**

Warning notices draw your attention to hazards that may endanger your health or life, or the health or life of others.

! Highlights hazards that may result in damage to your vehicle.

ℹ Helpful hints or further information you may find useful.

▶	This symbol points to instructions for you to follow.
▶	A number of these symbols appearing in succession indicates a multiple-step procedure.
▷ page	This symbol tells you where to look for further information on a topic.
▷▷	This continuation symbol marks a warning or procedure which is continued on the next page.
`Display`	Text in displays, such as the control system, are printed in the type shown here.

Congratulations

Our company and staff congratulate you on the purchase of your new Mercedes-Benz.

Your selection of our product is a demonstration of your trust in our company name. Furthermore, it exemplifies your desire to own an automobile that will be as easy as possible to operate and will provide years of service.

Your Mercedes-Benz represents the efforts of many skilled engineers and craftsmen. To help assure your driving pleasure, and also the safety of you and your passengers, we ask you to make a small investment of time:

- Please read this manual carefully, then return it to your vehicle where it will be handy for your reference.
- Please follow the recommendations contained in this manual. They are designed to acquaint you with the operation of your Mercedes-Benz.
- Please pay attention to the warnings and cautions contained in this manual. They are designed to help improve the safety of the vehicle operator and occupants.

We extend our best wishes for many miles of safe, pleasurable driving.

Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC

A Daimler Company

1975840381

Index 4

Introduction 26

At a glance 31

Safety and security 43

COMAND APS 69

Controls in detail 235

Operation 319

Practical hints 361

Technical data 419

1, 2, 3 ...

911 emergency call 152
911 emergency call system 152

A

ABS (Antilock Brake System) 61
- Indicator lamp 389
- Messages in the multifunction display 371, 372

Accepting incoming calls 84, 158
Accessory weight 345
Accidents 260
- Air bags 45
- Emergency calls (mbrace) 309
- Emergency calls (Tele Aid, Canada only) 309

Acoustic lock feedback 286
Active partitions in USB devices 197
Adaptive Brake 65
Additives
- Engine oil 426
- Gasoline 427

Address book 160
- adding destinations to 146
- creating new entries 161
- deleting entries from 155, 164
- details 164
- dialing numbers from 165
- downloading contents 166
- editing entries 165
- Home address 143
- menu overview 161
- navigating to destinations in 165
- opening 161
- saving call list entries in 157
- searching 162
- selecting an entry 161
- voice control with 166, 218, 227, 231
- see My address (destination)

Address change 27
Address of destination (See also Destinations)
- entering with voice commands 213
- home address 122
- stopover destinations 124

Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System (Advanced TPMS) 329
- Messages in the multifunction display 368

Air bags 45
- Emergency call upon deployment .. 309
- Front, driver and passenger 47
- Head 49
- Knee bags 48
- Messages in the multifunction display 365
- OCS (Occupant Classification System) 49
- Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp 49, 396
- Safety guidelines 46
- Side impact 48

Air conditioning refrigerant and lubricant 426
Air distribution 302
Air filter 384
Air pressure
- see Tire inflation pressure

Air pressure (tires) 345
Air recirculation mode 303
Air vents 301
Air volume 302
Alarm system
- see Anti-theft systems

Alignment bolt (vehicle tool kit) 408
Alphabetical track selection 196
Alternative Route function 138
Alternator
- Messages in the multifunction display 368, 383

Alternator (Technical data)
- see Vehicle specification

AMG button
- SETUP 270

AMG menu 287
- SETUP 288

AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission 263
- Automatic shift program 267
- Gear range indicator 266
- Gear ranges 266

Gear selector lever 263
Hill-start assist system 293
Kickdown 266
Kickdown (manual shift program) . . 270
Manual shift program 268
Messages in the multifunction display 388
One-touch gearshifting 267
Program mode indicator 267
Program mode selector dial ... 267, 269
Shifting procedure 264
Steering wheel gearshift control 267
Transmission position indicator 265
Transmission positions 265

Announcement phase (driving maneuvers) 133

Announcements, navigation
see Navigation announcements

Announcements, traffic (real-time) . 143

Answering incoming calls 84, 158

Anticorrosion/antifreeze 428

Antilock Brake System
see ABS

Anti-theft systems 66
Anti-theft alarm system 66
Canceling the alarm 67
Immobilizer 66

Aquaplaning
see Hydroplaning

Ashtray 307

Aspect ratio (tires) 345

Audio 168
announcements 137
CD, DVD, and MP3 177
loudness 89
phone volume 151
read-out 89
sound settings 90
steering wheel operation 83
turning off 89
voice control 206
see Muting audio
see Navigation announcements
see Read-aloud announcements
see Volume

Audio Aux (auxiliary)
main system 197
switching to 197
voice commands for 225

Audio format
audio playback 189
DVD Video 205

Audio menu 168, 279

Authorizing Bluetooth devices 149

Auto-dimming rear view mirrors 247

Automatic central locking 239

Automatic headlamp mode 250

Automatic interior lighting control .. 253

Automatic picture switch-off 199

Automatic shift program 267

Auxiliary (Aux) operation
main audio 197
main video 205
voice commands for 225
voice control with 230

AUX socket 304

Avoid settings for route guidance ... 107

Axle oils 425

B

Back button 79

Backrest
see Seats

Backup lamps
Messages in the multifunction display 384

Backward track skip 187

Balance (sound), setting 90

Bang & Olufsen sound system 90

Bar (air pressure unit) 345

BAS (Brake Assist System) 62

Bass setting
main system 90

Battery, SmartKey
Checking condition 237
Replacing 399

Battery, Vehicle 410
Charging 412
Jump starting 413
Messages in the multifunction display 368, 383

Bead (tire) 345

Beverage holder
see Cup holder
Bit rates for digital audio 179
Blocked areas for route guidance 112
Blocking routes 137
Bluetooth®
activating phone 149
Device authorizing 97
Device de-authorizing 98
Displaying details 97
downloading address book content 166
external authorization 150
External authorization 98
List of devices 97
making calls 148
Settings 96
Switching On/Off 96
Brake Assist System
see BAS
Brake fluid
Checking level 325
Messages in the multifunction display 376
Brake lamps
Cleaning lenses 357
Brake pads
Messages in the multifunction display 370
Brakes 349
Ceramic brake system 350
High-performance brake system 350
Warning lamp 389
Break-in period 320
Brightness
Setting 93
Brightness setting
main video 203
Browsing lists
see Predictive speller
see Searching
Bulbs
see Replacing bulbs

C

CAC (Customer Assistance Center) ... 29
Calculating routes
see Route guidance
California retail buyers and lessees, important notice for 27
Calling (See also Telephone)
dialing with keypad 159
emergency calls 152
history of calls 155
redialing 85, 159
using address book entries 165
using phone book entries 84, 153, 160
voice control with 219
see Call lists
Call lists 155
calling number in 160
deleting 158
displaying details 156
saving entries in address book 156, 157
selecting 156
Calls (phone) 280
Call waiting function 160
Camera angle, DVD Video 205
Canceling entry into COMAND 87
Can holder
see Cup holder
Capacities and recommended fuel/lubricants 425
Carpets, cleaning 359
Categories
points of interest (POIs) 128
satellite radio 175, 222
stopover destinations 124
CD/DVD discs
Loading 180
CD Audio, main vehicle 177
ejecting discs 182
fast forward and reverse 187
Gracenote® Media Database 188
handling and care of discs 180
loading discs 180
selecting a track 187
starting playback 184

stopping or pausing playback 186
voice control with 224, 229

Center console
Lower part 39
Upper part 38

Central locking
Automatic 239
Locking/unlocking from inside 239
SmartKey 236

Central locking/unlocking switch ... 239

Ceramic brake system 350

Certification label 420

Channel selection (satellite radio) 83
voice commands for 223

Chapter selection (DVD)
main video 203

Character entry 86

Children in the vehicle
Air bags 45
Indicator lamp, passenger front air bag off 49
Infant and child restraint systems 58
OCS (Occupant Classification System) 49
Safety notes 57
Tether anchorage points 59
Top tether 59

Child safety
see Children in the vehicle

Chrome-plated exhaust tip, cleaning 360

Cigarette lighter 307

City center, selecting as destination 119, 214

City of destination, selecting 115

Clear button 79

Climate control system 298
Air conditioning 300
Air conditioning refrigerant 426
Air distribution 302
Air recirculation mode 303
Air vents 301
Air volume 302
Automatic mode 300
Deactivating system 299
Front defroster 302
Maximum cooling MAX COOL 303
Temperature 300
Using driver-side settings for passenger side 303

Cockpit 33

Cold tire inflation pressure 345

Collapsible wheel chock 363

Color video settings
main video 203

COMAND
control unit 75
Reset 99
System settings 92

COMAND, about
basic functions 89
operation of 85
switching on/off 89

COMAND components 73

COMAND controller 77

COMAND Control System 72

Combination switch 251

Commands for voice control 225
for address book 219, 227
for CD, DVD, MP3 .... 224, 229
for navigation 212, 226
for phone operation 226
for radio and satellite radio 221, 228
general commands 225

Contacts
see Address book

Contrast setting
main video 203

Control system 272
Multifunction display 273
Multifunction steering wheel 272
Resetting to factory settings 282
Submenus in the Settings menu 283

Control system menus 275
AMG 287
Audio 279
Navi 277
Service 281
Settings 282
Telephone 280
Trip 275

Control system submenus
Convenience 286
Instrument cluster 283

Lighting 284
Vehicle 286
Convenience submenu
Easy-entry/exit feature 286
Fold-in function for exterior rear view mirrors 287
Coolant
Anticorrosion/antifreeze 428
Capacities 425
Checking level 324
Messages in the multifunction display 381
Copyright, audio 178
Crosshair position in map 106
saving in Last Destinations 147
Cruise control 290
Activating 290
Canceling 291
Changing the set speed 291
Last stored speed 292
Lever 290
Messages in the multifunction display 367
Resume function 292
Setting current speed 291
Cup holder 306
Curb weight 345
Current location of vehicle
see Vehicle location (current)
Current street, displaying 110
Customer Assistance Center (CAC) ... 29
Customer Relations Department 29

D

Dashboard
see Instrument cluster
Data for navigation
see Updating map software
Data recording 29
Date format
setting 94
Daytime running lamp mode 251
Switching on or off 284
Deep water
see Standing water
Defogging (windshield) 303
Defroster
Front (Climate control system) 302
Rear window 304
Delayed shut-off
Exterior lamps 285
Interior lighting 286
Department of Transportation
see DOT
Deregistering Bluetooth devices 151
Destination input 114
entering a city 115
Entering a house number 119
from destination memory 122
from Last Destinations 123
from map 123
Selecting a state/province 114
speed restriction on 102, 123
Stopover 124
via address 114
Destination memory (See also Last Destinations) 122, 143
adding stopover destination 124
choosing destination from 122
home address in 143
saving destinations to 145, 216
voice control for 216
Destination memory list 123
Destination reached message 135
Destinations
adding to address book 146
displaying information about 138
distance to, displaying 110
guidance to 132
moving map to 107
saving to destination memory 145, 216
Search & Send service 125
selecting point of interest 126
stopover destinations 124
voice control with 213
see Route guidance
Detour function 137
Dialed calls, list of 155
Dialing telephone
see Calling
Dialog
see Voice control

Difficulties
    While driving 260
    With starting 258
Dimensions (vehicle)
    see Vehicle specification
Direction of rotation (tires) 337
Disc handling 100, 180, 199
Display, main 73
    automatic DVD picture switch-off .. 199
    menus 81, 85
    with voice command 209
Display, map
    see Map display
Display design
    setting 93
Displays
    Maintenance service indicator 352
    Messages in the multifunction display 364
    Multifunction display 273
    Symbol messages 370
    Text messages 365
    Trip computer 275
    Vehicle status message memory ... 282
    Vehicle system settings 282
Distance to destination, displaying . 110
District, selecting as destination 119
    with voice commands 214
Door control panel 41
Door handles 41
Doors
    Locking/unlocking (SmartKey) 236
    Messages in the multifunction display 379
    Opening/closing 238
    Remote door lock (mbrace) 313
    Remote door lock (Tele Aid, Canada only) 313
    Unlocking (Mechanical key) 398
DOT (Department of Transportation) 345
Downloading address book content 166
Drinking and driving 349
Driving
    Abroad 351
    Hydroplaning 351
    Instructions 258, 348
    In winter 348
    Problems 260
    RACE START 292
    Safety systems 61
    Systems 290
    Through standing water 351
Driving and parking
    Safety notes 257
Driving maneuvers 133
Driving off 259, 351
Driving safety systems 61
    ABS 61
    Adaptive Brake 65
    BAS 62
    EBP 65
    ESC 62
    ETS 63
    Trunk Wing 65
Driving systems
    Cruise control 290
    Hill-start assist system 293
    Parktronic system 294
    RACE START 292
    Rear view camera 296
Driving tips, AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission 266
DRM (Digital Rights Management) ... 193
DTMF tone transmission 160
DVD Audio, main vehicle 177
    ejecting discs 182
    fast forward and reverse 187
    handling and care of discs 100, 180
    loading discs 180
    Notes about 178
    pause function 186
    selecting a track 187
    setting audio format 189
    starting playback 184
    stopping or pausing playback 186
    voice control with 224, 230
DVD changer
    loading 101
DVD menu operation 203
DVD playback conditions 199
DVD Video 198
    automatic picture switch off 199
    control menu, displaying/hiding 201

DVD menu ... 203
fast forward/rewind ... 202
functional restrictions ... 200
handling and care of discs ... 199
interactive content ... 205
menu system ... 202
notes on ... 199
operating DVD menu ... 203
picture settings ... 203
safety notes ... 198
selecting film/track ... 203
stop function ... 202
submenu overview ... 201
switching to ... 201
voice control with ... 225, 230

Dynamic routing ... 107, 143

E

Easy-entry/exit feature ... 245, 286

EBP (Electronic Brake Proportioning) ... 65

Ejecting discs and memory cards
main audio system ... 182

Electrical system
Improper work on or modifications ... 28
Power outlets ... 308

Electrical system (Technical data)
see Vehicle specification

Electronic parking brake ... 261

Electronic Stability Control
see ESC

Emergency, in case of
Exiting the vehicle ... 57
First aid kit ... 362
Flat tire ... 402
Hazard warning flasher ... 252
Roadside Assistance ... 27, 311
Towing the vehicle ... 415

Emergency calls
mbrace ... 309
Tele Aid (Canada only) ... 309

Emergency operations
Remote door lock (mbrace) ... 313
Remote door lock (Tele Aid, Canada only) ... 313
Trunk lid, emergency release ... 240

Emergency phone calls ... 152

Emergency Tensioning Device
see ETD

Emission control ... 352
Information label ... 421
System warranties ... 26

Ending active phone calls ... 160

Ending calls ... 84

Engine
Break-in recommendations ... 320
Cleaning ... 356
Compartment ... 322
Malfunction indicator lamp ... 394
Messages in the multifunction display ... 381
Number ... 421
Starting ... 258
Turning off ... 262

Engine (Technical data)
see Vehicle specification

Engine coolant
see Coolant

Engine oil
Adding ... 323
Additives ... 426
Checking level ... 323
Consumption ... 323
Messages in the multifunction display ... 383
Oil dipstick ... 323
Recommended engine oils and oil filter ... 426
Warning lamp ... 394

Engine oil temperature gauge ... 271

ESC (Electronic Stability Control) ... 62
ETS ... 63
Messages in the multifunction display ... 371, 372, 377
Warning lamp ... 393

ETD (Emergency Tensioning Device) ... 55
Safety guidelines ... 46

ETS (Electronic Traction System) ... 63

Express operation
Power windows ... 255

Exterior lamp switch ... 250

Exterior rear view mirrors 246
  Fold-in function 248
  Parking position 247
  Power-folding 248
  Switching fold-in function on or off 287
  Synchronizing 248
Exterior view of vehicle 32
External audio or video devices
  main system 197, 205
  voice control with 225

F

Fastening the seat belts 54
Fast forward
  audio playback 187
  video playback 202
Film selection, DVD 203
First aid kit 362
Flat tire 402
  Preparing the vehicle 402
  TIREFIT (tire repair kit) 402
Floormat (driver's side) 317
Fluids
  Brake fluid 425
  Capacities 425
  Engine coolant 425
  Engine oil 425
  Power steering fluid 425
  Transmission fluid 425
  Washer and headlamp cleaning system 425
Folders
  MP3 mode, selecting 187
Fold-in function for exterior rear view mirrors 248
Formats, audio 178
Forward track skip 187
Front air bags
  see Air bags
Fuel 320
  Additives 427
  Capacity, fuel tank 425
  Drive sensibly–safe fuel 348
  Fuel consumption statistics 276
  Fuel filler flap and cap 321
  Fuel tank reserve warning lamp 394
  Premium unleaded gasoline ... 425, 427
  Refueling 320
  Requirements 427
Fuel filler flap 321
Fuel gauge 271
Fuels, coolants, lubricants etc. 425
Fuel tank
  Capacity 425
  Fuel filler flap and cap 321
  Refueling 320
Full-screen map 106
Fuses 417

G

Garage door opener 313
Gasoline
  see Fuel
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) ... 345
Gear range 266
  Indicator 266
  Limiting 268
  Shifting into optimal 268
Gear selector lever 263
  Cleaning 359
  Gearshift pattern 263
  Shifting procedure 264
  Transmission position indicator 265
  Transmission positions 265
Generator
  see Alternator
Geo-coordinates, displaying 110
Global locking/unlocking
  see Key, SmartKey
Global voice control commands 207
Glove box 304
Google Maps® 125
GPS reception 103
  displaying geo-coordinates 110
Gracenote®
  Media database 188
Gross Axle Weight Rating
  see GAWR
Gross Vehicle Weight
  see GVW
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
  see GVWR
GSM network coverage 148

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) 345
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) 345

H

Hands-free microphone, switching on/off 160
Hanging up (phone calls) 160
Hard disk drive
  voice control with 225, 229
Hard plastic trim items, cleaning 359
Hazard warning flasher 252
Head air bags 49
Headlamp cleaning system 252
Headlamps
  Automatic headlamp mode 250
  Bi-Xenon 249
  Cleaning lenses 357
  Cleaning system 252
  Daytime running lamp mode 251
  Delayed shut-off 285
  High-beam flasher 252
  High-beam headlamps 252
  Low-beam headlamps 250
  Replacing bulbs 400
  Switch 250
Headliner, cleaning and care of 359
Height adjustment
  Seats 243
Help with voice control, general 232
High-beam flasher 252
High-beam headlamps 252
  Indicator lamp 35
High-performance brake system 350
Highway information, displaying 111
Highway junctions, selecting as destination 120
Hill-start assist system 293
Home address in destination memory 122, 143
  deleting 146
  setting or changing 143
Hood 322
  Messages in the multifunction display 379
Horn 33
House numbers, entering for destination 119, 215
Hydroplaning 351

I

Identification labels 420
Identification number, vehicle (VIN) 421
Ignition 241, 242, 258
Immobilizer 66
Incident (traffic notification) 139
Incoming calls
  answering 158
  rejecting 84, 158
Infant and child restraint systems
  see Children in the vehicle
Inflation pressure
  see Tires, Inflation pressure
Initiating phone calls
  see Calling
Input of navigation destination 114
  speed restriction on 102, 123
Input speller
  settings for address book 157
Installing map data 100
Instrument cluster 34, 271
  Lamps 388
  Multifunction display 273
Instrument panel
  see Instrument cluster
Instruments and controls
  see Cockpit
Interactive content on DVDs 205
Interior lighting 253
  Delayed shut-off 286
  Emergency lighting 253
  Reading lamps 253
Interior rear view mirror 246
  Auto-dimming rear view mirrors 247
Interior storage spaces
  see Storage compartments
Intermittent wiping 254
  Rain sensor 254
Interrupting audio playback 186
Interrupting video playback 202
Intersection (selecting) 215

- **iPod® devices** 192
  - connecting to 192
  - playback options 197
  - playlists and folders 195
  - selecting tracks 195

J

- **Jack** 363
- **Jump starting** 413

K

- **Key, Mechanical**
  - Loss of 237
  - Replacing 238
  - Unlocking/locking manually 397
  - Valet locking 241
- **Key, SmartKey**
  - Battery check lamp 237
  - Checking battery 237
  - Closing the windows 257
  - Factory setting 237
  - Global locking (SmartKey) 237
  - Global unlocking (SmartKey) 237
  - Locking/unlocking 236
  - Loss of 237
  - Messages in the multifunction display 379
  - Opening, trunk 239
  - Opening and closing the windows 256
  - Remote control 236
  - Replacing 238
  - Replacing battery 399
  - Restoring to factory setting 237
  - Selective setting 237
  - Starter switch positions 242
- **KEYLESS-GO**
  - Starter switch positions 241
- **Keypad, entering characters with** 87
- **Kickdown** 266
- **Kickdown (manual shift program)** 270
- **Kilopascal (air pressure unit)** 345
- **Knee bags** 48

L

- **Labels**
  - Certification 420
  - Emission control information 421
  - Tire and Loading Information placard 334
- **Lamps, exterior**
  - Exterior lamp switch 250
  - Messages in the multifunction display 384
  - Switching on/off 250
- **Lamps, indicator and warning**
  - ABS 35, 389
  - Brakes 389
  - Center console 38
  - Engine malfunction 394
  - Engine oil temperature 394
  - ESC 35, 393
  - Fuel tank reserve 394
  - High-beam headlamps 35, 252
  - Instrument cluster 388
  - Low-beam headlamps 35, 250
  - Low tire pressure/TPMS malfunction telltale 395
  - Passenger front air bag off 49, 396
  - Seat belt telltale 35, 55, 391
  - SRS 44, 392
  - Turn signals 35
- **Lane recommendations** 135
- **Language**
  - Setting 99
- **Language settings**
  - DVD Video 205
- **Last Destinations** 147
  - adding stopover destination 124
  - adding to memory 145
  - choosing destination from 123
  - deleting destination from 147
  - saving current vehicle position 106, 147
  - voice control for 216
- **License plate lamps**
  - Messages in the multifunction display 385
- **Light alloy wheels, cleaning** 358
- **Lighter**
  - see Cigarette lighter

Lighting 249
  Daytime running lamp mode 251
  Exterior 250
  Interior 253
Limp-home mode 270
Listing address book contents 220
Load index (tires) 341, 345
Loading CDs and DVDs
  main system 180
Local voice control commands 207
Location of vehicle, current
  see Vehicle location (current)
Locator lighting 285
Locking and unlocking
  Notes 236
Locking the vehicle
  Manually 398
  SmartKey 236
Loss of
  Key 237
  Service and Warranty Information booklet 420
Loudness
  see Volume
Low-beam headlamps 250
  Exterior lamp switch 250
  Indicator lamp 35
  Switching on 250
Lubricants 425

M

Magazine compartments, DVD changer 180
Main function display
  see Display, main
Main function menus
  list of 74
  navigation mode, switching to 105
  opening 85
Main menu, overview of 74
Maintenance 27
Maintenance System
  Service indicator display 353
  Service indicator message 352
  Service term exceeded 353
Maneuver phase (driving maneuvers) 134
Manual headlamp mode (Low-beam headlamps) 250
Manual shift program 268
  Upshift indicator 269
Map display (See also Navigation) ... 108
  blocked area for route 112
  destination information 138
  driving maneuver preparation 133
  entering destination on 123
  entering POI from 132
  general information, at bottom 110
  hiding crosshairs 107
  setting scale 106
  topographic map 111
  traffic information 109
  traffic lane recommendations 135
  traffic notifications in 139
  updating map software 100
Maximum engine speed
  see Vehicle specification
Maximum loaded vehicle weight 346
Maximum load rating (tires) 345
Maximum permissible tire inflation pressure 346
mbrace 125, 308
  Emergency calls 309
  Information button 311
  Initiating an emergency call manually 310
  Messages in the multifunction display 377
  Remote door lock 313
  Search & Send 313
  SOS button 310
  Stolen Vehicle Recovery Services .. 313
  System self-test 309
  Wrench button 311
Measurement units, navigation 103
Mechanical key
  see Key, Mechanical
Media interface 192, 304
  data formats 193
  voice control with 225, 230
Media Interface
  connecting devices 193
  selecting category/playlist/folder . 195
  selecting files 195
  switching to 194

Media list 186
Memory cards
  starting playback 184
  voice control with 224, 230
Memory function 249
Menus
  see Control system menus
Menus, COMAND
  how to operate 86
  list of 74
Menus, steering wheel 81
Messages
  during voice command 209
  for driving maneuvers 133
  for traffic lane recommendations ... 135
  real-time traffic reports 142
Mirrors 246
  Auto-dimming rear view mirrors 247
  Exterior rear view mirror parking position 247
  Exterior rear view mirrors 246
  Interior rear view mirror 246
  Memory function 249
  Power-folding exterior rear view mirrors 248
  Vanity mirror 307
Missed calls, list of 155
Missed navigation announcements, requesting 137
Mobile telephone
  see Telephone
MON (Motor Octane Number) 427
Motor Octane Number
  see MON
MP3 mode, main vehicle 178
  fast forward and reverse 187
  selecting a track 187
  selecting folders 187
  starting playback 184
  stopping or pausing playback 186
  voice control with 224, 229
MP3 players 192
  playback options 197
  playlists and folders 195
  selecting active partition 197
  selecting tracks 195
MP3 storage medium 178
Multifunction display 81, 273
  Adjusting illumination brightness ... 285
  Audio menu 83
  Menus and submenus 81
  Symbol messages 370
  Text messages 365
  Vehicle status messages 364
Multifunction display messages
  ABS 371, 372
  Advanced TPMS 368
  Air bags 365
  Air filter 384
  Alternator 368, 383
  AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission 367, 368, 388
  Battery 368, 383
  Brake fluid 376
  Brake pads 370
  Coolant 381
  Cruise control 367
  Doors 379
  EBP 372
  Engine oil 383
  ESC 371, 372, 377
  Gas cap 384
  High-beam lamps 385
  Hood 379
  License plate lamps 385
  Light sensor 386
  Low-beam lamps 386
  mbrace 377
  Parking lamps 385
  Passenger front air bag 365
  Reserve fuel 383
  Reverse lamp 384
  Side marker lamps 385
  SmartKey 379
  SRS 378
  Tele Aid (Canada only) 377
  Tire inflation pressure 368, 387
  Tire pressure monitor 368
  Tires 368, 387
  Trunk 379
  Turn signals 387
  Washer fluid 380
Multifunction steering wheel 80
  Adjustment 245

- Buttons ... 272, 273
- Cleaning ... 359
- Easy-entry/exit feature ... 245, 286
- Gearshift control ... 267
- Memory function ... 249
- Overview ... 36
- voice control button ... 208

Multisession CDs ... 178

Music register ... 189
- Deleting ... 191
- Folder functions ... 191
- Memory space info ... 191
- Playback options ... 192
- recording ... 190
- switching on ... 189
- voice control with ... 225, 229

Muting audio
- main system ... 89
- navigation announcements ... 89, 137

My address (destination) ... 122, 143
- deleting from destination memory . 146
- setting or changing ... 143

N

Names
- for MP3 files and folders ... 178
- for saved destinations ... 146
- searching for POIs by ... 127

Navigation (See also Route guidance) ... 99
- audio fadeout ... 89, 112, 137
- basic settings ... 107
- destination input ... 114
- destination memory ... 143
- displaying/hiding menu system ... 106
- general information ... 102
- last destinations ... 147
- map display ... 108
- menu overview ... 103
- operational readiness ... 102
- POI input ... 126
- scrolling the map ... 106
- setting map scale ... 106
- steering wheel operation ... 81
- switching to navigation mode ... 105
- to address book destinations ... 165
- traffic messages ... 139
- updating map software ... 100
- voice control with ... 212, 226

Navigation announcements ... 133, 137, 206
- during active phone calls ... 137
- switching on/off ... 89, 137
- volume of ... 89

Navigation system
- Control system ... 277

Navi menu ... 81, 103, 277

Near destination, entering POI ... 126

Net, parcel ... 304

Network coverage for phone calls . . 148

Normal occupant weight ... 346

Normal track sequence ... 189

Number, vehicle identification (VIN) ... 421

Number keypad
- entering characters with ... 87

Numbers, entering with voice command ... 209

O

Occupant Classification System
- see OCS (Occupant Classification System)

Occupant distribution ... 346

Occupant safety
- Air bags ... 45
- Children and air bags ... 45
- Children in the vehicle ... 57
- Fastening the seat belts ... 54
- Infant and child restraint systems 58
- Introduction ... 44
- OCS (Occupant Classification System) ... 49
- Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp ... 49, 396
- Seat belts ... 46, 52

OCS (Occupant Classification System) ... 49
- Self-test ... 52

Odometer ... 275

Off-map routes ... 135

Off-road routes ... 135

Oil, oil level
- see Engine oil

On-board computer
  see Control system
One-touch gearshifting 267
Operating example 88
Operating safety 28
Orientation of map 108
Ornamental moldings, cleaning 357
Outgoing calls
  see Calling
Overhead control panel 40

P

Paintwork, cleaning 355
Paintwork code 421
Panic alarm 60
Parcel net 304
Parking 261
  Parktronic system 294
Parking position
  Exterior rear view mirrors 247
  Transmission position 265
Parktronic system
  Cleaning system sensors 357
  Malfunction 296
  Minimum distance 295
  Sensor range 294
  Switching on/off 296
  System sensors 294
  Warning indicators 295
Partitions in USB devices 197
Parts service 420
PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp
  see Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp
Passcodes for Bluetooth phones 150
Passenger front air bag 47
  Messages in the multifunction display 365
Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp 49, 396
Passenger safety
  see Occupant safety
Pausing playback
  main audio 186
  main video 203
PCMCIA memory card
  ejecting 183
  loading 181
Pedals 349
Phone
  submenu 152
  switching to phone mode 152
  see Telephone
Phone book 153
  adding entries 154
  deleting from 155
  dialing from 84, 154, 160
  editing entries 155
  selecting entry 153
  voice control with 211
Phone calls
  emergency 152
  lists of 155
  making 159
  see Calling
Phone menu 152
Phone number search for POIs 127
Picture format
  main video 203
Picture settings for video
  main system 203
Plastic parts, cleaning 359
Playback options
  iPods, MP3 players, and USB devices 197
  Music Register 192
  track sequence 189
Playing audio 184
  fast forward and reverse 187
  muting 89
  options for playback 189
  selecting track 187
  see Muting audio
  see Selecting audio track
POI input
  choosing a category 127
  local area of destination 126
  vicinity of location 127
  vicinity of specific location 127
Points of interest (POIs)
  adding stopover destination 124
  selecting as destination 126
  stopover destinations 124

- voice control for 215
- ZAGAT® Rating Service 131

Possible lane, defined 135
Power assistance 349
Power outlets 308
Power seats
- see Seats

Power washer 355
Power windows 255
- Cleaning 358
- Operation 255
- Synchronizing 256

Practical hints 362
Predictive speller 86
- destination memory list 122
- for points of interest (POIs) ... 128, 130
- house number list 119
- street junction list 120
- street list 118
- zip code list 117

Preparation phase (driving maneuvers) 133
Problems
- While driving 260
- With vehicle 29
- With wipers 255

Product information 26
Production options weight 346
Program mode selector dial
- Automatic shift program 267, 269

Province of destination, selecting 114, 213
Proximity key
- see Key, SmartKey

PSI (air pressure unit) 346

R

RACE START 292
RACETIMER 288

Radio
- satellite radio 169
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Searching a channel 172
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Selecting a channel from channel list 172
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- selecting stations 222
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Selecting stations 279
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Storing stations 171
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- switching to 169
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Switching wavebands 170
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- Tuning to a station 171
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279
- voice control with 221, 228
  - via station search
    - 169, 170, 171, 172, 221, 222, 228, 279

Radio transmitters 351
Rain sensor
- see Intermittent wiping

Random track playback 189

Read-aloud announcements
navigation 137
see Navigation announcements
see Traffic messages
Read-aloud speed
setting 94
Read CD Database function 188
Reading out address book 220
Real-time traffic notifications 139
Rear axle oil 425
Rear lamps
see Tail lamps
Rear view camera 296
Cleaning the camera lens 357
Rear View Camera 99
Rear window defroster 304
Rear wing
see Trunk Wing
Received calls, list of 155
Receive volume (phone) 151
Recommended lane, defined 135
Recommended tire inflation pressure 327, 346
Redialing telephone 85
voice control for 211
Refrigerant, air conditioning 426
Refueling 320
Registering mobile phones 149
Regular checks 321
Rejecting incoming calls 158
Reminder, Seat belt
see Seat belts, Telltale
Remote control
see Key, SmartKey
Remote door lock (mbrace) 313
Remote door lock (Tele Aid, Canada only) 313
Removing discs and memory cards 182
Replacing
Key 238
Replacing bulbs 400
Reporting safety defects 29
Research Octane Number
see RON
Reserve fuel
Messages in the multifunction display 383
Warning lamp 394
Restraint systems
see Occupant safety
Rewind (reverse)
main audio playback 187
video playback 202
Rims 346, 422
Roadside Assistance 27, 311
RON (Research Octane Number) 427
Route calculation 121
history of, saving 147
points of interest (POIs) 131, 132
with home address 145
see Last Destinations
Route guidance 112, 132
after vehicle transport 103
blocked areas 112
canceling or resuming 137
detours and alternative routes 137
driving maneuvers 132
lane recommendations 135
navigation announcements 89, 133, 137, 206
off-map routes 135
off-road routes 135
Route browser 138
saving calculations for 147
stopover destinations 124
traffic lane recommendations 135
traffic messages 139
voice control for 217
with home address 145
see Last Destinations
Route mode 107
Rubber parts, cleaning 359

S

Safety
Driving safety systems 61
Occupant safety 44
Reporting defects 29
Safety belts
see Seat belts

Satellite radio 173
  category selection 175, 222
  Displaying information 176
  Memory functions 176
  Selecting a channel 175
  selecting channels 223
  Switching on 174
  Updating channels 177
  voice control with 221, 229
Saving route calculations
  see Last Destinations
Scale of navigation map, setting 106
Scene selection
  main system 203
Scrolling navigation map 106
Search & Send 125
Searching (See also Predictive speller)
  address book 219, 220
  audio tracks 187
  for mobile phones 149
  phone book 84
  points of interest (POIs) 128
  see Track selection (audio)
Seat belt force limiter 55
Seat belts 52
  Children in the vehicle 57
  Cleaning 359
  Fastening 54
  Proper use of 53
  Releasing 55
  Safety guidelines 46
  Safety notes 52
  Telltale 35, 55, 391
Seat heating 245
Seating capacity 335
Seats 243
  Adjustment 243
  Easy-entry/exit feature 245
  Heating 245
  Memory function 249
Selecting audio track
  CD, DVD, or MP3 187
  normal and random options 189
  steering wheel operation 83
  voice commands for 224
Selecting from lists 88
Selective setting
  see Key, SmartKey
Selector lever
  see Gear selector lever
Self-test
  mbrace 309
  OCS (Occupant Classification System) 52
  Tele Aid (Canada only) 309
Service
  see Maintenance
Service, parts 420
Service and warranty information 26
Service intervals
  see Maintenance System, Service indicator message
Service life (tires) 338
Service menu 281
Settings
  Factory setting (SmartKey) 237
  Memory function 249
  Menu 282
  Selective setting (SmartKey) 237
Side impact air bags 48
Side marker lamps
  Cleaning lenses 357
  Messages in the multifunction display 385
Sidewall (tires) 346
Side windows
  see Power windows
Skipping to tracks
  see Track selection (audio)
SmartKey
  see Key, SmartKey
Snow chains 347
Snow tires
  see Winter tires
Sound
  see Audio
Sound Modus 90
Speedometer 34
Speed restriction on destination input 102, 123
Speed restriction on video display .. 199

Speed settings
- Cruise control 291
- Resume function 292

Speller 86
- destination memory list 122
- for points of interest (POIs) 128, 130
- house number list 119
- street junction list 120
- street list 118
- zip code list 117

Spelling with voice command 209

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System)
- Indicator lamp 35, 44, 392
- Messages in the multifunction display 378

Standing water, driving through 351

Starter switch positions
- KEYLESS-GO 241
- SmartKey 242

Starting difficulties (engine) 258

Starting the engine 258

State of destination, selecting 114, 213

Station selection (radio)
- voice commands for 222

Steering column
- see Multifunction steering wheel, Adjustment

Steering wheel 80, 208
- see Multifunction steering wheel

Steering wheel gearshift control 267

Stolen Vehicle Recovery Services 313

Stopover destinations 124
- deleting 125

Stopping playback
- main audio 186
- main video 202

Storage compartments 304

Storage media handling 100, 180, 199

Storing tires 339

Street junctions, selecting as destination 120

Street of destination, selecting 118, 214

Subtitles for DVD Video 205

Summer and standard time
- switching 94

Summer tires 424

Sun visors 306, 307

Switches
- Adjusting illumination brightness 285

Symbols in this book 70

System language
- for input speller 157

System menu 92

T

Tachometer
- Overspeed range 271

Tail lamps
- Cleaning lenses 357

Tar stains 355

Technical data
- Air conditioning refrigerant 426
- Brake fluid 426
- Capacities fuels, coolants, lubricants etc. 425
- Coolant 428
- Engine oil additives 426
- Engine oils 426
- Fuel requirements 427
- Gasoline additives 427
- Identification labels 420
- Premium unleaded gasoline 427
- Rims and tires 422
- Vehicle specification SLS AMG (197) 421
- Washer and headlamp cleaning system 425, 429

Technical data (dimensions)
- see Vehicle specification

Technical data (electrical system)
- see Vehicle specification

Technical data (engine)
- see Vehicle specification

Technical data (weights)
- see Vehicle specification

Tele Aid (Canada only) 308
- Emergency calls 309
- Information button 311
- Initiating an emergency call 310

Messages in the multifunction display ... 377
Remote door lock ... 313
Search & Send ... 313
SOS button ... 310
Stolen Vehicle Recovery Services .. 313
System self-test ... 309
Wrench button ... 311

Telephone
Answering/ending a call ... 280
Hands-free microphone ... 40
Menu ... 280
Operation ... 280
Phone book ... 281
Redialing ... 281

Telephone (See also Calling)
activating ... 149
address book ... 160
Bluetooth interface ... 149
call lists ... 155
call waiting function ... 160
functional restrictions ... 148
general information ... 148
incoming calls ... 84, 158
loudness of calls ... 89
making calls ... 159
navigation announcements during calls ... 137
operating options ... 148
phone book ... 153
prerequisites ... 149
setting transmit and receive volume ... 151
steering wheel operation ... 84
voice control with ... 226

Telephone book
see Phone book

Telephone calls
emergency ... 152
lists of ... 155
making ... 159
see Calling

Tel menu ... 84

Temperature
Engine oil ... 271
Interior ... 300
Outside ... 271

Terminating phone calls ... 160

Tether anchorage points
see Children in the vehicle

Tightening torque
Wheels ... 409

Time format
setting ... 94

Time of arrival, displaying ... 110

Time settings ... 93

Time zone
setting ... 94

TIN (Tire Identification Number) ... 346

Tire and Loading Information placard ... 334

Tire and loading terminology ... 345

TIREFIT ... 402

Tire Identification Number
see TIN

Tire inflation pressure
Checking ... 329
Important notes on ... 328
Placard on driver's door B-pillar ... 334

Tire labeling ... 341

Tire load rating ... 345

Tire ply composition and material used ... 346

Tire repair kit
see TIREFIT

Tires ... 326, 422
Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System (Advanced TPMS) ... 329
Air pressure ... 327
Care and maintenance ... 338
Cleaning ... 339
Direction of rotation, spinning ... 337
DOT, Tire Identification Number (TIN) ... 344
Important notes on tire inflation pressure ... 328
Inflation pressure ... 328, 329
Information placard ... 334
Inspection ... 338
Labeling ... 341
Load identification ... 343
Load index ... 341, 345
Load rating ... 345

  Maximum permissible tire inflation pressure 333
  Maximum tire load 337
  Messages in the multifunction display 368, 387
  Ply composition and material used 346
  Problems under-/overinflation 328
  Retreads 326
  Rims and tires (technical data) 422
  Rotation 340
  Service life 338
  Sizes 422
  Snow chains 347
  Speed rating 342, 346
  Storing 339
  Summer tires 424
  Temperature 328, 340
  Terminology 345
  TIREFIT (tire repair kit) 402
  Tire Identification Number 346
  Tire ply material 344
  TPMS low tire pressure/ malfunction telltale 395
  Traction 339, 346
  Tread 346
  Tread depth 338, 347
  Treadwear 339
  Treadwear indicators 338, 346
  Vehicle maximum load on 347
  Wear pattern 340
  Winter tires 347, 422, 424
Tire speed rating 342, 346
Total load limit 346
Towing
  Towing eye bolt 415
  Vehicle 415
Towing eye bolt 415
Town, selecting as destination 213
Track names 178
Track selection (audio)
  CD, DVD, or MP3 187
  iPods and MP3 players 196
  normal and random options 189
  steering wheel operation 83
  voice commands for 224
Track selection (video) 203, 204
  voice commands for 224
Traction 339, 346
Traffic lane recommendations 135
Traffic messages 139
Traffic symbol information 142
Transmission
  AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission 263
Transmission fluid level 324
Transmission gear selector lever
  see Gear selector lever
Transmission positions 265
Transmit volume (phone) 151
Traveling abroad 351
Tread (tires) 346
Tread depth (tires) 338, 347
Treadwear 339
Treadwear indicators (tires) 338, 346
Treble setting
  main system 90
Trickle charge socket 317
Trip menu 275
Troubleshooting
  voice control 231
True Image™ 90
Trunk
  Closing 240
  Locking manually 398
  Messages in the multifunction display 379
  Opening 239
  Trunk lid emergency release 240
  Unlocking manually 398
  Valet locking 241
Trunk Wing 65
  Cleaning 360
Turning off the engine 262
Turn signals 251
  Cleaning lenses 357
  Indicator lamps 35
  Messages in the multifunction display 387

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards ... 339, 346
Units
  Selecting speedometer display mode ... 283
Units of measurement, navigation .. 103
Unleaded gasoline, premium ... 427
Unlocking the vehicle
  Manually ... 398
  SmartKey ... 236
Updating Gracenote® Media Database ... 188
Updating map software ... 100
Upholstery, cleaning ... 359
USB devices
  connecting to ... 192
  playback options ... 197
  playlists and folders ... 195
  selecting active partition ... 197
  selecting tracks ... 195, 196
Useful features ... 306

V

Valet locking ... 241
Vehicle
  Battery ... 410
  Care ... 354
  Control system ... 272
  Identification Number (VIN) ... 420
  Locking/unlocking ... 236
  Modifications and alterations, Operating safety ... 28
  Towing ... 415
  Unlocking/locking manually ... 398
Vehicle dimensions
  see Vehicle specification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ... 420
Vehicle jack
  see Jack
Vehicle lighting ... 249
Vehicle loading
  Load limit ... 335
  Terminology ... 345
Vehicle location (current)
  displaying ... 110
  GPS reception ... 103
  moving map to ... 107
  saving in Last Destinations 106, 147
Vehicle maximum load on the tire ... 347
Vehicle specification
  SLS AMG (197) ... 421
Vehicle status message memory 282
Vehicle tool kit ... 362
Vehicle washing
  see Vehicle care
Vehicle weights
  see Vehicle specification
Video ... 198
  control menu, displaying/hiding 201
  handling and care of discs ... 199
  interactive content ... 205
  operating DVD menu ... 203
  picture settings ... 203
  voice control with ... 230
Video Aux (auxiliary)
  main system ... 205
Voice control ... 206
  canceling the dialog ... 208
  command list ... 225
  creating voice names ... 219
  general operation ... 207
  help function ... 232
  interrupting the dialog ... 208
  operating safety ... 206
  starting the dialog ... 208
  switching help screen on or off ... 95
  troubleshooting ... 231
  with address book ... 166, 218, 231
  with DVD changer ... 224
  with external equipment (Aux) ... 225
  with navigation ... 212
  with phone ... 209
  with radio and satellite radio ... 221
Voice Control
  delete name ... 220
  find address ... 217
  Individualization ... 95
  Settings ... 95
Voice mail, voice control for ... 211
Voice names, creating ... 219

Volume (loudness)
- COMAND 89
- external audio sources 197, 206
- mobile phones 151
- muting COMAND 89
- navigation announcements 89, 137
- phone calls 89
- voice command 208

W

Warning sounds
- Driver's or passenger's seat belt 55
- Electronic parking brake 372
- Parktronic system 296
- Seat belt telltale 391

Warranty coverage 420

Washer and headlamp cleaning system 429

Washer fluid
- Messages in the multifunction display 380
- Mixing ratio 429
- Refilling 325

Washing the vehicle 354

Wear pattern (tires) 340

Weights (vehicle)
- see Vehicle specification

Wheel
- Changing 405
- Removing 407
- Tightening torque 409

Wheels, sizes 422

Wheels, Tires and 326

Windows
- see Power windows

Windows, cleaning 358

Windshield
- Cleaning wiper blades 358
- Defogging 303
- Washer fluid 429
- Wipers 253

Windshield wipers
- Replacing wiper blades 400

Winter driving
- Instructions 348
- Snow chains 347
- Tires 347

Winter tires 347, 422, 424

Wipers
- Notes 253
- Problems with 255
- Windshield wipers 253

Z

ZAGAT® Rating Service 131

Zip code of destination, selecting 117

Product Information

Please observe the following in your own best interest:

We recommend using Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts as well as conversion parts and accessories explicitly approved by us for your vehicle model.

We have tested these parts to determine their reliability, safety and special suitability for Mercedes-Benz vehicles.

We are unable to make an assessment for other products and therefore cannot be held responsible for them, even if in individual cases an official approval or authorization by governmental or other agencies should exist. Use of such parts and accessories could adversely affect the safety, performance or reliability of your vehicle. Please do not use them.

Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts and pre-approved conversion parts and accessories are available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. In addition, you will receive comprehensive information on permissible technical modifications and expert installations.

Operator’s Manual

Notes

This Operator’s Manual contains a great deal of useful information. We urge you to read it carefully and familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.

For your own safety and longer service life of the vehicle, we urge you to follow the instructions and warnings contained in this Operator’s Manual. Ignoring them could result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury to you or others. Vehicle damage caused by failure to follow instructions is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

We continuously strive to improve our product and ask for your understanding that we reserve the right to make changes in design and equipment. Therefore, information, illustrations, and descriptions in this Operator’s Manual might differ from your vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Your vehicle may have some or all of the equipment described in this manual. Therefore, you may find explanations for optional equipment not installed in your vehicle. If you have any questions about operating particular equipment, any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to demonstrate the proper procedures.

Optional equipment is also described in this manual, including operating instructions wherever necessary. Since they are special-order items, the descriptions and illustrations herein may vary slightly from the actual equipment of your vehicle.

If there are any equipment details that are not shown or described in this Operator’s Manual, any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to inform you of correct care and operating procedures. The Operator’s Manual and Maintenance Booklet are important documents and should be kept with the vehicle.

Service and warranty information

The Service and Warranty Information booklet contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Mercedes-Benz, including:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Emission System Warranty
- Emission Performance Warranty
- California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania,

Rhode Island, and Vermont Emission Control System Warranty

- State Warranty Enforcement Laws (Lemon Laws)

Important notice for California retail buyers and lessees of Mercedes-Benz automobiles

Under California law you may be entitled to a replacement of your vehicle or a refund of the purchase price or lease price, if after a reasonable number of repair attempts Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC and/or its authorized repair or service facilities fail to fix one or more substantial defects or malfunctions in the vehicle that are covered by its express warranty. During the period of 18 months from original delivery of the vehicle or the accumulation of 18 000 miles (approximately 29 000 km) on the odometer of the vehicle, whichever occurs first, a reasonable number of repair attempts is presumed for a retail buyer or lessee if one or more of the following occurs:

(1) the same substantial defect or malfunction results in a condition that is likely to cause death or serious bodily injury if the vehicle is driven, that defect or malfunction has been subject to repair two or more times, and you have directly notified Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC in writing of the need for its repair,

(2) the same substantial defect or malfunction of a less serious nature than category (1) has been subject to repair four or more times and you have directly notified us in writing of the need for its repair, or

(3) the vehicle is out of service by reason of repair of the same or different substantial defects or malfunctions for a cumulative total of more than 30 calendar days.

Written notification should not be sent to a dealer, it should be addressed to

Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC
Customer Assistance Center
One Mercedes Drive
Montvale, NJ 07645-0350

Maintenance

The Maintenance Booklet describes all the necessary maintenance work which should be performed at regular intervals.

Always have the Maintenance Booklet with you when you take the vehicle to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for service. The service advisor will record each service in the booklet for you.

Roadside Assistance

The Mercedes-Benz Roadside Assistance Program provides factory-trained technical help in the event of a breakdown. Calls to the toll-free Roadside Assistance number

1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372) (in the USA) 1-800-387-0100 (in Canada)

will be answered by Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Representatives 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

For additional information refer to the Mercedes-Benz Roadside Assistance Program brochure (in the USA) or the Roadside Assistance section of the Service and Warranty Information Booklet (in Canada) in your vehicle literature portfolio.

Change of address or ownership

If you change your address, be sure to send in the “Change of Address Notice” found in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet, or simply call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center (in the USA) at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372), or Customer Service (in Canada) at 1-800-387-0100. This will assist us in contacting you in a timely manner should the need arise.

If you sell your Mercedes, please leave all literature with the vehicle to make it available to the next operator.

If you bought this vehicle used, be sure to send in the “Notice of Purchase of Used Car” found in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet, or call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center (in the USA) at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372), or Customer Service (in Canada) at 1-800-387-0100.

Operating your vehicle outside the USA or Canada

If you plan to operate your vehicle in foreign countries, please be aware that:

- Service facilities or replacement parts may not be readily available.
- Unleaded gasoline for vehicles with catalytic converters may not be available; the use of leaded fuels will damage the catalysts.
- Gasoline may have a considerably lower octane rating, and improper fuel can cause engine damage.

Certain Mercedes-Benz models are available for delivery in Europe under our European Delivery Program. For details, consult an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or write to:

In the USA:
Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC
European Delivery Department
One Mercedes Drive
Montvale, NJ 07645-0350

In Canada:
Mercedes-Benz Canada, Inc.
European Delivery Department
98 Vanderhoof Avenue
Toronto, Ontario M4G 4C9

Operating safety

⚠ **Warning!**

Work improperly carried out on electronic components and associated software could cause them to cease functioning. Because the vehicle’s electronic components are interconnected, any modifications made may produce an undesired effect on other systems. Electronic malfunctions could seriously impair the operating safety of your vehicle.

Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for repairs or modifications to electronic components.

Other improper work or modifications on the vehicle could also have a negative impact on the operating safety of the vehicle.

Some safety systems only function while the engine is running. You should therefore never turn off the engine while driving.

⚠ **Warning!**

Heavy blows against the vehicle underbody or tires/wheels may cause serious damage and impair the operating safety of your vehicle. Such blows can be caused, for example, by running over an obstacle, road debris or a pothole. If you feel a sudden significant vibration or ride disturbance, or you suspect that damage to your vehicle as occurred:

- turn on your hazard warning flashers
- slow down carefully
- drive with caution to an area which is a safe distance from the road

Inspect the vehicle underbody and tires/wheels for possible damage. If the vehicle appears unsafe, have it towed to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or other qualified maintenance or repair facility for further inspection or repairs.

Proper use of the vehicle

Proper use of the vehicle requires that you are familiar with the following information and rules:

- the safety precautions in this manual
- the “Technical data” section in this manual
- traffic rules and regulations
- motor vehicle laws and safety standards

⚠ **Warning!**

Various warning labels are attached to your vehicle. These warning labels are intended to make you and others aware of various risks. Do not remove any of these warning labels unless explicitly instructed to do so by information on the label itself. Removing warning labels may cause you and others to be unaware of certain risks which may result in an accident and/or personal injury.

Problems with your vehicle

If you should experience a problem with your vehicle, particularly one that you believe may affect its safe operation, we urge you to contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately to have the problem diagnosed and corrected if required. If the matter is not handled to your satisfaction, please discuss the problem with the Mercedes-Benz Center management or, if necessary, contact us at one of the following addresses:

In the USA:
Customer Assistance Center
Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC
One Mercedes Drive
Montvale, NJ 07645-0350

In Canada:
Customer Relations Department
Mercedes-Benz Canada, Inc.
98 Vanderhoof Avenue
Toronto, Ontario M4G 4C9

Reporting safety defects

For the USA only:

The following text is published as required of manufacturers under Title 49, Code of U.S. Federal Regulations, Part 575 pursuant to the “National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966”.

Reporting safety defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to **http://www.safercar.gov**; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA Headquarters, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, West Building, Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from **http://www.safercar.gov**.

Vehicle data recording

Information regarding electronic recording devices

(Including notice pursuant to California Code § 9951)

Please note that your vehicle is equipped with devices that can record vehicle systems data and, if equipped with the Tele Aid system, may transmit some data in certain accidents.

This information helps, for example, to diagnose vehicle systems after a collision and to continuously improve vehicle safety. Daimler may access the information and share it with others

- for safety research or vehicle diagnosis purposes
- with the consent of the vehicle owner or lessee
- in response to an official request by law enforcement or other government agency
- for use in dispute resolution involving Daimler, its affiliates or sales/service organization and/or
- as otherwise required or permitted by law

Please check the mbrace[1] subscription service agreement for details regarding the information that may be recorded or transmitted via that system.

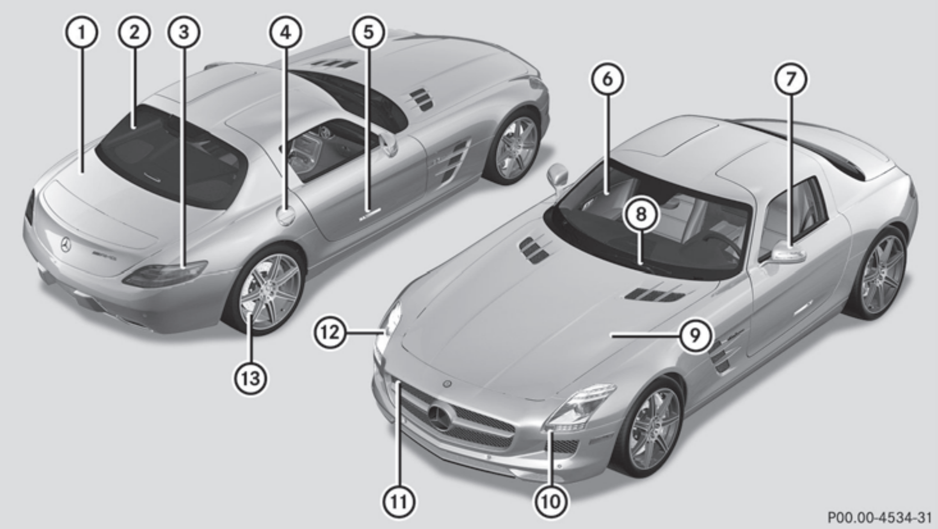
---

[1] Tele Aid in Canada.

At a glance

Exterior view 32
Cockpit 33
Instrument cluster 34
Multifunction steering wheel 36
Center console 38
Overhead control panel 40
Door control panel 41

Exterior view

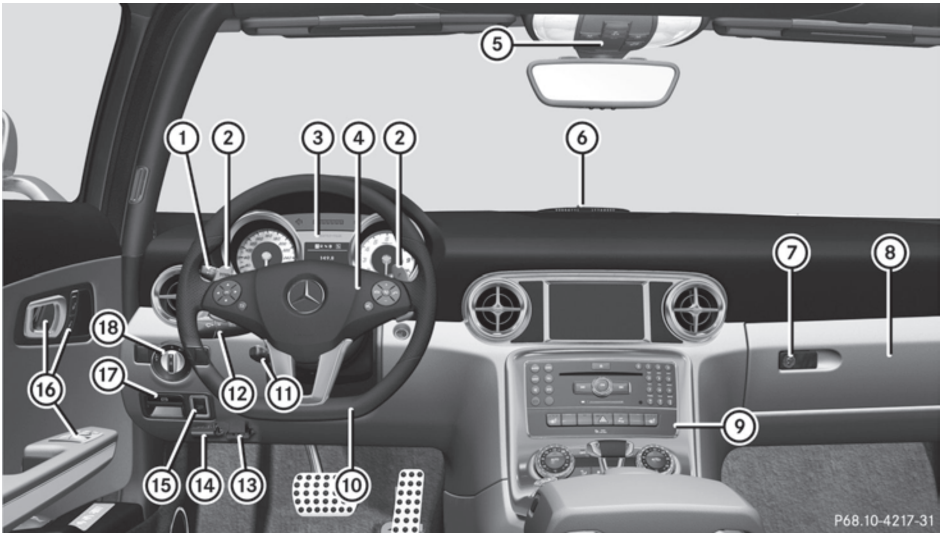


ℹ This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

	Function	Page
①	Trunk:	
	Locking and unlocking	236, 397
	Opening and closing	239
	Valet locking	241
②	Rear window defroster	304
③	Rear lamps	400
④	Fuel filler flap	320
⑤	Doors:	
	Locking and unlocking	236, 397

	Function	Page
⑥	Windshield:	
	Wiping with washer fluid	253
	Cleaning	358
⑦	Exterior rear view mirrors	246
⑧	Wipers	253
	Wiper blades, replacing	400
	Wiper blades, cleaning	358
⑨	Hood	322
⑩	Headlamp cleaning system	252
⑪	Towing eye	415
⑫	Front lamps	400
⑬	Tires and wheels	326
	Rims and tires	422

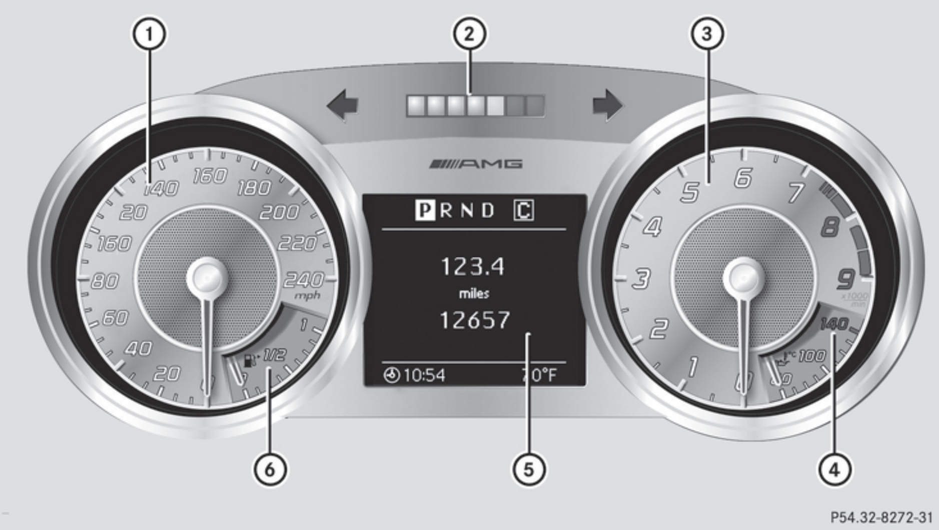
Cockpit



	Function	Page
①	Cruise control lever	290
②	Steering wheel gearshift control	267
③	Instrument cluster	34
④	Horn	
⑤	Overhead control panel	40
⑥	Front Parktronic warning indicator	295
⑦	Glove box lid release, glove box lock	304
⑧	Glove box	304
⑨	Center console	38
⑩	Multifunction steering wheel	36

	Function	Page
⑪	Steering wheel adjustment stalk	245
⑫	Combination switch: Turn signals Wipers High beam	 251 253 251
⑬	On-board diagnostics (OBD) socket	
⑭	Hood lock release lever	322
⑮	Trunk opening switch	239
⑯	Door control panel	41
⑰	Electronic parking brake	261
⑱	Exterior lamp switch	250

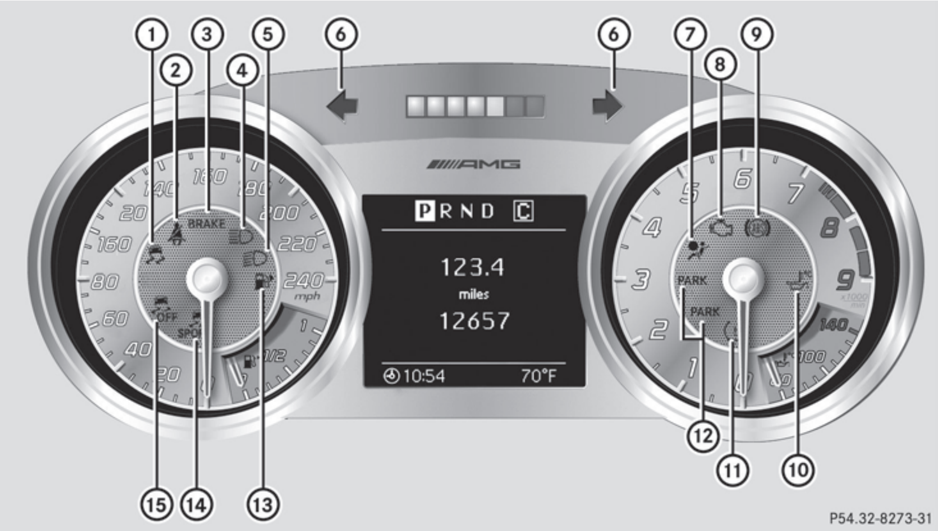
Instrument cluster


1
2
3
4
5
6
PRND C
123.4
miles
12657
10:54
70°F
P54.32-8272-31

ℹ Please refer to the overview of the indicator and warning lamps (▷ page 35).

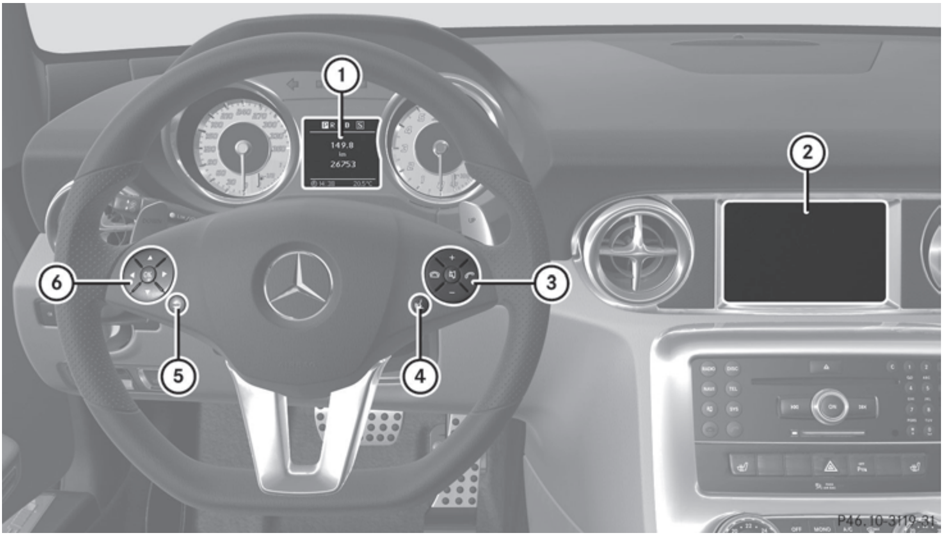
	Function	Page
①	Speedometer	
②	Upshift indicator	269
③	Tachometer	271
④	Engine oil temperature gauge	271
⑤	Multifunction display	273
⑥	Fuel gauge	271

Indicator and warning lamps



	Function	Page
①	ESC warning lamp	393
②	Seat belt telltale	391
③	BRAKE Brake warning lamp, USA only or (!) Brake warning lamp, Canada only	389 389
④	High-beam headlamp indicator lamp	251
⑤	Low-beam headlamp indicator lamp	250
⑥	Left turn signal indicator lamp Right turn signal indicator lamp	251 251
⑦	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) indicator lamp	44
⑧	Engine malfunction indicator lamp	394
⑨	Antilock Brake System (ABS) indicator lamp	389
⑩	Engine oil temperature warning lamp	394
⑪	Combination low tire pressure/TPMS malfunction telltale, USA only Low tire pressure telltale, Canada only	329, 395 329, 395
⑫	PARK Electronic parking brake warning or indicator lamps, USA only or (P) Electronic parking brake warning or indicator lamps, Canada only	389 389
⑬	Fuel tank reserve warning lamp	394
⑭	ESC SPORT	393
⑮	ESC OFF warning lamp	393

Multifunction steering wheel



	Function	Page
①	Multifunction display	273
②	COMAND system display	72
③	Press button ☎:	
	to end a call	280
	to reject an incoming call	280
	Press button ✆:	
	to answer a call	280
	to dial[2]	281
	to redial[2]	281
	Press button + or – to set the volume	
	Press button 🔇 to mute.	
④	Press button 🗣 to activate the Voice Control System[3].	

	Function	Page
⑤	Press button ⮌ briefly:	
	to go to the next higher menu level	272
	to confirm display message	272
	to cancel the Voice Control System[3]	
	Press and hold button ⮌ to select the standard display.	272
⑥	Press button ◀ or ▶:	272
	to call up line for main menus	
	to scroll to the left or right to select menus	

---

[2] Function only available in telephone menu.

[3] Function only available in vehicles with Voice Control System.

	Function	**Page**
	Press button ▲ or ▼ briefly:	272
	to select submenus	
	to scroll up or down through lists	
	to select previous or next track, scene, or stored station within Audio menu	279
	to switch to the phone book and select a name or number within Tel menu	280
	Press and hold button ▲ or ▼:	272
	to select previous or next track or scene with quick search or to select previous or next station in waveband (if no station list is available) within Audio menu	279
	to start the quick search in the phone book within Tel menu	280

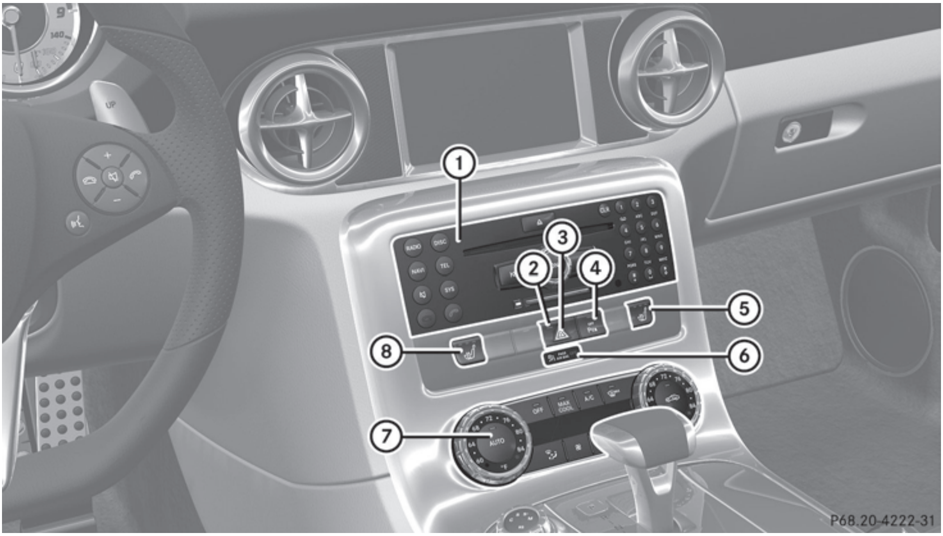
	Function	**Page**
	Press button OK:	
	to confirm selection or message	272
	to switch to the phone book[2]	280
	to dial a selected phone number[2]	281

---

[2] Function only available in telephone menu.

Center console

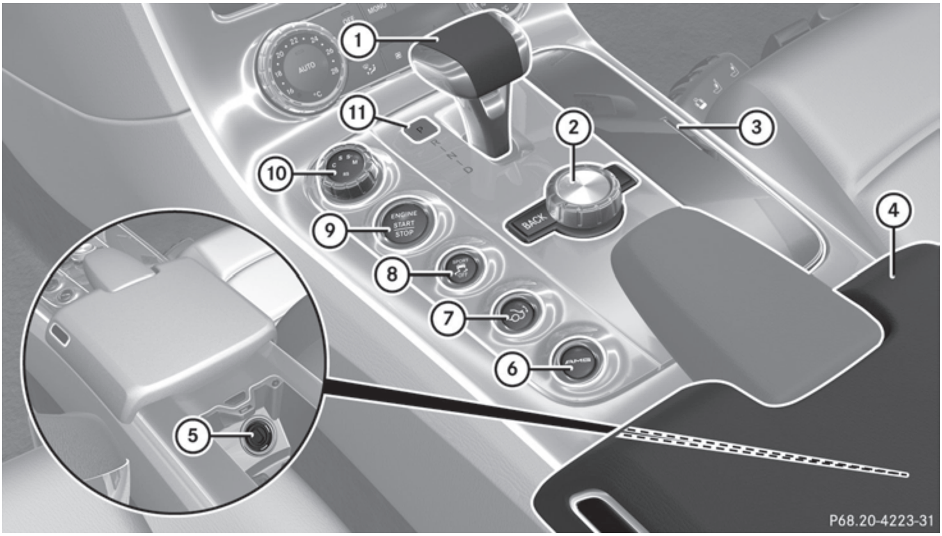
Upper part



	Function	Page
①	COMAND system	72
②	Alarm system indicator lamp	66
③	Hazard warning flasher switch	252
④	Parktronic system deactivation switch	296

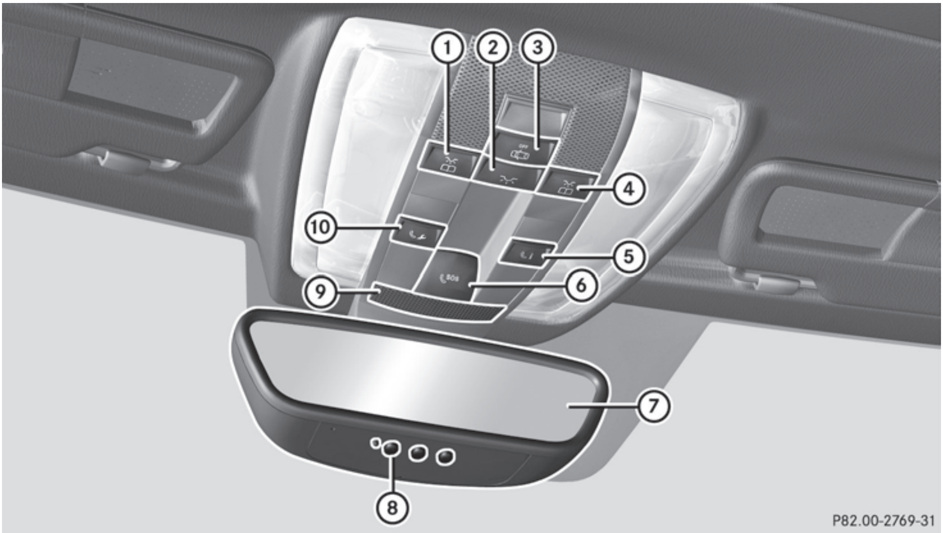
	Function	Page
⑤	Seat heating, passenger side	245
⑥	Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp	49
⑦	Dual-zone automatic climate control	298
⑧	Seat heating, driver’s side	245

Lower part


1
11
10
9
8
7
6
2
3
4
5
AUTO
ENGINE START STOP
BACK
AMG
P68.20-4223-31

	Function	Page
①	Gear selector lever	263
②	COMAND controller	77
③	Ashtray Cigarette lighter or Power outlet Storage compartment	307 307 308 304
④	Cup holder Storage compartment	306 304
⑤	Starter switch	242
⑥	AMG button (SETUP)	270
⑦	Trunk Wing switch: Trunk Wing cleaning Trunk Wing operation	 360 65
⑧	ESC off/on ESC SPORT on/off	 62
⑨	KEYLESS-GO start/stop button	241
⑩	Program mode selector dial	267
⑪	Park position button **P**	263

Overhead control panel



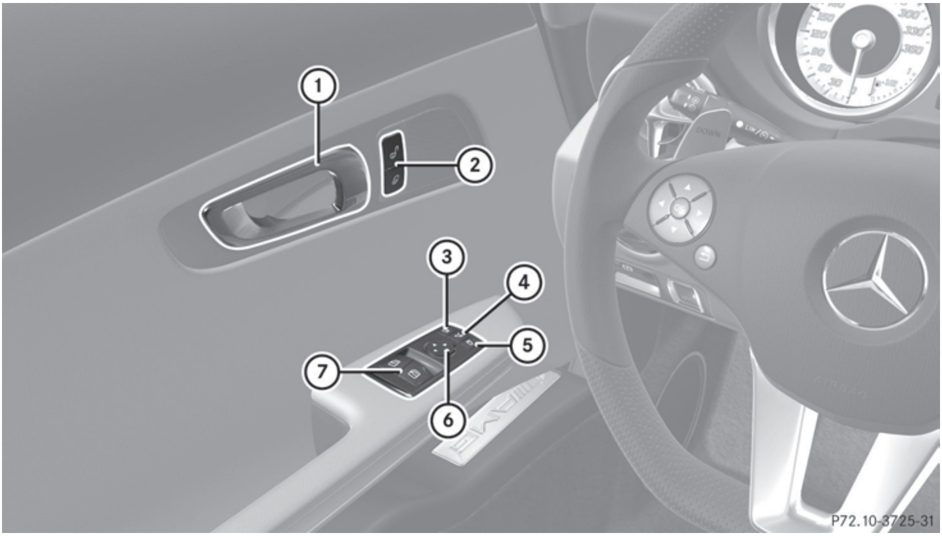
	Function	Page
①	Left reading lamp on/off	253
②	Interior lighting on/off	253
③	Automatic control on/off	253
④	Right reading lamp on/off	253
⑤	Information button (mbrace system[4])	311
⑥	SOS button (mbrace system[4])	310

	Function	Page
⑦	Interior rear view mirror	246
⑧	Garage door opener	313
⑨	Hands-free microphone (mbrace system[4]), telephone and Voice Control System	
⑩	Roadside Assistance button (mbrace system[4])	311

---

[4] Tele Aid in Canada.

Door control panel



	Function	Page
①	Inside door handle	238
②	Central locking/unlocking switch	239
③	Selection button for driver’s side exterior rear view mirror	246
④	Power-folding exterior rear view mirrors	246
⑤	Selection button for passenger-side exterior rear view mirror	246
⑥	Exterior rear view mirror adjustment	246
⑦	Power window switch	255

Safety and security

Vehicle equipment 44
Occupant safety 44
Panic alarm 60
Driving safety systems 61
Anti-theft systems 66

Vehicle equipment

This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Occupant safety

Introduction

In this section you will learn the most important facts about the restraint system components of the vehicle.

The restraint systems are:

- Seat belts
- Child restraints

Additional protection potential is provided by:

- **S**upplemental **R**estraint **S**ystem (SRS) with
  - Air bags
  - Air bag control unit (with crash sensors)
  - **E**mergency **T**ensioning **D**evice (ETD) for seat belts
  - Seat belt force limiter
- Air bag system components with
  - Passenger front air bag off indicator lamp
  - Passenger seat with **O**ccupant **C**lassification **S**ystem (OCS)

Although the systems are independent, their protective functions work in conjunction with each other.

Warning!

Modifications to or work improperly conducted on restraint system components or their wiring, as well as tampering with interconnected electronic systems, can lead to the restraint systems no longer functioning as intended.

Air bags or Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs), for example, could deploy inadvertently or fail to deploy in accidents although the deceleration threshold for air bag deployment is exceeded. Therefore, never modify the restraint systems. Do not tamper with electronic components or their software.

See "Children in the vehicle" (▷ page 57) for information on

- infants and children traveling with you in the vehicle
- restraint systems for infants and children

SRS indicator lamp

The SRS system conducts a self-test when the ignition is switched on and in regular intervals while the engine is running. This facilitates detection of system malfunctions.

The SRS indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition is switched on. It goes out no later than a few seconds after the engine has been started.

Warning!

The SRS self-check has detected a malfunction when the SRS indicator lamp

- does not come on at all
- fails to go out after approximately 4 seconds after the engine was started
- comes on after the engine was started or while driving

For your safety, we strongly recommend that you contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately to have the system checked. Otherwise the SRS may not be activated when needed in an accident, which could result in serious or fatal injury. The SRS might also deploy unexpectedly and unnecessarily which could also result in injury as well.

In addition, improper work on the SRS creates a risk of rendering the SRS inoperative or causing unintended air bag deployment. Work on the SRS must therefore only be performed by qualified technicians. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

If it is necessary to modify an air bag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. USA only: Call our Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372) for details.

Air bags

⚠ **Warning!**

Air bags are designed to reduce the potential of injury and fatality in certain

- frontal impacts (front air bags and knee bags)
- side impacts (side impact air bags and head air bags)

However, no system available today can completely eliminate injuries and fatalities.

Deployment of the air bags temporarily releases a small amount of dust from the air bags. This dust, however, is neither harmful to your health, nor does it indicate a fire in the vehicle. The dust might cause some temporary breathing difficulty for people with asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, you may wish to get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have any breathing difficulty but cannot get out of the vehicle after the air bag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or door.

⚠ **Warning!**

To reduce the risk of injury when the front air bags inflate, it is very important for the driver and passenger to always be in a properly seated position and to wear their seat belts.

For maximum protection in the event of a collision always be in normal seated position with your back against the seat backrest. Fasten your seat belt and make sure it is properly positioned on your body.

Since the air bag inflates with considerable speed and force, a proper seating position and correct positioning of the hands on the steering wheel will help to keep you at a safe distance from the air bag. Occupants who are not wearing their seat belt, are not seated properly or are too close to the air bag can be seriously injured or killed by an air bag as it inflates with great force instantaneously:

- Sit with the seat belt properly fastened in a position that is as upright as possible with your back against the seat backrest.
- Move the driver's seat as far back as possible, still permitting proper operation of vehicle controls. The distance from the center of the driver's chest to the center of the air bag cover on the steering wheel must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more. You should be able to accomplish this by adjusting the seat and steering wheel. If you have any difficulties, please contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
- Do not lean your head or chest close to the steering wheel or dashboard.
- Keep hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim. Placing hands and arms inside the rim can increase the risk and potential severity of hand/arm injury when the driver front air bag inflates.
- Adjust the passenger seat as far as possible rearward from the dashboard when the seat is occupied.
- Occupants, especially children, should never place their bodies or lean their heads in the area of the door where the head air bag inflates. This could result in serious injuries or death should the head air bag be deployed. Always sit as upright as possible, wear the seat belt properly and use an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in severe injuries to you or other occupants.

If you sell your vehicle, it is important that you make the buyer aware of this safety

▷▷

information. Be sure to give the buyer this Operator's Manual.

⚠ **Warning!**

There is a possibility of a head air bag-related injury if occupants, especially children, are not properly seated or restrained when next to a head air bag which needs to deploy rapidly in a side impact in order to do its job.

To help avoid the possibility of injury, please follow these guidelines:

(1) Occupants, especially children, should never place their bodies or lean their heads in the area of the door where the head air bag inflates. This could result in serious injuries or death should the head air bag be deployed.

(2) Always sit as upright as possible, wear the seat belt properly, and for children 12 years old and under, use an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

(3) Always wear seat belts properly.

If you believe that, even with the use of these guidelines, it would be safer for your passenger seat occupants to have the passenger side head air bag deactivated, then deactivation can be carried out upon your written request at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center at an additional cost.

Please contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call the Customer Assistance Center (in the USA) at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372), or Customer Service (in Canada) at 1-800-387-0100 for details.

Air bags are designed to deploy only in certain frontal impacts (front air bags and knee bags) and in side impacts (head air bags) if the system determines the need for air bag deployment. Only in the event of such a situation will they provide their supplemental protection.

The driver and passenger should always wear their seat belts. Otherwise it is not possible for the air bags to provide their supplemental protection.

In case of other types of impacts and impacts below air bag deployment thresholds, air bags will not deploy. The driver and passenger will then be protected to the extent possible by a properly fastened seat belt. A properly fastened seat belt is also needed to provide the best possible protection in a rollover.

Air bags are not a substitute for seat belts. Always wear your seat belt, regardless of whether or not your vehicle is equipped with air bags.

It is important to your safety and that of your passenger to have deployed air bags replaced and to have any malfunctioning air bags repaired. This will help to make sure the air bags will continue to provide supplemental crash protection for occupants.

Safety guidelines for the seat belt, Emergency Tensioning Device (ETD) and air bag

⚠ **Warning!**

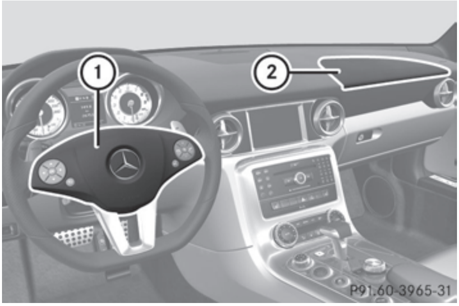
- Damaged seat belts or seat belts that have been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced. Their anchoring points must also be checked. Only use seat belts installed or supplied by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
- Air bags and pyrotechnic Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs) contain perchlorate material, which may require special handling and regard for the environment. Check with your local government's disposal guidelines. California residents, see **www.dtsc.ca.gov/HazardousWaste/Perchlorate/index.cfm**.
- Air bags and ETDs are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. An air bag or ETD that has deployed must be replaced.

- Do not pass seat belts over sharp edges. They could tear.
- Do not make any modification that could change the effectiveness of the seat belts.
- Do not bleach or dye seat belts as this may severely weaken them. In a crash they may not be able to provide adequate protection.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to any components or wiring of the SRS.
- Do no change or remove any component or part of the SRS.
- Do not install additional trim material, seat covers, badges, etc. over the steering wheel hub, passenger front air bag cover, outboard sides of the seat backrests, door trim panels, or door frame trims.
- Do not install additional electrical/ electronic equipment on or near SRS components and wiring.
- Keep area between air bags and occupants free of objects (e.g. packages, purses, umbrellas, etc.).
- Air bag system components will be hot after an air bag has inflated. Do not touch them.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel, dashboard, or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- Improper repair work on the SRS creates a risk of rendering the SRS inoperative or causing unintended air bag deployment. Work on the SRS must therefore only be performed by qualified technicians. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
- For your protection and the protection of others, when scrapping the air bag unit or ETD, our safety instructions must be followed. These instructions are available from any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
- Given the considerable deployment speed, required inflation volume, and the material of the air bags, there is the possibility of abrasions or other, potentially more serious injuries resulting from air bag deployment.

If you sell your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you inform the subsequent owner that the vehicle is equipped with SRS. Also refer them to the applicable section in the Operator's Manual.

Front air bags

⚠ Observe Safety notes, see page 45.



Driver's front air bag ① and passenger front air bag ② are designed to provide increased protection for the driver and passenger against the risk of injuries to the head and thorax.

Driver and passenger front air bags and knee bags are deployed

- in the event of certain frontal impacts
- if the system determines that air bag deployment can offer additional protection to that provided by the seat belt
- depending on whether the respective seat belt is in use
- independently of the other air bags in the vehicle

The front air bags in this vehicle have been designed to inflate in two stages. This allows the air bags to have different rates of inflation. The rate of inflation is based on the vehicle deceleration rate as assessed by the air bag control unit.

The passenger front air bag deployment is additionally influenced by the passenger's weight category as identified by the Occupant Classification System (OCS) (▷ page 49).

The lighter the passenger-side occupant, the higher the vehicle deceleration rate required for second stage inflation of the passenger front air bag.

The air bags will not deploy in impacts which do not exceed the system's preset deployment thresholds. You will then be protected by the fastened seat belts.

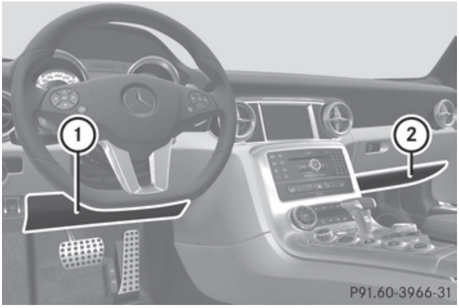
The front air bags will not deploy in the event of a rollover unless the vehicle's rate of longitudinal deceleration or acceleration exceeds the preset deployment threshold for the front air bags.

The passenger air bag will only be deployed if

- the system, based on OCS weight sensor readings, detects that the passenger seat is occupied
- the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the center console is not lit
- the impact exceeds a preset deployment threshold

Knee bags

The knee bags are designed to provide increased protection for the driver and passenger against the risk of injuries to the knees, thighs and lower legs.



Driver side knee bag ① is located on the driver side lower instrument panel. Passenger side knee bag ② is located on the passenger side below the glove box. They are designed to operate together with the front air bags in certain frontal impacts if the system determines that air bag deployment can offer additional protection to that provided by the seat belt. The knee bags operate best in conjunction with properly positioned and fastened seat belts.

Side impact air bags

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 45.**

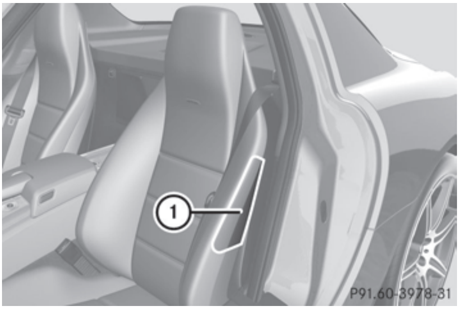
⚠ **Warning!**

Only use seat covers which have been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle model. Using other seat covers may interfere with or prevent the deployment of the side impact air bags. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for availability.

⚠ **Warning!**

The pressure sensors for side impact air bag control are located in the doors. Do not modify any components of the doors or door trim panels including, for example, the addition of door speakers.

Improper repair work on the doors or the modification or addition of components to the doors create a risk of rendering the side impact air bags inoperative or causing unintended air bag deployment. Work on the doors must therefore only be performed by qualified technicians. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.



Side impact air bags ① are designed to provide increased protection for the thorax but not the head, neck and arms of the driver or passenger.

Side impact air bags ① are deployed

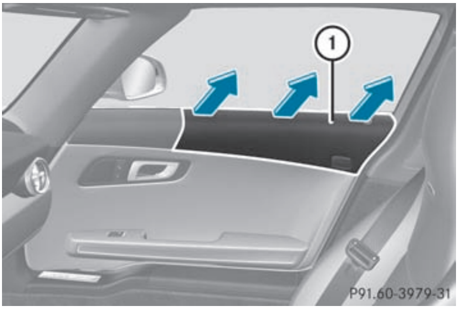
- on the impacted side of the vehicle
- in instances with a high rate of lateral vehicle deceleration or acceleration
- regardless of whether the seat belt on the impacted side of the vehicle is in use
- independently of the front air bags
- independently of the ETDs

Side impact air bags ① are not deployed in side impacts which do not exceed the system's deployment threshold.

Side impact air bags ① will not deploy in the event of a rollover unless the vehicle's rate of lateral deceleration or acceleration exceeds the preset deployment threshold for side impact air bags ①.

Head air bags

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 45.**



Head air bags ① are designed to provide increased protection for the head but not for the thorax and arms.

Head air bags ① are deployed

- on the impacted side of the vehicle during a side impact
- in instances with a high rate of lateral vehicle deceleration or acceleration
- if the system determines that air bag deployment can offer additional protection to that provided by the seat belt
- regardless of whether the seat belts are in use
- independently of the front air bags
- independently of the ETDs

Passenger head air bag ① will only deploy if the OCS senses that the passenger seat is occupied and the impact exceeds a preset deployment threshold or a rollover is detected.

Head air bags ① are not deployed in side impacts which do not exceed the system's deployment threshold.

Occupant Classification System

The Occupant Classification System (OCS) activates or deactivates the passenger front air bag and passenger-side knee bag automatically. The respective status is based on the classified occupant weight category determined by weight sensor readings from the passenger seat.

The system does not deactivate

- the passenger head air bag
- the passenger side impact air bag
- the Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs)

To be classified correctly, the passenger must sit

- with the seat belt properly fastened
- in a position that is as upright as possible with the back against the seat backrest
- with the feet on the floor

If the occupant's weight is transferred to another object in the vehicle (e.g. by leaning on armrests), the OCS may not be able to properly approximate the occupant's weight category.

If your seat, including the trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way, take the vehicle to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Only seat accessories approved by Mercedes-Benz may be used.

Both the driver and the passenger should always use the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp as an indication of whether or not the passenger is properly positioned.

⚠ Warning!

If the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp illuminates when an adult or someone larger than a small individual is in the passenger seat, have the passenger reposition himself or herself in the seat until the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp goes out.

In the event of a collision, the air bag control unit will not allow passenger front air bag deployment when the OCS has classified the passenger seat occupant as weighting as much as or less than a typical 12-month-old child in a standard child restraint or if the passenger seat is classified as being empty.

When the OCS senses that the passenger seat occupant is classified as being up to or less than the weight of a typical 12-month-old child in a standard child restraint, the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate when the engine is started and remain illuminated, indicating that the passenger front air bag is deactivated.

When the OCS senses that the passenger seat is classified as being empty, the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate when the engine is started and remain illuminated, indicating that the passenger front air bag is deactivated.

When the OCS senses that the passenger seat occupant is classified as being heavier than the weight of a typical 12-month-old child seated in a standard child restraint or as being a small individual (such as a young teenager or a small adult), the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds when the engine is started and then, depending on occupant weight sensor readings from the seat, remain illuminated or go out. With the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp illuminated, the passenger front air bag is deactivated. With the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp out, the passenger front air bag is activated.

When the OCS senses that the passenger seat occupant is classified as an adult or someone larger than a small individual, the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds when the engine is started and then goes out, indicating that the passenger front air bag is activated.

If the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated, the passenger front air bag is deactivated and will not be deployed.

If the ⊠ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is not illuminated, the passenger front air bag is activated and will be deployed

- in the event of certain frontal impacts
- if impact exceeds a preset deployment threshold
- independently of other air bags in the vehicle

If the passenger front air bag is deployed, the rate of inflation will be influenced by

- the rate of relevant vehicle deceleration as assessed by the air bag control unit
- the passenger's weight category as identified by the OCS

For more information on air bag display messages in the multifunction display, see (▷ page 365).

⚠ Warning!

Children 12 years old and under must be seated and properly secured in an appropriate infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

The infant or child restraint must be properly secured with the vehicle's seat belt fully in accordance with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Occupants, especially children, should always sit as upright as possible, wear the seat belt properly and use an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

Children can be killed or seriously injured by an inflating air bag. Note the following important information:

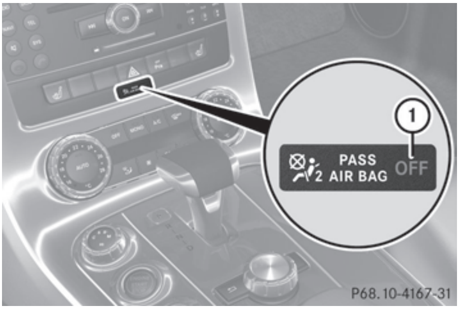
- Your vehicle is equipped with air bag technology designed to deactivate the passenger front air bag in your vehicle when the system senses the weight of a typical 12-month-old child or less along with the weight of a standard appropriate child restraint on the passenger seat.
- A child in a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat will be seriously injured or even killed if the passenger front air bag inflates in a collision which could occur under some circumstances, even with the air bag technology installed in your vehicle.
- If you install a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat, make sure the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated, indicating that the passenger front air bag is deactivated. Should the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp not illuminate or go out while the restraint is installed, please check installation. Periodically check the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp while driving to make sure the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated. If the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp goes out or remains out, do not transport a child on the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

  A child in a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat will be seriously injured or even killed if the passenger front air bag inflates.
- If you place a child in a forward-facing child restraint on the passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible, use the proper child restraint recommended for the age, size and weight of the child, and secure child restraint with the vehicle's seat belt according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. For children larger than the typical 12-month-old child, the passenger front air bag may or may not be activated.

Deployment of the driver front air bag does not mean that the passenger front air bag also should have deployed.

The OCS may have determined

- that the seat was empty or occupied by the weight up to or less than that of a typical 12-month-old child seated in a standard child restraint – both of which are instances where the system suppresses deployment of the passenger front air bag even though the impact met the criteria and was of sufficient severity to deploy the driver front air bag
- that the seat was occupied by a small individual (such as a young teenager or a small adult) or a child who weighs more than the weight of a typical 12-month-old child in a standard child restraint – both of which are instances where the system may suppress deployment of the passenger front air bag even though the impact met the criteria and was of sufficient severity to deploy the driver front air bag



P68.10-4167-31

⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp ① will be illuminated, except with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch or with the starter switch in position **0**.

⚠ Warning!

If the red SRS indicator lamp in the instrument cluster and the ⊗2 PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp are lit at the same time, there is a malfunction in the OCS. The passenger front air bag will be deactivated in this case. Have the system checked by qualified

▷▷

technicians as soon as possible. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Only have the seat repaired or replaced at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

In order to ensure proper operation of the air bag system and OCS:

- Sit with the seat belt properly fastened in a position that is as upright as possible with your back against the seat backrest.
- While seated, an occupant should not position him/herself in such a way as to cause the occupant's weight to be lifted from the seat bottom as this may result in the OCS being unable to correctly approximate the occupant's weight category.
- Read and observe all warnings in this chapter.

OCS Self-test

After turning the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **1** or **2** or pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once or twice, the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp illuminates. If an adult occupant is properly sitting on the passenger seat and the system classifies the occupant as an adult, the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate and go out after approximately 6 seconds.

If the seat is not occupied and the system classifies the passenger seat as being empty, the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate and not go out.

⚠ **Warning!**

If the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp does not illuminate, the system is not functioning. You must contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center before seating any child on the passenger seat.

For more information, see the "Practical hints" section (▷ page 49).

⚠ **Warning!**

Never place anything between seat cushion and child seat (e.g. pillow), since it reduces the effectiveness of the OCS. The bottom and back of the child seat must make full contact with the passenger seat cushion and backrest.

If necessary, adjust the tilt of the passenger seat backrest.

An incorrectly mounted child seat could cause injuries to the child in case of an accident, instead of increasing protection for the child.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for installation of child seats.

Seat belts

Safety notes

The use of seat belts and infant and child restraint systems is required by law in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, the U.S. territories and all Canadian provinces.

Even where this is not the case, all vehicle occupants should have their seat belts fastened whenever the vehicle is in motion.

ℹ See "Children in the vehicle" (▷ page 57) for information on

- infants and children traveling with you in the vehicle
- restraint systems for infants and children

⚠ **Warning!**

Always fasten your seat belt before driving off. Always make sure your passenger is properly restrained. You and your passenger should always wear seat belts.

Failure to wear and properly fasten and position your seat belt greatly increases your risk of injuries and their likely severity in an accident.

If you are ever in an accident, your injuries can be considerably more severe without your seat belt properly buckled. Without your seat belt buckled, you are much more likely to hit the interior of the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed.

In the same crash, the possibility of injury or death is lessened if you are properly wearing your seat belt. The air bags can only protect as intended if the occupants are properly wearing their seat belts.

⚠ **Warning!**

Never ride in a moving vehicle with the seat backrest in an excessively reclined position as this can be dangerous. You could slide under the seat belt in a collision. If you slide under it, the seat belt would apply force at the abdomen or neck. That could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The seat backrest and seat belt provide the best restraint when the wearer is in a position that is as upright as possible and the seat belt is properly positioned on the body.

⚠ **Warning!**

Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seat belts available. Make sure everyone riding in the vehicle is correctly restrained with a separate seat belt. Never use a seat belt for more than one person at a time.

⚠ **Warning!**

Damaged seat belts or seat belts that have been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced. Also, the seat belt anchoring points must be checked.

Only use seat belts which have been approved by Mercedes-Benz.

Do not make any modifications to the seat belts. This can lead to unintended activation of the ETDs or to their failure to activate when necessary.

Do not bleach or dye seat belts as this may severely weaken them. In a crash they may not be able to provide adequate protection.

Have all work carried out only by qualified technicians. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Proper use of seat belts

⚠ **Warning!**

USE SEAT BELTS PROPERLY

- Seat belts can only protect when used properly. Never wear seat belts in any other way than as described in this section, as that could result in serious injuries in case of an accident.
- Each occupant should wear their seat belt at all times, because seat belts help reduce the likelihood of and potential severity of injuries in accidents, including rollovers. The integrated restraint system includes SRS (driver front air bag, knee bags, passenger front air bag, side impact air bags, head air bags), Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs) and seat belt force limiters.

  The system is designed to enhance the protection offered to properly belted occupants in certain frontal (front air bags, knee bags and ETDs) and side (side impact air bags, head air bags and ETDs) impacts which exceed preset deployment thresholds.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm, against your neck or off your shoulder. In a frontal crash, your body would move too far forward. That would increase the chance of head and neck injuries. The seat belt would also apply too much force to the ribs or abdomen, which could severely injure internal organs such as your liver or spleen.

  Adjust the seat belt so that the shoulder section is located as close as possible to the middle of the shoulder. It should not touch the neck. Never pass the shoulder portion of the seat belt under your arm.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips and not across the abdomen. If the lap belt is positioned across your abdomen, it could cause serious injuries in a crash.

▷▷

- Never wear seat belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eyeglasses, pens, keys etc., as these might cause injuries.
- Make sure the seat belt is always fitted snugly. Take special care of this when wearing loose clothing.
- Never use a seat belt for more than one person at a time. Do not fasten a seat belt around a person and another person or other objects at the same time.
- Seat belts should not be worn twisted. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the seat belt to distribute impact forces. The twisted seat belt against your body could cause injuries.
- Pregnant women should also always use a lap/shoulder belt. The lap belt portion should be positioned as low as possible on the hips to avoid any possible pressure on the abdomen.
- Place the seat backrest in a position that is as upright as possible.
- Check your seat belt during travel to make sure it is properly positioned.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel, dashboard, or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- When using a seat belt to secure infant restraints, toddler restraints, or children in booster seats, always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not pass seat belts over sharp edges. They could tear.

Do not allow the seat belt to get caught in the door or in the seat adjustment mechanism. This could damage the seat belt.

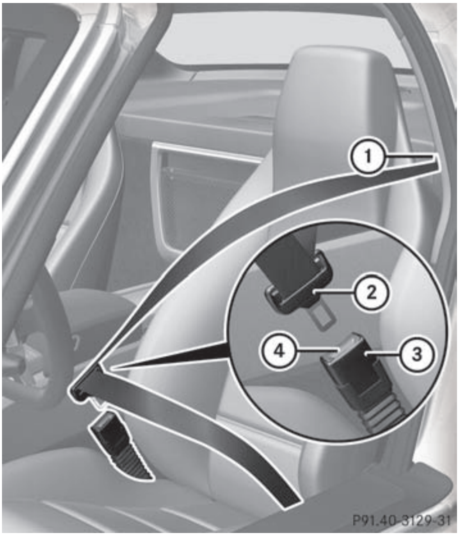
Never attempt to make modifications to seat belts. This could impair the effectiveness of the seat belts.

Fastening the seat belts

⚠ **Warning!**

Children 12 years old and under must be seated and properly secured in an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child. For additional information, see section "Children in the vehicle".

A child's risk of serious or fatal injuries is significantly increased if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle and/or the child is not properly secured in the child restraint.



▶ With a smooth motion, pull the seat belt out of seat belt outlet ①.

▶ Place the shoulder portion of the seat belt across the top of your shoulder and the lap portion across your hips.

▶ Push latch plate ② into buckle ③ until it clicks.

▶ If necessary, tighten the lap portion to a snug fit by pulling shoulder portion up.

The passenger lap/shoulder belt has a special seat belt retractor to secure child restraints properly. For more information on special seat belt retractors, see “Infant and child restraint systems” (▷ page 58).

To release the seat belt with seat belt release button ④, see (▷ page 55).

Releasing the seat belts

▶ Press seat belt release button ④ (▷ page 54).
Allow the retractor to completely rewind the seat belt by guiding latch plate ② (▷ page 54).

! Make sure the seat belt retracts completely. Otherwise the seat belt and/or latch plate could get caught or pinched in the door or in the seat mechanism. This can damage the seat belt and impair its effectiveness, and/or cause damage to the door and/or door trim panel. Such damage is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Damaged seat belts must be replaced. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Enhanced seat belt reminder system

When the engine is started, the seat belt telltale will always illuminate for 6 seconds to remind you and your passenger to fasten your seat belts.

If the driver’s seat belt is not fastened when the engine is started, an additional warning chime will sound. The warning chime goes out after approximately 6 seconds or once the driver’s seat belt is fastened.

If after these 6 seconds the driver’s or the passenger’s seat belt (with the passenger seat occupied) is not fastened with both doors closed,

- the seat belt telltale remains illuminated for as long as either the driver’s or passenger’s seat belt is not fastened.
- and if the vehicle speed once exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h), the seat belt telltale starts flashing and a warning chime sounds with increasing intensity for a maximum of 60 seconds or until the driver’s and passenger’s seat belt are fastened.

  If you and/or your passenger release the seat belt during driving, the seat belt telltale starts flashing and the warning chime sounds as described before.

  If the driver’s or the passenger’s seat belt remains unfastened after 60 seconds, the warning chime stops sounding, the seat belt telltale stops flashing but continues to be illuminated.

  After a vehicle standstill, the warning chime is reactivated and the seat belt telltale is flashing again if the vehicle speed once exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h).

The seat belt telltale will only go out if both the driver’s and the passenger’s seat belt (with the passenger seat occupied) are fastened, or the vehicle is standing still and a door is opened.

For more information, see “Practical hints” (▷ page 35).

Emergency Tensioning Device (ETD), seat belt force limiter

The seat belts are equipped with ETDs and seat belt force limiters.

The ETDs are designed to activate in the following cases:

- in frontal or rear-end impacts exceeding the system’s preset deployment threshold
- in side impacts exceeding the system’s preset deployment threshold on the far side of the impact
- in certain vehicle rollovers
- if the restraint systems are operational and functioning correctly, see “SRS indicator lamp” (▷ page 44)

The ETDs will only activate if the seat belts are fastened (latch plate properly inserted into buckle).

In an impact, the ETDs remove slack from the seat belts in such a way that the seat belts fit more snugly against the body. Seat belt force limiters, when activated, are employed to help reduce the peak force exerted by the seat belts on occupants during a crash.

ℹ The ETDs do not correct an incorrect seat position or incorrectly worn seat belts.

The ETDs do not pull occupants back toward the seat backrest.

⚠ **Warning!**

Pyrotechnic ETDs that were activated must be replaced.

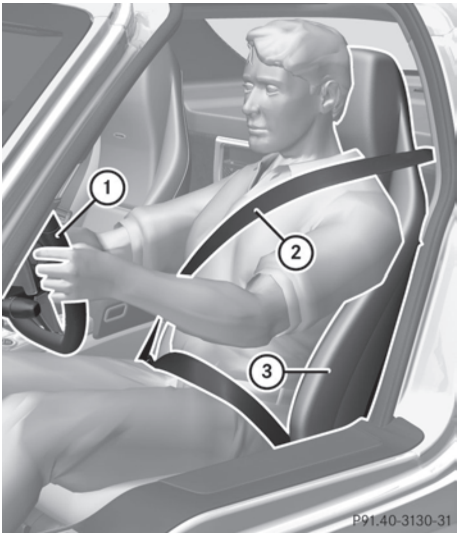
For your safety, when disposing of the pyrotechnic ETDs always follow our safety instructions. These are available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Correct driver seat adjustment

⚠ **Warning!**

In order to avoid possible loss of vehicle control the following must be done before the vehicle is put into motion:

- seat adjustment
- steering wheel adjustment
- rear view mirror adjustment
- fastening of seat belts



Steering wheel

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 245.**

▶ Position steering wheel ① properly.

Make sure:

- You can reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent at the elbows.
- You can move your legs freely.
- All displays (including malfunction and indicator lamps) on the instrument cluster are clearly visible.

Seat belt

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 52.**

▶ Fasten and position your seat belt ② correctly (▷ page 54).

Make sure:

- The seat belt is always fitted snugly.
- Adjust the seat belt so that the shoulder section is located as close as possible to the middle of the shoulder.
- Place the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips.

Seat

⚠ Observe Safety notes, see page 243.

- ▶ Position seat ③ properly. See (▷ page 244) for seat adjustment.

Observe the following points:

- Always be in a properly seated position.
- The position should be as far rearward from the front air bag in the steering wheel as possible, while still permitting proper operation of vehicle controls.
- Adjust the seat to a comfortable seating position that still allows you to reach the accelerator/brake pedal safely.
- The seat must be adjusted so that you can correctly fasten and position your seat belt.
- The seat backrest must be in a position that is as nearly upright as possible.
- Adjust the seat cushion so that the front edge of the seat cushion lightly supports your legs.
- Never place hands under the seat or near any moving parts while the seat is being adjusted.

Exiting the vehicle in an emergency

If the vehicle lies on the roof after an accident, the locks in the door hinges of the gullwing doors are opened pyrotechnically. You will hear a bang when this happens. Once the locks were opened, the doors are pushed outward. The door locks are released at the same time. The SRS warning lamp comes on.

ℹ The hinge locks will be opened pyrotechnically only when the vehicle has come to rest on its roof and does not move anymore.

The doors can then be moved by pulling on the door handle from the inside or outside.

Children in the vehicle

Safety notes

If an infant or child is traveling with you in the vehicle:

- ▶ Secure the child using an infant or child restraint appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- ▶ Make sure the infant or child is properly secured at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ Warning!

When leaving the vehicle, always remove the SmartKey from the starter switch. Always take the SmartKey with you and lock the vehicle. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, even if they are secured in a child restraint system, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. A child's unsupervised access to a vehicle could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury. The children could

- injure themselves on parts of the vehicle
- be seriously or fatally injured through excessive exposure to extreme heat or cold
- injure themselves or cause an accident with vehicle equipment that can be operated even if the SmartKey is removed from the starter switch or removed from the vehicle, such as seat adjustment, steering wheel adjustment, or the memory function

If children open a door, they could injure other persons or get out of the vehicle and injure themselves or be injured by following traffic.

Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight. The child restraint system's metal parts, for example, could become very hot, and the child could be burned by these parts.

⚠ Warning!

Do not carry heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment unless they are firmly secured in place.

▷▷

Unsecured or improperly positioned cargo increases a child's risk of injury in the event of

- strong braking maneuvers
- sudden changes of direction
- an accident

Infant and child restraint systems

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

We recommend all infants and children be properly restrained at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

The passenger lap/shoulder belt has a special seat belt retractor for secure fastening of child restraints.

To fasten a child restraint, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for mounting.

To activate the special seat belt retractor:

▶ Pull the shoulder belt out completely and let it retract.

During seat belt retraction, a ratcheting sound can be heard to indicate that the special seat belt retractor is activated.
The seat belt is now locked.

▶ Push down on child restraint to take up any slack.

To deactivate the special seat belt retractor:

▶ Release the seat belt buckle and let the seat belt retract completely.
The seat belt can then again be used in the usual manner.

⚠ **Warning!**

Never release the seat belt buckle while the vehicle is in motion, since the special seat belt retractor will be deactivated.

The use of infant or child restraints is required by law in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, the U.S. territories and all Canadian provinces.

Infants and small children should be seated in an appropriate infant or child restraint system. They must be properly secured by a lap/shoulder belt in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the child restraint. All infant or child restraint systems must comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards 213 and 225 and Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards 213 and 210.2.

A statement by the child restraint manufacturer of compliance with these standards can be found on the instruction label on the restraint and in the instruction manual provided with the restraint.

When using any infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat, make sure to carefully read and follow all manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.

Please read and observe warning labels affixed to the inside of the vehicle and to infant or child restraints.

⚠ **Warning!**

Children 12 years old and under must be seated and properly secured in an appropriate infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

The infant or child restraint must be properly secured with the vehicle's seat belt fully in accordance with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Occupants, especially children, should always sit as upright as possible, wear the seat belt properly and use an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child.

Children can be killed or seriously injured by an inflating air bag. Note the following important information:

- Your vehicle is equipped with air bag technology designed to deactivate the passenger front air bag in your vehicle when the system senses the weight of a typical 12-month-old child or less along with the weight of a standard appropriate child restraint on the passenger seat.

- A child in a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat will be seriously injured or even killed if the passenger front air bag inflates in a collision which could occur under some circumstances, even with the air bag technology installed in your vehicle.
- If you install a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat, make sure the ⊗ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated, indicating that the passenger front air bag is deactivated. Should the ⊗ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp not illuminate or go out while the restraint is installed, please check installation. Periodically check the ⊗ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp while driving to make sure the ⊗ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated. If the ⊗ PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp goes out or remains out, do not transport a child on the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

  A child in a rear-facing child restraint on the passenger seat will be seriously injured or even killed if the passenger front air bag inflates.
- If you place a child in a forward-facing child restraint on the passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible, use the proper child restraint recommended for the age, size and weight of the child, and secure child restraint with the vehicle's seat belt according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. For children larger than the typical 12-month-old child, the passenger front air bag may or may not be activated.

⚠ Warning!

Infants and small children should never share a seat belt with another occupant. During an accident, they could be crushed between the occupant and seat belt.

A child's risk of serious or fatal injuries is significantly increased if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle and/or the child is not properly secured in the child restraint.

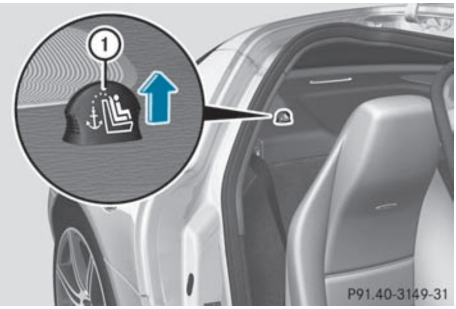
Children too big for a toddler restraint must ride in seats using regular seat belts. Position shoulder belt across chest and shoulder, not face or neck. A booster seat may be necessary to achieve proper seat belt positioning for children over 41 lb (18 kg) until they reach a height where a lap/shoulder belt fits properly without a booster.

When the child restraint is not in use, remove it from the vehicle or secure it with the seat belt to prevent the child restraint from becoming a projectile in the event of an accident.

Installation of infant and child restraint systems

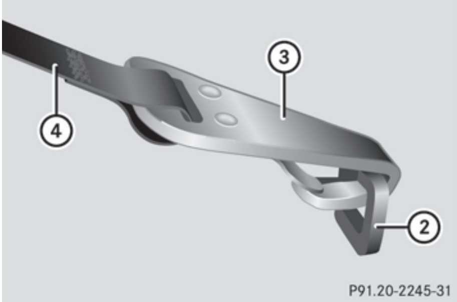
⚠ Observe Safety notes, see page 57.

The tether anchorage is located behind the passenger seat.



▶ To have better access to the anchorage ring, move the passenger seat forward.

▶ Remove cover ① in direction of the arrow from anchorage ring ②.



- ▶ Guide top tether strap ④ according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
- ▶ Securely fasten hook ③, which is part of top tether strap ④, to anchorage ring ②.

Make sure

- hook ③ is attached to anchorage ring ② beyond the safety catch, as illustrated
- top tether strap ④ is not twisted

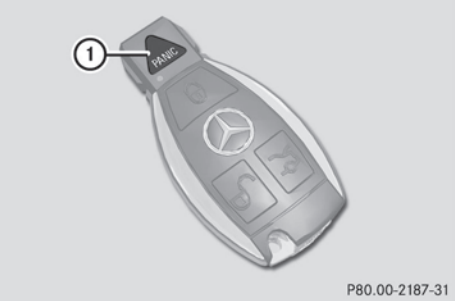
Once hook ③ is attached, the child restraint itself can be secured.

- ▶ Install the child restraint system and tighten top tether strap ④ according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.

After removing the child restraint system and top tether strap ④:

- ▶ Reinstall anchorage ring cover ①.

Panic alarm



- ▶ **Activating:** Press and hold PANIC button ① for at least 1 second.
  An audible alarm and flashing exterior lamps will operate.
- ▶ **Deactivating:** Press PANIC button ① again.

or

- ▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.
  The SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO must be inside the vehicle.

or

- ▶ Insert the SmartKey into the starter switch.

ℹ USA only:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

The product label with FCC ID and IC certification number can be found in the battery case.

ℹ Canada only:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

The product label with FCC ID and IC certification number can be found in the battery case.

Driving safety systems

Introduction

This section contains information about the following driving safety systems:

- ABS (**A**ntilock **B**rake **S**ystem)
- Adaptive Brake
- BAS (**B**rake **A**ssist **S**ystem)
- EBP (**E**lectronic **B**rake **P**roportioning)
- ESC (**E**lectronic **S**tability **C**ontrol)
- Trunk Wing

Safety notes

⚠ **Warning!**

The following factors increase the risk of accidents:

- Excessive speed, especially in turns
- Wet and slippery road surfaces
- Following another vehicle too closely

The driving safety systems described in this section cannot reduce these risks or prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle. They cannot increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.

Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.

The capabilities of a vehicle equipped with the driving safety systems described in this section must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

Always adjust your driving style to the prevailing road and weather conditions and keep a safe distance from other road users and objects on the street.

If a driving system malfunctions, other driving safety systems may also switch off. Observe indicator and warning lamps that may come on as well as messages in the multifunction display that may appear.

ℹ In winter operation, the maximum effectiveness of most of the driving systems described in this section is only achieved with winter tires, or snow chains as required.

ABS

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not pump the brake pedal. Use firm, steady brake pedal pressure instead. Pumping the brake pedal defeats the purpose of the ABS and significantly reduces braking effectiveness.

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) regulates the brake pressure so that the wheels do not lock during braking. This allows you to maintain the ability to steer your vehicle.

The ABS is functional above a speed of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) independent of road surface conditions.

On slippery road surfaces, the ABS will respond even to light brake pressure.

The ABS indicator lamp (ABS) in the instrument cluster comes on when you switch on the ignition. It goes out when the engine is running.

Braking

At the instant one of the wheels is about to lock up, a slight pulsation can be felt in the brake pedal. The pulsation indicates that the ABS is in the regulating mode.

▶ Keep firm and steady pressure on the brake pedal while you feel the pulsation.

Continuous, steady brake pedal pressure yields the advantages provided by the ABS, namely braking power and the ability to steer the vehicle.

The pulsating brake pedal can be an indication of hazardous road conditions and functions as a reminder to take extra care while driving.

Emergency brake maneuver

- ▶ Keep continuous full pressure on the brake pedal.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> If the ABS malfunctions, other driving safety systems such as the BAS or the ESC are also switched off. Observe indicator and warning lamps that may come on as well as messages in the multifunction display that may appear.
>
> If the ABS malfunctions, the wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability and extending the braking distance.

BAS

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

The Brake Assist System (BAS) operates in emergency situations. If you apply the brakes very quickly, the BAS provides full brake boost automatically, thereby potentially reducing the braking distance.

- ▶ Apply continuous full braking pressure until the emergency braking situation is over. The ABS will prevent the wheels from locking.

When you release the brake pedal, the brakes function again as normal. The BAS is then deactivated.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> If the BAS malfunctions, the brake system still functions, but without the additional brake boost available that the BAS would normally provide in an emergency braking maneuver. Therefore, the braking distance may increase.

ESC

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operational as soon as the engine is running. It monitors the vehicle's traction (force of adhesive friction between the tires and the road surface) and handling.

The ESC recognizes that the vehicle deviates from the direction of travel as intended by the driver. By applying brakes to individual wheels and by limiting the engine output, the ESC works to stabilize the vehicle. The ESC is especially useful while driving off and on wet or slippery road surfaces. The ESC also stabilizes the vehicle during braking and steering maneuvers.

The ESC warning lamp in the instrument cluster comes on when you switch on the ignition. It goes out when the engine is running.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> Never switch off the ESC when you see the ESC warning lamp flashing in the instrument cluster. In this case proceed as follows:
>
> - When driving off, apply as little throttle as possible.
> - While driving, ease up on the accelerator pedal.
> - Adapt your speed and driving style to the prevailing road conditions.
>
> Failure to observe these guidelines could cause the vehicle to skid. The ESC cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speed.

! Because the ESC operates automatically, the engine and ignition must be shut off (KEYLESS-GO start/stop button in position **0** or **1**, or SmartKey in starter switch position **0** or **1**) when the electronic parking brake is being tested on a brake test dynamometer or when the vehicle is being towed with the rear axle raised.

Active braking action through the ESC may otherwise seriously damage the brake system which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! The ESC will only function properly if you use wheels of the recommended tire size as specified in the "Technical data" section of this Operator's Manual.

ℹ The cruise control switches off automatically when the ESC engages.

Electronic Traction System (ETS)

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

The ETS (Electronic Traction System) is a component of the ESC. The ETS improves the vehicle's ability to utilize available traction, especially under slippery road conditions by applying the brakes to a spinning wheel.

When you switch off the ESC, the ETS is still enabled.

Switching ESC SPORT on or off

⚠ **Warning!**

ESC SPORT should not be switched on during normal driving.

Switching ESC SPORT on will result in the following:

- no restriction to engine torque
- system-supported traction control is limited

ESC SPORT is designed for driving on closed tracks when the vehicle's natural oversteer and understeer characteristics are desired and requires a highly skilled and experienced driver able to handle these critical driving situations.

You could lose control of your vehicle and cause an accident.

Please be aware of these limits when you switch on ESC SPORT.

Do not switch on ESC SPORT when a spare wheel is mounted.

To improve the vehicle's traction, switch on ESC SPORT. This allows the drive wheels to spin and thus cut into surfaces for better grip, for example

- when driving with snow chains
- in deep snow
- in sand or gravel

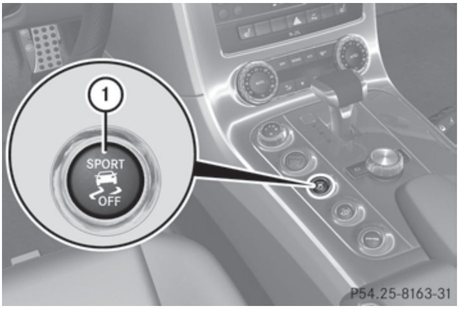
⚠ **Warning!**

Switch off ESC SPORT and switch on the ESC immediately if the aforementioned circumstances do not apply anymore. Otherwise ESC SPORT will only stabilize the vehicle to a limited extent when it is starting to skid or a wheel is spinning.

When you switch on ESC SPORT

- the ESC stabilizes the vehicle only to a limited extent
- the engine output is limited, but only to the extent that allows the drive wheels to spin and thus cut into surfaces for better grip
- the ETS will still apply the brakes to a spinning wheel
- the ESC continues to operate when you are braking hard
- the cruise control cannot be activated
- the cruise control switches off if activated

ℹ When ESC SPORT is switched on and one or more drive wheels are spinning, the ESC warning lamp in the instrument cluster flashes. However, the ESC will then stabilize the vehicle only to a limited extent.



▶ **Switching on:** With the engine running, press ESC switch ① briefly.
ESC SPORT warning lamp SPORT in the instrument cluster comes on. The message `ESC-SPORT` appears in the multifunction display.

▶ **Switching off:** With the engine running, press ESC switch ① briefly.
ESC SPORT warning lamp SPORT in the instrument cluster goes out.

ESC SPORT switches off automatically when you turn off the engine. When starting the engine, the ESC is activated automatically.

Switching the ESC off or on

⚠ **Warning!**

The ESC should not be switched off during normal driving.

Disabling of the system will result in the following:

- no restriction to engine torque
- loss of system-supported traction control

“ESC OFF” is designed for driving on closed tracks when the vehicle’s natural oversteer and understeer characteristics are desired and requires a highly skilled and experienced driver able to handle these critical driving situations.

You could lose control of your vehicle and cause an accident.

Please be aware of these limits when you switch off the ESC.

To improve the vehicle’s traction, switch off the ESC. This allows the drive wheels to spin and thus cut into surfaces for better grip, for example

- when driving with snow chains
- in deep snow
- in sand or gravel

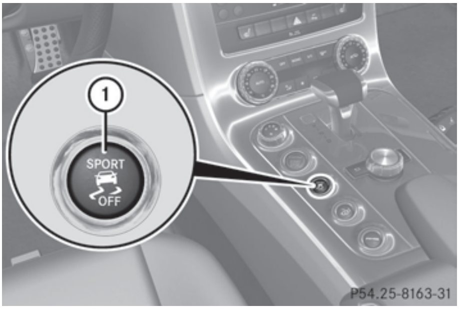
⚠ **Warning!**

Switch on the ESC immediately if the aforementioned circumstances do not apply anymore. Otherwise the ESC will not stabilize the vehicle when it is starting to skid or a wheel is spinning.

When you switch off the ESC,

- the ESC will not stabilize the vehicle
- the engine output is not limited, which allows the drive wheels to spin and thus cut into surfaces for better grip
- the ETS will still apply the brakes to a spinning wheel
- the ESC continues to operate when you are braking hard
- the cruise control cannot be activated
- the cruise control switches off if activated

ℹ When ESC is switched off and one or more drive wheels are spinning, the ESC warning lamp ⊡ in the instrument cluster does not flash. The ESC will not stabilize the vehicle.



▶ **Switching off:** With the engine running, press ESC switch ① until the ESC OFF

warning lamp OFF in the instrument cluster comes on.
The message ESC-OFF appears in the multifunction display.

⚠ **Warning!**

When the ESC OFF warning lamp OFF is on, the ESC is switched off.

When the ESC warning lamp and the ESC OFF warning lamp OFF are on continuously, the ESC is not operational due to a malfunction.

When the ESC is switched off or not operational, vehicle stability in standard driving maneuvers is reduced.

Adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions and to the non-operating status of the ESC.

! Avoid spinning of a drive wheel for an extended period with the ESC switched off. This may cause serious damage to the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

▶ **Switching on:** With the engine running, press ESC switch ① briefly.
The ESC OFF warning lamp OFF in the instrument cluster goes out. The message ESC-ON appears in the multifunction display.

EBP

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

The Electronic Brake Proportioning (EBP) enhances braking effectiveness by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking effort in straight-line braking without a loss of vehicle stability.

⚠ **Warning!**

If the EBD malfunctions, the brake system will still function with full brake boost. However, the rear wheels could lock up during emergency braking situations, for example.

You could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.

Adapt your driving style to the changed driving characteristics.

Adaptive Brake

Adaptive Brake provides a high level of braking safety as well as increased braking comfort. Adaptive Brake takes driver and vehicle characteristics into consideration, thus achieving an optimal braking effect.

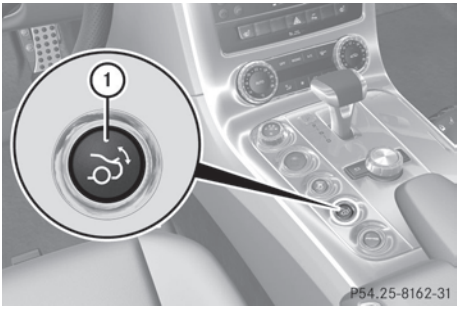
In addition, Adaptive Brake provides the hill-start assist system (▷ page 293).

For more information on the brake system, see (▷ page 349).

Trunk Wing

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 61.**

The Trunk Wing enhances the vehicle's driving stability. It adapts the aerodynamics of the vehicle to the driving conditions according to the speed.



Trunk Wing switch ① should be used for cleaning only, see "Trunk Wing" (▷ page 360). It is not needed for Trunk Wing operation.

The Trunk Wing extends at a vehicle speed of above 75 mph (120 km/h) automatically.

Trunk Wing switch ① flashes for as long as the Trunk Wing extends. It remains illuminated in red when the Trunk Wing is fully extended.

The Trunk Wing remains extended as long as the vehicle speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Once the vehicle speed is below 50 mph (80 km/h), the Trunk Wing retracts automatically. Trunk Wing switch ① flashes for as long as the Trunk Wing retracts. It goes out when the Trunk Wing is fully retracted.

Anti-theft systems

Immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized persons from starting your vehicle.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the SmartKey with you and lock the vehicle. The engine can be started by anyone with a valid SmartKey that is left inside the vehicle.

Activating

- **With KEYLESS-GO:** Turn off the engine and open the driver's door.
- **With SmartKey:** Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

Deactivating

- Switch on the ignition.

ℹ Starting the engine will also deactivate the immobilizer.

In the event that the engine cannot be started (yet the vehicle's battery is charged), the system is not operational. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (in the USA) or 1-800-387-0100 (in Canada).

Anti-theft alarm system

Once the alarm system has been armed, a visual and audible alarm is triggered when someone opens

- a door
- the trunk
- the hood

The alarm will stay on even if the activating element, a door, for example, is closed immediately.

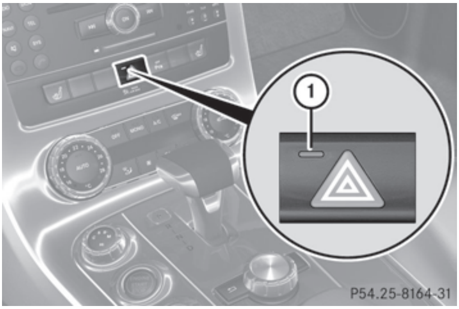
The alarm system will also be triggered when

- the vehicle is opened with the mechanical key
- a door is opened from the inside
- the trunk is opened with the emergency release button

To cancel the alarm after it has been triggered, see "Canceling the alarm" (▷ page 67).

ℹ If the alarm stays on for more than 30 seconds, the mbrace system initiates a call to the Customer Assistance Center automatically. The mbrace system will initiate the call provided that

- you have subscribed to the mbrace service
- the mbrace service has been activated properly
- the necessary mobile phone, power supply and GPS coverage are available



- ▶ **Arming:** Lock the vehicle with the SmartKey.
  The turn signal lamps flash three times and an acoustic warning sounds three times to indicate that the vehicle is locked. Indicator lamp ① flashes to indicate that the alarm system is armed.

ℹ If the turn signal lamps do not flash three times and the acoustic warning does not sound three times, a door or the trunk may not be properly closed.

Close the respective element.

- ▶ **Disarming:** Unlock the vehicle with the SmartKey.
  The turn signal lamps flash once and an acoustic warning sounds once to indicate that the alarm system is disarmed.

ℹ Unless you open a door or the trunk within approximately 40 seconds after unlocking the vehicle:

- The vehicle will be locked again.
- The anti-theft alarm system will be rearmed.

Canceling the alarm

To cancel the alarm, do one of the following:

- ▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.

The SmartKey must be inside the vehicle.

or

- ▶ Press button 🔓 or 🔒 on the SmartKey.

or

- ▶ Insert the SmartKey into the starter switch.

Introduction 70
At a glance 72
System Settings 92
Navigation (Introduction) 99
Navigation (Destination Input) 114
Navigation (POI Input) 126
Navigation (Route Guidance) 132
Navigation (Traffic Messages) 139
Navigation (Destination Memory) ... 143
Navigation (Last Destinations) 147
Telephone 147
Audio 168
Video 198
Voice Control 206

Introduction

Where to Find it

This operator's manual has been designed to help you use your COMAND control unit in all situations. Since not all models have the same standard equipment, your COMAND system equipment may deviate from some descriptions and illustrations.

At a Glance

Here you will find an overview of the components of COMAND. Then you will find examples illustrating how to operate COMAND and information on the basic functions. If you are operating a COMAND for the first time or have rented the vehicle, you should first read this chapter.

System Settings

Here you will find all the important information regarding the system settings of the COMAND.

Navigation

Here you will find detailed information regarding the following topics:

- Setting options for the map display and the route calculation
- Destination input
- Search & Send
- POI input
- Route guidance
- Traffic information
- Destination memory

Telephone

The telephone functions are described here. You will also find information on the address book.

Audio

Here you will find all information regarding the audio function and its Radio, SatRadio, CD-audio/DVD audio/MP3, Music Register, Media Interface and Audio Aux modes.

Video

Here you will find all information regarding the video system.

Voice Control

Here you will find information about operating several COMAND functions via Voice Control.

Indexes

Content and keyword indexes are intended to help you find information quickly.

Symbols

Trademarks®:

- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG Inc.
- Microsoft® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries
- SIRIUS and related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- Windows media® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries

You will find the following symbols in these operating instructions:

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> Warning notices draw your attention to hazards that may endanger your health or life, or the health or life of others.

! Highlights hazards that may result in damage to your COMAND.

i Helpful hints or further information you may find useful.

▶	This symbol points to instructions for you to follow. A number of these symbols appearing in succession indicates a multiple-step procedure.
▷▷	The continuation symbol marks an interrupted procedure which will be continued on the next page.
(▷ page 11)	This symbol tells you where to look for further information on this subject.
`Display`	Messages, menu items or soft key names appearing in the COMAND color display are printed in the style shown here.

Operating Safety

⚠ **Warning**

Any alterations of electronic components or software can cause malfunctions.

Radio, satellite radio, amplifier, DVD changer, navigation module, telephone and Voice Control systems are interconnected. Therefore, if one of the components is not operational, or has not been removed/ replaced properly, the function of other components could be impaired.

Such conditions might seriously impair the operating safety of your vehicle.

We recommend to have any service work on electronic components carried out by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

⚠ **Warning**

In order to avoid distraction which could lead to an accident, the driver should enter system settings while the vehicle is at a standstill, and operate the system only when permitted by road, weather and traffic conditions.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your car covers a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

COMAND supplies you with information to help you select your route more easily and guide you conveniently and safely to your destination. For safety reasons, we encourage the driver to stop the vehicle in a safe place before answering or placing a call, or consulting the COMAND screen to read navigational maps, instructions, or downloaded information.

⚠ **Warning**

While the navigation system provides directional assistance, the driver must remain focused on safe driving behavior, especially attention to traffic and street signs, and should utilize the system’s audio cues while driving.

The navigation system does not supply any information on stop signs, yield signs, traffic regulations or traffic safety rules. Their observance always remains in the driver’s personal responsibility. DVD maps do not cover all areas nor all routes within an area.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ **Warning**

Change or modification not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

! Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

⚠ Warning

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

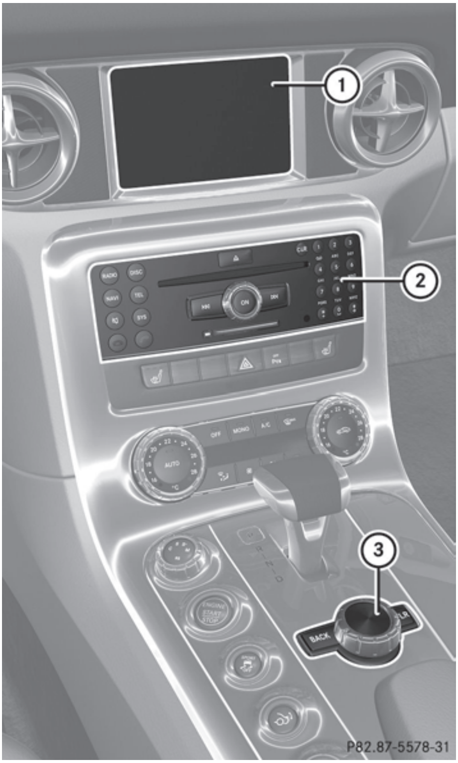
⚠ Warning

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65.

This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that is deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 8 inches (20 cm) and more between the radiator and a person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs.)

At a glance

COMAND Control System



	Function	Page
①	COMAND display	73
②	COMAND control unit with DVD changer	75
③	COMAND controller	77

Vehicle Equipment

ℹ This Operator’s Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Components of COMAND

COMAND comprises:

- the COMAND display
- the COMAND control unit with DVD changer
- the COMAND controller with the Back and Clear button

You can use COMAND to operate the following main functions:

- the navigation system
- the audio function with the radio, SatRadio, disc (CD audio, DVD audio or MP3 mode), PCMCIA memory card (MP3 mode), Music Register and Audio Aux modes
- the telephone and the address book function
- DVD Video
- systems settings

You can call up the main functions:

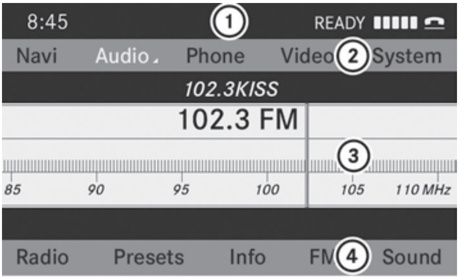
- using the corresponding function buttons
- using the main function line in the COMAND display

COMAND Display

ⓘ Do not touch the COMAND display. The display has a very sensitive high-gloss surface; there is a risk of scratching. Should the display need cleaning, use a mild cleaning agent and a soft, antistatic, lint-free cloth. Commercially available alcohol and ammonia-free TFT or LCD cleaners are recommended.

The COMAND display shows the function currently selected and its associated menus. The COMAND display is divided into several areas.

The radio display is shown in the example.



P82.87-3420-31

Example: Audio main function display

① Status line
② Main function line
③ Main area
④ Submenu line

Status line ① displays the time and the current telephone status.

With the main function line ② you can select the main function.

Select the function with the COMAND controller (▷ page 77).

In the example, the audio main function is set to radio mode and the main area ③ is active.

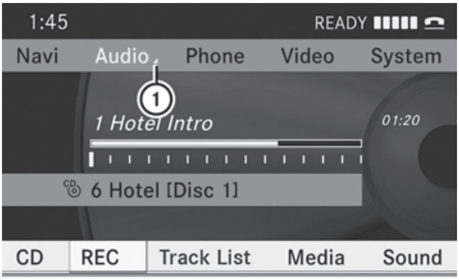
ⓘ The arrangement of the menus can vary, depending on the equipment. Normally, the menus for the full equipment version are shown in this manual.

Menu Overview

Having selected a main function, you will find the submenu line at the bottom edge of the COMAND display.

If one of the main functions such as Navigation, Audio, Video or Phone is currently selected, additional menus are available from the main function line (▷ page 74).

This is indicated by a small triangle behind the main function label.


1:45
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
①
1 Hotel Intro
01:20
6 Hotel [Disc 1]
CD
REC
Track List
Media
Sound

P82.87-3751-31

① Triangle indicating an additional menu

Navi	Audio	Phone	Video
Mode	FM/AM Radio	Phone	DVD Video
Map Orientation	SatRadio	Address book	Video Aux
POI Symbols On Map	Disc (CD audio, DVD audio, MP3 mode)		
Traffic Information On Map	Memory card (MP3 mode)		
Text Information On Map	Music Register		
☑ Topographic Map	Media Interface		
☑ Highway information	AUX		
☑ Read Traffic Messages Automatically			
☑ Audio Fadeout			
Block Area			
SIRIUS Service			

You can determine basic settings for the map display, route calculation and route guidance functions in **Navigation**.

ℹ You can call up functions such as destination entry and the destination memory at the bottom of the COMAND display in the Navigation Submenu line.

In the **Audio** main function, you can switch modes in the audio menu.

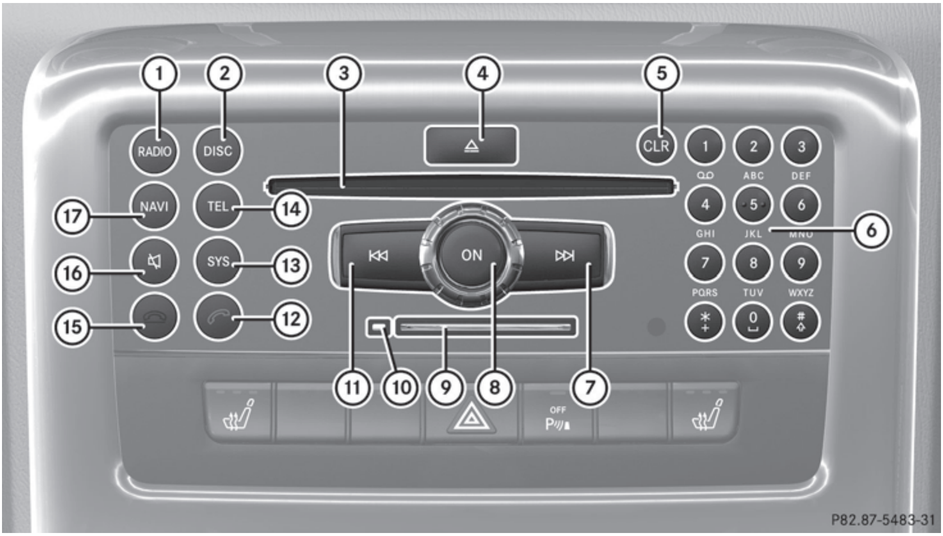
In the **Phone** main function, you can choose between the telephone mode and the address book.

In the **Video** main function, you can choose between the DVD mode and the Video Aux mode.

COMAND Control Unit

The COMAND control unit allows you to:

- switch COMAND on/off
- adjust the volume
- select the main function/mode directly
- enter telephone numbers and accept, reject, initiate and end calls
- load and eject CDs/DVDs or a PCMCIA memory card


①
②
③
④
⑤
RADIO
DISC
CLR
1
2
3
ABC
DEF
NAVI
TEL
4
5
6
GHI
JKL
MNO
⑰
⑭
⑥
SYS
ON
7
8
9
PQRS
TUV
WXYZ
⑯
⑬
⑮
⑫
0
⑪
⑩
⑨
⑧
⑦
OFF
P82.87-5483-31

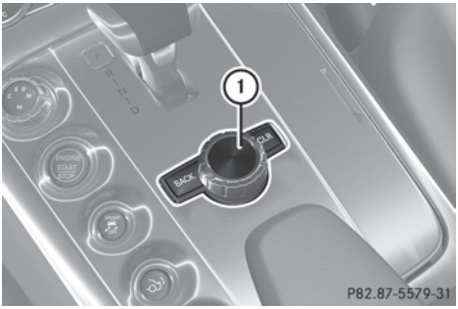
	Function	Page
①	RADIO	
	Switch to radio mode	169
	Switch wavebands	170
②	DISC	
	Switch to	
	Last selected medium in DVD changer	184, 201
	Memory Card	181
	Music Register	189
	Media Interface	194
③	Disc slot	
	CD/DVD loading	180
	CD/DVD ejection	182
	Update the map software	100
④	⏏	
	Load/eject button	180
⑤	Clear button for functions	
	Telephone number entry	159
	Delete a digit or entire entry	

	Function	Page
⑥	Number keypad	
	Select stations via station presets	171
	Store stations manually	171
	Telephone number entry	159
	DTMF tone transmission	160
⑦	⏭	
	Select stations using the station search function	171
	Fast forward	187
	Select the next track	187
⑧	ON	
	Switch COMAND on/off	89
	Adjust the volume	89
⑨	PCMCIA memory card slot	181
⑩	Eject button for the PCMCIA memory card	183
⑪	⏮	
	Select stations using the station search function	171
	Fast reverse	187
	Select the previous track	187

	Function	Page
⑫	☎	
	Accept a call	158
	Dial a call	159
	Redial	159
⑬	SYS	
	Open the system menu	92
⑭	TEL	
	Switch to telephone mode	152
⑮	☎	
	Reject a call	158
	End an active call	160
	Reject a waiting call	158

	Function	Page
⑯	🔇	
	Switch the sound on/off	89
	Mute navigation announcements	89
⑰	NAVI	
	Switch to navigation mode	105

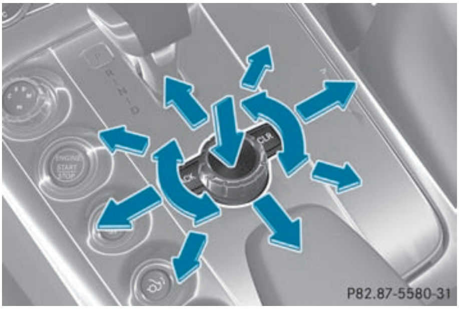
COMAND Controller



① COMAND controller

You can use the COMAND controller to select the menu items in the COMAND display. Move a selection bar to do so.

You can call up menus and lists in this way, move within menus or lists and exit menus and lists in this way.



COMAND controller operation

You can operate the COMAND controller in the following ways:

- press briefly or press and hold ⊙
- rotate clockwise or counter-clockwise ⟲ ◎ ⟳
- slide to the left or right ← ◎ →

  or
- slide up or down ↑ ◎ ↓

  or
- slide diagonally ⤡ ◎ ⤢

In the instructions, operating directions are described as follows:

▶ Select `Station list`.

which is a short form for

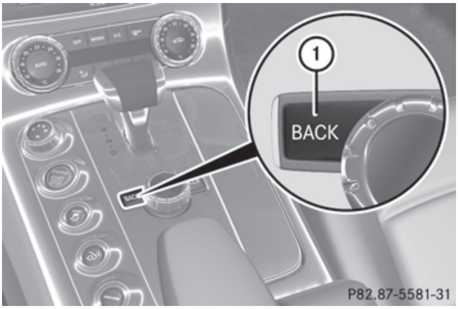
▶ Turn ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ the COMAND controller.
This moves the selection bar to the `Station list` menu item.

▶ Press the ⊙ COMAND controller.
This confirms your selection. The station list appears.

Symbol	COMAND controller operation	Function (example)
⊙	Press briefly	• Select menu item or list entry • Show/hide the menu system (e.g. when using navigation or video functions)
	Press and hold until the selected action has been carried out	• Accept destination for navigation
⟲ ◎ ⟳	Rotate	• Move through vertical or horizontal menus or lists • Move through text • Program settings
↑ ◎ ↓	Slide	• Move through vertical menus • Exit horizontal menus

Symbol	COMAND controller operation	Function (example)
	Slide and hold	• Move through a navigation map
← ◎ →	Slide	• Move through horizontal menus • Exit vertical menus • Switch to the next/previous track
	Slide and hold	• Fast-forward or reverse for CD Audio or DVD Audio playback • Move through a navigation map
↖↙ ◎ ↗↘	Slide and hold	• Move through a navigation map

Back Button



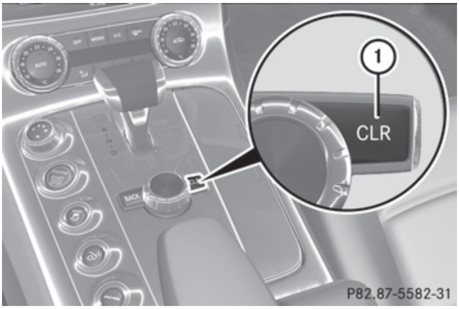
① Back button BACK

- ▶ **To exit the menu:** Briefly press the BACK button ①.
  COMAND changes to the next higher menu level in the current operating mode.

ℹ You can also exit a menu by sliding the COMAND controller ← ◎ → or ↑ ◎ ↓ (▷ page 86).

- ▶ **To switch to the main display from submenu displays:** Press and hold the BACK button ①.
  COMAND changes to the main display of the current operating mode.

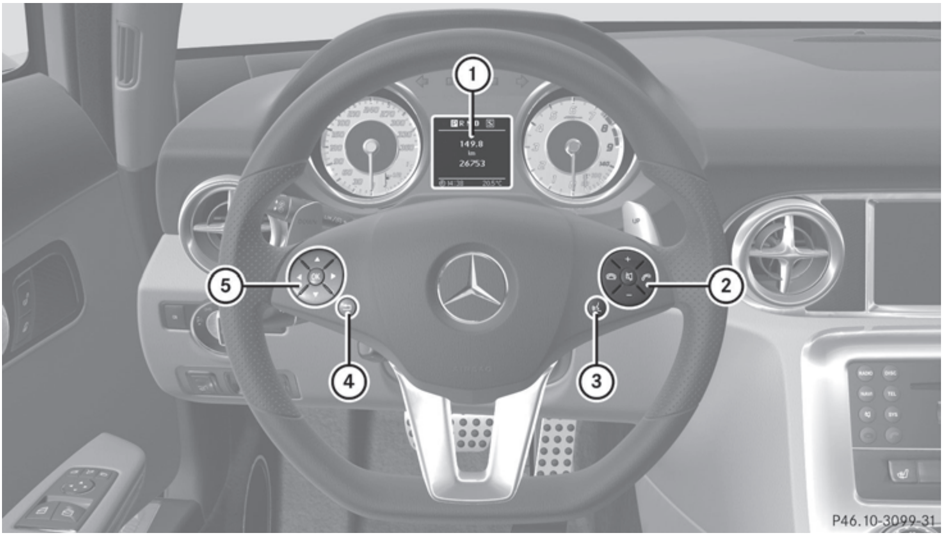
Clear Button



① Clear button CLR

- ▶ **To delete an individual character:** Briefly press the CLR button ①.
- ▶ **To delete an entire entry:** Press and hold the CLR button ①.

Multifunction Steering Wheel



	Function	
①	Multifunction display	
②	+	Volume up
	−	Volume down
	🔇	Mute
	☎	End and reject calls
	📞	Accept and iniate calls
③	🗣	Activate Voice Control

	Function	
④	↩	**Press briefly:** Navigate one level up in the menu structure of the multifunction display Cancel Voice Control Confirm messages **Press and hold:** Multifunction display changes to the standard display (trip odometer and odometer) COMAND changes to the main display of the current operating mode
⑤	Select submenu or scroll through lists	
	▲	Upwards
	▼	Downwards
	Selecting a menu	
	▶	Right
	◀	Left
	OK	Confirm selection

Operating the Multifunction Display

⚠ Warning!

A driver’s attention to the road and traffic conditions must always be his/her primary focus when driving.

For your safety and the safety of others, selecting features through the multifunction steering wheel should only be done by the driver when traffic and road conditions permit it to be done safely.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

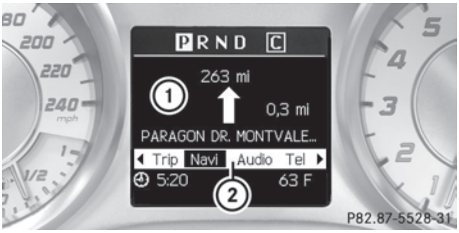
- ▶ **To select a menu:** Press the ◀ or ▶ button.
- ▶ **To select a submenu or scroll in a list:** Press the ▲ or ▼ button.
- ▶ **To select the next menu level up:** Press the ↩ button.
- ▶ **To select the standard display:** Press the ↩ button repeatedly until the standard display with the odometer and trip odometer appears again in the display.

or

- ▶ Press and hold the ↩ button until the standard display with the odometer and trip odometer appears.
- ▶ **To confirm the selection:** Press the OK button.
- ▶ **To confirm a display message:** Press the OK or ↩ button.

Multifunction Display

The description field on the multifunction display shows you values and settings as well as any display messages that may have been generated.



① Description field

② Line for menus

Text field ① shows settings, functions, submenus and any malfunctions that occur.

- ▶ **To show the line for menus ②:** Press the ◀ or ▶ button.

Menus and Submenus

The number of menus shown depends on the optional equipment in the vehicle.

Multifunction Display Menus

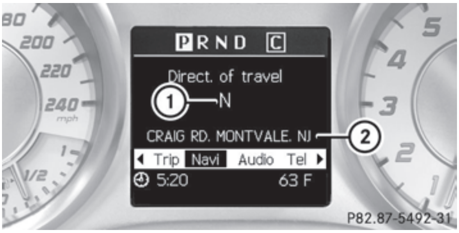
ℹ The following table only lists the functions and submenus that are needed in connection with COMAND. For information on the vehicle-related submenus please refer to the vehicle operator's manual.

Menus	Functions and Submenus
Navi	Navigation messages
Audio	Selecting radio stations Operating the DVD changer/ Music register/Memory card
Tel	Accepting a call Initiating a call Rejecting a call Ending a call Selecting a phone book entry Calls dialed

Navi Menu

The multifunction display shows navigation instructions in the Navi menu.

Route Guidance Inactive

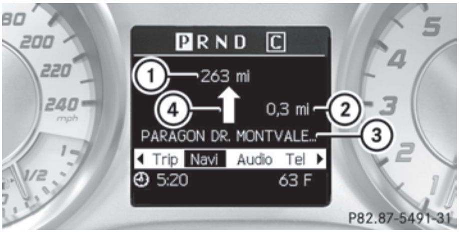

P R N D C
Direct. of travel
① N
CRAIG RD. MONTVALE. NJ ②
Trip Navi Audio Tel
5:20 63 F
P82.87-5492-31

① Direction of travel
② Current road

The road you are currently driving on only appears if it is in the map software.

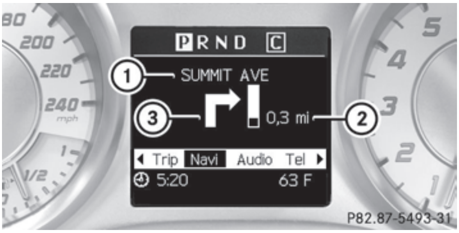
Route Guidance Active

No Maneuver Announced


P R N D C
① 263 mi
④ 0,3 mi ②
PARAGON DR. MONTVALE.. ③
Trip Navi Audio Tel
5:20 63 F
P82.87-5491-31

① Distance to destination
② Distance to next maneuver
③ Current road
④ Symbol for “follow the road's course”

Maneuver Announced Without Change of Lane

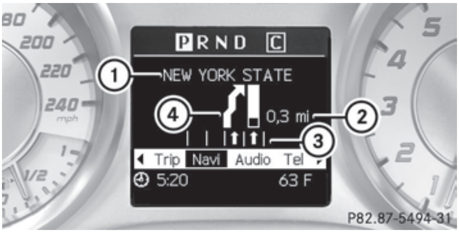

P R N D C
① SUMMIT AVE
③ 0,3 mi ②
Trip Navi Audio Tel
5:20 63 F
P82.87-5493-31

① Road into which the maneuver leads
② Distance to maneuver and graphic distance display
③ Symbol for maneuver

When a maneuver is announced, you will see the symbol for the maneuver and beside it a graphic distance display ②. This decreases as you approach the announced maneuver.

Maneuver Announced With Change of Lane

Lane recommendations are only displayed if the relevant data is available on the digital map.


P R N D C
① NEW YORK STATE
④ 0,3 mi ②
③
Trip Navi Audio Tel
5:20 63 F
P82.87-5494-31

① Road into which the maneuver leads
② Distance to maneuver and graphic distance display
③ Lane recommendation
④ Symbol for maneuver

On multiple-lane roads, a lane recommendation ③ may be shown for the next maneuver. There may be additional lanes during a maneuver.

Lane Recommendation Display	Meaning
Lane without lower limit	Uninterrupted lane
Lane with lower limit	New lane during a maneuver
Lane with arrow	Lane recommended for the maneuver

Navigation Status Indicators in the Multifunction Display

When route guidance is activated, the following messages may appear:

- 🏁 : you have reached the destination.
- `Within Destination Area`: you are approaching the destination. This message

appears, for example, with relatively large special destinations.

- `New Route...`: the system is calculating a new route, for example because you have deviated from the previous route. Route guidance is subsequently resumed.
- `Calculating Route`: a route is being calculated, after which route guidance will start.
- `Off Map`: the vehicle is outside the range of the digital map. The vehicle is in an off-map position.
- `Off Mapped Road`: the vehicle is on a road which is not in the digital map, or is away from the road, for example in a car park.
- `No Route`: no route to the selected destination could be calculated.

Audio Menu

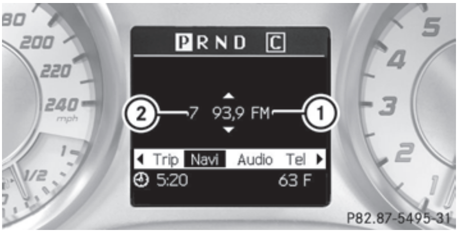
Use the functions in the Audio menu to operate the audio equipment. If no audio equipment is switched on, the multifunction display shows the message Audio Off.

▶ **To adjust the volume:** Press the + or – button.

Selecting a Radio Station/Channel

▶ Switch on COMAND and select `FM/AM Radio` (▷ page 169) or `SatRadio` (▷ page 174).

▶ Select the Audio menu.



① Wave band

② Preset number with channel number, channel name or frequency

▶ **To select the next or previous preset channel:** Briefly press ▲ or ▼.

or

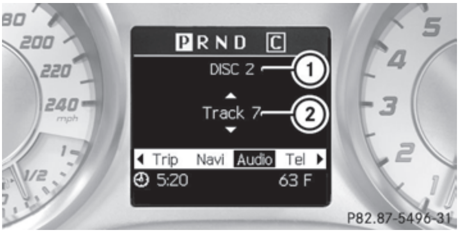
▶ **To select the next or previous channel:** Press and hold ▲ or ▼.

ⓘ You can only change the wave band and save new stations/channels using COMAND.

Operating the DVD Changer/Music Register/ Memory Card/Media Interface

▶ Switch on COMAND and select `Disc`, `Memory Card` (▷ page 184), `Music Register` (▷ page 189) or Media Interface (▷ page 194).

▶ Select the `Audio` menu.



Example: View of the CD player

① Current disc

② Current track

▶ **To select the next or previous track:** Briefly press ▲ or ▼.

or

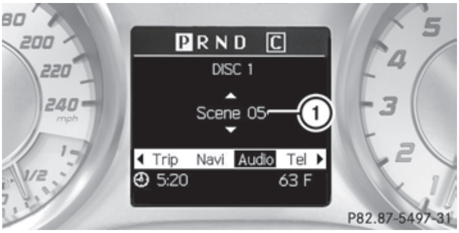
▶ **To scroll through the track list in upward or downward direction:** Press and hold ▲ or ▼.

ⓘ If you are playing a CD or DVD with track information, the multifunction display shows the name and number of the track. The track is displayed on MP3s.

Operating the DVD Video

▶ Switch on COMAND and select DVD Video (▷ page 201).

▶ Select the `Audio` menu.



① Current scene

- **To select the next or previous scene:** Briefly press ▲ or ▼.
- **To search for the next or previous scene:** Press and hold ▲ or ▼.

Tel Menu

⚠ Warning

Some jurisdictions prohibit the driver from using a cellular telephone while driving. Whether or not prohibited by law, for safety reasons, the driver should not use the cellular telephone while the vehicle is in motion. Stop the vehicle in a safe location before placing or answering a call.

If you nonetheless choose to use the mobile phone while driving, please use the handsfree feature and be sure to pay attention to the traffic situation at all times. Use the mobile phone only when road, weather and traffic conditions permit. Otherwise, you may not be able to observe traffic conditions and could endanger yourself and others.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

You can use the functions in the Tel menu to operate your mobile phone.

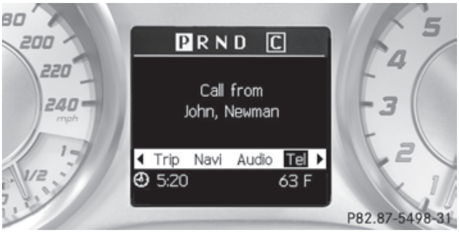
- Switch on COMAND (▷ page 89).
- Select the Tel menu (▷ page 152).

Mobile Phone Status

- If the mobile phone has not yet been authorized, the message in the multifunction display is:
  Ready for Bluetooth Telephony...
  (▷ page 149).
- If the mobile phone is switched on and authorized, the message Phone READY appears in the multifunction display.

Accepting a Call

If someone calls you while you are in the Tel menu, the following message appears in the multifunction display:



- Press ☎ to answer a call.

You can also take a call if you have not selected the Tel menu.

ℹ The name of the caller only appears if it is included in the phone book.

Rejecting or Ending a Call

- Press ☎.

You can also reject or end a call if you have not selected the Tel menu.

Dialing a Number from the Phone Book

If your mobile phone is able to receive calls, you can search for and dial a number from the phone book in COMAND at any time.

ℹ You can enter new numbers in the phone book using COMAND (▷ page 154).

- Select the Tel menu.
  The multifunction display shows Phone READY.
- Press ▼, ▲ or OK to call up the phone book.
- Press ▼ or ▲ to select the name you are searching for.
  The stored names are displayed in alphabetical order.

- **If only one telephone number is stored for a name:** Press ☎ or OK to start dialing.
  The message `Connecting Call...` and the selected number appear in the multifunction display. The name also appears, provided it is stored in the phone book. The selected number is stored in the `CALLS DIALED` list in COMAND (▷ page 156).

  If a call is connected, the phone book entry appears in the multifunction display.

or

- **If there is more than one number for a particular name:** Press ☎ or OK to display the numbers.
- Press ▼ or ▲ to select the number you want to dial.
- Press ☎ or OK to start dialing.
  The message `Connecting Call...` and the selected number appear in the multifunction display. The name also appears, provided it is stored in the phone book. The selected number is stored in the `CALLS DIALED` list in COMAND.

  If a call is connected, the phone book entry appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ To exit the phone book without making a call, press the ☎ button. `Phone READY` appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ If you press and hold the ▼ or ▲ button for more than one second, a rapid scroll begins. After four seconds, the rapid scroll speeds up. The rapid scroll stops when you release the button or reach the end of the list.

Redialing

COMAND saves the most recently dialed names and numbers from the mobile phone. This means that you do not have to search through the entire phone book.

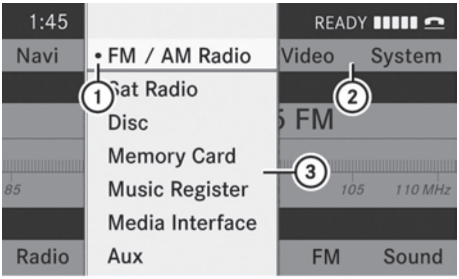
- Select the `Tel` menu.
  The multifunction display shows `Phone READY` .
- Press ☎ to go to the most recently dialed number or name in the `CALLS DIALED` menu.
- Press ▼ or ▲ to select the number or name you are looking for.
- Press ☎ or OK to start dialing.

Operating COMAND

Opening Menu of a Main Function

Example: Audio Menu

Within the Audio Function



P82.87-5499-31

① Main function line

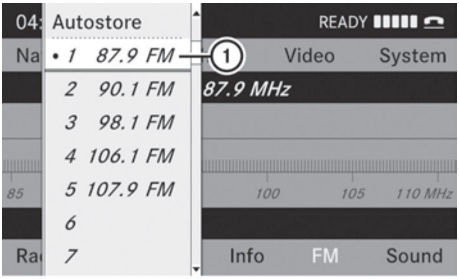
② Audio menu

③ The symbol • indicates current operating mode.

- **To switch to main function line ①:**
  Slide ↑ ◎.
- **To select audio main function:**
  Rotate ↶ ◎ ↷ or slide ← ◎ →.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ◎
  You will see the main display for the selected audio mode.
- **To switch back to the main function line ①:**
  Slide ↑ ◎ and press ◎.
  The Audio menu appears.

Selecting Menu Item

Example 1: Radio, Station Memory


04:
Autostore
READY ▮▮▮▮▮
Na
• 1 87.9 FM
①
Video
System
2 90.1 FM
87.9 MHz
3 98.1 FM
4 106.1 FM
85
5 107.9 FM
100
105
110 MHz
6
Ra
7
Info
FM
Sound

P82.87-3422-31

① Selection bar

Selecting Menu Item

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
  The selection bar moves up and down within the list.

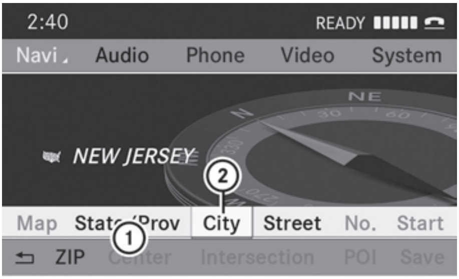
Confirming Menu Item

- ▶ Press ⊚.

Exiting the Menu Without Selecting

- ▶ Slide ← ◎ → in the opposite direction to the direction of the list.

Example 2: Navigation, Enter Destination Menu


2:40
READY ▮▮▮▮▮
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
NE
NEW JERSEY
②
Map
State/Prov
City
Street
No.
Start
①
ZIP
Center
Intersection
POI
Save

P82.87-3752-31

Enter Destination menu

① Menu with upper and lower menu bar

② Selector bar

Selecting Menu Item

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
  The selector bar moves horizontally.

Switching Menu Bar

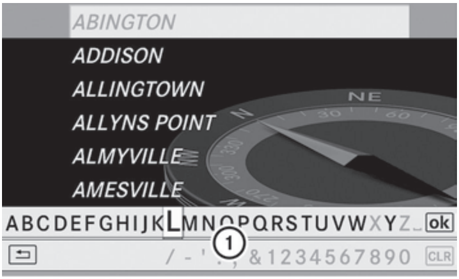
- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

Confirming Menu Item

- ▶ Press ⊚.

Character Entry

The example shows a list of cities during destination entry in the navigation.


ABINGTON
ADDISON
ALLINGTOWN
ALLYNS POINT
ALMYVILLE
AMESVILLE
NE
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_
ok
①
/ - ' . , & 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
CLR

P82.86-9955-31

① Predictive speller with number and character line

ⓘ In the predictive speller ① you can only select the characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the data for the digital map.

When entering characters, the list entry at the top always displays the entry that best matches the characters already entered. COMAND automatically adds matching letters to those already entered by the user.

Entering Characters

Using the Speller

- ▶ **To select characters:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ to switch between the lines in the speller.
- ▶ **To confirm character selection:** Press ⊚.

A possible option:

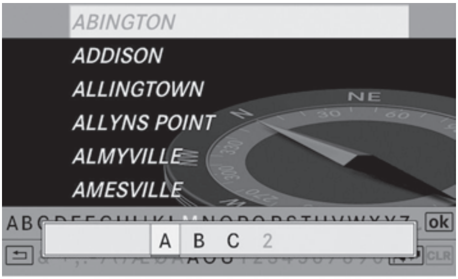
- **To switch predictive speller language (character set):** Select ⚑.

With Number Keypad

Alternatively, you can enter characters using the number keypad (direct input).

Example:

- Press one of the number keys, e.g. **2**, once or repeatedly in succession.
  After you have pressed it the first time, the character display appears at the lower edge of the display. The first available letter is highlighted.



P82.86-9956-31

You see which characters you can enter with that key. Each time you press the key, the next character is highlighted.

For example, key:

- Press once = A
- Press twice = B
- Press three times = C

Wait until the character display disappears.

Deleting an Entry

- **To delete individual characters:** Select CLR at the bottom right of the speller and press ⊛.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
- **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press and hold ⊛ until the entire entry is deleted.

or

- Hold the CLR button down until the entire entry is deleted.

Canceling an Entry

- Select ↩ at the bottom left in the speller and press ⊛.

or

- Press the BACK button.
  The address input menu appears.

Accepting the First List Entry

- Press and hold ⊛ until the Enter Destination menu appears.
  Here you will find the accepted list entry.

or

If COMAND can match the characters entered definitively to one town, the Enter Destination menu appears automatically with the selected list entry.

Switching to the List Without Predictive Speller

If other entries for a town exist, or the name exists more than once in the system, then ok is highlighted in the speller.

- Press ⊛.

It is also possible to change to the list at any time during character input.

- Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

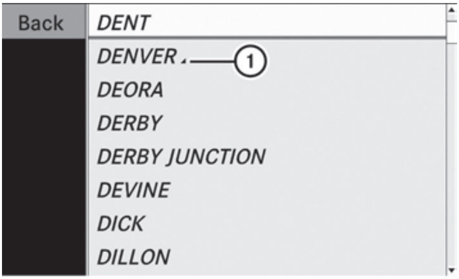
ℹ Without the speller entering characters using the number keypad is not possible.

- **To re-open the speller:** Press the BACK button.

or

- Select ok and press ⊛.
  COMAND will complete your entry if the name is unambiguous. In this case, it is not necessary to switch to the list. The Enter Destination menu will appear automatically.

Selecting a list entry


Back
DENT
DENVER ◢
①
DEORA
DERBY
DERBY JUNCTION
DEVINE
DICK
DILLON

P82.86-9957-31

Town list in navigation mode

① ◢ symbol for additional options

- ▶ **To select a town:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.
  A town with the ◢ symbol exists more than once in the selected state/province or it has subentries. Confirming this type of town will result in a further selection. The ◢ symbol then switches to ▼.

Operating Example

Switching to Radio Mode and Calling up the Station List

Initial situation: You would like to switch, for example, from the phone function to radio mode and request the `Presets` list from there.

ℹ In this guide, the path to a menu item is shown as an action in a special typeface.
`Audio` → `Audio` → `FM/AM Radio` → `Radio` → `Presets`.

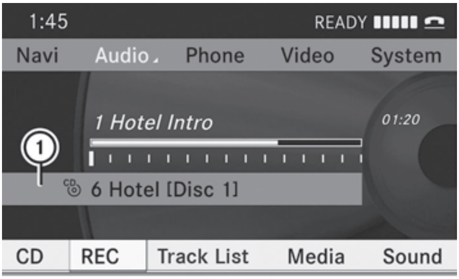
ℹ Depending on the initial situation, this sequence of actions may be shorter.
If radio mode was active last, it is sufficient to select `Audio` → `Radio` → `Presets`.

The individual steps for the above example are described below.

Switching to the Current Audio Mode

ℹ You can also call up the current audio mode using the buttons RADIO or DISC.

- ▶ **To move to the main function line:** Slide ↑ ◎.
- ▶ **To select the audio main function:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ **To confirm your selection:** Press ◎.
  The main display of the previous audio operating mode, e.g. CD audio, appears. The selection bar is in the display/selection window.

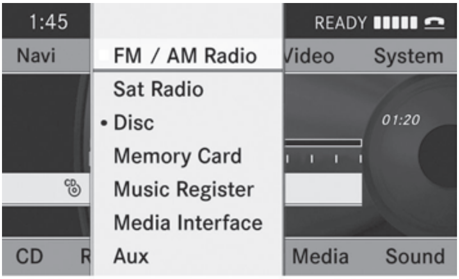

1:45
READY ▮▮▮▮▮ ☎
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
1 Hotel Intro
01:20
①
6 Hotel [Disc 1]
CD
REC
Track List
Media
Sound

P82.87-3753-31

① Selection bar

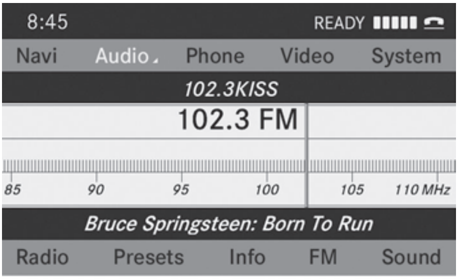
Switching to Radio Mode

- ▶ **To select** `Audio` **again:** Slide ↑ ◎.
- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.
  The Audio menu appears.


1:45
READY ▮▮▮▮▮ ☎
Navi
FM / AM Radio
Video
System
Sat Radio
• Disc
Memory Card
Music Register
Media Interface
Aux
01:20
CD
R
Media
Sound

P82.87-5500-31

- ▶ **To select** `FM/AM Radio`: Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎.
- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.
  The radio main display appears.



P82.87-3425-31

Tuning to a Station Manually

▶ Slide ◎ ↓ to highlight the lower menu bar.

▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → to select `FM`, `AM` or `WB`.

▶ Tune to a station by rotating ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or sliding ← ◎ →.
The red line (tuning indicator) moves right or left and stops when a receivable station is found.

Basic Functions of COMAND

ℹ The COMAND components can be found on (▷ page 73). Operating examples can be found on (▷ page 85).

Switching COMAND On/Off

▶ Press the ON button.
A warning message is displayed. COMAND calls up the previously selected menu.

ℹ If you switch off COMAND, playback of the current audio or video source will also be switched off.

Sound

▶ **To switch on/off:** Press the 🔇 button.
The sound from the active audio or video source is switched on or muted.

ℹ When the sound is muted, you will see the 🔇 icon in the status bar.

If you change the audio or video source or change the volume, the sound is automatically switched on again.

ℹ Announcements from the navigation system can still be heard with the sound switched off.

Switching Navigation Announcements On/Off

▶ Press 🔇 during the announcement.

ℹ The navigation announcements are switched on again if you start a new route guidance or if COMAND is switched off and on with the ON button.

Setting the Volume

▶ **To set:** Turn the ON rotary/push button.

or

▶ Press the + or − button on the multi-function steering wheel.
The volume of the selected audio or video source changes.

Volume of Navigation Announcements

You can set the volume for navigation announcements independently of the volume for the active audio or video source.

During a navigation announcement:

▶ Turn the ON rotary/push button.

or

▶ Press the + or − button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Audio Fadeout

The Audio Fadeout function, if activated, lowers the volume of the current audio source when a navigation announcement is issued. As soon as the navigation announcement has ended, the audio source will be played at the previous volume (▷ page 89).

Setting Volume for Phone Calls

You can adjust the volume for hands-free mode during a telephone call.

During a telephone call:

▶ Turn the ⓞ rotary/push button.

or

▶ Press the [+] or [−] button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Sound Settings

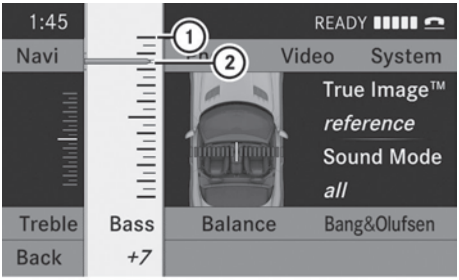
You can select different sound settings for each audio and video source. The sound menu can be opened from the submenu of the desired operating mode.

Examples:

- `Audio` → `FM/AM Radio` → `Sound`
- `Audio` → `Disc` → `Sound`

Setting Bass and Treble

▶ Select `Sound` → `Treble` or `Bass`.
The previously selected setting is indicated by an empty bar.


1:45
READY
Navi
Video
System
True Image™
reference
Sound Mode
all
Treble
Bass
Balance
Bang&Olufsen
Back
+7
①
②

P82.87-5501-31

Setting treble and bass

① Last selected setting

② Current setting

▶ **To change the setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired treble and bass levels are set.

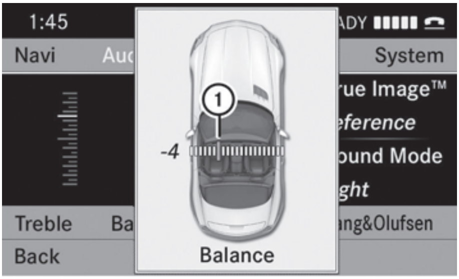
▶ **To save setting:** Press ◎.
The setting is stored and the menu is exited.

▶ **To exit the menu without changes:** Press the [BACK] button or slide ← ◎ →.

Setting Balance

The balance determines whether the sound intensity is higher on the driver's side or on the front passenger's side.

▶ Select `Sound` → `Balance`.


1:45
ADY
Navi
Auc
System
ue Image™
eference
ound Mode
ght
Treble
Ba
ng&Olufsen
Back
Balance
-4
①

P82.87-5502-31

Setting Balance (display image may differ depending on model)

① Current setting

▶ **To change the setting:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ or ← ◎ → until the balance is set as desired.

▶ **To store a setting:** Press the ◎ button.
The setting is stored and the menu is exited.

▶ **To exit the menu without changes:** Press the [BACK] button.

Bang & Olufsen sound system

Your vehicle is equipped with the Bang & Olufsen sound system.

There are two settings available with `True Image™` sound technology:

- `reference`
  This setting provides a crisp, clear, luxury high-end sound setting for a studio atmosphere in your vehicle.
- `surround`
  This setting enables a wide-ranging sound experience for playing music and videos.

The `Sound Mode` function can be used to optimize the selected sound setting for one seat. The settings `left`, `all` and `right` can be selected.

The Bang & Olufsen sound system provides the following operating modes:

- Radio (FM only)
- Sat radio
- Audio CD
- Audio DVD (MLP, DTS, PCM and Dolby Digital audio formats)
- MP3 (including PCMCIA memory card)
- Media Interface
- Video DVD (PCM, DTS and Dolby Digital audio formats)
- AUX

Since many DVDs contain both stereo and multi-channel audio formats, it may be necessary to set the audio format (▷ page 189).

Discs which support the audio formats mentioned have the following logos:

Dolby® Digital

DTS™

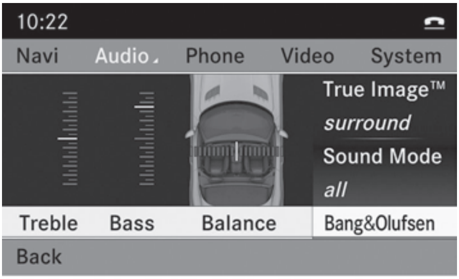
MLP™

Selecting settings for the Bang & Olufsen sound system

Calling up the selection menu

▶ Select `Sound`.

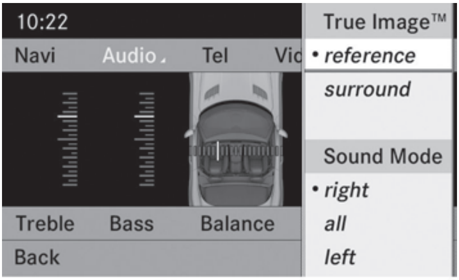
▶ Highlight `Bang&Olufsen`.


10:22
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
True Image™
surround
Sound Mode
all
Treble
Bass
Balance
Bang&Olufsen
Back

P82.87-5529-31

The current settings for the `True Image™` and `Sound Mode` sound technology can be seen in the right-hand half of the screen.

▶ **Press ⊛.**
A selection menu appears.


10:22
Navi
Audio
Tel
Vid
True Image™
• reference
surround
Sound Mode
• right
all
left
Treble
Bass
Balance
Back

P82.87-4448-31

Selection menu

A • dot in front of an entry indicates the current setting.

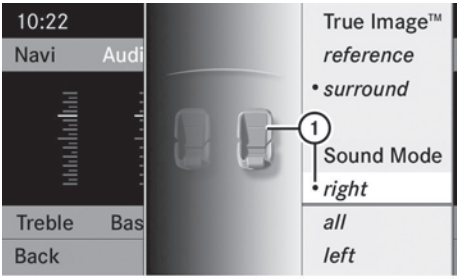
Selecting the setting for True Image™

▶ Turn ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and highlight `reference` or `surround`.

▶ Press ⊛.

Selecting sound mode

▶ Select `Sound Mode` in the selection menu.


10:22
Navi
Audi
Treble
Bas
Back
True Image™
reference
• surround
Sound Mode
• right
all
left
1

P82.87-4935-31

① Current setting

- ▶ Turn ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and highlight `left`, `all` or `right`.
- ▶ Press ◎.
- ▶ **To exit the menu:** press the ↩ back button beside the COMAND controller.

or

- ▶ Slide ← ◎ →.

ℹ Please bear the following in mind:

You will achieve the best sound results on your Bang & Olufsen sound system by playing high-quality audio DVDs and CDs.

MP3 tracks should have a bit rate of at least 224 kbit/s.

When playing using an iPod®, the bit rate should also be at least 224 kbit/s.

For optimum playback quality:

- ▶ Deactivate the `EQ` setting on the iPod®.

Surround-sound playback does not work for mono signal sources, such as the AM waveband in radio mode.

On some stereo recordings, the sound characteristics may differ from conventional stereo playback.

System Settings

System Menu Overview

Vehicle Equipment

ℹ This Operator's manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

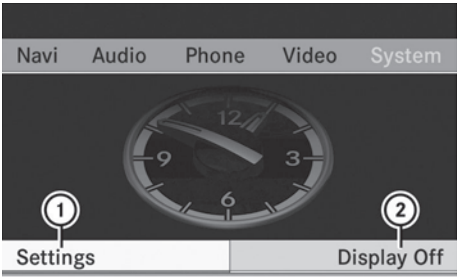
Opening System Menu

- ▶ Press the SYS function button.

or

- ▶ Select `System` in the main function line.

The system menu appears.


Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
12
9
3
6
1
2
Settings
Display Off

P82.87-5535-31

① Settings menu
② Switching the display off

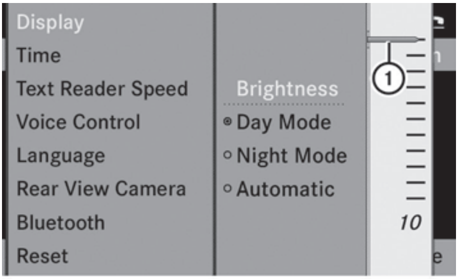
Settings	Display Off
Display (▷ page 93) Time (▷ page 93) Text reader speed (▷ page 94) Voice Control(▷ page 95) Setting the language (▷ page 99) Bluetooth® (▷ page 96) Rear View Camera (▷ page 99) Reset COMAND (▷ page 99) ⓘ Use this function to delete your personal data, e.g. before selling your vehicle.	

Display Settings

Setting the Brightness

ⓘ The brightness detected by the COMAND light sensor affects the setting options for this function.

▶ Select `System` → Settings → `Display` → `Brightness`.


Display
Time
Text Reader Speed
Voice Control
Language
Rear View Camera
Bluetooth
Reset
Brightness
● Day Mode
○ Night Mode
○ Automatic
①
10
P82.87-5536-31

① Brightness bar

▶ **To set the brightness:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
The brightness bar moves up or down.

▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◎ or slide ← ◎.

or

▶ Press the BACK button.

Setting the Display Design

▶ Select `System` → `Settings` → `Display`.

▶ Select `Day mode`, `Night mode` or `Automatic`.
The ● dot indicates the current setting.

ⓘ In the `Automatic` setting, COMAND evaluates the readings from the automatic vehicle light sensor and switches between the display designs automatically.

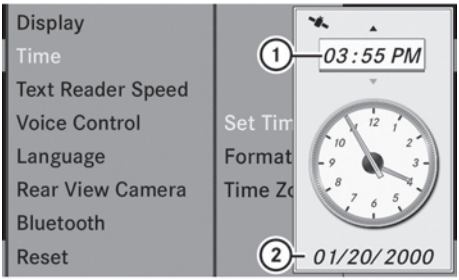
Time

Setting the Time

ⓘ The correct time must be set for the following navigation system functions to operate correctly:

- Calculation of expected time of arrival
- Time stamps for calls received and calls dialed

▶ Select `System` → `System Settings` → `Time` → `Set Time`.



P82.87-5537-31

① Sets the time

② Current date

- **To set value:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To save setting:** Press ◎.

ℹ If you adjust the time in 30-minute increments, the previously selected time zone and automatic time-zone switching between daylight saving time and standard time settings are lost (▷ page 94).

ℹ The increment value for setting the minutes depends on the equipment installed. They are 30-minute increments in vehicles equipped with a navigation system. They are minute increments in vehicles without a navigation system. The following operational steps depend on whether the navigation system has GPS reception.

Setting the Date/Time Format

- Select `System` → `System settings` → `Time` → `Format`.
  The format list appears. The ● dots show the current settings.

ℹ The abbreviations mean:

Date format: DD - Day, MM - Month, YY/YYYY - Year

Time format: HH - Hour, MM - Minute for either 24-hour clock or AM/PM format

- **To change the format:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To confirm the change:** Press ◎.
- **To store the setting and exit the menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.

Setting the Time Zone and Switching Between Daylight Saving Time and Standard Time

ℹ The correct time zone and daylight saving/standard time must be set for the following navigation system functions to operate correctly:

- Calculation of expected time of arrival
- Time stamps for calls received and calls dialed

- **To set the time zone:** Select `System` → `Settings` → `Time` → `Time Zone`.
  A time zone list appears. The ● dot indicates the current setting.
- Select the appropriate time zone.
- **To switch between Daylight Saving and standard time:** Select `Daylight Saving Time` (Summer) or `Standard Time` (Winter).
  The ● dot indicates the current setting.
- **To store setting and exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.

Read-Out

Setting Reading Speed

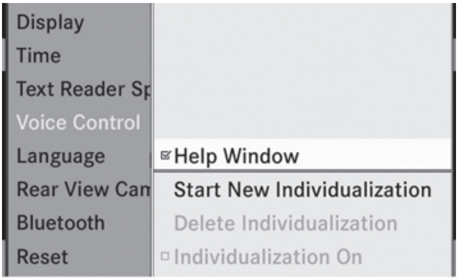
- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Text Reader Speed`.
  The list of possible settings appears. The ● dot indicates the current setting.
- **To select the setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To confirm your selection:** Press ◎.

Voice Control

Switching the Help Screen On or Off

- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Voice Control`.
- Select `Help Window`.
  You have switched the help window on ☑ or off ☐ .

ℹ In addition to the audible instructions, the help screen displays other information during the individualization process and the later voice control mode.


Display
Time
Text Reader Sp
Voice Control
Language
Rear View Can
Bluetooth
Reset
☑ Help Window
Start New Individualization
Delete Individualization
☐ Individualization On

P82.87-5538-31

Individualization

You can use the individualization function option to adapt the Voice control system to your own voice and therefore improve voice recognition. This will affect the ability of the system to recognize the voices of other users, and for this reason it can be switched off (▷ page 96).

The individualization function comprises two parts and lasts around five minutes. During the process you will practice a few number sequences and voice commands.

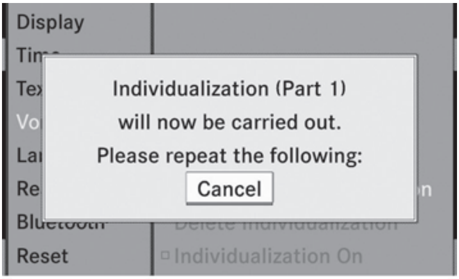
Starting New Individualization

ℹ It is only possible to start individualization when the vehicle is stationary. Before starting, switch off all devices or functions which could interfere, such as the radio or the navigation system. After starting the session, the system guides you through the training with spoken instructions.

- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Voice Control` → `Start New Individualization`.
  You see and hear a prompt asking whether you would like further information.
- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `No`, the first part of individualization begins. You hear a prompt asking whether you would like to train the system in numbers or in voice commands.

  After selecting `Yes`, you see an information display and hear information regarding the individualization process. The first part of individualization then begins automatically.

  or
- **To close the display:** Press ↺.
  You hear a prompt asking whether you would like to train the system in numbers or in voice commands.


Display
Tim
Tex
Vo
La
Re
Bluetooth
Reset
Delete Individualization
☐ Individualization On
Cancel

Individualization (Part 1)
will now be carried out.
Please repeat the following:

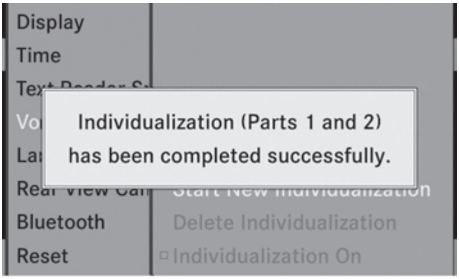
P82.87-5539-31

At the end of the first part, you will see a prompt asking whether you wish to begin the second part.

- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `No`, individualization will be canceled. The data from the first part is stored automatically.

  If you select `Yes`, the second part will begin.

Individualization is completed at the end of the second part. You will see a corresponding message. The data from the second part is stored automatically.



Individualization (Parts 1 and 2) has been completed successfully.

P82.87-5540-31

Canceling the First or Second Part of Individualization

- Select `Cancel`.
  A prompt appears asking whether you really do wish to cancel.
- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `Yes`, individualization will be canceled. The data from the current part is not stored.

  If you select `No`, the current part begins again.

Deleting Existing Individualization Data

- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Voice Control` → `Delete Individualization`.
  A prompt appears asking whether you really wish to delete.
- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  The individualization data will either be deleted or not, depending on your selection. You will see a corresponding message.

Switching Individualization On and Off

- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Voice Control` → `Individualization On`.
  You have switched individualization on ☑ or off ☐ .

Bluetooth®

General Information About Bluetooth®

ℹ Bluetooth-capable devices must correspond to a particular profile to be connected to COMAND. Every Bluetooth device has a Bluetooth-specific name.

Bluetooth® technology is the standard for short-range wireless data transmission of up to approximately 30 feet. Bluetooth® can be used to exchange vCards, for example.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth Special Interest Group (SIG) Inc.

Bluetooth®

P82.86-9790-31

Switching Bluetooth On or Off

- Select `System` → `Settings` → `Bluetooth` → `Activate Bluetooth`.
  Bluetooth is switched on ☑ or off ☐ .

Connecting Bluetooth Devices

ℹ To connect a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth function must be switched on in COMAND and on the particular device. The Bluetooth device must also be "visible" to COMAND in order for COMAND to find and display it. For the setting procedures, please see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.

It is possible to establish a Bluetooth connection between COMAND and the following types of device:

- Mobile phone
- Notebook

ℹ Bluetooth-enabled mobile phones must correspond to particular profiles to be connected to COMAND.

The volume of telephone conversations can change after the phone has been connected.

You can connect up to ten devices to COMAND.

The connection process includes searching for the device and its subsequent authorization.

Calling up the Bluetooth Device List and Searching for Devices

ℹ You must first switch on Bluetooth to be able to call up the list of Bluetooth devices (▷ page 96).

▶ **To call up the list:** Select `System` → `Settings` → `Bluetooth` → `Bluetooth Device List`.

▶ **To start the search:** Select `Update`. COMAND starts the search for devices within reception range. The device list appears after a short time.

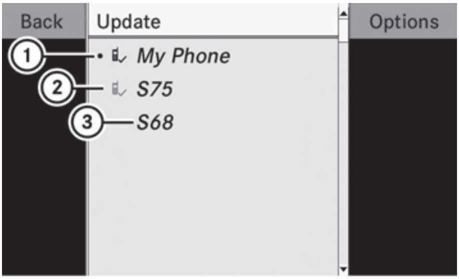
ℹ If you call up the device list again, it may not display all devices as you may have removed one from the car for a while, for example. In this case, start a new search to update the device list.

▶ **To cancel the search:** Select `Cancel`.

The device list can contain the following devices:

- All (available) devices detected, whether authorized or not
- All authorized devices, whether they have been detected (are available) or not.

The device list may show the following icons immediately after manual updating:



P82.86-9972-31

① Currently connected • and authorized device (✓ icon)

② Device not within range but previously authorized (✓ appears in grey)

③ Newly detected device within range but not yet authorized (no ✓ icon yet)

ℹ If the device list is already full, you will be asked to de-authorize a device (▷ page 98). If COMAND does not detect your Bluetooth device, external authorization may be necessary (▷ page 98).

Displaying Details About a Bluetooth Device

▶ Call up the Bluetooth device list (▷ page 97).

▶ Select the desired device.

▶ Select `Options` → `Details`. The detailed display for this device appears.

▶ **To close the detailed view:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.

or

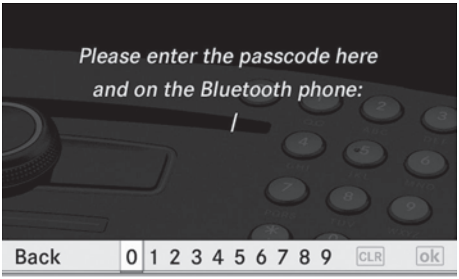
▶ Press ↺.

Authorizing a Bluetooth Device

▶ Call up the Bluetooth device list (▷ page 97).

▶ Select `Update`.

- ▶ Select the currently unauthorized device (no ✓ icon yet).
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Authorize`.
  The input menu for the passcode appears.



Please enter the passcode here and on the Bluetooth phone:

P82.86-9973-31

ⓘ The passcode is any one to sixteen-digit number which you can determine yourself. You must enter the same number in COMAND and also in the device to be authorized. Also observe the information in your mobile phone's operating instructions. If you want to reauthorize a device that has been de-authorized, you may select a different passcode. You must enter the same number on COMAND and on the device to be authorized. Please also refer to the instructions in the mobile phone operating guide.

- ▶ **To enter a passcode in COMAND:** Press the number keys in turn.

or

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → and select the required number from the smart speller. Then confirm with ◎. Repeat the operating step as often as necessary.
- ▶ **To cancel an entry in COMAND:** Select `Back`.
- ▶ **To confirm an entry in COMAND:** Select ◎ and then press ok .
- ▶ Enter the same passcode into the Bluetooth device (see the operating instructions for the device).
  The device is authorized.

Revoking Authorization for a Bluetooth Device

- ▶ Call up the Bluetooth device list (▷ page 97).
- ▶ Select the authorized device.
- ▶ Select `Options` → `De-authorize`.
  A prompt appears asking whether you really wish to revoke authorization for this device.
- ▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `Yes`, the authorization for the device will be revoked.

ⓘ If you revoke authorization for a device which has been authorized in the past and which is not detected in the search, this device will no longer be displayed in the device list.

Devices which have been authorized in the past but which are not detected in the search are either not switched on or not in the vehicle.

External Authorization

If COMAND does not detect your Bluetooth device, this may be due to particular security settings of your device. In this case, you can test if your Bluetooth device can find COMAND. COMAND's Bluetooth device name is "MB Bluetooth".

- ▶ Call up the Bluetooth device list (▷ page 97).
- ▶ Select `Update` → `Options` → `External authorization`.
- ▶ Start the Bluetooth search on the Bluetooth device (see operating instructions for the corresponding device).
- ▶ Select COMAND ("MB Bluetooth").
- ▶ Enter the passcode on the Bluetooth device when requested to and then input it in COMAND.

Rear View Camera

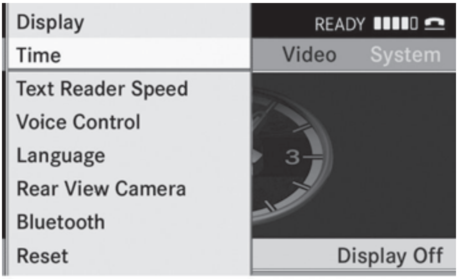
COMAND shows the camera picture on the display when

- the function is switched on in the `System Settings` menu and
- the vehicle is shifted into reverse gear

As soon as you shift out of reverse gear, the previous display is shown.

Switching On/Off the Display of the Rear View Camera

▶ Switch to System Menu



P82.87-5541-31

System settings menu with Rear View Camera option

▶ Select `Settings` → `Rear View Camera`.

▶ Select `Activation by R gear`.
Depending on the previous state the function is switched on ☑ or off ☐ .

Reset

ℹ You can fully reset COMAND to the factory settings. This process deletes all personal data, among other things, (e.g. station memory, address book entries, entries in the destination memory and in the last destinations of the navigation system). It is recommended that you perform a reset before the vehicle is handed over or sold, for example.

▶ Select `System` → `Settings` → `Reset`.
A prompt appears asking whether you wish to reset.

▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
If you select `Yes`, a prompt will appear again asking whether you really wish to reset.

▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
If you select `Yes`, a message will be shown. COMAND is reset and restarted.

Language Setting

This function allows you to determine the language for the menu displays and the navigation messages. The language selection affects the input options in the editing and smart speller.

▶ Select `System` → `Settings` → `Language`.
The list of languages appears. The ● dot indicates the current setting.

▶ **To select a language:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
The selection moves up and down.

▶ **To confirm the language selection:** Press ◎.
COMAND loads the selected language and sets it.

ℹ If you change the system language, the language for Voice Control will be also be changed. If the selected language is not supported by the Voice Control system, “English” will be selected.

Navigation (Introduction)

Vehicle Equipment

ℹ This Operator’s Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Safety Instructions

⚠ **Warning**

For safety reasons, only enter a destination when the vehicle is stationary. When the vehicle is in motion, a passenger should enter the destination. Study manual and select route before driving.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

COMAND calculates the route to the destination without taking account of the following:

- Traffic lights
- Stop and right-of-way-signs
- Lane merging
- Parking or stopping prohibited areas
- Other road and traffic rules and regulations
- Narrow bridges

⚠ **Warning**

COMAND may give incorrect navigation commands if the data in the digital map does not correspond with the actual road/traffic situation. Digital maps do not cover all areas nor all routes within an area. For example, if the traffic routing has been changed or the direction of a one-way road has been reversed.

For this reason, you must always observe applicable road and traffic rules and regulations during your journey. Road and traffic rules and regulations always have priority over the navigation commands generated by the system.

⚠ **Warning**

Navigation announcements are intended to direct you while driving without diverting your attention from the road and driving.

Please always use this feature instead of consulting the map display for directions. Consulting the symbols or map display for directions may cause you to divert your attention from driving and increase your risk of an accident.

Updating the Map Software

The digital data for the map software will become obsolete, just like conventional road maps. Optimum route guidance by the navigation system is only achieved with up-to-date map software. Information on new map software versions is available from an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

You can have the map software updated there by means of a DVD or perform the update process yourself.

Notes on DVD Discs

- Only touch the discs at the edges.
- Handle the discs with care in order to prevent reading errors.
- Avoid scratching, leaving fingerprints and dust on the discs.
- Use a commercially available cleaning cloth to clean discs. Always wipe in a straight line from the inside outwards, never in a circular motion.
- After use, put the discs back into the box.
- Protect the discs from heat and direct sunlight.

Update Sequence

The sequence includes the following stages:

- Loading DVD into the DVD changer
- Update process

ℹ The update process may take between 60 and 150 minutes, depending on the size of the map software.

If possible, perform the update when the vehicle is stationary. The DVD read speed is faster when the vehicle is stationary than when the vehicle is moving and the update therefore takes less time. If you perform the update with the engine off and the

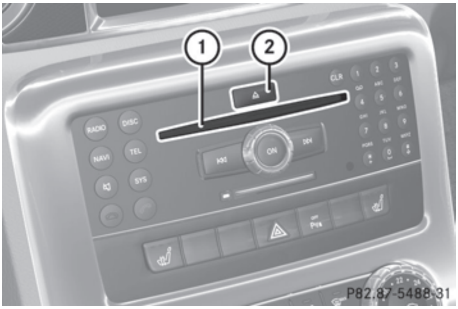
vehicle battery is no longer powerful enough, COMAND may shut off automatically during the process to protect the battery. In this case, restart the update with the engine running.
You can interrupt the update process and continue it at later time. If you cancel the update process, the navigation system is not ready for operation.

⚠ Warning

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide. Inhaling exhaust gases constitutes a health hazard and could lead to loss of consciousness or even death.

Loading DVDs into DVD Changer

The DVD changer is a magazine with six built-in compartments.



① Disc slot
② Load button

- Press the Load button ②.
  A menu indicates which magazine compartments are currently loaded.
- **To select an empty magazine compartment:** Rotate ❪ ◎ ❫ or slide ← ◎ →.
- **To start loading:** Press ⊛.
  The message `Please Insert Disc <x>` will be displayed.
- Insert the DVD into the slot ② with the printed side upwards.
  The DVD changer pulls in the DVD. The message `Loading Disc <x>...` will be displayed.

ℹ If the magazine is full, you will first need to eject a disc.

Update Process

The update process starts once the DVD has been loaded.

COMAND checks whether the map software on the DVD matches the vehicle's navigation system and system software.

Map Software is not suitable for the Navigation System or the System Software

A message is displayed stating that the navigation update DVD with the new map data is not suitable for the system or the system software.

COMAND ejects the DVD.

- Remove the DVD from the slot.
- Have the system software updated by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

ℹ It will only be possible to update the map software once the system software has been updated.

Map Software matches the Navigation System and the current System Software

COMAND checks whether the DVD's map data has already been installed.

Map Data Is already installed

The version release and a corresponding message will be given on the display.

- **To confirm message:** Press ⊛.
  COMAND ejects the DVD.

Map Data is not yet installed

The version release and a query as to whether the update should be carried out will be given on the display.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.
  If No is selected, COMAND ejects the DVD automatically and the map data is not updated.
- ▶ Remove the DVD from the slot.
  If Yes is selected, the map data is updated.

Updating the Map Data

While the update is in progress, a corresponding message and a progress bar are displayed. The progress bar fills from left to right over the course of the update. The navigation system is not functional until the update is complete.

You cannot eject the DVD during the update. If you switch COMAND off during the update, this will interrupt the update and the update will resume at the point of interruption when the system is restarted.

While updating, COMAND may prompt you to change the DVD. A corresponding message is then displayed.

- ▶ Press the Load button [⏏].
  The magazine menu appears. The magazine compartment containing the current disc is highlighted.
- ▶ Press Ⓞ.
  COMAND ejects the DVD.
- ▶ Remove the DVD from the slot.
- ▶ Insert the DVD requested by COMAND.
  If the update has been completed successfully, a corresponding message is displayed.
- ▶ **To confirm message:** Press ⊛.
  COMAND ejects the DVD.
- ▶ Remove the DVD from the slot.
  The update is complete.

If the update has not been completed successfully, a message is displayed indicating that the map update is not possible.

- ▶ **To confirm message:** Press ⊛.
  COMAND ejects the DVD.
- ▶ Remove the DVD from the slot.

An unsucessful update may be caused by one of the following:

- DVD dirty or scratched.
- Overheating as a result of excessively high temperatures in the passenger compartment.

Input Restriction

There is an input restriction for vehicles in certain countries.

The restriction is active for vehicle speeds above approx. 3 mph. The restriction is deactivated as soon as the speed falls below approx. 2 mph.

Certain entries cannot be made when the restriction is active, e.g. a city or road entry.

This is indicated by the fact that certain menu items cannot be selected.

General Information

Operational Readiness of the Navigation System after the System Software Update

Sometimes the installed map software is no longer compatible following a system software update by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. In this case, the navigation system is not operational.

- ▶ **To update map software:** Proceed as described in the “Update Process” section (▷ page 101). Use map software compatible with the system software.

ℹ Please note that in this case the update must run through right to the end. If you cancel beforehand, the navigation system will still not be ready for operation.

After start-up or initial start-up, the navigation system must perform a position finding operation. As a result, you may have to drive for some time until precise route guidance takes place.

GPS Reception

The correct functioning of the navigation system is also dependent on the GPS reception. In certain situations, the GPS reception may be impaired, distorted or even impossible, e.g. in tunnels, multi-storey car parks or due to snow on the GPS antenna. If there is snow on the GPS antenna, you should remove it. The GPS antenna is at the rear on the vehicle's roof.

Route Guidance after Vehicle Transport

After vehicle transport (e.g. by ferry, car train or by towing) COMAND must determine the vehicle location again.

Position finding takes place automatically when the vehicle is driven off again, even if COMAND is switched off. The actual length of time may vary from case to case.

While the vehicle is determining its position, route guidance is subject to the following restrictions:

- Navigation announcements, route guidance displays and displayed street names do not match the actual location.
- COMAND does not issue any navigation announcements.
- The message `Off Mapped Road` and a direction arrow are displayed instead of the route guidance displays. The arrow indicates the direction of the destination.

ℹ Direction arrow accuracy is also dependent on correct vehicle position and/or direction.

Once the position finding operation has been completed, route guidance takes place again via navigation announcements and route guidance displays.

Interrupting Journey during Route Guidance

ℹ An interruption in the journey means parking the vehicle and switching off the vehicle.
The continuation of the journey means switching the vehicle on again and continuing to drive.

If you interrupt the journey during route guidance and continue it later, the following applies:

- If you continue the journey within 2 hours, COMAND automatically continues route guidance.
- If you continue the journey after 2 hours, route guidance is canceled. You will have to continue the canceled route guidance again manually (▷ page 137).

Measurement Units

The measurement units displayed in navigation mode are identical to those set in the instrument cluster.

Menu Overview

Navi
Setting route calculation mode
Selecting map orientation
Selecting POI symbols on map
Selecting traffic information on map
Selecting text information on map
Switching topographic map display on/off
Switching highway information on/off
Switching the automatic reading of traffic messages on/off
Switching Audio Fadeout on/off

Navi
Setting Block Area
SIRIUS Service

Submenu Overview

Guide	**Traffic**	**Route (with active route guidance)**	**Pos. (with active route guidance)** **Position**	**RPT. (with active route guidance)**	**Dest. (with active route guidance)** **Destination**
Selecting POI in depicted map segment, if available	Displaying traffic messages Reading aloud traffic messages	Opening detour function Having alternative route calculated Opening destination information Opening route browser	Save Vehicle Position or crosshairs position ℹ The crosshairs position can be saved when the crosshairs are displayed on the map. Vehicle Position Map Destination Position Map Center Map on Stopover Display compass screen	Repeating current navigation announcem.	Cancel route guidance Entering destination • using address • from memory • from Last destination memory • from POIs • using map • as stopover destination Save destination

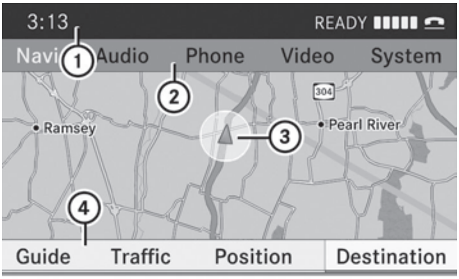
Switching to Navigation Mode

▶ Press the function button NAVI.

or

▶ Select `Navi` in the main function menu. This displays the map with the menu system either displayed or hidden.

ℹ If the message `Please insert the map DVD to activate Navigation.` appears instead of the map display, see (▷ page 100).



P82.87-3761-31

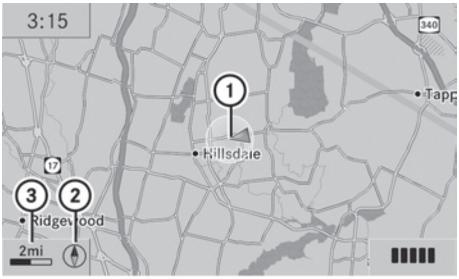
Map without activated route guidance and with menu system displayed

① Status line

② Main function line

③ Current vehicle location

④ Navigation submenu



P82.87-3762-31

Map without activated route guidance and with menu system hidden

① Current vehicle location

② Set map orientation

③ Set map scale

Displaying/Hiding Menu System

- ▶ **To hide:** Slide ↑ ◎ and when the menu item `Full screen` is displayed press ⊛.

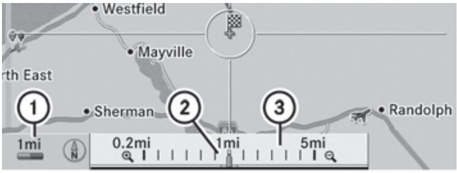
or

- ▶ Press the function button NAVI.
  The menu system is hidden. This displays the map in full screen mode.
- ▶ **To display:** In full screen map mode press ⊛.

Setting Map Scale

ℹ You can only set the map scale when the menu system is hidden (map in full-screen mode).

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ until the required map scale is set.
  The map scale ③ is displayed as soon as you start rotating ⟲ ◎ ⟳. Rotating clockwise makes the map smaller, rotating anticlockwise enlarges it.



P82.86-9976-31

① Currently set map scale as number

② Pointer indicating the currently selected map scale

③ Scale

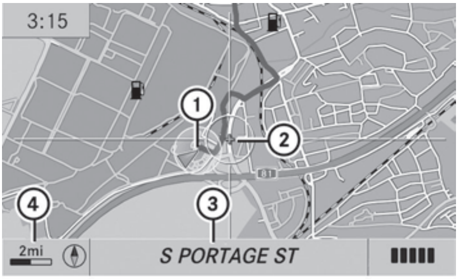
Saving Current Vehicle Location as Destination in the Last Destinations

- ▶ **To display menu system if applicable:** Press ⊛.
- ▶ **To save:** Select `Position` → `Save Vehicle Position`.
  COMAND saves the current vehicle location as destination in the last destinations memory. A window appears containing a corresponding message.
- ▶ **To exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ → or press the BACK button.

Scrolling the Map

ℹ You can only scroll the map when the menu system is hidden (map in full-screen mode).

- ▶ Hide menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).
- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓, ← ◎ → or ↗ ◎ ↙.
  Crosshairs will appear on the map.



P82.87-3763-31

① Current vehicle location
② Crosshairs
③ Information on crosshairs position
④ Set map scale

ℹ The display item ③ may for example be a road if corresponding data is available in the digital map and `Current Street` is activated. Or it displays the geo-coordinate position of the crosshairs if `Geo-coordinates` display is activated.

Saving crosshairs position as destination in the Last Destinations memory

- ▶ **To display menu system if applicable:** Press ⊛.
- ▶ **To save:** Select `Position` → `Save Crosshair Position`.
  COMAND saves the crosshairs position as a destination in the last destinations memory. A window appears containing a corresponding message.

Hiding crosshairs

- ▶ Press the BACK button.
  The crosshairs disappear and the map is set to the vehicle location.

or

- ▶ Set the map to the vehicle location, see description below.

Setting Map to Vehicle, Destination or Stopover Location

ℹ If you have moved the map, you can quickly move the map to the vehicle, destination or stopover location using this function. It is only possible to set it to the destination location when route guidance is active.

- ▶ **To display menu system if applicable:** Press ⊛.
- ▶ **To set map to vehicle location:** Select `Position` → `Vehicle Position Map`.
  This hides the crosshairs.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button if the crosshairs are displayed.
  This hides the crosshairs.
- ▶ **To set the destination location:** Select `Position` → `Destination Position Map`.
  The crosshairs position is then set to the destination.
- ▶ **To set the stopover location:** Select `Position` → `Stopover Position Map`.
  The crosshairs position is then set to the stopover.

Basic Settings

You can perform the settings listed below with route guidance inactive or active.

Route Mode

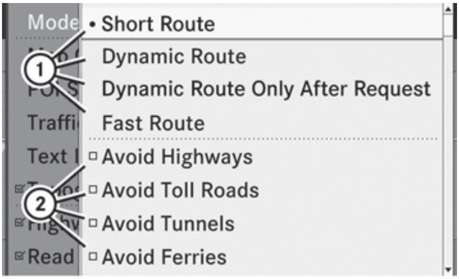
This function allows you to set the following route calculation modes and options for route guidance:

- `Short Route`
  COMAND calculates a route by minimizing the driving distance without taking into acount traffic messages.
- `Dynamic Route`
  COMAND calculates a route by minimizing the driving time and takes into account traffic messages received along the route. The navigation system thus can avoid traffic jams by recalculating the route dynamically.
- `Dynamic Route Only After Request`

Same as `Dynamic Route` with the exception that a message appears asking you whether you want to allow the rerouting or not.

- `Fast Route`

  COMAND calculates a route by minimizing the driving time without taking into acount traffic messages.
- `Avoid Highways`
- `Avoid Toll Roads`
- `Avoid Tunnels`
- `Avoid Ferries`
- `Avoid AutoTrains`


Mode
Traffi
Text I
Read
• Short Route
Dynamic Route
Dynamic Route Only After Request
Fast Route
☐ Avoid Highways
☐ Avoid Toll Roads
☐ Avoid Tunnels
☐ Avoid Ferries
1
2

P82.87-3766-31

① Route calculation mode

② Route options

Setting Route Calculation Mode

▶ Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

▶ Select `Navi` → `Mode`.

▶ Select `Short Route`, `Dynamic Route`, `Dynamic Route Only After Request` or `Fast Route`.

▶ **To exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.

Setting Route Options

▶ Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

▶ Select `Navi` → `Mode`.

▶ **To switch route option on/off:** Select required option.
Depending on the previous status, the option will be switched on ☑ or off ☐ .

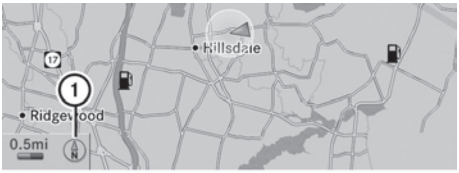
You may activate several options.

ℹ The calculated route may include ferry connections, for example, even if the operation `Avoid Ferries` has been activated.

ℹ If you change the route mode setting when route guidance is active, COMAND calculates a new route.

Map Display

Map Orientation


Hillsdale
17
Ridgewood
0.5mi
1
N

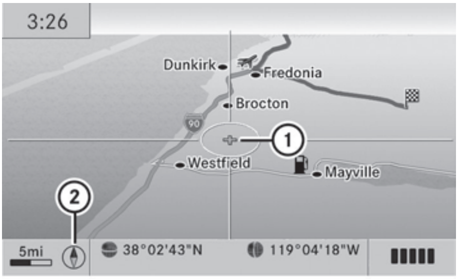
P82.86-9978-31

① Currently set map orientation

The following displays are possible:

- Ⓝ= orientation to north (the map display is oriented to the north, north is always at the top)
- ◈= Driving direction (the map display is oriented in the direction of travel, the direction of travel is always at the top, the orange tip of the symbol points northwards)
- ◈= Bird's-eye view

  (the map display is oriented in the direction of travel, the map projection reproduces the curvature of the earth's surface, the orange tip of the symbol points northwards)


3:26
Dunkirk
Fredonia
Brocton
90
Westfield
Mayville
①
②
5mi
38°02'43"N
119°04'18"W

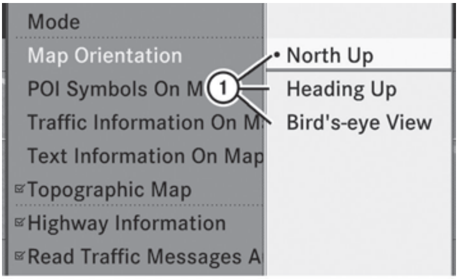
P82.87-3764-31

Example of map from bird's-eye view

① Current crosshairs location

② Currently set map orientation

- ▶ **To set map orientation:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 108).
- ▶ Select `Navi` → `Map Display`.
  A dot ● indicates the current setting.


Mode
Map Orientation
POI Symbols On M
Traffic Information On M
Text Information On Map
Topographic Map
Highway Information
Read Traffic Messages A
• North Up
Heading Up
Bird's-eye View
①

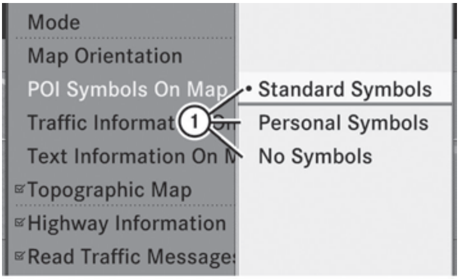
P82.87-3765-31

① Options for map orientation

- ▶ Select `North Up` or `Heading Up` or `Bird's-eye View`.
- ▶ **To exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ Hide menu systems if applicable (▷ page 106).
  The map orientation changes accordingly.

Setting POI Symbols

You can select which POIs are to be displayed as symbols on the map. Points of interests include, for example, gas station, hotels, cinemas and restaurants.


Mode
Map Orientation
POI Symbols On Map
Traffic Informat
Text Information On M
Topographic Map
Highway Information
Read Traffic Message
• Standard Symbols
Personal Symbols
No Symbols
①

P82.87-3767-31

① Options for POI symbols (▷ page 109).

- ▶ **To set:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).
- ▶ Select `Navi` → `POI Symbols On Map`.
- ▶ Select `Standard Symbols` or `Personal Symbols` or `No Symbols`.

The settings have the following effect:

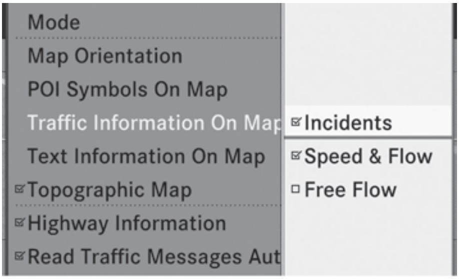
- `Standard Symbols`
  Displays the factory-set symbols
- `Personal Symbols`
  The list of POIs is displayed
- `No Symbols`
  No POI symbols are shown on the map.

ℹ The list indicates all symbols for all countries that are contained in the digital map. However, not all POIs are availbale in all countries. As a result, certain POI symbols may not be shown on the map even though the symbol display is switched on.

- ▶ **To exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ Hide menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

Traffic Information on Map

Provided you have a subscription to SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio Traffic Message Service, you can have the traffic information displayed on the map. There are three different categories of information you can select.


Mode
Map Orientation
POI Symbols On Map
Traffic Information On Map
Text Information On Map
☑Topographic Map
☑Highway Information
☑Read Traffic Messages Aut
☑Incidents
☑Speed & Flow
☐Free Flow

P82.87-3771-31

- **Incidents**

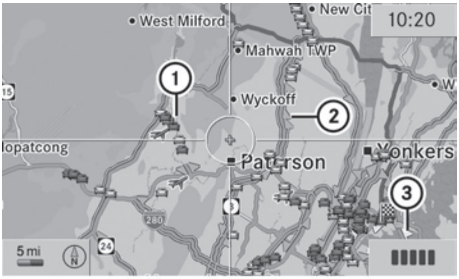
  Road sections marked by a yellow line ③ with arrows: traffic slowdown possible due to incidents (e.g. road work)
- **Speed and Flow**

  Road sections marked by yellow or red cars ①.

  Yellow cars: Traffic congestion, average speed 25 – 45 mph.

  Red cars: Traffic congestion, average speed 5 – 20 mph.
- **Free Flow**

  Road sections marked by a green line with arrows ②: free flow of traffic.


West Milford
New Cit
10:20
Mahwah TWP
①
Wyckoff
②
15
lopatcong
Paterson
Yonkers
③
280
5 mi
24

P82.87-3460-31

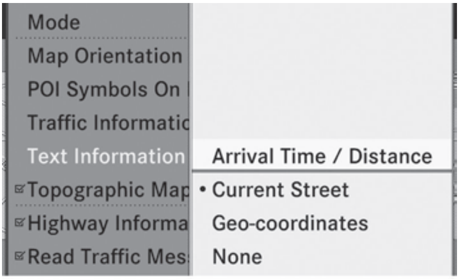
① Speed and Flow
② Free Flow
③ Incidents

Text Information on Map

You can have map information displayed at the bottom edge of the screen. By default the map information is set to `Arrival Time/ Distance`.

▶ **To set:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

▶ Select `Navi` → `Text Information On Map`.


Mode
Map Orientation
POI Symbols On
Traffic Informatio
Text Information
☑Topographic Map
☑Highway Informa
☑Read Traffic Mes
Arrival Time / Distance
• Current Street
Geo-coordinates
None

P82.87-3770-31

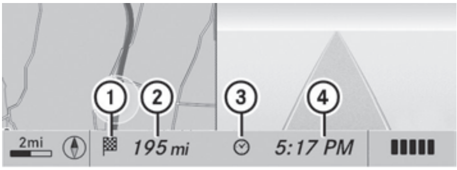
A dot • indicates the current setting.

▶ Select `Arrival Time/Distance` or `Current Street` or `Geo-coordinates` or `None`.

▶ **To exit menu:** Slide ← ◎ →.

▶ Hide menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

Time of Arrival/Distance to Destination


①
②
③
④
2mi
195 mi
5:17 PM

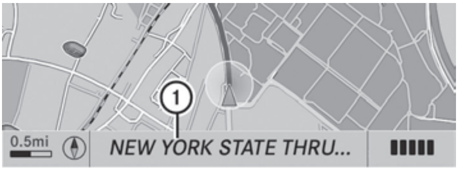
P82.87-3772-31

Map with display activated for time of arrival/ distance

① Symbol for destination
② Distance to the destination
③ Symbol for estimated time of arrival
④ Estimated time of arrival

ℹ This display can only be seen during route guidance. In the `Scroll Map` function you will see other data depending on the crosshairs position, for example a street name if the digital map supports this data.

Current Street

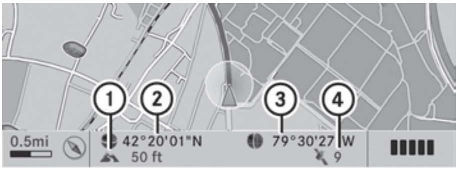


P82.87-3773-31

Map with road display activated

① Road name or road number, e.g. for highways

Geo-Coordinates Display



P82.87-3774-31

Map with geo-coordinates display activated

① Current, rounded height above sea level

② Coordinates display of the current vehicle location (latitude)

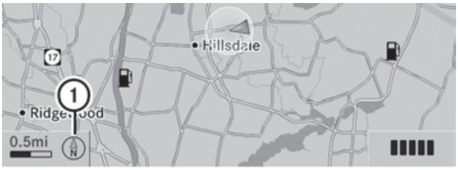
③ Coordinates display of the current vehicle location (longitude)

④ Number of visible GPS satellites.

ℹ Adequate GPS reception must be available for all displays. The altitude display ① may differ from actual altitude because the navigation system calculates it using the GPS signals.

ℹ In the `Scroll Map` function the display ① and ④ are not displayed.

“None” Menu Option



P82.87-3775-31

Map with display switched off

① Currently set map orientation

ℹ In the `Scroll Map` function you will see other data depending on crosshairs position, for example a road name if the digital map supports this data.

Topographic Map

You can have the map display enhanced with topographic features (e.g. mountain ranges, coloration based on relief information).

▶ **To set:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

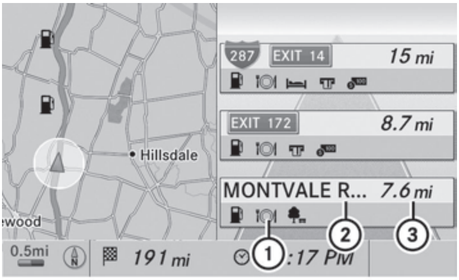
▶ Select `Navi` → `Topographic Map`.
Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched off ☐ or on ☑.

Highway Information

When driving on highways, you can have the next gas stations, service areas, etc. as well as the distance to them displayed in the right-hand half of the screen.

▶ **To set:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

▶ Select `Navi` → `Highway Information`.
Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched off ☐ or on ☑.



P82.86-9989-31

Example display: Function on

① Available points of interest

② Name of rest area or exit number

③ Distance from the current vehicle location

Read Traffic Messages Automatically

You can choose whether the traffic messages relevant for the route are read automatically or whether you have to start the reading manually using the `Traffic` submenu.

- **To set:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).
- Select `Navi` → `Read Traffic Messages Automatically`.
  Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched off ☐ or on ☑.

Audio Fadeout

The Audio Fadeout function, if activated, lowers the volume of the current audio source when a navigation announcement is issued. As soon as the navigation announcement has ended, the audio source will be played with the previous volume.

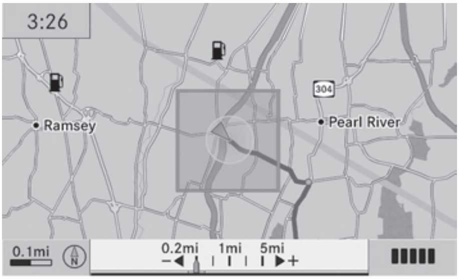
- **To activate:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).
- Select `Navi` → `Audio Fadeout`.
  Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched off ☐ or on ☑.

Block Area

You can define an area within the map display that is not to be used by the system in calculating a route, if possible.

ⓘ The calculated route may include a blocked area if the destination is within a blocked area or if the destination can only be reached using roads that lead through a blocked area. Highways cannot be blocked.

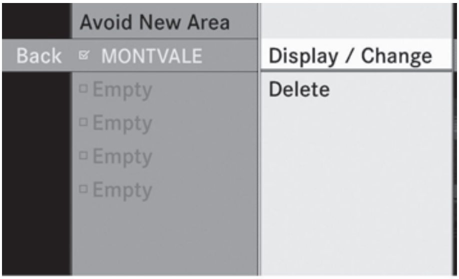
- **To set, change or delete:** Display menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).
- Select `Navi` → `Block Area`.
  If no areas were previously set, the map display appears ready to select an area. If areas were previously set, the blocked area list appears.
- **To set the map scale:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳.
- **To scroll the map:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓, ← ◎ → or ↘ ◎ ↖.
- **To define the center of the block area:** Press ◎.



P82.87-3769-31

The blocked area appears in red.

- **To change the size of the block area:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳.
- **To confirm the area and exit map display:** Press ◎.
  The area is added to the block area list.



P82.86-9983-31

A checked entry indicates an active block area.

ⓘ You can block several areas for the route calculation and activate or de-activate them by setting or removing the check mark.

Displaying and Changing an Existing Block Area

- **To select the area you want to display or change:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Select Options → Display/Change.
  The map display appears with the block area marked red.
- **To set the map scale:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳.
- **To scroll the map:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓, ← ◎ → or ↘ ◎ ↖.
- **To define the center of the block area:** Press ⊛.
- **To set the desired size of the block area:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳.
- **To confirm the area and exit map display:** Press ⊛.
- Hide menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

Defining a New Block Area

- Select Options → Avoid New Area
  The map is displayed.
- **To set the map scale:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳.
- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ until the desired size of the new block area is set.
- Slide ↑ ◎ ↓, ← ◎ → or ↘ ◎ ↖ to shift the new block area to the desired region.
- **To confirm the area and exit map display:** Press ⊛.
- Hide menu system if applicable (▷ page 106).

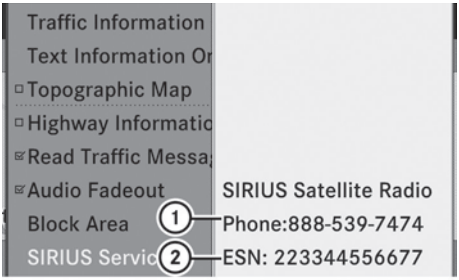
Deleting a Block Area

- **To select the area you want to delete:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Select Options → Delete.
  You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete the block area.
- Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes COMAND deletes the entry.

SIRIUS XM Traffic Service

You can display the SIRIUS XM Service information.

- **To display the SIRIUS XM service information:** Select Navi → SIRIUS Service



SIRIUS Satellite Radio
Phone:888-539-7474
ESN: 223344556677

P82.87-3814-31

① SIRIUS XM traffic information service phone number

② Serial number of your traffic information service module

Subscribing to SIRIUS XM Traffic Information Service

- Contact Traffic Information service provider at the telephone number displayed in the screen.

ⓘ It is also possible to activate the satellite service online. To do so please visit SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio's website at **http://www.sirius.com** (USA).

After the connection is made:

- Follow the instructions given by the operator.
  The activation process may take up to 10 minutes.

ⓘ If a subscription is not included with system purchase, credit card information is required to activate your account.

Navigation (Destination Input)

Introduction to Destination Input

⚠ **Warning!**

For safety reasons, only enter a new destination when the vehicle is stationary.

ℹ It is possible to enter a destination regardless of whether route guidance is active or inactive.

The following destination entry options are available:

- Entering a destination via the address (▷ page 114)
- Entering a destination from the destination memory (▷ page 122)
- Entering a destination from the last destinations (▷ page 123)
- Entering a POI (▷ page 126)
- Entering a destination via the map (▷ page 123)
- Entering a stopover destination (▷ page 124)
- Entering a destination via “Search & Send” (▷ page 125)

Entering a Destination via the Address

ℹ In some countries it is not possible to enter addresses at vehicle speeds above approx. 3 mph. The function becomes available again as soon as the speed falls below approx. 2 mph.

The following options are available for entering a destination via an address:

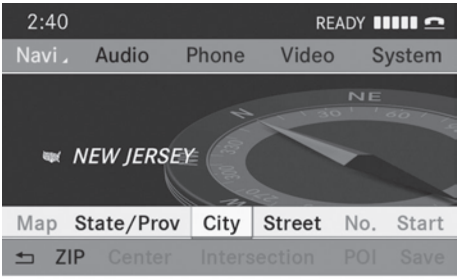
- Entering state/province, city/zip code and street
- Entering state/province, city and city center
- Entering state/province, city/zip code and street and house number
- Entering state/province, city/zip code and street and junction
- Entering street, state/province, city/zip code and house number

Route calculation can then be started (▷ page 121).

Opening Enter Destination Menu

▶ If necessary switch to navigation mode and display menu system (▷ page 105).

▶ Select `Destination` → `Address Entry`. The Enter Destination menu appears.



P82.87-3777-31

Enter Destination menu

Menu Items in Enter Destination Menu

Some menu items are not available or not yet available, depending on the address items entered for the address or the data for the digital map.

Example:
After the state/province has been selected the menu items `No.`, `Center`, `Intersection`, `Save` and `Start` are not available. Or the `ZIP` menu item is not available if the digital map does not contain any zip codes.

Selecting a State/Province

ℹ You can only select those states/provinces that are stored in the digital map.

▶ Select `State/Prov` in the Enter Destination menu.
A menu appears where you can choose one of the following lists:

- `Last States/Provinces`
- `States (U.S.A.)` or
- `Provinces (Canada)`.

▶ **To select a list:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ Press ◉.
The selected state/province list appears.

▶ **To selected a state/province:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ Press ◉.
The Enter Destination menu appears again. The selected state/province has been entered automatically.

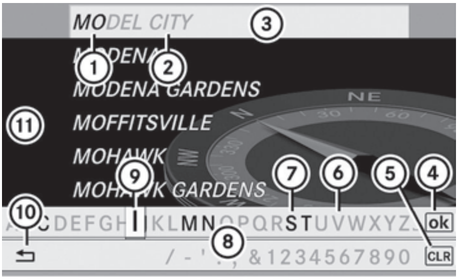
Entering a City

ⓘ You can only enter those cities that are stored in the digital map. Any zip code that has already been entered is deleted when a city is entered.

▶ In the Enter Destination menu, select `City`.
The city list is displayed with or without predictive speller. The display of the predictive speller depends on how many cities are available for the selected state/province.

City List with Predictive Speller

If this list is given in the display, the predictive speller ⑧ is activated automatically.



P82.86-9991-31

① Characters entered by the user
② Characters automatically added by the system
③ List entry that best matches the characters already entered
④ Switches to the list without speller
⑤ Press and hold deletes complete entry, press briefly deletes last character
⑥ Currently unavailable characters
⑦ Currently available characters
⑧ Predictive Speller
⑨ Currently selected character
⑩ Cancels an entry
⑪ List

ⓘ In the predictive speller ⑧ you can only select characters ⑦ that are currently available. The availability of the characters depends on the characters already entered and the data included in the digital map.

When entering characters, the list entry ③ always displays the city that best matches the characters already entered.
COMAND automatically adds matching letters ② to those characters ① already entered by the user.

Entering Characters

▶ **To select characters:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.

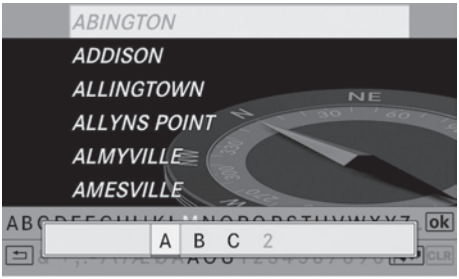
▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ to switch between the lines in the speller.

▶ **To confirm character selection:**
Press ◉.

Alternatively, you can enter characters using the number keypad (direct input).

Example:

▶ Press one of the number keys, e.g. **2**, once or repeatedly in succession.
After you have pressed it the first time, the character display appears at the lower edge of the display. The first letter available is highlighted.



P82.86-9956-31

You see which characters you can enter with that key. Each time you press the key, the next character is highlighted.

For example, key:

- Press once = A
- Press twice = B
- Press three times = C

Wait until the character display disappears.

Deleting an Entry

▶ **To delete individual characters:** Select CLR at the bottom right of the speller and press ◉.

or

▶ Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.

▶ **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press and hold ◉ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

▶ Press and hold CLR until the entire entry has been deleted.

Canceling an Entry

▶ Select ↩ at the bottom left of the speller and press ◉.

or

▶ Press the BACK button.
The Enter Destination menu appears.

Accepting First List Entry

▶ Press and hold ◉ until the Enter Destination menu appears.
Here you will find the accepted list entry.

or

▶ If COMAND can match the characters entered definitively to one city. The Enter Destination menu appears automatically with the selected list entry.

Switching to the City List without Predictive Speller

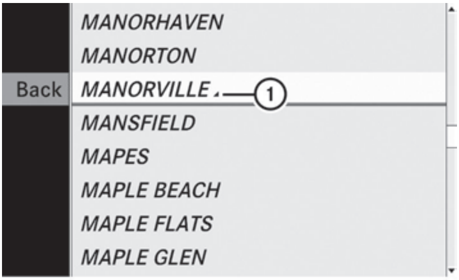
You can switch to the list at any point while entering characters.

▶ Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

or

▶ Select ok and press ◉.

City List without Predictive Speller



P82.86-9992-31

① ◢ symbol for additional options

▶ **To select a city:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ **To cancel selection:** Select Back and press ◉.

or

▶ Press the BACK button.

▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◉.
A town with the ◢ symbol exists more than once in the selected state/province. Confirming this type of town will result in a display of further information (state/

province/region) on the towns. The ◢ symbol then switches to ▼.

If no other options exist, the Enter Destination menu appears again in the display. COMAND has accepted the selected city and entered it automatically in the Enter Destination menu.

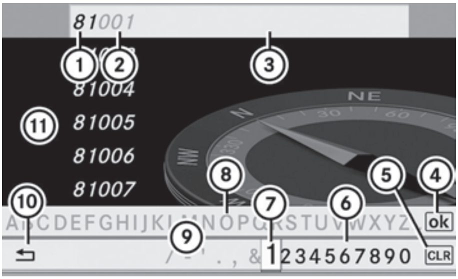
Entering a Zip Code

ℹ You can only enter those zip codes that are stored in the digital map. For some countries it is not possible to enter any zip code.

▶ In the Enter Destination menu select `ZIP`. The zip code list is displayed with or without predictive speller (▷ page 115). The display of the predictive speller depends on how many zip codes are available for the selected state/province.

Zip Code List with Predictive Speller

If this list is given in the display, the predictive speller ⑨ is activated automatically.



P82.86-9993-31

① Numbers entered by the user
② Numbers automatically added by the system
③ List entry that best matches the characters already entered
④ Switches to list without speller
⑤ Press and hold deletes complete entry, press briefly deletes last character
⑥ Currently available digits
⑦ Currently selected digit
⑧ Currently unavailable characters
⑨ Predictive Speller
⑩ Cancels entry
⑪ List

ℹ In the predictive speller ⑨ you can only select digits that are currently available. The availability of the characters depends on the characters already entered and the data included in the digital map.

When entering a digit, the list entry ③ always displays the zip code that best matches the characters already entered. COMAND automatically adds digits ② to those digits ① already entered by the user.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under “City List with Predictive Speller” (▷ page 115).

If COMAND can match the characters entered definitively to one city, the list without predictive speller appears with the best match highlighted.

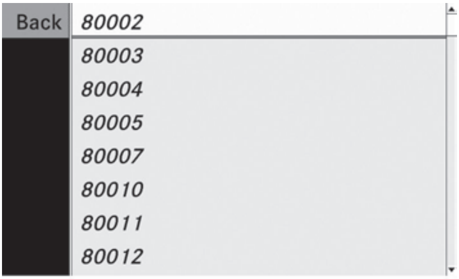
Switching to the Zip Code List without Predictive Speller

You can switch to the the list at any point while entering characters.

▶ Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

or

▶ Select ok and press ⊛.



Back

80002

80003

80004

80005

80007

80010

80011

80012

P82.86-9994-31

ZIP Code List without Predictive Speller

- ▶ **To select a zip code:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- ▶ **To cancel selection:** Select Back and press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button.
- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.

If COMAND can assign the zip code to a unique address, the Enter Destination menu is displayed again. The address data has been entered automatically. Now you can start the route calculation (▷ page 121).

If COMAND is unable to assign the zip to a unique address, the Enter Destination menu is also displayed again. The zip code has been entered automatically. To further limit the choice, you can now enter the street. When entering the street, only those streets within the area of the entered zip code are available.

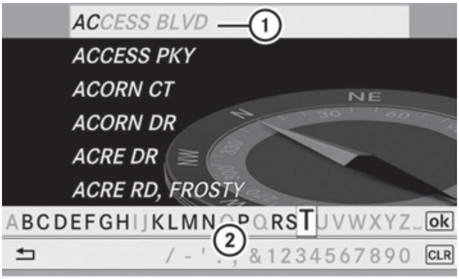
Entering a Street

ℹ Any city center that has already been entered is deleted when a street is entered. You can only enter those streets that are stored in the digital map.

- ▶ In the Enter Destination menu select Street.
  The street list is displayed with or without predictive speller. The display of the predictive speller depends on how many streets are available for the selected city, state or province.

Street List with Predictive Speller

If this list is given in the display, the predictive speller ② is activated automatically.



ACCESS BLVD

ACCESS PKY

ACORN CT

ACORN DR

ACRE DR

ACRE RD, FROSTY

P82.86-9995-31

① List entry that best matches the characters already entered

② Predictive speller

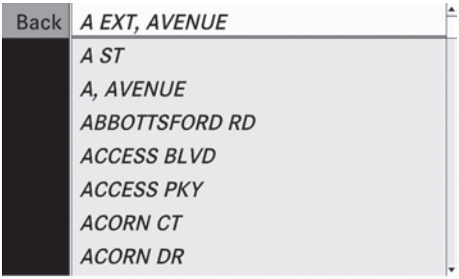
ℹ In the predictive speller ② you can only select characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on the characters already entered and the data included in the digital map.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry
- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under “City list with predictive speller” (▷ page 115).

Street List Without Predictive Speller



Back

A EXT, AVENUE

A ST

A, AVENUE

ABBOTTSFORD RD

ACCESS BLVD

ACCESS PKY

ACORN CT

ACORN DR

P82.86-9996-31

- **To select a street:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To cancel selection:** Select `Back` and press ◎.

or

- Press the BACK button.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.

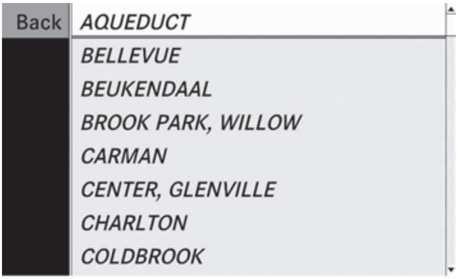
The Enter Destination menu appears again. COMAND has accepted the selected street and entered it automatically in the Enter Destination menu.

Now you can start the route calculation (▷ page 121).

Entering a City Center

ℹ You can only enter those city centers that are stored in the digital map.

- In the Enter Destination menu select `Center`.
  The city center list is displayed.


Back
AQUEDUCT
BELLEVUE
BEUKENDAAL
BROOK PARK, WILLOW
CARMAN
CENTER, GLENVILLE
CHARLTON
COLDBROOK

P82.86-9997-31

- **To select a city center:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To cancel selection:** Select `Back` and press ◎.

or

- Press the BACK button.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.
  After the confirmation, the Enter Destination menu appears again. COMAND has accepted the selected city center and entered it automatically in the Enter Destination menu.

Now you can start the route calculation (▷ page 121).

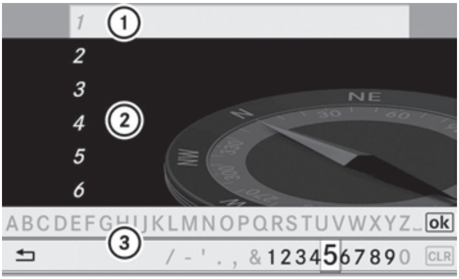
Entering a House Number

ℹ It is not possible to enter house numbers until a street has been entered. You can only enter house numbers that are stored in the digital map. The digital map does not contain all house numbers for all streets.

- In the Enter Destination menu select `No.`.
  The house number list is displayed with or without predictive speller. The display of the predictive speller depends on how many house numbers are available for the selected street.

House Number List with Predictive Speller

If this list is displayed, the predictive speller ③ is activated automatically.


1
①
2
3
4
②
5
6
NE
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
③
/ - ' . , & 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 CLR

P82.86-9998-31

① Here the list entry will appear that best matches the characters being entered

② List

③ Predictive speller

ℹ In the predictive speller ③ you can only select digits that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the data for the digital map.

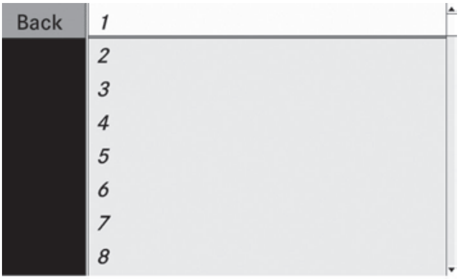
For the steps of

- Entering digits
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry

- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under “City list with predictive speller” (▷ page 115).

House Number List Without Predictive Speller



P82.86-9999-31

▶ **To select a house number:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ **To cancel selection:** Select `Back` and press ◎.

or

▶ Press the BACK button.

▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.
After the confirmation, the Enter Destination menu appears again. COMAND has accepted the selected house number and entered it automatically in the Enter Destination menu.

Now you can start the route calculation (▷ page 121).

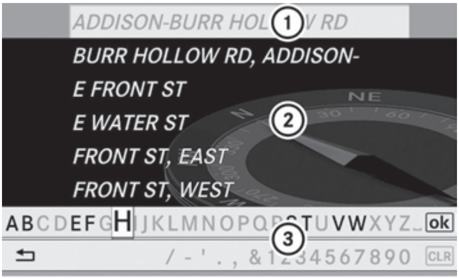
Entering a Junction

ℹ A junction can be entered once you have entered a street (▷ page 118). You can only enter those juntions that are stored in the digital map.

▶ In the Enter Destination menu select `Intersection`.
The junction list is displayed with or without predictive speller. The display of the predictive speller depends on how many junctions are available for the selected street.

Junction List with Predictive Speller

If this list is displayed, the predictive speller ③ is activated automatically.



P82.87-2103-31

① Here the list entry will appear that best matches the characters being entered

② List

③ Predictive speller

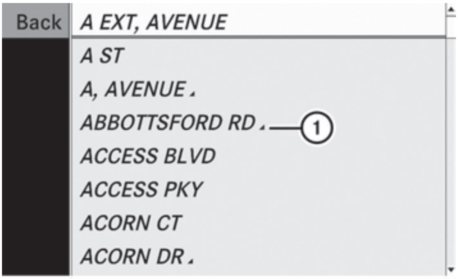
ℹ In the predictive speller ③ you can only select characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the data for the digital map.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry
- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under “City list with predictive speller” (▷ page 115).

Junction List Without Predictive Speller


Back
A EXT, AVENUE
A ST
A, AVENUE ◢
ABBOTTSFORD RD ◢
①
ACCESS BLVD
ACCESS PKY
ACORN CT
ACORN DR ◢
P82.87-2104-31

① ◢ symbol for additional options

- ▶ **To select a junction:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- ▶ **To cancel selection:** Select `Back` and press ⊛.

or

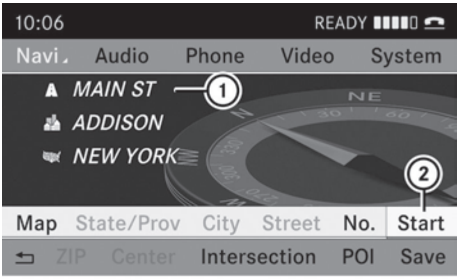
- ▶ Press the BACK button.
- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.
  After the confirmation, the Enter Destination menu appears again. COMAND has accepted the selected junction and entered it automatically in the Enter Destination menu.

  Now you can start the route calculation (▷ page 121).

Starting Route Calculation

ⓘ Route calculation can only be started once all the necessary address data has been entered.

- ▶ In the Enter Destination menu select `Start`.


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
MAIN ST
①
ADDISON
NEW YORK
②
Map
State/Prov
City
Street
No.
Start
ZIP
Center
Intersection
POI
Save
P82.87-3815-31

① Destination

② Starts route calculation and then starts route guidance

If route guidance is not active yet, the route calculation is started.

If route guidance is already active, you will be prompted to confirm that route guidance should be ended.

- ▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `Yes` COMAND cancels route guidance and starts the route calculation to the newly entered destination.

  If you select `No` COMAND resumes the active route guidance.

  During the route calculation, an arrow points towards the destination, and underneath the message `Calculating Route...`, for example, is displayed. Route guidance begins after the route has been calculated (▷ page 112).

ⓘ Route calculation takes some time. The length of time depends on, e.g. distance to the destination. COMAND calculates the route using the digital map data. The calculated route may deviate from the actual road situation, e.g. as a result of road works or incomplete map data. Please refer to the information on the digital map (▷ page 100).

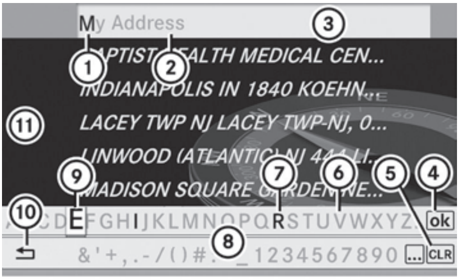
Entering a Destination from the Destination Memory

- ▶ If necessary switch to navigation mode and display menu system (▷ page 105).
- ▶ Select `Destination` → `From Memory`.
  The destination memory list with or without predictive speller is displayed. The display of the predictive speller depends on how many entries exist in the destination memory (▷ page 123).

ℹ There is always an entry in the destination memory with the name `My Address`. You can assign your home address, for example, to this entry and select it for route guidance (▷ page 145). This entry is at the top of the list in the destination memory.

Destination Memory List with Predictive Speller

If this list is given in the display, the predictive speller ⑧ is activated automatically.


My Address
BAPTIST HEALTH MEDICAL CEN...
INDIANAPOLIS IN 1840 KOEHN...
LACEY TWP NJ LACEY TWP-NJ, 0...
LINWOOD (ATLANTIC) NJ 444 LI...
MADISON SQUARE GARDEN NE...
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ok
&'+,.-/()#:_1234567890
...
CLR
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪

P82.87-2106-31

① Character entered by the user
② Characters added by the system
③ List entry that best matches the characters already entered
④ Switches to list without speller
⑤ Press and hold deletes complete entry, press briefly deletes last character
⑥ Currently unavailable characters
⑦ Currently available characters
⑧ Predictive speller
⑨ Currently selected character
⑩ Cancels an entry
⑪ Destination memory list

ℹ In the predictive speller ⑧ you can only select characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the content of the destination memory.

When entering characters, the list entry ③ always displays the destination memory entry that best matches the characters already entered. COMAND automatically adds matching letters ② to those characters ① already entered by the user.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry
- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under “City list with predictive speller” (▷ page 115).

Switching to the Destination Memory List Without Predictive Speller

You can switch to the list at any point while entering characters.

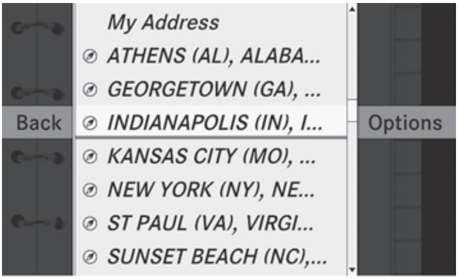
- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

or

- ▶ Select ok and press ◎.

If COMAND can match the characters entered definitively to one entry, the list appears automatically without the predictive speller.

Destination Memory List without Predictive Speller



My Address
ATHENS (AL), ALABA...
GEORGETOWN (GA), ...
INDIANAPOLIS (IN), I...
KANSAS CITY (MO), ...
NEW YORK (NY), NE...
ST PAUL (VA), VIRGI...
SUNSET BEACH (NC),...

P82.87-3816-31

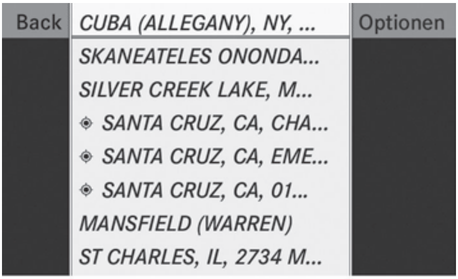
- **To select a destination:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To cancel selection:** Select `Back` and press ⊛.

or

- Press the BACK button.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.
- **To start route calculation:** Select `Start`.

Entering Destination from the Last Destinations

- If necessary switch to navigation mode and display menu system (▷ page 105).
- Select `Destination` → `From Last Destinations`.



CUBA (ALLEGANY), NY, ...
SKANEATELES ONONDA...
SILVER CREEK LAKE, M...
SANTA CRUZ, CA, CHA...
SANTA CRUZ, CA, EME...
SANTA CRUZ, CA, 01...
MANSFIELD (WARREN)
ST CHARLES, IL, 2734 M...

P82.87-3778-31

Last destinations list

- **To select a destination:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.
- **To start route calculation:** Select `Start`.

ℹ For more information on the “Last Destinations” memory go to (▷ page 147).

Entering Destination via the Map

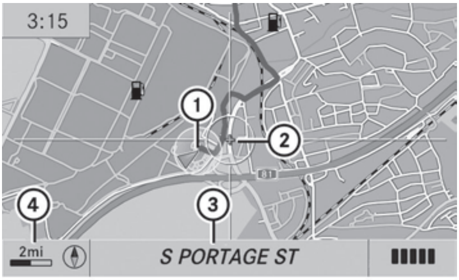
ℹ In some countries, entering destinations via the map is not possible at vehicle speeds above approx. 3 mph. The function becomes available again as soon as the speed falls below approx. 2 mph.
Using the destination entry via the map, you can also enter a destination that lies within the digital map but whose address data is not included in the digital map.

Opening the Map

- If at least a city has been entered, select `Map` in the Enter Destination menu (▷ page 114).

or

- If necessary, display the menu system in the map display (▷ page 105).
- Select `Destination` → `Using Map`.
In both cases, the map together with the crosshairs appears.



P82.87-3763-31

① Current vehicle location
② Crosshairs
③ Information on crosshairs position
④ Set map scale

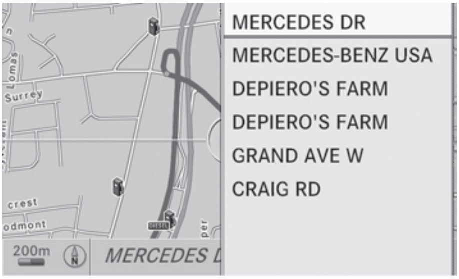
ℹ The display ③ depends on the settings selected in “Text information On Map” (▷ page 110). It may display the current road if corresponding data is available in the digital map. Or it displays the geo-coordinates position of the crosshairs if `Geo-coordinates display` is activated.

Moving the Map and Selecting a Destination

▶ **To move the map:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓, ← ◎ → or ↘ ◎ ↖.

▶ **To set the map scale:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳. Rotating clockwise makes the map smaller, rotating counterclockwise enlarges it.

▶ **To select a destination:** Press ⊛ once or repeatedly until the Enter Destination menu is displayed or, if COMAND cannot define a destination unambiguously, a list of possible destinations.



MERCEDES DR
MERCEDES-BENZ USA
DEPIERO'S FARM
DEPIERO'S FARM
GRAND AVE W
CRAIG RD

P82.87-2109-31

▶ **To select a destination:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ Press ⊛.

If the destination is within the digital map, COMAND tries to find the destination on the map.

If the destination can be found, the Enter Destination menu is displayed with the address of the destination. Otherwise you will see the entry `Destination From Map`.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select `Start`.

Entering Stopover Destination

ℹ When route guidance is activate, you can enter a stopover destination. Stopover destinations may be predefined destinations in the following categories suggested by COMAND for you to select:

- `ATM/Cash Machine`
- `Hospital`
- `Gas Station`
- `Parking Lot`
- `Restaurant`

However, you can also enter destinations other than those that have been predefined. Select the menu item `Other` for this purpose.

You can influence the route guidance to the main destination in a specific way using the stopover function. Once the stopover destination has been reached, COMAND automatically continues the route guidance to the main destination.

Entering Predefined Destinations

▶ If necessary switch to navigation mode and display menu system (▷ page 105).

▶ Select `Destination` → `Stopover`.

No Stopover Destination available yet

▶ Select a category.

A Stopover Destination exists

▶ **To change:** Select `Change Stopover`.

▶ Select a category.

▶ Select another stopover destination.

Selecting a Predefined Category

COMAND first searches for destinations along the route within the selected category. COMAND then searches for destinations in the vicinity of the vehicle's location.

If COMAND is unable to find any destination, a message to that effect will be displayed.

▶ Select OK.

▶ If necessary, select another category.
If COMAND finds destinations, a list is displayed in the right-hand part of the screen. Here you will find the stopover destinations in the selected category.

The list shows

- Name
- Information on the location of the stopover destination in relation to the direction of travel and the
- Current distance to the stopover destination.

▶ **To choose a destination:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ **To select a destination:** Press ◎.
The Enter Destination menu appears and displays the address of the destination.

▶ **To cancel a selection:** Select Back.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select Start.

Entering Another Destination as Stopover Destination

▶ If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display menu system (▷ page 105).

▶ Select Destination → Stopover.

▶ **To enter:** Select OTHER.
Choose from:

- Address Entry
- From Memory
- From Last Destination
- From POIs

▶ Select a menu item.

The rest of the destination entry will vary depending on the selection made:

For the Address Entry option see:
Entering a destination via address (▷ page 114).

For the From Memory option see:
Entering a destination from the destination memory (▷ page 122).

For the From Last Destination option see:
Entering a destination from the last destinations (▷ page 123).

For the From POIs option see:
Entering a POI (▷ page 126).

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select Start.

Deleting Stopover Destination

An existing stopover destination can be deleted.

▶ Switch to navigation mode if necessary.

▶ Select Destination → Stopover → Delete Stopover.
COMAND deletes the stopover destination and recalculates the route to the main destination.

Mbrace

ℹ The mbrace system is called Tele Aid in Canada.

Search & Send

ℹ In order to utilize Search & Send your vehicle must be equipped with mbrace, navigation, and an active mbrace subscription.

“Search & Send” is a navigation destination address entry service. A destination address located using Google Maps® can be delivered via mbrace directly to the navigation system in your vehicle.

Specify and Send a Destination Address

ℹ Please refer to any specific instructions provided on Google's website regarding entering or sending an address. The websites function differently and are subject to change.

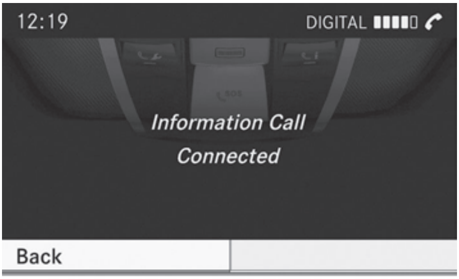
▶ Go to **http://maps.google.com** and enter a destination address in the address entry field.

▶ Locate and click on "Send". A dialog box appears.

- Select car.
- Select "Mercedes-Benz" from the "make" drop-down menu.
- Enter the email address you specified when you activated your mbrace account in the appropriate field.
- Click “Send”.

Retrieve Destination Address

- Press the mbrace Information button ☏ i to begin the download of the destination address to your vehicle's navigation system.

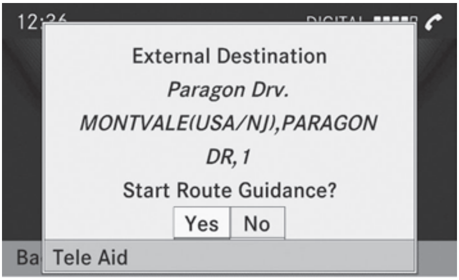


Information Call
Connected

P82.87-3808-31

ℹ If you have sent more than one destination address to your vehicle you must make one Information Call for each destination address download.

- Select Yes when the message appears asking if you would like to start navigation. This will open the start navigation screen (▷ page 121).



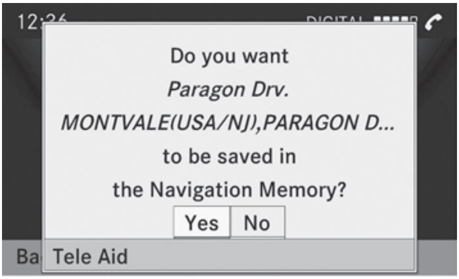
External Destination
Paragon Drv.
MONTVALE(USA/NJ),PARAGON
DR, 1
Start Route Guidance?

P82.87-3809-31

- Select Start.

or

- Select No if you wish to save the downloaded destination address in the From Memory destination list for future use.



Do you want
Paragon Drv.
MONTVALE(USA/NJ),PARAGON D...
to be saved in
the Navigation Memory?

P82.87-3810-31

ℹ Destination addresses will download in the same order they were sent. If you have multiple Mercedes-Benz vehicles equipped with mbrace and active accounts, each destination address sent will be retrievable by all vehicles associated with the email address you specified for your mbrace account.

Navigation (POI Input)

Entering a POI in Local Area of Destination

ℹ It is only possible to enter a POI in the local area of the destination when route guidance is active.

- In the map display with the menu system displayed, select Destination → From POIs → Near Destination.
- Continue by selecting the POI category (▷ page 127).

Entering a POI in the Vicinity of the Location

- ▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed, select `Destination → From POIs → Current Position`.
- ▶ Continue by selecting the POI category (▷ page 127).

Entering a POI in the Vicinity of a Specific Location

ℹ Using this option you will get a list of alphabetically sorted POIs that belong to the city entered.

Option 1

- ▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed, select `Destination → From POIs → Other City`.
- ▶ If necessary proceed as described under “Selecting a State/Province” (▷ page 114).
- ▶ **To enter a city:** Select `City`.
  The city input menu appears.
- ▶ Proceed as described in the “Entering a City” section (▷ page 115).
- ▶ After entering the city, continue by selecting the POI category (▷ page 127).

Option 2

- ▶ Enter an address in the Enter Destination menu (▷ page 114).
- ▶ Select `POI`.
- ▶ Continue by selecting the POI category (▷ page 127).

Entering POIs via Name Search

ℹ This function gives you access to all POIs that are available in the digital map.

- ▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed (▷ page 105), select `Destination → From POIs → Search By Name`.
  This displays a list of all POIs in the digital map and the predictive speller.
- ▶ Continue as described in the “POI List with Predictive Speller” section (▷ page 130).

Entering a POI via Phone Number Search

ℹ This function gives you access to all POIs in the digital map stored with a phone number.

- ▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed (▷ page 105), select `Destination → From POIs → Search By Phone Number`.
  This displays a list of all POIs in the digital map sorted by phone number and the predictive speller.
- ▶ Continue as described in the “POI List with Predictive Speller” section (▷ page 130).

Choosing a POI Category

The categories and POIs available depend on the area for which you wish to enter the POI.

- POI in local area of destination:
  Alphabetically sorted categories and POIs sorted by distance in the vicinity of the destination location are available.
- POI in the vicinity of the location:
  Alphabetically sorted categories and POIs sorted by distance in the vicinity of the vehicle location are available.
- POI in a particular city:
  If you have only entered the country and the city, alphabetically sorted categories and alphabetically sorted POIs within the city limits are available.

  If you have entered more than the country and the city, alphabetically sorted categories and POIs sorted by distance in the vicinity of the address entered are available.

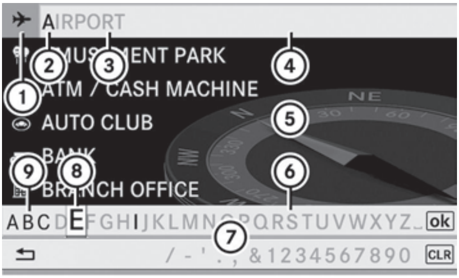
- POI via name search:
  An alphabetically sorted list of all POIs is available.
- POIs via phone number:
  A numerically sorted list is available.

Selecting a Category

Depending on the number of available categories, the main category list is displayed either with or without predictive speller (▷ page 129).

Main Category List with Predictive Speller

If this list is given in the display, the predictive speller ⑦ is activated automatically.



P82.87-2110-31

① Symbol for main category
② Characters entered by the user
③ Characters automatically added by the system
④ List entry that best matches the characters already entered
⑤ Main category list
⑥ Currently unavailable characters
⑦ Predictive speller
⑧ Currently selected character
⑨ Currently available characters

ℹ In the predictive speller ⑦, you can only select characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the data included in the digital map.

When entering characters, the list entry ④ always displays the category that best matches the characters already entered. COMAND automatically adds matching letters ③ to those characters ② already entered by the user.

Entering characters

- ▶ **To select characters:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ to switch between the lines.
- ▶ **To confirm character selection:** Press ⊛.

Deleting an Entry

- ▶ **To delete individual characters:** Select `CLR` in the bottom line and press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the `CLR` button next to the COMAND controller.
- ▶ **To delete an entire entry:** Select `CLR` in the bottom line and press ⊛ until the entire entry is deleted.

or

- ▶ Press and hold the `CLR` button until the entire entry has been deleted.

Canceling an Entry

- ▶ Select Back in the bottom line and press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the `BACK` button.
  The previous menu appears.

Accepting First List Entry

- ▶ Press and hold ⊛ until the list appears without speller.

or

if COMAND can match the characters entered to one entry, the list appears automatically without the speller.

Switching to the Main Category List Without Predictive Speller

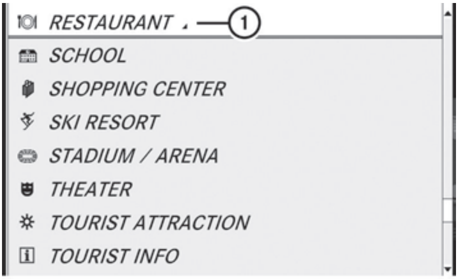
You can switch to the list at any point while entering characters.

▶ Slide ↑◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

or

▶ Select ok and press ⊛.

Main Category List Without Predictive Speller


RESTAURANT
①
SCHOOL
SHOPPING CENTER
SKI RESORT
STADIUM / ARENA
THEATER
TOURIST ATTRACTION
TOURIST INFO

P82.87-4130-31

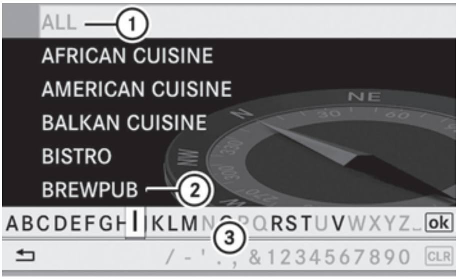
Example: Main category list for POIs

① Selected main category

▶ **To select a main category:** Slide ↑◎↓ or rotate ⟲◎⟳.

▶ **To cancel selection:** Press the BACK button.

▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.


ALL
①
AFRICAN CUISINE
AMERICAN CUISINE
BALKAN CUISINE
BISTRO
BREWPUB
②
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_
ok
③
/ - ' . , & 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
CLR

P82.87-2112-31

① Calls up all entries in the RESTAURANT main category

② Calls up all entries in the BREWPUB subcategory

③ Predictive speller

ⓘ In the predictive speller ③ you can only select characters that are currently available. The availability of the characters depends on the characters already entered and the data included in the digital map.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry
- Canceling an entry
- Switching to the list without predictive speller

proceed as described under "Main category list with predictive speller" (▷ page 128).

With the POI category list displayed:

▶ **To select a subcategory:** Slide ↑◎↓ or rotate ⟲◎⟳.

▶ **To cancel selection:** Press the BACK button.

▶ **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.
After selecting a subcategory you will see the list of POIs. This contains the available POIs for the subcategory that are located in the search area.

ⓘ If ALL is selected in the list, the POI list contains all the POIs in all subcategories of the RESTAURANT main category that are located in the search area. The list item OTHER at the end of the list contains all the POIs not assigned to any subcategory in the RESTAURANT main category that are located in the search area.

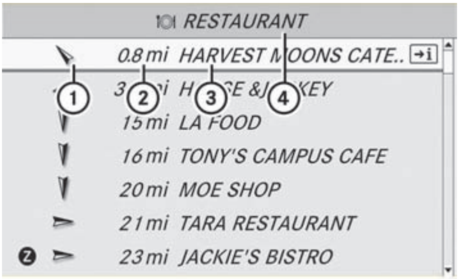
The selected main category contains no subcategories:

Selecting it immediately opens the POI list. The POI list then contains the available POIs for the main category that are located in the search area.

POI list

As an example, the illustration below shows the POI list for the main category of

RESTAURANT, subcategory BREWPUB, in the vicinity of the location.


RESTAURANT
0.8 mi HARVEST MOONS CATE..
3 mi HORSE &JOCKEY
15 mi LA FOOD
16 mi TONY'S CAMPUS CAFE
20 mi MOE SHOP
21 mi TARA RESTAURANT
23 mi JACKIE'S BISTRO
①
②
③
④

P82.87-3817-31

① Direction of destination
② Air-line distance to the destination
③ Point of interest
④ Selected category or subcategory

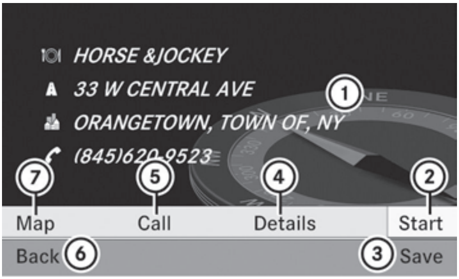
ℹ Depending on the POI category selected, COMAND uses different reference points when determining the distance to the destination:

- In the vicinity of the location:
  The distance to the POI from the current vehicle location.
- Local area of destination:
  The distance to the POI from the destination entered.

Selecting a POI

▶ Select the desired POI.
The full address of the selected POI is displayed.

ℹ If the selected POI has a telephone number entry, you can make a call to the POI if a mobile phone is connected to COMAND.


HORSE &JOCKEY
33 W CENTRAL AVE
ORANGETOWN, TOWN OF, NY
(845)620-9523
Map
Call
Details
Start
Back
Save
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦

P82.87-2114-31

① POI with address
② Starts route calculation
③ Saves POI as destination
④ Shows details of the address
⑤ Initiates a call, if available
⑥ Cancels selection
⑦ Displays the map

▶ **To cancel selection:** Press the BACK button.

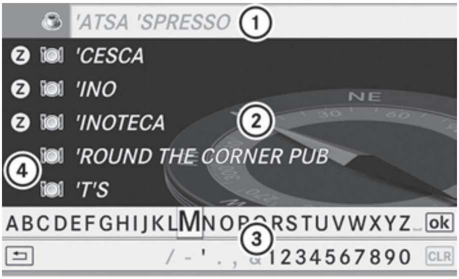
or

▶ Select Back
The POI list appears.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select Start.

POI list with predictive speller

If you have selected Entering a POI via Name Search (▷ page 127), the list of all available POIs in the digital map is displayed.


'ATSA 'SPRESSO
'CESCA
'INO
'INOTECA
'ROUND THE CORNER PUB
'T'S
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
/ - ' . , α 1234567890 CLR
①
②
③
④

P82.87-4442-31

① First list entry after opening the list
② POI list
③ Predictive speller
④ Category symbols

ℹ In the predictive speller ③ you can only select characters that are currently available. The set of characters that is available depends on those already entered and the data included in the digital map.

For the steps of

- Entering characters
- Deleting an entry
- Accepting first list entry
- Canceling an entry

proceed as described under "Main category list with predictive speller" (▷ page 128).

Selecting a POI

To accept first list entry:

▶ Press and hold ⊛ until the list appears without speller.

or

If COMAND can match the characters entered definitively to one entry, the list is displayed without predictive speller with the matching entry highlighted.(▷ page 130).

You can switch to the list at any point while entering characters.

▶ Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the speller.

or

▶ Select `ok` and press ⊛.

▶ **To display the full address of the POI:** Select ok and press ⊛.

▶ **To cancel selection:** Press the `BACK` button.

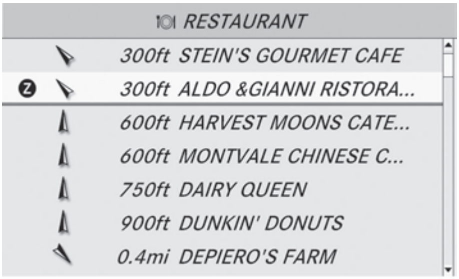
or

▶ Select `Back`.
The POI list appears.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select `Start`.

ZAGAT® Rating Service

Entries with the Z symbol contain additional ZAGAT information. ZAGAT is a service that evaluates restaurants, for example, in different categories like food, decor, service etc., supplies the average price level (cost) and a general description.

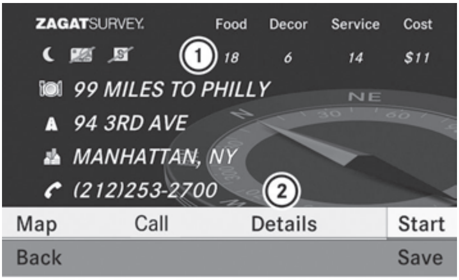


RESTAURANT

300ft STEIN'S GOURMET CAFE
Ⓩ 300ft ALDO &GIANNI RISTORA...
600ft HARVEST MOONS CATE...
600ft MONTVALE CHINESE C...
750ft DAIRY QUEEN
900ft DUNKIN' DONUTS
0.4mi DEPIERO'S FARM

P82.87-2118-31

After you have selected the entry with the Z symbol the next display includes the Zagat ratings.



ZAGATSURVEY.	Food	Decor	Service	Cost
①	18	6	14	$11

99 MILES TO PHILLY
94 3RD AVE
MANHATTAN, NY
(212)253-2700 ②

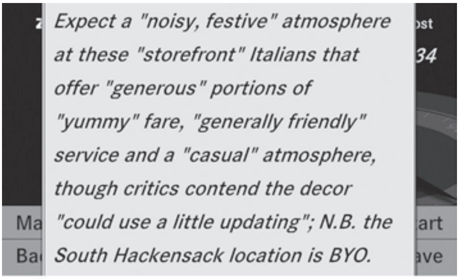
P82.87-3819-31

① ZAGAT Ratings
② Display details

The following symbols may appear:

- Moon: serves after 11pm
- Crossed out S: closed on Sundays
- Crossed out credit card: does not accept credit cards

▶ **To see description:** Select `Details`.



Expect a "noisy, festive" atmosphere at these "storefront" Italians that offer "generous" portions of "yummy" fare, "generally friendly" service and a "casual" atmosphere, though critics contend the decor "could use a little updating"; N.B. the South Hackensack location is BYO.

P82.87-2120-31

ZAGAT example description

Entering a POI via the Map

ⓘ If the crosshairs are visible on the map, you can enter POIs in the vicinity of the crosshairs. If the crosshairs are not visible, you can enter POIs in the vicinity of the current vehicle location.

▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed (▷ page 105) select `Guide`.
POIs are available:

Depending on the map scale selected, POI symbols are displayed on the map. The scale starting at which symbols are displayed on the map varies from symbol to symbol.

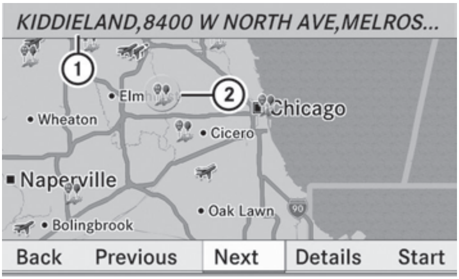
You can select which symbols COMAND should display (▷ page 108). The POI nearest to the center of the screen is selected automatically.

No POIs available:

A corresponding message is displayed.

ⓘ This message is also displayed if the menu item `No Symbols` under `Map Display` has been selected (▷ page 108).

▶ **To confirm message:** Press ⊚.



P82.87-2121-31

① Information about the highlighted POI
② Highlighted POI

▶ **To select a POI:** Select `Next` or `Previous`.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select `Start`, see also (▷ page 121).
You will be asked whether the POI should be adopted as the destination.

▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
Route calculation starts if `Yes` is selected; a new POI can be chosen if `No` is selected.

Navigation (Route Guidance)

General Notes

⚠ **Warning**

COMAND calculates the route to the destination without taking account of the following, for example:

- Traffic lights
- Stop and right-of-way signs
- Lane merging
- Parking or stopping prohibited areas
- Other road and traffic rules and regulations
- Narrow bridges

COMAND may give incorrect navigation commands if the data in the digital map does not correspond with the actual road/ traffic situation. For example, if the traffic routing has been changed or the direction of a one-way road has been reversed.

For this reason, you must always observe applicable road and traffic rules and regulations during your journey. Road and traffic rules and regulations always have priority over the navigation commands generated by the system.

COMAND guides you to the destination by means of driving recommendations in the form of navigation announcements or route guidance displays.

ℹ The route guidance displays only appear if the display has been switched to navigation mode.

If, for some reason, you do not follow the navigation announcements or if you leave the calculated route, COMAND automatically calculates a new route to the destination.

If the map data contains corresponding information during route guidance, COMAND tries to avoid roads with limited passability, e.g. roads that are blocked for through-traffic and are for residents only.

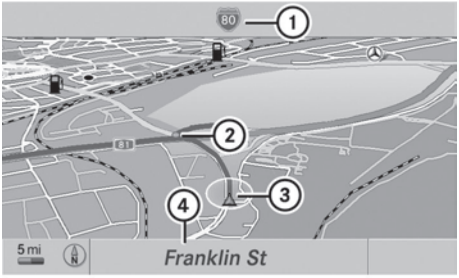
Driving Maneuver

Driving maneuvers are given in three phases:

- Preparation phase
- Announcement phase
- Maneuver phase

Preparation Phase

COMAND prepares you for the next driving maneuver. Based on the example display shown below, the announcement is made using `Prepare to turn right`. The display is not split and displays the map over the entire width.



P82.87-3820-31

① Next road to be taken

② Point at which the driving maneuver takes place (dot)

③ Current vehicle location, the tip of the triangle points in the vehicle’s direction of travel

④ Road currently being driven down

ℹ Depending on the basic setting selection in “Information on map” you will see in ④

- Information on “Arrival time/distance”
- Road currently being driven down
- Geo-coordinate display.

If you have selected the `None` menu item, the display is hidden.

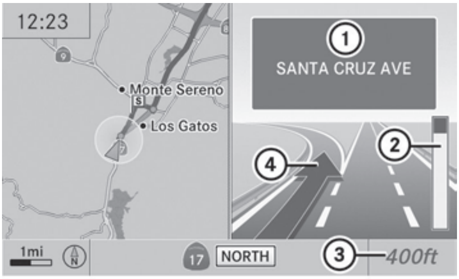
Announcement Phase

COMAND announces the imminent driving maneuver. Based on the example display shown below, the announcement is made 400 ft. ahead of the driving maneuver using `Please turn left in 400 ft. and follow the 'road name'.`

ℹ The announced distance to the maneuver depends on the class of road and its speed limit category.

The display is now split into two sectors. In the left half, you see the normal map view. The right side shows an enlarged section of the area around the junction (Crossing Zoom) or a 3D image of the road's course with the route indicating the next maneuver.

The example illustrated below shows the junction zoom in the right-hand half.



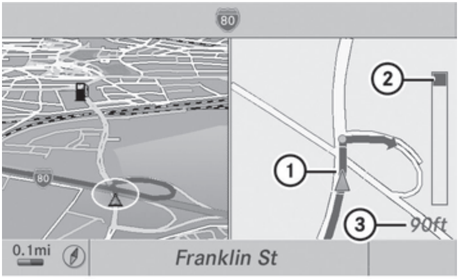
P82.87-3811-31

① Next road to be taken or sign post information
② Visual distance indicator to the driving maneuver
③ Distance information to the driving maneuver
④ Driving maneuver (exit to the left)

ℹ The solid part of the visual distance indicator ② reduces from bottom to top as the announced driving maneuver gets closer.

Maneuver Phase

COMAND announces the imminent change of driving maneuver. The distance to the driving maneuver is constantly updated. In the example display below, an announcement is made 90 ft. ahead of the driving maneuver using `Now turn right`. The display is split into two halves, as in the announcement phase.

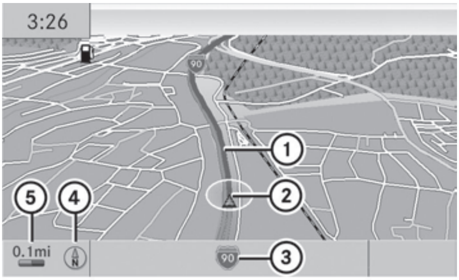


P82.87-2124-31

① Current vehicle location, tip of the triangle points in the vehicle's direction of travel
② Visual distance indicator to the next driving maneuver
③ Distance information to the driving maneuver

Once the driving maneuver is complete, COMAND will automatically switch back to full-screen display.

Example Display without Driving Maneuver



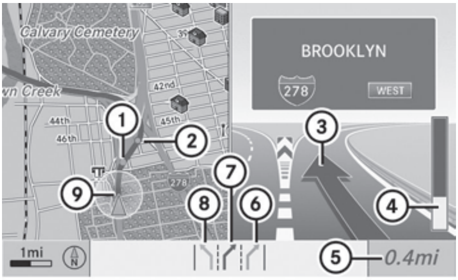
P82.87-3821-31

① Route
② Current vehicle location
③ Road currently being driven down
④ Set map orientation, for explanation and setting see (▷ page 108)
⑤ Set map scale, for explanation and setting see (▷ page 106)

Traffic Lane Recommendations

On multi-lane roads, COMAND may display traffic lane recommendations. For this there must be corresponding data available on the digital map.

With respect to the next two driving maneuvers, COMAND displays the traffic lane recommendations ⑥, ⑦ and ⑧.



P82.87-3779-31

① Point of the next driving maneuver
② Point of the second driving maneuver.
③ Next driving maneuver, exit on right here
④ Visual distance indicator to the next driving maneuver
⑤ Distance information to the next driving maneuver
⑥ Recommended lane
⑦ Possible lane
⑧ Lane not recommended
⑨ Current vehicle location, tip of the triangle points in the vehicle's direction of travel

Explanation of the Traffic Lane Recommendations

- Recommended lane ⑥:
  From this lane it is possible to carry out the next two driving maneuvers without changing lanes.
- Possible lane ⑦:
  From this lane it is only possible to carry out the next driving maneuver without changing lanes.
- Lane not recommended ⑧:
  From this lane it is not possible to carry out the next driving maneuver without changing lanes.

Depiction of the Traffic Lane Recommendations

The color depiction of the traffic lane recommendations differs depending on whether the display is set to day or night design.

Lane	Day design	Night design
Recommended lane ⑥	Dark blue	Light blue
Possible lane ⑦	Light blue	Dark blue
Lane not recommended ⑧	Grey	Grey

Destination or Destination Region Reached

Once you have reached your destination, a checkered flag is displayed and route guidance is ended automatically.

Off-road and Off-map

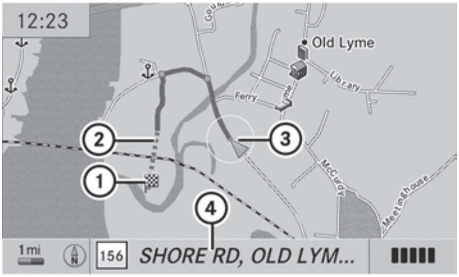
⚠ **Warning**

The COMAND navigation system may direct you to off-road routes that your vehicle may not be capable of traversing through without damaging your tires, wheels or vehicle. It is the driver's sole responsibility to determine the suitability of the route. Off-road routes may be of varying conditions and their appropriateness for use may be affected by various factors such as time of day, time of year and immediate weather conditions that cannot be judged or taken into consideration by the COMAND system.

Route Guidance to an Off-road Destination

COMAND can also guide you to destinations that are within the area covered by the digital map, but are not themselves included on the map. Such destinations are off-road destinations, which you can enter, for example, by entering the destination via the map.

In this case, COMAND guides you on roads known to the system for as long as possible using navigation announcements and route guidance displays.



P82.87-3804-31

① Off-road destination

② Off-road route segment (dashed line)

③ Current vehicle location, tip of the triangle points in the vehicle's direction of travel

④ Road name, if available

When the vehicle is entering the area that is not covered by the digital map, the screen is split. On the right half of the screen an arrow appears that points to the off-road destination ① and the system announces: `You have reached your destination area. Please follow the arrow on the display`. When the vehicle comes close to the destination the message `You have reached your destination` is given.

Route Guidance from an Off-road Location to a Destination

If the vehicle location is within the area covered by the digital map, but the map itself does not contain any information on the location, the vehicle is in an off-road position. COMAND can guide you from such a position to a destination.

At the start of route guidance you will see the message `Off Mapped Road`, an arrow and the distance to the destination. The arrow indicates the direction of the actual destination.

The blue marking for the route on the map starts from the nearest road known to the system.

As soon as the vehicle is travelling again on a road known to the system, route guidance continues in the usual manner.

Route Guidance from an Off-map Location to a Destination

If the vehicle location is outside the area covered by the digital map, then the vehicle is in an off-map position. COMAND can guide you from such a position to a destination.

At the start of route guidance you will see the message `Off Map`, an arrow and the distance to the destination. The arrow indicates the direction of the actual destination.

The blue marking for the route on the map starts from the nearest road known to the system.

As soon as the vehicle is travelling again on a road known to the system, route guidance continues in the usual manner.

Off-road During Route Guidance

The actual path of the road may deviate from the data in the digital map due to road work.

In cases like this, the system is temporarily not able to locate the vehicle location on the digital map; the vehicle is thus in an off-road position.

The display then shows the message `Off Mapped Road`, an arrow and the distance to the destination. The arrow indicates the direction of the actual destination.

As soon as the vehicle location is found again, route guidance continues in the usual manner.

Navigation Announcements

⚠ **Warning**

Navigation announcements are intended to direct you while driving without diverting your attention from the road and driving.

Please always use this feature instead of consulting the map display for directions. Consulting the symbols or map display for directions may cause you to divert your attention from driving and increase your risk of an accident.

ℹ During an active telephone call, the navigation announcements are suppressed.

If you have missed an announcement, you can call up the current announcement at any time.

- **To request current announcement:** In map view with the menu system (▷ page 106) displayed, select RPT.
- **To switch off navigation announcements:** During the announcement, press the 🔇 button.
  You will briefly see the message: The driving instructions have been muted.
- **To switch navigation announcements back on manually:** In map view with the menu system (▷ page 106) displayed, select RPT.

or

- Start a new route calculation (▷ page 121).

or

- If COMAND is switched on again or the engine is restarted.
- **To set the volume of the announcements:** Set the volume during the automatic announcement (▷ page 89).

or

- Call up an announcement manually by selecting RPT in map view with the menu system displayed.
- Adjust the volume.

Audio Fadeout

The Audio Fadeout function, if activated, lowers the volume of the current audio source when a navigation announcement is issued. As soon as the navigation announcement has ended, the audio source will be played with the previous volume (▷ page 89).

Canceling Route Guidance

- In the map display with the menu system displayed (▷ page 106) select Destination → Cancel Route Guidance.

Resuming Route Guidance

- Select Destination → Continue Route Guidance in map view with the menu system displayed.
  COMAND calculates the route.

Detour Function

ℹ The Detour function blocks a route segment ahead. You can set the length of the block. COMAND calculates a detour route if possible.

- Select Route → Detour in map view with the menu system displayed.

▶ **To set the length of block:** Select Longer or Shorter repeatedly until the required length is set.
The blocked segment is highlighted in red/white on the map. Shown at the top of the display is the length of the blocked segment and the route segment to which the block goes.

▶ **To cancel the function:** Select Back.

▶ **To start route calculation:** Select Start, see also (▷ page 121).

▶ **To delete block:** In map view with the menu system displayed, select Route → Detour → Delete.

Alternative Route

ℹ You can have other routes calculated for the original route guidance using the Alternative Route function.

▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed (▷ page 106) select Route → Alternative Route.
The display is split into two halves. On the left is the map, which displays one or more alternative routes between the start and the destination. The current route is highlighted in dark blue, other alternative routes are light blue (day mode). If the display is in night mode, the representation is inverse.

The right side of the display shows information on the active alternative route, e.g. length of the segment and the estimated time of arrival.

▶ **To select next or previous alternative route:** Select Next or Previous.
The selected route is now highlighted in dark blue.

▶ **To return to the original route guidance:** Select Back.

▶ **To start route guidance with the selected alternative route guidance:** Select Start.

Route Browser

ℹ The route browser provides an overview of the route. You can move along the route segment by segment using the route browser and view information and details about the route segments.

▶ In the map display with the menu system displayed, select Route → Route Browser.
The route browser is in the display.

The top of the display shows information on the highlighted route segment, e.g. the road name or number and the segment length of the road to be driven.

The highlighted route segment is identified on the map by its white color and red edge.

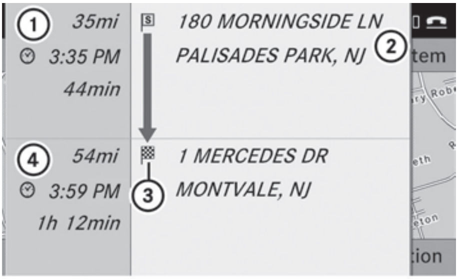
▶ **To display next or previous route segment:** Select Next or Previous.

▶ **To enlarge or reduce the map display:** Select ⊕ or ⊖.

▶ **To close route browser:** Select Back.

Displaying Destination Information

▶ In the map display with the menu system (▷ page 106) shown, select Route → Destination Information.
The destination information is given in the display.



35mi
3:35 PM
44min
180 MORNINGSIDE LN
PALISADES PARK, NJ

54mi
3:59 PM
1h 12min
1 MERCEDES DR
MONTVALE, NJ

P82.87-4131-31

Example display with main destination and stopover destination

① Distance/estimated time of arrival/estimated journey time to the stopover destination

② Stopover destination S

③ Main destination

④ Distance/estimated time of arrival/estimated journey time to the main destination 🏁

ℹ When calculating the estimated time of arrival, COMAND uses the time set on the COMAND as its basis. For this reason, the time on COMAND must be set correctly (▷ page 93). The calculation of the estimated time of arrival does not specifically take into consideration whether it is daylight saving time or standard time at the destination. It is not taken into consideration whether or not the destination is in a different time zone. The distance to the destination, the estimated time of arrival and the estimated remaining journey time ①, ④ are not displayed until the route calculation is complete.

▶ **To close the destination information:** Slide ← ◎ →.

or

▶ Press the BACK button.

Navigation (Traffic Messages)

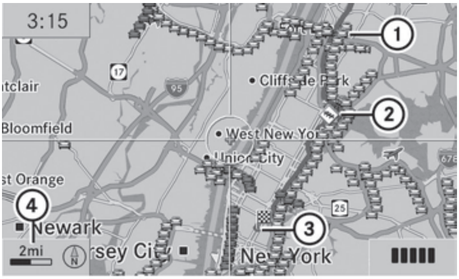
ℹ Optional satellite radio equipment and a subscription to SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio service provider are required for the satellite radio reception referred to here. You can find more information on SatRadio in chapter “Satellite Radio” (▷ page 221).

COMAND can receive and incorporate traffic messages via satellite radio into the navigation system. Traffic report messages and map symbols can then be viewed in the COMAND display.

Real-Time Traffic Notifications in the Map

COMAND can display certain traffic events in the map. The notifications are shown in the map scale range from 0.05 mi to 20 mi.

▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ until the required map scale is set when the menu system is hidden (map in full-screen mode) (▷ page 106).



P82.87-4450-31

① Marker symbols for the extension of the affected route section

② Symbol for event on the route (speed and flow)

③ Destination

④ Map scale

Real-Time Traffic Notification Symbols

Symbol	Description	Traffic Notifications in Map Display	Traffic Report Lists	Traffic Report Message
	Warning (red)	Appears at the beginning of the affected road section if route guidance is active and route goes through the event area.	Appears with warning entry type	Appears with warning entry type
	Incident (yellow)	Appears at the beginning of the affected road section if route guidance is active and route goes through the incident area.	Appears with incident entry type	Appears with incident entry type
	Traffic jam on route (Speed and flow)	Appears at the beginning of traffic congestion (average speed 25 – 45 mph) if route guidance is active and route goes through congested area. Yellow car symbols could appear in combination with this symbol.	Appears with traffic jam on route (stop and go) entry type	Appears with traffic jam on route (stop and go) entry type
	Traffic jam on route (Speed and flow)	Appears at the beginning of traffic congestion (average speed 5 – 20 mph) if route guidance is active and route goes through congested area. Red car symbols could appear in combination with this symbol.	Appears with Traffic jam on route entry type	Appears with Traffic jam on route entry type
	Blocked section on route	Appears at the beginning of a blocked area if route guidance is active and route goes through blocked area. X X X X symbols could appear in combination with this symbol.	Appears with Blocked section entry type	Appears with Blocked section entry type
Yellow line with arrows	Incidents	Possible obstacles for traffic flow (e.g. road work) Appears on the affected side (direction) of the road	(Not possible)	(Not possible)

Symbol	Description	Traffic Notifications in Map Display	Traffic Report Lists	Traffic Report Message
Green line with arrows	Free flow	No obstacles for traffic flow Appears only on the free-flow side (direction) of the road	(Not possible)	(Not possible)
Red line with arrows	Warning message	Event on the road Appears on the affected side (direction) of the road	(Not possible)	(Not possible)

Displaying Real-Time Traffic Reports

- ▶ If necessary, switch to navigation mode and show the menu system (▷ page 106).
- ▶ Select `Traffic`.

If you see a dialogue box displaying the message `No Traffic Messages`,
this either means:

- Messages were not yet received
- There are no messages available

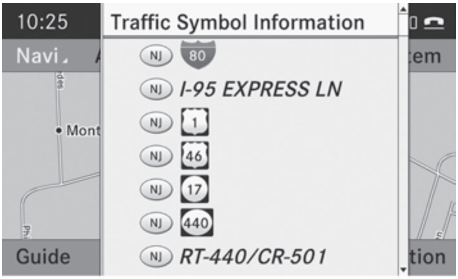
- ▶ **To cancel the search:** Select `Cancel`.
- ▶ **To close the message:** Select `OK`

If there are traffic reports, you will see a list.

The content of the list varies depending on whether route guidance is active or not.

List When Route Guidance is not Active

The list shows all the roads, areas or regions for which messages are available.


10:25
Navi
Mont
Guide
Traffic Symbol Information
NJ 80
NJ I-95 EXPRESS LN
NJ 1
NJ 46
NJ 17
NJ 440
NJ RT-440/CR-501
tem
tion

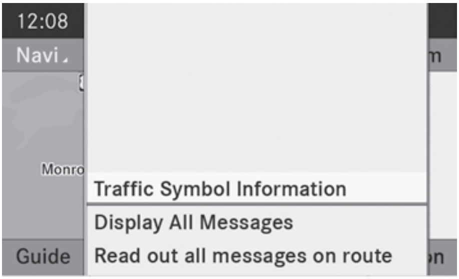
P82.87-4451-31

ⓘ A traffic message may also concern an area or region rather than a road, e.g. impaired visibility due to fog.

- ▶ **To read a traffic report:** Select a road, an area or region.

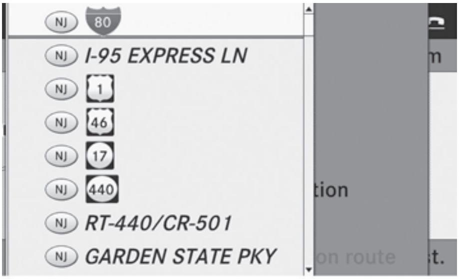
List When Route Guidance is Active

The list first shows roads, areas or regions on the route for which there are traffic reports.


12:08
Navi
Monro
Guide
Traffic Symbol Information
Display All Messages
Read out all messages on route

P82.87-3459-31

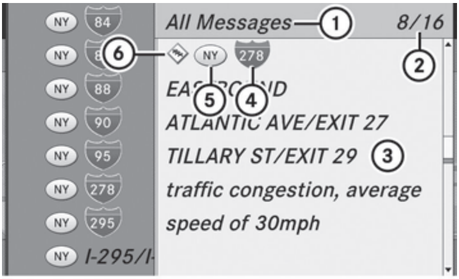
- ▶ **To display all messages:** Select `Display All Messages`.
  You will see a list of all roads, areas or regions for which reports are available, including those that do not affect the route.


NJ 80
NJ I-95 EXPRESS LN
NJ 1
NJ 46
NJ 17
NJ 440
NJ RT-440/CR-501
NJ GARDEN STATE PKY
tion
on route

P82.87-4304-31

- **To display a traffic message:** Select a road, area or region from the list.
- **To close the list:** Slide ←◎→ once or repeatedly.

Example of a Traffic Message


NY 84
NY
NY 88
NY 90
NY 95
NY 278
NY 295
NY I-295/I
All Messages
8/16
NY 278
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥

EASTBOUND
ATLANTIC AVE/EXIT 27
TILLARY ST/EXIT 29
traffic congestion, average speed of 30mph

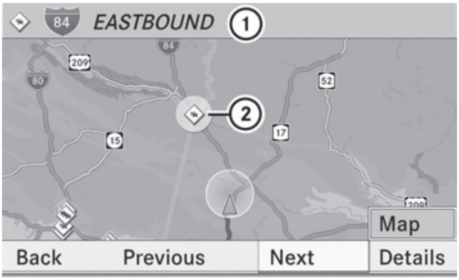
P82.87-3780-31

① Depending on your selection: `Messages on the Route` or `All Messages`
② Message 8 of 16 for the road affected
③ Text of message
④ Road, area or region for which there is a message
⑤ State/province designation
⑥ Icon for message type, e.g. speed and flow message

- **To scroll within the message or to the next message:** Slide ↑◎↓.
- **To return to the message list:** Slide ←◎→

Traffic Symbol Information

- **To display traffic symbol information:** Select `Traffic Symbol Information`.

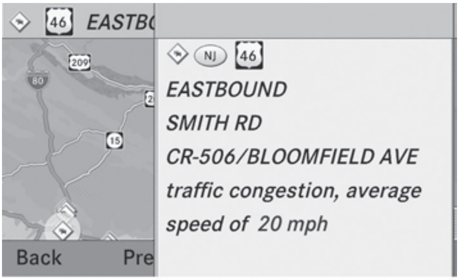

84 EASTBOUND
①
②
Map
Back
Previous
Next
Details

P82.87-3444-31

Example display

① Road concerned
② Icon for message type, e.g. Speed and flow message

- **To display next or previous symbol information:** Select `Next` or `Previous`.
The symbol is highlighted.
- **To change the map display:** Select `Map`.
You can zoom and pan the map display and select other traffic messages.
- **To select the symbol:** Press ◎.
- **To display details:** Select `Details`.


46 EASTB
NJ 46
Back
Pre

EASTBOUND
SMITH RD
CR-506/BLOOMFIELD AVE
traffic congestion, average speed of 20 mph

P82.87-3445-31

Details of a traffic symbol information

- **To leave the details display:** Slide ←◎→.
- **To leave the symbol information display:** Select `Back`.

Read-aloud Function

The read-aloud function is only available when route guidance is active. It can read out traffic reports on the route. You can set the language (▷ page 99) and the read-aloud speed (▷ page 94).

If the automatic reading function of traffic messages is activated, incoming traffic messages are read aloud automatically (▷ page 112).

- If necessary, switch to navigation mode and show the menu system (▷ page 106).
- Select `Traffic` → `Read out all messages on route`.

COMAND reads out the messages in sequence.

ⓘ The `Messages on the Route` menu item has no function if there are no messages relating to the route.

- **To cancel read-out of current message:** Select `Cancel Read-aloud Function`.

or

- Press the 🔇 button.

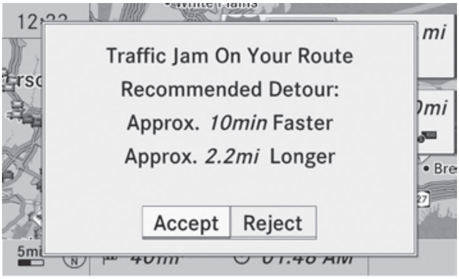
COMAND reads the current message aloud and then ends the read-aloud function.

Dynamic Rerouting

COMAND can recalculate the route by taking into account traffic messages received along the route.

You can set the options for dynamic rerouting in the Navi menu (▷ page 107).

If you have set the option to `Dynamic Route Only After Request` and COMAND recalculates a route, a message appears asking you whether you want to allow the rerouting or not.



Traffic Jam On Your Route
Recommended Detour:
Approx. 10min Faster
Approx. 2.2mi Longer

P82.87-3813-31

- **To accept the rerouting:** Select `Accept`.
- **To continue on the original route:** Select `Reject`.

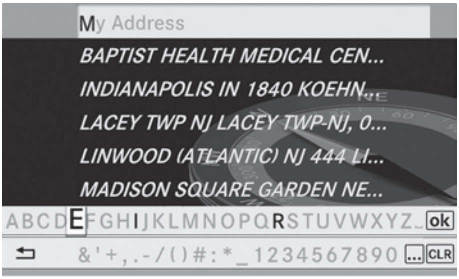
Navigation (Destination Memory)

Home Address

ⓘ The destination memory always contains an entry named `My address` which is at the top of the list. You may wish to assign your home address to this entry, for example. If the `My address` (⊘ icon) entry already contains data that can be used for navigation, you can select it for route guidance.

Assigning Home Address for First Time or Changing Home Address

- If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display the menu system (▷ page 106).
- Select `Destination` → `From Memory`.
  If there are more than 8 entries in the destination memory, the destination memory list with predictive speller is displayed, otherwise the destination memory list is displayed without predictive speller (▷ page 123).
  If the list appears without the input characters, the entry `My address` is highlighted automatically.


My Address
BAPTIST HEALTH MEDICAL CEN...
INDIANAPOLIS IN 1840 KOEHN...
LACEY TWP NJ LACEY TWP-NJ, 0...
LINWOOD (ATLANTIC) NJ 444 LI...
MADISON SQUARE GARDEN NE...
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ok
&'+,.-/()#:*_1234567890 CLR

P82.87-2128-31

Switching to the Destination Memory List Without Predictive Speller

- Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the predictive speller disappears.
  The entry My Address is highlighted automatically unless you have entered a character using the predictive speller.

If characters have been entered using the predictive speller:

- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or ↑ ◎ slide in the list until the My Address entry is highlighted.

or

- **To assign an address for the first time:** Press and hold ⊛ until the speller disappears.
  The entry My Address is highlighted automatically in the list.
- **To exit the menu:** Select Back.
  Subsequent operation depends on whether you enter the address or wish to use an address book entry that can be used for navigation as My address.

Entering or Changing Your Address

- If necessary, change to the destination list without speller.
- **To enter the address for the first time:** Press ⊛ and select New Entry.
- **To change the existing address:** Select Options → New Entry.
  In both cases, the address input menu appears.
- Enter the address. Proceed in the same way as you would enter a destination as described in the “Entering a destination by address” section (▷ page 114).
- Select Save after you have entered the address.
  COMAND then stores the entry. You will see a message and then the address menu with the selected address. Start is highlighted automatically.

Using an Address Book Entry as Home Address

- If necessary, change to the destination list without speller (▷ page 144).
- **To assign an address for the first time:** Press ⊛ and select Assign to Address Book Entry.
- Select Home or Work if applicable.
- **To change home address:** Select Options → Assign to Address Book Entry.
- Select Home or Work if applicable.
- In both cases you will see a list with or without predictive speller depending on the number of address book entries.
- Select the desired address book entry.
  Proceed as described in the “Searching for an address book entry” section (▷ page 162).

ⓘ Information on how to link address book entries with navigation data can be found in “Assigning a destination to an address book entry” (▷ page 146).

- **To confirm your selection:** Press ⊛.
  An address is assigned for the first time:
  COMAND then stores the entry. You will see a message and then the address menu with the selected address. Start is highlighted automatically.
  The address is changed:
  A prompt appears, asking if you really wish to overwrite My Address.

- Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes, COMAND overwrites the destination. You will see a message and then the address menu with the selected address. Start is highlighted automatically.
  If you select No, the list will reappear.

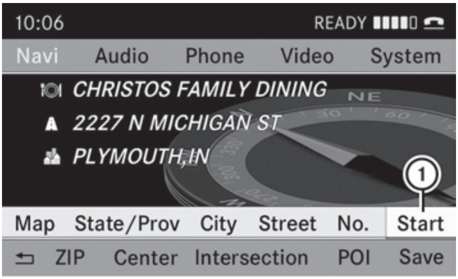
Selecting Home Address for Route Guidance

ⓘ If the My Address (⊘ icon) entry already contains data that can be used for navigation, you can select it for route guidance. If not, then first assign a destination to this entry (▷ page 143).

- If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display the menu system (▷ page 106).
- Select Destination → From Memory.
  You will see a list with or without predictive speller depending on how many entries exist in the address book.
- **Destination memory with predictive speller:** Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the list appears without the predictive speller.

or

- Select ok at the bottom right in the predictive speller.
- **Destination memory list without input characters:** Press ◎.



CHRISTOS FAMILY DINING
2227 N MICHIGAN ST
PLYMOUTH,IN

P82.87-2129-31

① Start route calculation to your address

You will see the address entry menu with the address data for your own address. Start is highlighted automatically.

Starting Route Calculation

- Press ◎.
  Once the route has been calculated, route guidance begins (▷ page 121).

Storing a Destination in the Destination Memory

ⓘ This function also stores the destination in the address book. COMAND creates an address book entry that contains the complete, navigable address data. You can then select this entry in the address book and start route guidance to the address from there.

After the Address Has Been Entered

- Select Save after you have entered the address in the address input menu.
  You can now select storage options.

During Route Guidance

- If necessary, show the menu system (▷ page 106).
- Select Destination → Save Destination.
  You can now select storage options.

Accepting from the Last Destinations

- Show the menu system, if necessary.
- Select Destination → From Last Destinations.
  The list of previous destinations appears.
- **To select a destination:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To confirm the destination:** Press ◎.
  The address of the destination is displayed.

▶ Select Save.
You can now select memory options.

Selecting Memory Options

Saving Destination Without Name

▶ Select Save Without Name.
COMAND stores the destination in the destination memory and uses the address as the destination name.

or

▶ Select Save as My Address.
COMAND stores the destination in the destination memory as My Address.

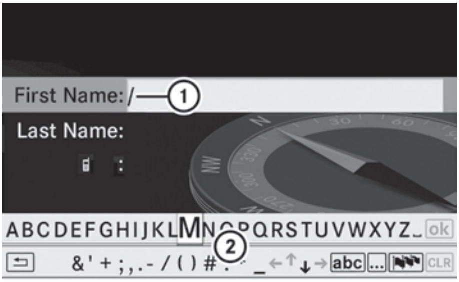
If the selected address book entry already contains address data that can be used for navigation (⊘ icon), a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to overwrite the existing data.

▶ Select Yes or No.
After selecting Yes, the Saving Procedure Successful message appears; selecting No cancels the procedure.

Saving Destination With Name

▶ Select Save With Name.

▶ Select the category desired, e.g. Home.
The input menu containing data fields and input characters appears.


First Name: /
①
Last Name:
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
②
&' + ; , . - / ( ) # . _ ← ↑ ↓ → abc ... CLR

P82.87-2130-31

① Selected data field with cursor

② Predictive speller

▶ **To enter data:** Continue with the step “Changing Data Field” in the “Creating a New Address Book Entry” section (▷ page 161).
COMAND stores the destination under the name entered.

Assigning Destination to an Address Book Entry

ⓘ This function assigns the complete, navigable address data to an existing address book entry. You can then select this entry in the address book and start route guidance to the address from there.

▶ Select Assign to Address Book Entry.

▶ Select the desired category, e.g. Home.
You will see a list with or without predictive speller depending on how many entries exist in the address book.

▶ Select the desired address book entry.
Proceed as described in the “Searching for an Address Book Entry” section (▷ page 162).
COMAND stores the data if the address book entry selected does not yet contain navigable address data.

If the selected address book entry already contains address data that support navigation, you will be prompted to confirm that you wish to overwrite the existing data.

▶ Select Yes or No.
If you select Yes, COMAND saves the data.

Deleting Destination Home Address Entry from the Destination Memory

▶ If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display the menu system (▷ page 106).

▶ Select Destination → From Memory.
You will see a list with or without predictive speller depending on how many entries exist in the address book.

▶ Select the destination you are looking for.
Proceed as described in the “Entering a

Destination from the Destination Memory" section (▷ page 122).

- Select Options → Delete.
  A prompt appears asking whether you wish to delete the destination.
- Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes, COMAND deletes the destination. You see a corresponding message.

ⓘ If the address data, which supports navigation, for the destination to be deleted has also been assigned to an address book entry, COMAND deletes this data there, too. If the corresponding address book entry does not contain any other data, e.g. phone numbers, COMAND deletes the entire address book entry.

Navigation (Last Destinations)

ⓘ COMAND automatically saves the last destinations used for the last route calculation. If the memory is full, COMAND deletes the oldest destination. You can also save a destination from the last destinations to the destination memory. Here it is saved permanently.

Saving a Destination Permanently in the Destination Memory

- Proceed as described in the "Entering Destination from the Last Destinations" section (▷ page 123).

Saving the Vehicle Position in the List of Last Destinations

- If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display the menu system (▷ page 105).
- Select Position → Save Vehicle Position.
  COMAND saves the current vehicle position as a destination in the list of last destinations.

Saving the Crosshair Position in the List of Last Destinations

ⓘ A crosshair appears on the map if you have moved the map manually. You can store the crosshair position as a destination in the list of last destinations.

- **If necessary, display the menu system:** Press ⊙.
- Select Position → Save Crosshair Position.
  COMAND saves the crosshair position as a destination in the list of last destinations.

Deleting One of the Last Destinations

- If necessary, switch to navigation mode and display the menu system (▷ page 105).
- Select Destination → From Last Destinations.
  The list of last destinations appears.
- Select the desired destination.
- Select Options → Delete.
  A query appears.
- Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes, COMAND deletes the destination. You see a corresponding message.

Telephone

Safety Precautions

⚠ **Warning**

A driver's attention to the road must always be his/her primary focus when driving. For

▷▷

your safety and the safety of others, we recommend that you pull over to a safe location and stop before placing or taking a telephone call. If you choose to use the mobile phone while driving, please use the handsfree device and only use the mobile phone when weather, road, and traffic conditions permit.

Some jurisdictions prohibit the driver from using a cellular mobile phone while driving a vehicle.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

⚠ **Warning**

You and others may damage your health due to excessive electromagnetic radiation. By using an external antenna, the possible health risks of electromagnetic fields, which are under discussion among the scientific community, should be largely prevented.

General Information

Vehicle Equipment

ℹ This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Making Calls via Bluetooth® Interface

The telephone function via the Bluetooth® interface is available in conjunction with a Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.

With a suitable mobile phone, you can use COMAND's hands-free feature to download contacts from your mobile phone (Phone Book Access profile) and electronic business cards (vCards) via the Bluetooth® interface.

Suitable Mobile Phones

Further information on suitable mobile phones and connecting Bluetooth-enabled mobile phones to COMAND is available via the Internet at **http://www.mbusa-mobile.com**. Or call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372) (US), or Customer Relations at 1-800-387-0100 (Canada).

Interruptions to the Connection While Driving

Interruptions to the connection may occur if

- there is inadequate network coverage in certain regions
- you are switching from one transmitting/ receiving station (cell) to another and there is no voice channel available in this cell
- you are using a SIM card that is not compatible with the available network
- when using a mobile phone with "Twincard", the mobile phone is simultaneously logged into the network with the second SIM card.

Operating Options

If the mobile phone is connected with COMAND via the Bluetooth® interface, you can operate the phone using the following devices:

- Keypad on the COMAND control unit
- Multifunction steering wheel
- Voice Control

The explanations in this section assume that the mobile phone is connected to COMAND via the Bluetooth® interface. Exceptions are explicitly described.

Functional Restrictions

Under the following circumstances, the phone may not yet be useable:

- If it is not yet logged into a network. The phone will try independently to log into a network. If no network is available, you will not be able to make “911” emergency calls. If you try to make an outgoing call, the message `No Service` appears briefly.

Activating the Mobile

Mobile Phone With Bluetooth® Interface

Prerequisites for the Mobile Phone

For making calls using COMAND via the Bluetooth® interface, you will need a Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.

ℹ Not all mobile phones available on the market are comparably suitable. Further information on suitable mobile phones and connecting Bluetooth-enabled mobile phones to COMAND is available via the Internet at **http://www.mbusa-mobile.com**. Or call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372) (US), or Customer Relations at 1-800-387-0100 (Canada).

Activating Bluetooth®

Before you begin activation of your mobile phone connection via the Bluetooth® interface please ensure it is compatible with Bluetooth® handsfree profile 1.0 or higher (see mobile phone operating guide):

▶ Switch on the mobile phone and enter the PIN, if applicable (see mobile phone operating guide).

▶ Activate Bluetooth® connection on the mobile phone (see mobile phone operating guide).

ℹ On certain mobile phones, not only do you have to activate the Bluetooth® function but the device must also be made “visible” for other devices.

Each Bluetooth® device has a Bluetooth® device name. It is recommended to give the device a personal name, by which you can clearly recognize your mobile phone.

ℹ If the Bluetooth® function on the COMAND is switched off, the message `Bluetooth not activated in system settings`. appears.

▶ Activate Bluetooth® connection on COMAND (▷ page 96).

Registering a Mobile Phone (Authorizing)

When you use your mobile phone in conjunction with COMAND for the first time, you must register (authorize) it.

It is possible to register several mobile phones. The connection is always established to the mobile phone that was activated last. When you authorize a new mobile phone, it is activated automatically. You can switch between the authorized mobile phones (▷ page 151).

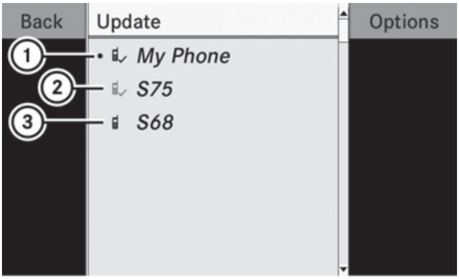
Searching for a Mobile Phone

▶ In the phone submenu select `Phone` → `Bluetooth Phones` → `Update`.
COMAND searches for suitable Bluetooth® phones within range and enters them in the phone list.

ℹ The duration of the search procedure depends on the number and type of Bluetooth® phones. The search may take a few minutes.

When first entering the device list and before running an update, the black dot ● indicates the active phone (found and authorized).

After running an update:



P82.87-4443-31

① The check marks ✓ indicate if a phone has been authorized (black) or not (grey)

② Device not within range but previously authorized (▯✓ appears in grey)

③ Device within range but not yet authorized

Phone icons indicate if a phone is found (black) or not (grey).

ℹ If the new device you are looking for will not appear in the list and the device list already contains 15 devices, COMAND will ask you to de-authorize (▷ page 151) one or more authorized devices. You will then have to start the search again.

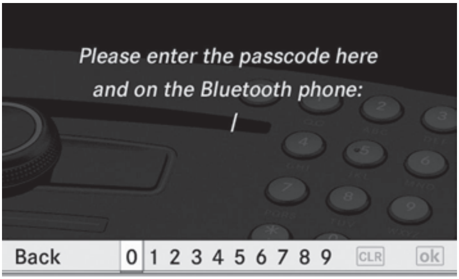
- ▶ **To start search again:** Select `Update`

Entering Passcode

- ▶ Select the as yet unauthorized device (no check mark yet) from the list.
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Authorize`

or

- ▶ Press ⊛.
- ▶ The input menu for the passcode appears.


Please enter the passcode here and on the Bluetooth phone:

P82.86-9973-31

ℹ The passcode is any number chosen by you between one and sixteen digits in length. We recommend to use at least four digits because this improves the quality of the encryption during connection. The passcode can differ during each authorization for each device. You must enter the same number on COMAND and on the device to be authorized. Please also refer to the instructions in the mobile phone operating guide.

- ▶ **To enter from COMAND:** Select the digits in the menu bar one after the other.
- ▶ **To correct entry:** Select CLR.
- ▶ **To cancel entry:** Select `Back`.
- ▶ **To confirm entry:** Select ok .

If a Bluetooth® connection is established successfully, you will be prompted to enter a code on the mobile phone (see mobile phone operating guide).

- ▶ Enter the same passcode on the mobile phone as you did on COMAND.
  The device is authorized. You can now make calls via COMAND's hands-free device using the authorized mobile phone.

External Authorization

If COMAND cannot find your mobile phone, this may be due to special security settings on your mobile phone. In this case, you can check whether, conversely, your mobile phone can find COMAND.

COMAND's Bluetooth® device name is “MB Bluetooth”.

- ▶ In the phone submenu select `Phone` → `Bluetooth Phones` → `Update` → `Options` → `External Authorization`.
- ▶ Start the Bluetooth® search on the mobile phone (see mobile phone operator's guide).

- Select COMAND ("MB Bluetooth") on the mobile phone.
- When prompted to do so, enter the passcode on the mobile phone and on COMAND.

ℹ After you have entered the passkey on COMAND and on the mobile phone, you have to trigger a connection to COMAND manually on some mobile phones.

Displaying Details on a Mobile Phone

- In the phone submenu select Phone → Bluetooth Phones.
- Select the mobile phone from the list.
- Select Options → Details.
  The details screen for the device is displayed.
- **To close the details screen:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.

or

- Press the ⊛ or the BACK button.

Deregistering (De-Authorizing) a Mobile Phone

- In the phone submenu select Phone → Bluetooth Phones.
- Select the authorized mobile phone.
- Select Options → De-Authorize.
  You will be asked whether the device should really be de-authorized.
- Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes, the authorization of the device is withdrawn.

ℹ If the authorization of a device which had been authorized in the past has been withdrawn, the device list no longer includes this device.

ℹ If you de-authorize the mobile phone on COMAND, you should also de-authorize "MB Bluetooth" on the mobile phone. Otherwise a future authorization may fail.

Activating Another Mobile Phone

If you have authorized several mobile phones, you can switch between the individual mobile phones.

When you authorize a new mobile phone, it is activated automatically. Only one mobile phone is active at a time.

- Select Phone → Bluetooth Phones.
- Select the mobile phone from the list.
- Press ⊛.
  The selected mobile phone is activated if the selected mobile is within reception range and its Bluetooth® function is switched on. Any previously activated phone is deactivated.

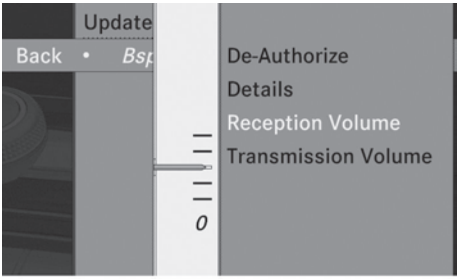
Setting Transmit and Receive Volume

ℹ These settings should normally not be changed as the factory settings are matched to most mobile phones.

ℹ Changes may result in significant impairments to the transmission quality. These settings may not be changed during an active phone call.

- In the phone submenu select Phone → Bluetooth Phones.
- Select the authorized mobile phone.
- Select Options → Reception Volume or Transmission Volume.

ℹ Reception and Transmission volume only appear for authorized devices.



P82.87-3783-31

- **To set the volume:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
  The red bar moves up or down.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ⊛.

“911” Emergency Call

⚠ **Warning**

The 911 emergency call system is a public service. Using it without due cause is a criminal offense.

The following conditions must be met for a “911” emergency call:

- Phone switched on
- Mobile phone network available
- Valid SIM card in the phone (not required on all mobile phone networks)
- Mobile phone connected with COMAND via Bluetooth®

If you are unable to make an emergency call, you will have to initiate rescue measures yourself.

The “911” emergency number is a public service. Any abuse is punishable by law.

- Enter the digits on the COMAND control unit (▷ page 159).
- Press the ☎ button.
  The phone establishes the connection.
- Wait until the emergency call center answers, then describe the emergency.

Submenu Overview

Phone	Call lists or Mic On/Off
Bluetooth Phones	Displays or deletes call lists
Download Contacts	Switches hands-free microphone on/off (during a call)
Delete Contacts	

Phone Main Menu

Switching to Phone Mode

- Press the function button TEL on the COMAND control unit.

ℹ If you press the TEL button with the phone main menu already open, the call list “Calls Dialed” appears (▷ page 156).

or

From another Main Function

- Select Phone → Phone → Phone.

ℹ If phone mode was active last, you only need to select “Phone”.

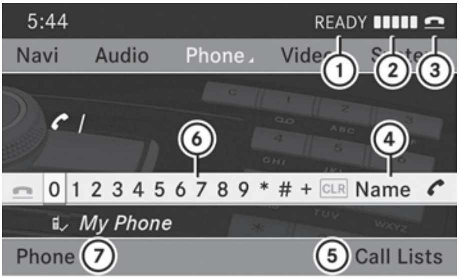
Within the Phone Function

- Select Phone → Phone.

or

- In the phone mode press the BACK button repeatedly until the phone main menu appears.

Phone Menu



P82.87-3784-31

① Phone service status
② Signal strength (if provided by phone)
③ Call status
④ Displays COMAND phone book
⑤ Displays call list selection
⑥ Input speller with characters for entering phone numbers
⑦ Device name of the connected mobile phone

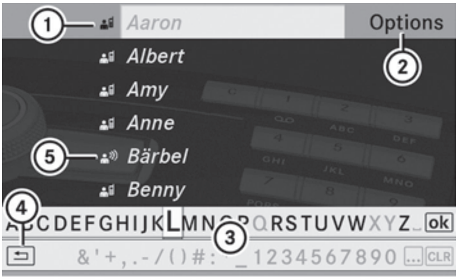
COMAND Phone Book

The COMAND phone book is an extract of entries from the address book. All the COMAND address book entries having at least one phone number can be found in the COMAND phone book.

ⓘ For many operating functions you can also use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, e.g. the [◀], [▶], [▲], [▼], [OK], [☎] or [☎] buttons, for selecting a menu, scrolling through lists or initiating or ending a call (▷ page 84).

Opening COMAND Phone Book

- Open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- Select Name.
  The COMAND phone book is displayed.



①
②
③
④
⑤
Aaron
Options
Albert
Amy
Anne
Bärbel
Benny
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
&'+,.-/()#: _1234567890 ... CLR

P82.87-3785-31

① Address book entry
② Calls up options
③ Predictive speller
④ Closes phone book
⑤ 👤)) symbol for voice name

Address book entries may have the symbol ⑤. An additional voice name is saved with these entries.

If an address book entry has the symbol ◢ then this has more than one phone number. You can select these subentries (▷ page 153).

- **To close phone book:** In the predictive speller select the symbol [↩].

or

- Press [BACK].

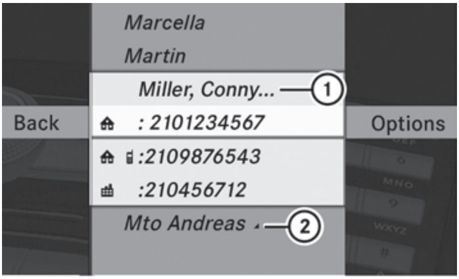
Selecting an Entry

Selecting via List

- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired entry is highlighted.
- **To confirm selection:** Press ◎.

Selecting Subentries

- Select a phone book entry with the ◢ icon and press ◎.
  The subentries appear. The ◢ icon changes to ▼.



Marcella
Martin
Miller, Conny...
①
Back
: 2101234567
Options
:2109876543
:210456712
Mto Andreas
②

P82.87-3786-31

① Expanded phone book entry
② Phone book entry with subentries

- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and select the desired sub-entry.

Displaying Details on an Entry

COMAND can also fully display an abbreviated entry.

- Select entry.
- Select Options → Details.
  The details screen appears.
- **To close details screen:** Slide ← ◎ → repeatedly until the entry is highlighted again.

or

- Press the [BACK] button.

Initiating Call to an Entry

- Select entry (▷ page 153).
- Press ⊛.

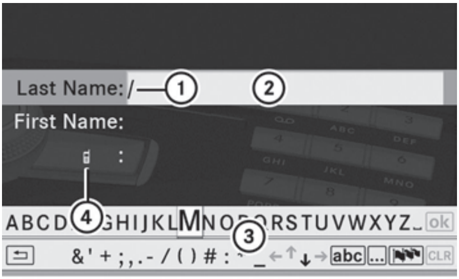
or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control unit.

Creating a New Entry

ℹ When a new entry is added through the COMAND phone book, it is saved to the address book.

- Select `Options` → `New Entry` in the COMAND phone book.
- Select a number category, e.g. `Home`.
- Select a telephone category, e.g. `Mobile Phone`.
- Select `Save`.
  The input menu with data fields appears.



P82.87-3787-31

① Cursor
② Data field
③ Input speller
④ Selected phone category

Switching Data Field

- Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the input speller disappears.
- Then slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and press ⊛.

or

- Select ↑ or ↓ in the input speller.
  The input menu displays the data field selected.

Entering Data into a Field

- Select all the characters one after the other in the input speller ③.

ℹ The input speller provides the characters corresponding to the selected data field.

- **To switch input speller to upper or lower case characters:** Select ABC or abc.
- **To switch input speller character set:** Select ... .
  Every time this is selected it switches the character set.
- **To change the input speller language:** Select ⚑.
- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired language is highlighted and then press ⊛.
- **To move the cursor in the data field:** Select ← or →.

Deleting an Entry

- **To delete individual characters:** Select CLR and briefly press ⊛.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
  The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.
- **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller and hold it until the entire entry is deleted.

Cancelling an Entry

- Select ↩.

If one of the data fields contains data, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to store the entry.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.
  The entry will either be stored or not, depending on your selection.

Saving an Entry

- ▶ Select ok .
  A corresponding message is displayed.

Deleting an Entry

The deletion rules vary according to the entry selected:

- Phone book entry selected:
  The entry is deleted in the COMAND phone book and the address book if the address book entry only contains phone numbers.
- Entire address book entry selected:
  The entry is deleted in the COMAND phone book and additionally also in the address book if the address book entry only contains phone numbers.
- Subentry of an address book entry selected:
  The subentry is deleted in the COMAND phone book and in the address book.

- ▶ **To delete:** Select entry (▷ page 153).
- ▶ Select Options → Delete.
  You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete the entry.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
  Yes option: The entry is deleted according to the above rules.

Adding a Phone Number to a Phone Book Entry

- ▶ Select the address book entry.
- ▶ Select Options → Add Phone No..
- ▶ Select a number category, e.g. Home.
- ▶ Select a phone category, e.g. Mobile Phone.
- ▶ Select Save.

If five numbers are saved for the entry in the selected number category, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to overwrite one of the existing numbers.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.
  If you select Yes, a selection list will appear containing the five existing numbers.
- ▶ Select the number to be overwritten.
  The input menu with the data field for entering the new telephone number appears.
- ▶ **To enter digits:** Select the required digits in sequence from the input speller or use the number keypad.
- ▶ **To move the cursor in the data field:** Select ← or →.
- ▶ **To delete individual digits:** Select CLR and briefly press the ⊛ button.

or

- ▶ Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
  The digit to the left of the cursor is deleted.
- ▶ **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

- ▶ Press and hold down the CLR button next to the COMAND controller until the entire entry is deleted.
- ▶ **To save entry:** Select ok .

Call Lists

ℹ COMAND supports Bluetooth® PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile).

How COMAND handles call lists depends on the type of mobile phone connected:

- Bluetooth® phone with PBAP support: COMAND downloads the call lists from the mobile phone when the phone is connected to COMAND
- Bluetooth® phone without PBAP support: COMAND creates the call lists from calls received (including missed calls) and

made during phone mode when a mobile phone is connected to COMAND.

The particular menu item can only be selected if calls have already been received or made from COMAND.

The display of missed calls in the COMAND display is not possible with all mobile phones.

ⓘ The menu item `Call lists` is not active if no mobile phone is connected to COMAND.

ⓘ If the mobile phone does not support PBAP, COMAND automatically deletes the call lists if a mobile phone other than the last used is connected.

ⓘ The instrument cluster control system displays a list of the last dialed calls.

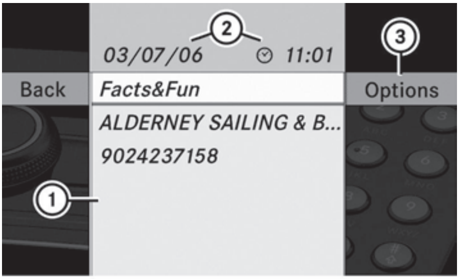
ⓘ For many operating functions you can also use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, e.g. the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼, OK, ☎ or ☎ buttons, for selecting a menu, scrolling through lists or initiating or ending a call (▷ page 84).

Calling up the List

- In the phone main menu select `Call Lists`.
  A menu appears.
- Select `Calls Received` or `Calls Dialed`.
  The appropriate list appears.

or

- When the main telephone menu is displayed, press the ☎ button on COMAND or the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
  A list of the last dialed calls appears.



P82.87-2137-31

List of incoming calls

① List of calls received
② Date/time of the highlighted entry
③ List entry options menu

- **To select a list entry:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To close list:** Select `Back`.

or

- Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Displaying Details on a List Entry

COMAND can also fully display an abbreviated list entry.

- Select the list entry.
- Select `Options` → `Details`.
  The details screen appears.
- **Back to the list:** Slide ← ◎ → until the list is highlighted.

or

- Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Saving Unsaved List Entry

Unsaved list entries are displayed with the phone number.

Saved list entries are displayed with the name. They are saved in the COMAND phone book.

Saving in the Address Book as a New Entry

- ▶ Select the list entry.
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Save` → `New Entry`.

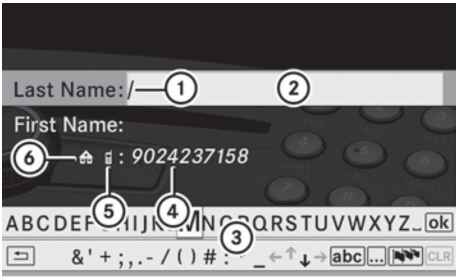
ⓘ `Save` has no function if the selected list entry is already stored in the address book.

- ▶ Select a number category, e.g. `Home`.
- ▶ Select a telephone category, e.g. `Mobile Phone`.

Number category	Display (phone and address book)
`Not classified`	☎
`Home`	⌂
`Work`	▦

Phone category	Display (phone and address book)
`Not classified`	☎
`Mobile`	▯
`Car`	🚗
`Pager`	▭

- ▶ Select `Save`.
  An input menu with data fields will appear. The data field for the phone number is completed automatically.



Last Name: /

First Name:

⌂ ▯ : 9024237158

①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
& ' + ; , . - / ( ) # : _ ← ↑ ↓ → abc ... CLR

P82.87-2138-31

① Cursor
② Data field
③ Speller
④ Data field for phone number is completed automatically
⑤ Phone category
⑥ Number category

- ▶ **To switch data fields:** Slide ↑ ◎ until the input speller disappears.
- ▶ Then slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Select [↑] or [↓] and press ⊛.
  The selected data field is highlighted.
- ▶ **To enter data into a field:** Select all the characters one after the other in the input speller ③.

ⓘ The input speller offers the characters that correspond to the selected data field.

- ▶ **To switch input speller to upper or lower case characters:** Select [abc] or [ABC].
- ▶ **To switch input speller character set:** Select [...].
  Every time this is selected it switches the character set (digits, lower case letters).
- ▶ **To change the input speller language:** Select [⚑⚑⚑].
- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired language is highlighted and then press ⊛.
- ▶ **To move the cursor in the data field:** Select [←] or [→].
- ▶ **To delete individual characters:** Select [CLR] and briefly press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the [CLR] button next to the COMAND controller.
  The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

- **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller and hold it until the entry is deleted.
- **To save entry:** Select ok .
  A corresponding message is displayed.
- **To cancel entry:** Select `Back`.

If one of the data fields contains data, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to save the entry.

- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  The entry will either be stored or not, depending on your selection.

Adding a Phone Number from the Call List to an Existing Address Book Entry

- Select the list entry.
- Select `Options` → `Save` → `Add Phone No.`

ℹ `Save` has no function if the selected list entry is already stored.

- Select a number category, e.g. `Home`.
- Select a phone category, e.g. `Mobile Phone`.
- Select `Save`.
  The search menu for address book entries appears.
- Search for the desired entry.

ℹ Please see the “Searching for an Address Book Entry” section (▷ page 162) for a detailed description on searching for an address book entry.

- Press ⊛ after completing the search.
  If there are fewer than five numbers saved for the required entry in the selected number category, COMAND saves the data.
  If five numbers are saved for the entry you are searching for, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to overwrite one of the existing numbers.
- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  If you select `Yes`, a selection list with the five existing numbers is displayed.
- Select the number to be overwritten.
  COMAND overwrites the selected number with the new data.

Deleting Call Lists

This function is only available if you use a Bluetooth® phone without PBAB support, that is, if the call lists have been created by COMAND.

- Select `Call Lists` → `Delete Call Lists` from the basic telephone menu.
  A query appears asking if all call lists are to be deleted.
- Select `Yes` or `No`.
  The call lists will either be deleted or not, depending on your selection.

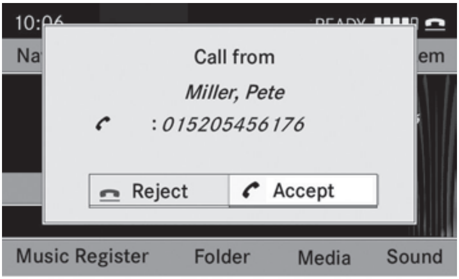
ℹ If you use a mobile phone with PBAP support, you have to delete the call lists on the mobile phone. Next time you reconnect the mobile phone, COMAND downloads the empty call lists.

Making Calls

Incoming Call

Rejecting or Accepting Calls

Incoming calls are indicated by a dialogue window.



Call from
Miller, Pete
: *015205456176*

P82.87-3790-31

- **To reject:** Select Reject.

or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control panel or the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- **To accept:** Select Accept.

or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control panel or the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

After accepting the call, you will conduct the conversation over the hands-free system. The call volume can be adjusted (▷ page 89). Please see the “Functions during a Single Call” section for other functions (▷ page 160).

ℹ You can also accept a call as described above when COMAND is showing a display of a different main application. The display switches to the telephone display after you accept the call. After the call is finished, you see the display of the previous main application again.

Initiating an Outgoing Call

Entering a Phone Number via the COMAND Control Unit

- Open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- Enter all the digits on the numeric keypad one after the other.
- **To delete individual digits:** Press briefly the CLR button on the COMAND control unit.
- **To delete an entire phone number:** Press and hold the CLR button until the number is deleted.
- **To place a call:** Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control panel or press the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Entering a Phone Number from the COMAND Controller

- Open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- **To enter digits:** Select the required digits in sequence.
- **To delete individual digits:** Select CLR and briefly press the ⊛ button.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
- **To delete an entire phone number:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the phone number has been deleted.

or

- Press and hold down the CLR button next to the COMAND controller until the entire entry is deleted.
- **To connect a call:** Select ☎ at the bottom right-hand side of the input speller.

or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control panel or the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Redialing

- Open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- Select ☎ at the bottom right-hand side of the input speller.

or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control unit when the phone main menu is displayed.
  The dialed calls list appears. The call dialed last will be at the top of the list.
- **To select a call:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓
- **To initiate call:** Press ⊛.

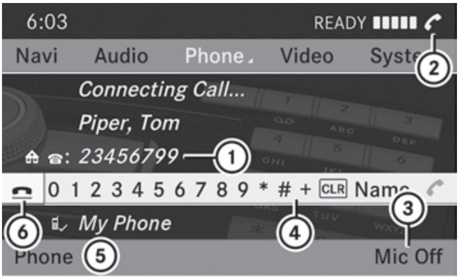
Initiating a Call to a Call List Entry or COMAND Phone Book Entry

- Call up a call list and select an entry (▷ page 156).

or

- Open the COMAND phone book and select an entry (▷ page 153).
- **To initiate call:** Press ✆.

Functions During a Single Call



P82.87-3791-31

Phone mode with a single call

① Other party
② Symbol for active phone connection
③ Switches the hands-free microphone off or on
④ Sends DTMF tones (not possible with all mobile phones)
⑤ Device name of the connected mobile phone
⑥ Terminates call

Switching Hands-Free Microphone On or Off

- Open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- **To switch off:** Select `Mic Off`.
  If the microphone is switched off, the ⊗ icon appears in the main area.
- **To switch on:** Select `Mic On`.
  The ⊗ symbol disappears.

DTMF Tone Transmission

ℹ This function is not possible with all mobile phones.

Answering machines or other devices can be controlled by DTMF tones, e.g. for remote query functions.

- **To send individual characters:** During a call select the required characters using the COMAND controller.

or

- Press the corresponding button on the COMAND control unit keypad.
  Every character selected will be transmitted immediately.
- **Transmitting phone book entry as a sequence of characters:** Select `Name`.
- Select the desired phone book entry.
  The entry is transmitted immediately as a sequence of characters.
- **To switch back to the call display:** Select `Back`.

Ending an Active Call

- If necessary, open the phone main menu (▷ page 152).
- **To terminate call:** Select ☎.

or

- Press the ☎ button on the COMAND control panel or the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Call Waiting

ℹ The call waiting function must be supported and activated by the phone provider.

If you are conducting a single call and you receive another, the second call number is entered into the received calls list and a signal tone will sound.

Address Book

⚠ **Warning!**

Please devote your attention first and foremost to the traffic situation you are in.

Before your journey, please familiarize yourself with the address book functions.

Only use the COMAND when road and traffic conditions permit you to do so. Otherwise you could be involved in an accident in which you or others could be injured.

General Information

The entries of the address book can be used for making phone calls and for setting navigation destinations.

ⓘ You should delete your personal data before selling your vehicle, using the Reset function (▷ page 99).

Opening the Address Book

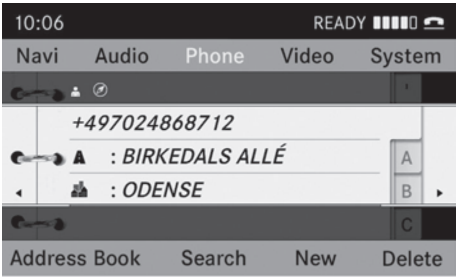
From Another Main Function

- ▶ Select Phone → Phone → Address Book.

ⓘ If the address book was last open in the telephone function, you only need to select Phone.

Within the Phone Function

- ▶ Select Phone → Address Book.
  The address book main display appears.



+497024868712

A : BIRKEDALS ALLÉ

: ODENSE

P82.87-2141-31

Address book with address book entry 👤 and navigable data ⊘

ⓘ An address book entry may contain up to five phone numbers and both a private and business address.

Submenu Overview for Address Book

Address Book	**Search**
Downloading contacts (from mobile phone, from memory card or business cards) Deleting contacts	Searching for an address book entry
New	**Delete**
Creating a new address book entry	Deleting an address book entry

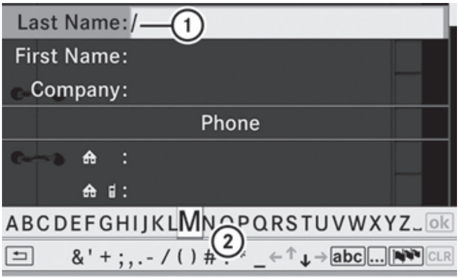
Selecting Entry in the Address Book

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → when the display/selection window is active.

Creating a New Address Book Entry

ⓘ You can create address data directly in the address book. If you save phone numbers in the COMAND phone book, these are saved in the address book. When you save a navigation destination, COMAND creates an address book entry containing the complete address data that support navigation.

- ▶ Open the address book (▷ page 161) and select New.
  The input menu containing data fields and the input speller appears.


Last Name: /
①
First Name:
Company:
Phone
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ_ ok
②
&'+;,.-/()# _ ←↑↓→ abc ... CLR

P82.87-2142-31

Input menu with data fields

① Selected data field with cursor

② Input speller

Switching Data Field

- Slide ↑ ◎ repeatedly until the input speller is hidden.
- Then slide ↑ ◎ ↓ and press ⊛.

or

- Select ↑ or ↓ in the input speller.
  The input menu indicates the selected data field.

Entering Data into a Field

- Select all the characters one after the other in the input speller ②.

ℹ The input speller provides the characters corresponding to the selected data field.

- **To switch input speller to upper or lower case characters:** Select abc or ABC.
- **To switch input speller character set:** Select ... .
  Every time this is selected it switches the character set.
- **To change the input speller language:** Select ⚑.
- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired language is highlighted and then press ⊛.
- **To move the cursor in the data field:** Select ← or →.

Deleting

- **To delete an individual character:** Select CLR and briefly press ⊛.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
  The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.
- **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

- Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller and hold it until the entire entry is deleted.

Canceling an Entry

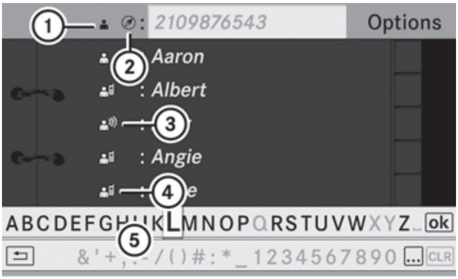
- Select ↩.
  If one of the data fields contains new data, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to store the entry.
- Select Yes or No.
  The entry will either be stored or not, depending on your selection.

Saving an Entry

- Select ok .
  The address book displays the entry.

Searching for an Address Book Entry

- Open the address book (▷ page 161) and select Search.
  If there are more than eight entries, the search menu with the predictive speller appears.


2109876543
Options
Aaron
: Albert
: Angie
e
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ok
&'+,.-/()#:*_1234567890 ... CLR
1
2
3
4
5

P82.87-3822-31

Search menu with predictive speller

① 👤 Symbol for address book entry

② ⊘ Symbol for complete address data from the navigation

③ 👤⁾⁾ Symbol for voice name

④ 👤📱 Symbol for phone book entry from the mobile phone

⑤ Predictive speller

Entries without symbols or with the symbols ① and ③ are just address book entries. A voice name has additionally been saved for entries with the symbol ③. Entries with the symbol ② contain complete address data from the navigation system, which support navigation and are covered by the digital map data. You can quickly start route guidance to this kind of entry (▷ page 165).

Switching from the Predictive Speller to the List

- ▶ Slide ◎ ↑ or press ⊛ and hold it until the predictive speller is hidden.

or

- ▶ Select ok .

Switching from the List to the Predictive Speller

- ▶ Select Back from the list.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Searching

Searching via Predictive Speller

- ▶ Switch from the list to the predictive speller if necessary.
- ▶ **To change the language of the predictive speller:** Select ⚑.
- ▶ **To switch the character set of the predictive speller:** Select ... .
  Depending on the previous setting, you will change to letters with special characters or to numbers with special characters.
- ▶ **To enter characters:** Select the characters for the required entry one after another.
- ▶ **To delete individual characters:** Select CLR and briefly press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller.
  Each time you enter or delete a character, the closest match will be displayed at the top of the list.
- ▶ **To delete an entire entry:** Select CLR and press ⊛ until the entire entry has been deleted.

or

- ▶ Press the CLR button next to the COMAND controller and hold it until the entire entry is deleted.
- ▶ **To end search:** Switch from the predictive speller to the list.
  The top list entry is highlighted automatically.
- ▶ **Back to the address book:** If necessary, switch from the list to the predictive speller and select ⮌ in the predictive speller.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Searching via the List

- ▶ If necessary, switch from the predictive speller to the list (▷ page 162).
- ▶ Turn ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired entry is highlighted in the list.

Deleting Entry

- ▶ Search for the required entry (▷ page 162).
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Delete`.

or

- ▶ Select `Delete` from the address book (▷ page 161).
  A deletion prompt appears.
- ▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
  The entry will be deleted or retained on the basis of the selection.

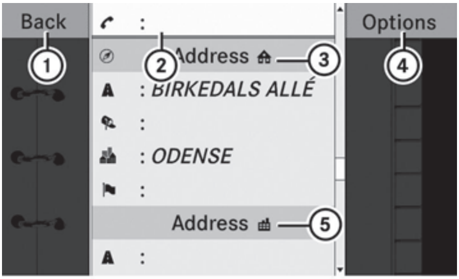
ℹ Deleting an entry in the phone book on the mobile phone does not delete the entry in the address book.

Displaying Details About an Address Book Entry

- ▶ Switch from the predictive speller to the list (▷ page 162).

or

- ▶ Select an address book entry from the address book (▷ page 161).
- ▶ Press ⊛.
  The detailed display appears.



Address ⌂
: BIRKEDALS ALLÉ
: ODENSE
Address 🏢

P82.87-2144-31

Details screen for private data

① Back to the previous menu
② Selected data field
③ ⌂ symbol for private data
④ Calls up options
⑤ 🏢 symbol for business data

Selecting Another Data Field

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

Displaying Abbreviated Content in Full

- ▶ Select `Options` → `Details`.
  The complete display appears.
- ▶ **To close complete display:** Slide ← ◎ → or press ⊛.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Closing Details Screen

- ▶ Select `Back`.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

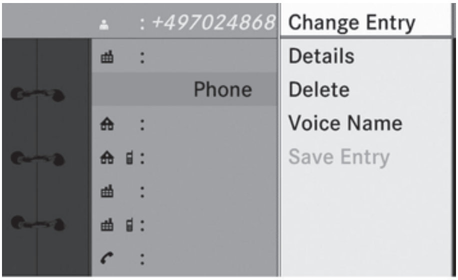
Changing Entry

Changing an Address Book Entry

- ▶ Search for the address book entry (▷ page 162).
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Change Entry`.

or

- ▶ Display details about an address book entry.
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Change Entry`.
  The input menu with data fields appears.



P82.87-2145-31

- ▶ Continue from the step "Switching Data Field" in the "Creating a New Address Book Entry" section (▷ page 161).

Changing Category of a Phone Number Data Field

- ▶ Display the details for an entry and highlight the phone number data field (▷ page 164).
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Change Category`.
- ▶ Select a number category, e.g. `Home`.
- ▶ Select a telephone category, e.g. `Mobile Phone`.
- ▶ Select `Preferred`, where applicable.
  Depending on the previous state, switch the option on ☑ or off ☐. The phone number is displayed as the first number in the phone book and can be dialed immediately.
- ▶ Select `Save`.
  The new category is saved.

Initiating a Phone Call to an Entry

ⓘ The mobile phone must be connected via the Bluetooth® interface.

- ▶ Display the details for an entry and highlight the phone number data field (▷ page 164).
- ▶ Press ⊛.
  The phone initiates the call. The display switches to the phone mode display.

or

- ▶ Select `Options` → `Call`.
  The phone initiates the call.

Starting Navigation to an Entry

ⓘ You can use this function as soon as you have saved a destination in the destination memory (▷ page 145). COMAND then also saves the destination in the address book with the complete address data that supports navigation.

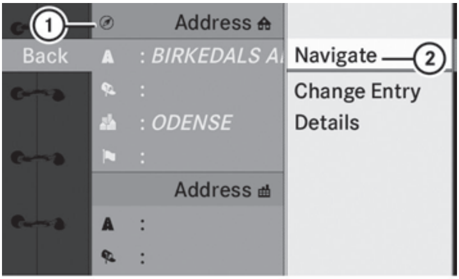
- ▶ Search for an address book entry with the ⊘ symbol (▷ page 162).
- ▶ Display the details about an entry and highlight the address data field (▷ page 164).
- ▶ Press ⊛.

ⓘ Pressing ⊛ only works if the address data field contains complete navigable data. This is indicated by the ⊘ symbol.

or

- ▶ Select `Options` → `Navigate`.

ⓘ `Navigate` can only be selected when the address data field contains complete navigable data. This is indicated by the ⊘ symbol.



P82.87-2146-31

① Address that supports navigation

② Opens Enter Destination menu

The Enter Destination menu appears, the selector bar is located at the menu item `Start` (▷ page 121).

Voice Names

ℹ Voice names can be entered via Voice Control System.

Adding Voice Name

ℹ You can add one voice name per address book entry.

▶ Search for an address book entry without or with a voice name (👤) icon) (▷ page 162).

▶ Select `Options` → `Voice Name` → `Add`.
The process continues by voice commands. The Voice Control System guides you through the dialogs (▷ page 219).

Deleting Voice Name

▶ Search for the address book entry with a voice entry (▷ page 162).

▶ Select `Options` → `Voice Name` → `Delete`.
A deletion prompt appears.

▶ Select `Yes` or `No`.
COMAND deletes the voice entry depending on your selection.

Listening to Voice Name

▶ Search for the address book entry with a voice entry (▷ page 162).

▶ Select `Options` → `Voice Name` → `Listen`.
You will hear the voice name.

Downloading Contacts

You can download contacts from the mobile phone or from the memory card into the address book or receive vCards from an external Bluetooth® device.

The 📱 icon in the address book indicates phone book entries which have been downloaded from the mobile phone.

ℹ Depending on the mobile phone used, this function imports only the phone book entries in the mobile phone or the phone book entries in the SIM card.

Entries imported from the PCMCIA memory card have the 👤 ▭ icons. Received vCards are identified by the 👤 icon and **BT**.

Depending on the source of the contact data, different requirements apply:

Mobile phone with Bluetooth® profile PBAP

- Bluetooth® must be activated in COMAND and on the mobile phone (see the mobile phone operating instructions).
- The mobile phone is connected to COMAND (▷ page 149).

PCMCIA memory card

- The PCMCIA memory card is inserted (▷ page 181) and contains importable contact data.

External Bluetooth® device

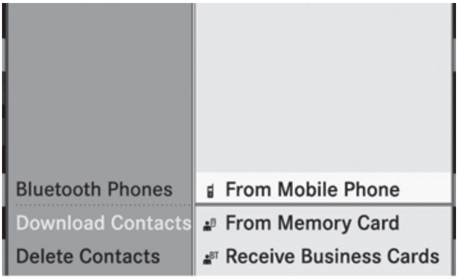
- Bluetooth® is activated in COMAND and on the Bluetooth® device (see operating instructions of the device).
- The Bluetooth® device can send vCards via Bluetooth® (see operating instructions of the device).
- The Bluetooth® device in the vehicle is switched on.

It is not necessary to authorize the device in COMAND to receive vCards.

Downloading from a Mobile Phone with PBAP Support

▶ Select `Address Book` or, if the phone main menu is displayed, `Phone` on COMAND.

▶ Select `Download Contacts`
A selection menu appears.



P82.87-4305-31

▶ Select `From Mobile Phone`.

▶ Select `Add` or `Overwrite`.
Selecting `Add` imports the phone book entries from the mobile phone into the address book.
Selecting `Overwrite` downloads the telephone entries from the mobile phone and overwrites all phone book entries in the address book with the icon. The previous phone book entries are then no longer available.

After successfully downloading the contact data you see a corresponding message. The address book or the phone main menu is displayed.

ⓘ You can select the `Overwrite` menu item if the address book already contains such entries. If the address book is full, you see a corresponding message.

Downloading from the Memory Card

▶ Select `Address Book` or, if the phone main menu is displayed, `Phone`.

▶ Select `Download Contacts`.
A selection menu appears.

▶ Select `From Memory Card`.

▶ Select `Add` or `Overwrite`.
Selecting `Add` imports the entries from the PCMCIA memory card into the address book.

Selecting `Overwrite` imports the entries from the PCMCIA memory card and overwrites all entries in the address book with the icons. The previous entries are then no longer available.

After successfully importing the contact data you see a corresponding message. The address book or the phone main menu is displayed.

ⓘ You can select the `Overwrite` menu item if the address book already contains such entries. If the address book is full, you see a corresponding message.

Downloading vCards via Bluetooth®

You can receive vCards from devices (such as a PC) which support the transmission of vCards via Bluetooth®.

It is not necessary to authorize the device in COMAND to do so.

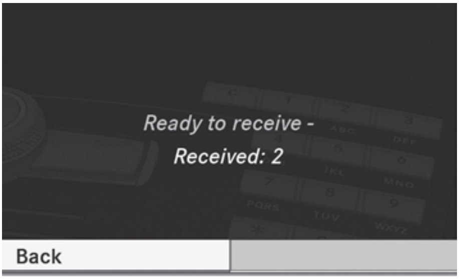
Received vCards are imported into the address book.

ⓘ If you switch to another main function, e.g. navigation, while receiving vCards, the reception of vCards will be terminated.

▶ Select `Address Book` or, if the phone main menu is displayed, `Phone`.

- Select Download Contacts.
  A selection menu appears.
- Select Receive Business Cards.
  This interrupts the Bluetooth connection between COMAND and your active mobile phone. COMAND is ready to receive vCards from another Bluetooth® device.
- Start data transfer on the external Bluetooth device (see operating instructions of the device).

  The data on the vCards is automatically transferred to the address book. The number of vCards received is displayed.



Ready to receive -
Received: 2

P82.87-2006-31

- **To cancel the transfer:** Press ⊛.

or

- Press the ↩ button.

Deleting Data

- If the address book is displayed, select Address Book → Delete Contacts.

or

- If the phone main menu is displayed, select Phone → Delete Contacts.
  A selection menu appears.
- Select Internal Contacts or From Mobile Phone or From Memory Card or Received Business Cards or Delete All.
  A prompt corresponding to your selection appears.
- Select Yes or No.
- Press the ⊛ button.
  If you confirm by selecting Yes, the contacts you have selected are deleted.

Audio

Audio Menu

ℹ Information on the COMAND control system and how to operate it can be found on (▷ page 72).

ℹ For many operating functions you can also use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, e.g. the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼ buttons, for selecting a channel or a menu or scrolling through lists (▷ page 81).

Vehicle Equipment

ℹ This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

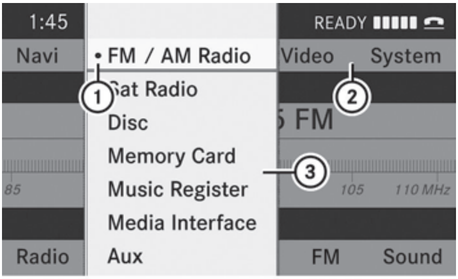
Calling up the Audio Menu

- Select Audio.
  The audio mode last active is switched on.

or

- Press the RADIO function button.
  Radio mode is switched on.
- Select Audio
  The audio menu appears.

ℹ If radio mode was active last, you only need to select Audio.


1:45
READY
Navi
• FM / AM Radio
Video
System
Sat Radio
Disc
Memory Card
Music Register
Media Interface
Aux
5 FM
85
105
110 MHz
Radio
FM
Sound
①
②
③

P82.87-5499-31

Display with Audio menu

① Current audio mode
② Main function line
③ Audio menu

You can switch to the various audio modes in the audio menu:

- FM / AM radio mode (▷ page 169)
- SatRadio mode (▷ page 174)
- CD-/DVD audio/MP3 mode (▷ page 184)
- Memory Card (▷ page 181)
- Music Register (▷ page 189)
- Aux mode (▷ page 197)

Radio

Switching to the Radio

From the COMAND Control Unit

▶ Press the RADIO function button.

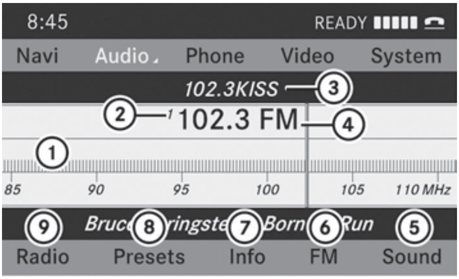
or

▶ Select `Audio` → `Audio` → `FM/AM Radio` in the display.

ℹ Press the button repeatedly to switch wavebands in the sequence FM, AM, WB and SatRadio mode. Pressing again will switch back to FM radio mode.

Within the Audio Function

▶ Select `Audio` → `FM/AM Radio`.
The radio display appears. The last selected station in the last selected waveband is heard.


8:45
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
102.3KISS
1
102.3 FM
85
90
95
100
105
110 MHz
Bruc
ringste
Born
Run
Radio
Presets
Info
FM
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨

P82.87-3446-31

① Main area with tuning dial
② Memory preset number
③ Name of selected station
④ Station frequency
⑤ Sound settings
⑥ FM, AM or WB radio
⑦ Program info
⑧ Stored station list
⑨ Radio functions

Submenu Overview

Radio (FM and AM only)	Presets (FM and AM only)	Channel (WB only)	Info	FM	Sound
Enter Frequency	Autostore	List of receivable channels	Program Information	FM	Treble
☑ Show Station Information	List of stored stations			AM	Bass
				WB	Balance
					Bang & Olufsen Sound System

Switching Wavebands

You can switch the radio between the FM, AM, and WB wavebands.

▶ Press the RADIO function button on the control unit repeatedly until the desired band is selected.

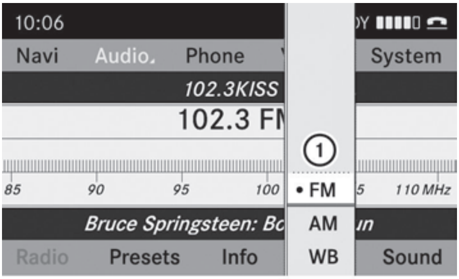
ℹ Press the button RADIO repeatedly to switch waveband in the sequence of FM, AM, WB and SatRadio mode. Pressing again will switch back to FM radio mode.

or

▶ Press ▼ to highlight the submenu.

▶ **To select a waveband:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until the currently set waveband is highlighted (FM, AM or WB).

▶ Press OK.
Waveband submenu is opened.


10:06
Navi
Audio
Phone
System
102.3KISS
102.3 FM
①
85
90
95
100
• FM
5
110 MHz
Bruce Springsteen: Bo
AM
WB
Radio
Presets
Info
Sound
P82.87-3558-31

① Waveband submenu
The currently set waveband is indicated by a dot ● .

▶ Select the desired waveband (FM, AM or WB).

Tuning to a Station

You can tune to a station via station search, by manual frequency input or via the station memory.

Tuning to a Station via Station Search

- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → when the main area is highlighted.

or

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ on the COMAND control unit.
  The search proceeds upwards or downwards and stops at the next receivable station.

Tuning to a Station via Manual Frequency Input

- Select `Radio` → `Enter Frequency` in the radio display.
  An input menu appears.

or

- Press ⊛ on the control unit.
- **To enter a frequency:** Press number buttons on the control unit.

ⓘ You can only select numbers that are currently permissible.

COMAND will tune to the frequency entered.

ⓘ If in the FM or AM wavebands you enter a frequency outside the frequency subrange, COMAND will select the next frequency down.

Tuning to a Station via the Station Memory

- Select `Presets` in the radio display.

or

- Press ◎ when the main area is highlighted.
  The station memory appears. The dot ● in front of a preset indicates that the currently tuned station is stored there.
- **To select a station:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To tune to a station:** Press ◎.

or

- Press a number key, e.g. **4**, on the control unit.

Wavebands	Frequency
AM (MF)	530 - 1700 kHz
FM (VHF)	87.7 - 107.9 MHz
WB (Weather Band)	Weather channels

Storing Stations

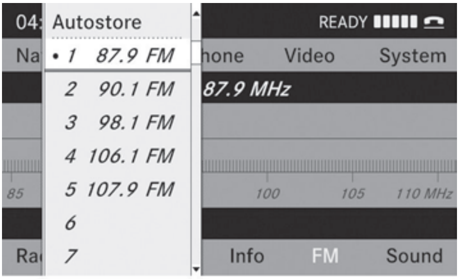
There are 10 presets available for FM, AM and SatRadio wavebands.

Storing Stations Manually

- Press ◎ when the main area is highlighted.

or

- Select `Presets` in the radio display.
  In both cases, the station memory will appear. The dot ● in front of a preset station indicates the station the radio is currently tuned to.



P82.87-3447-31

Station memory

- To store a station to a selected preset: Press and hold ◎ until a signal tone sounds.

or

- Press and hold a number key, e.g. **4**, until a signal tone sounds.
  The station is stored.

Storing via Autostore

ⓘ The function automatically assigns receivable stations to the presets, sorted according to reception quality. The stations which were stored in the station memory manually are overwritten.

- Press ⊛ when the main area is active.
- Select `Autostore`.

or

- Select `Presets` → `Autostore` in the radio display.
  COMAND searches for receivable stations. A corresponding message is displayed. The available stations are automatically stored under the presets.

Canceling Autostore Procedure

- Select `Cancel`.

Switching to Weather Band

- Press the (RADIO) function button on the control unit repeatedly until the weather band is selected.

or

- Slide ◎ ↓ to highlight the submenu.
- **To select the weather band:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ until the currently set waveband is highlighted (`FM` or `AM`).
- Press (OK).
  Waveband submenu is opened.
- Select `WB`.

Searching a Channel

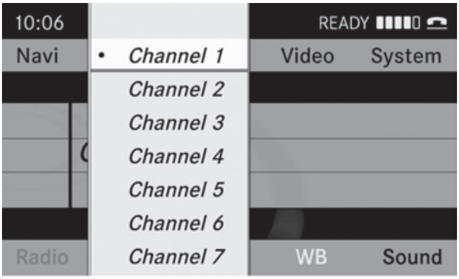
- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → when the main area is highlighted.

or

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ on the control unit.
  The search proceeds upwards or downwards and stops at the next receivable channel.

Selecting a Channel from Channel list

- Slide ◎ ↓ to highlight the submenu.
- **To call up the channel list:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Channel` is highlighted.
- Press ⊛.
  The channel list appears.


10:06
Navi
Radio
• Channel 1
Channel 2
Channel 3
Channel 4
Channel 5
Channel 6
Channel 7
READY
Video
System
WB
Sound

P82.87-3449-31

- **To select a channel:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To tune to the selected channel:** Press ⊛.

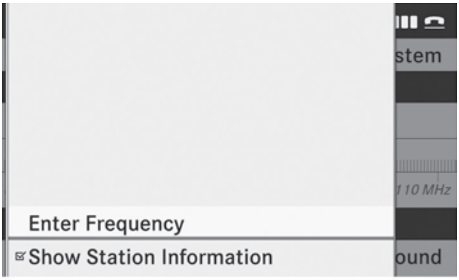
or

- Press a number key, e.g. **4**, on the control unit at any time.

Station Information

ⓘ This feature is only available for analog FM programs.

Information on the current station is displayed beneath the main function line.


stem
110 MHz
Enter Frequency
☒ Show Station Information
ound

P82.87-5659-31

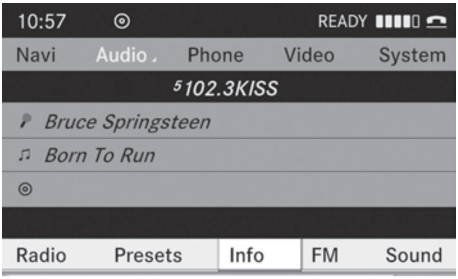
- **To activate/deactivate the station information display:** Select `Radio` → `Show Station Information` from the radio submenu.
  If the checkbox ☑ is checked, station information is displayed.

Program Information

ℹ This feature is only available for analog FM and programs.

Information on the current program is normally displayed above the submenu line.

▶ **To display the program information in the main area:** Select `Info` in the radio display submenu.
Information on the program currently tuned to is now displayed in the main area. The content and scope of the information depends on the radio station.



5 102.3KISS

Bruce Springsteen

Born To Run

P82.87-5660-31

Satellite Radio

Important Notes

In this chapter, you will find detailed information regarding

- selecting a channel and a program category
- memory functions
- sound adjustments

If you have not done so already, please familiarize yourself with these functions by reading chapter “At a glance”.

ℹ Optional satellite radio equipment and a subscription to satellite radio service provider are required for the satellite radio operation described here.

ℹ Note that categories and channels shown in illustrations are dependent on programming content delivered by the service provider. Programming content is subject to change. Therefore, channel and categories shown in illustrations and descriptions contained in this manual may differ from the channels and categories delivered by the service provider.

Satellite radio service may be unavailable or interrupted from time to time for a variety of reasons, such as environmental or topographic conditions and other things we cannot control. Service might also not be available in certain places (e.g., in tunnels, parking garages, or within or next to buildings) or near other technologies.

ℹ SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio provides over 130 channels of digital-quality radio, including 100% commercial-free music, sports, news and entertainment.

SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio uses a fleet of high-power satellites to broadcast 24 hours per day, coast-to-coast, in the contiguous U.S and Canada.

This diverse, satellite-delivered programming is available for a monthly subscription fee. For more information, call the SIRIUS XM Service Center (▷ page 177) or contact **http://www.sirius.com** (USA) or **http://www.siriuscanada.com** (Canada).

Subscribing

Subscribing to Satellite Radio

To switch to satellite radio operation:

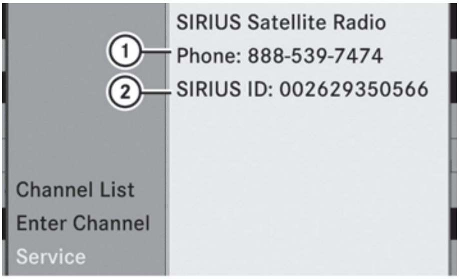
▶ **From another main function:** Select `Audio` → `Audio` → `SatRadio`.

ℹ If radio mode was active last, you only need to select `Audio`.

▶ **Within the audio function:** Select `Audio` → `SatRadio`.
If the satellite radio service is not activated, the Satellite radio main menu appears and

displays the Weather channel. You cannot select any other station.

▶ Select `SatRadio` (from the submenu) → `Service`.
The Service information display will appear.



SIRIUS Satellite Radio
Phone: 888-539-7474
SIRIUS ID: 002629350566

P82.87-2153-31

Service information display

① Phone number of the provider, (SIRIUS XM Radio)

② SIRIUS XM ID of your satellite receiver

▶ Contact satellite radio service provider at the telephone number displayed in the screen.

ℹ It is also possible to activate the satellite service online. To do so please visit SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio's website at **http://www.sirius.com** (USA) or **http://www.siriuscanada.com** (Canada).

After the connection is made:

▶ Follow the instructions given by the operator.
The activation process may take up to 10 minutes. If it is successful, you will see the display with the message `No Service` followed by the Satellite radio main menu.

ℹ If a subscription is not included with system purchase, credit card information is required to activate your account.

If a satellite receiver is not installed or not properly installed, the message `Device Unavailable` will appear.

Satellite Radio Operation

ℹ For many operating functions you can also use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, e.g. the ◀, ▶, ▲ buttons, for selecting a channel or a menu or scrolling through lists (▷ page 81).

Switching on

See "Subscribing to Satellite Radio" for important subscription information (▷ page 173).

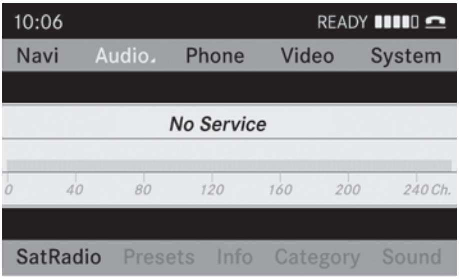
To switch to satellite radio operation:

▶ **From another main function:** Select `Audio` → `Audio` → `SatRadio`.

ℹ If radio mode was active last, you only need to select `Audio`.

▶ **Within the audio function:** Select `Audio` → `SatRadio`.

ℹ Satellite receiver not functional:
The message `Device Unavailable` will appear in a window.

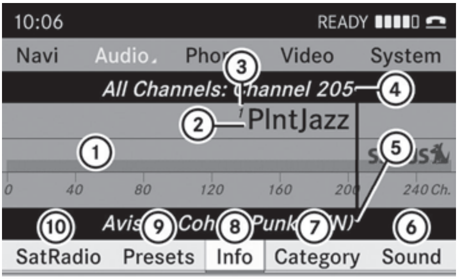


No Service

P82.87-2154-31

The message `No Service` will appear at start up or when the signal is not available.

After the COMAND acquires the signal, the Satellite radio display will appear. The station last tuned to will begin to play.


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
All Channels: Channel 205
PlntJazz
SIRIUS
0
40
80
120
160
200
240 Ch.
Avis
Coh
Punk
NW
SatRadio
Presets
Info
Category
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩

P82.87-2155-31

Satellite radio main menu

① SatRadio main display
② Channel name
③ Memory preset number
④ Selected category/channel number
⑤ Track info (short)
⑥ Sound settings
⑦ Category list
⑧ Channel info (detailed)
⑨ Preset channel list
⑩ SatRadio menu

ℹ You can display in full:

- Channel information (▷ page 176)

Changing the Category

Satellite radio stations are split up into categories. You can select between various categories such as News/Talk, Sports and Country, if available. The category list is sorted alphabetically.

Selecting a Category

- ▶ **To call up the category list:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Category` is highlighted in the submenu.
- ▶ Press ⊛.
  The category list appears.
- ▶ **To select a category:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.
- ▶ **To set the selected category:** Press ⊛.
  The selected category will appear in the display. The channel last tuned to in the new category will begin to play.

At the beginning of the category list the category `All Channels` will appear. This category is sorted numerically (by channel numbers) and allows you to scroll through all available channels.

Selecting a Channel

You can use the following functions:

- Channel search
- Channel selection via direct entry
- Selecting a channel from the SatRadio channel list
- Selection from the preset menu

Channel Search

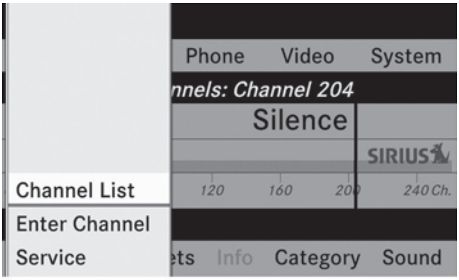
- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → if the SatRadio main display is highlighted.

or

- ▶ Press ⏮ or ⏭ on the control unit.
  The search proceeds upwards or downwards and stops at the next channel in the selected category.

SatRadio Menu

- ▶ On the submenu bar rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `SatRadio` is highlighted.
- ▶ Press ⊛.


Phone
Video
System
nnels: Channel 204
Silence
SIRIUS
120
160
200
240 Ch.
Channel List
Enter Channel
Service
ts
Info
Category
Sound

P82.87-2156-31

The SatRadio menu appears.

Entering a Channel Number Directly

▶ Select `SatRadio` → `Enter Channel` in the SatRadio menu.
An input dialog appears.

or

▶ Press ⊛ on the control unit.

▶ **To enter a channel:** Press corresponding number buttons on the control unit.
COMAND will tune to the channel entered.

ℹ You can only select numbers that are currently permissible.

Selecting a Channel from the SatRadio Channel List

▶ Select `SatRadio` → `Channel List` in the SatRadio menu.
The channel list appears.

▶ **To select a channel:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓

▶ **To tune to the selected channel:**
Press ⊚.

Memory Functions

ℹ There are 10 presets available.

You can use the following functions:

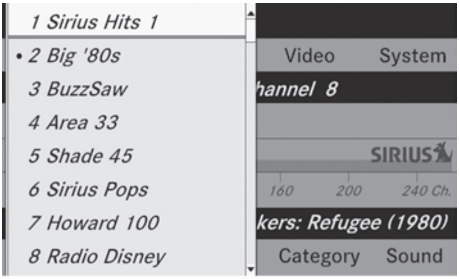
- Storing channels
- Selecting a channel from the Satellite preset memory

Storing Channels

▶ Press ⊚ if the main area is highlighted.

or

▶ Select `Presets` on the SatRadio submenu bar.
In both cases, the channel memory will appear. The dot • in front of a preset indicates that the currently tuned channel is stored there.


1 Sirius Hits 1
• 2 Big '80s
3 BuzzSaw
4 Area 33
5 Shade 45
6 Sirius Pops
7 Howard 100
8 Radio Disney
Video
System
hannel 8
SIRIUS
160
200
240 Ch.
kers: Refugee (1980)
Category
Sound
P82.87-2157-31

Channel Memory

▶ **To select a preset:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ **To store a channel to a selected preset:** Press and hold ⊚ until a signal tone sounds.

or

▶ Press and hold a number key, e.g. **4**, until a signal tone sounds.
The channel is stored.

Selecting a Channel from the Memory List

▶ **To call up the channel list:** In the submenu rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Presets` is highlighted.
The presets list appears.

▶ **To select a channel:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ **To tune to the selected channel:**
Press ⊚.

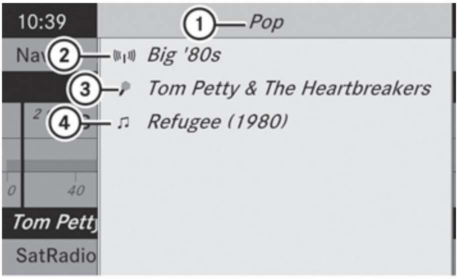
or

▶ Press a number key, e. g. **4** on the control unit.

Displaying Information

▶ In the submenu rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Info` is highlighted.

▶ Press ⊚.
Information about the current program appears.



P82.87-2158-31

① Category
② Channel
③ Artist
④ Song title

You will see (if available)

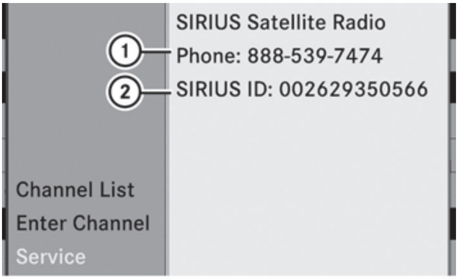
- the full name
- additional information

▶ **To switch back to the SatRadio main display:** Slide ← ◎ →.

Displaying Service Information

You can call the provider service center for questions or releases whenever you need.

▶ Select `SatRadio` → `Service` in the SatRadio submenu.
The service information appears.


SIRIUS Satellite Radio
① Phone: 888-539-7474
② SIRIUS ID: 002629350566

P82.87-2153-31

① Phone number of the provider, (SIRIUS XM) or `Call Service Provider`
② SIRIUS XM ID of your satellite receiver

▶ **To switch back to the SatRadio main display:** Slide ← ◎ →.

Channel List Updates

While receiving a new channel list the message `Updating Channels` will appear.

The channel last tuned to will be muted until the update is completed. You cannot operate the satellite radio.

After completion of the update, the Satellite radio main menu will appear. The channel last tuned to will begin to play if available in the new channel list.

Sound Settings

Refer to chapter “At a glance” on how to adjust sound settings.

- Volume (▷ page 89)
- Balance control (▷ page 90)
- Bass and treble control (▷ page 90)
- Bang & Olufsen sound system (▷ page 90)

CD Audio/DVD Audio/MP3

Safety Instructions

⚠ **Warning**

COMAND is classified as a Class 1 laser product. You must not open the casing. There is a risk of exposure to invisible laser radiation if you open the casing, or if the casing is faulty or damaged.

COMAND does not contain any parts that you are able to maintain yourself. For safety reasons, all maintenance work must be exclusively carried out by qualified technicians.

⚠ **Warning**

Only carry out the following when the vehicle is stationary:

- Inserting a disc
- Ejecting a disc

There is a risk of accident by being distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a CD/DVD while the vehicle is in motion.

Notes on MP3 Mode

Permissible Storage Media

- CD-R and CD-RW
- DVD+R and DVD+RW
- DVD-R and DVD-RW
- PCMCIA memory card

Permissible File Systems

- ISO9660/Joliet for CD storage media
- UDF for DVDs
- FAT16 or FAT32 for PCMCIA memory card with storage medium

Multisession CDs

On multisession CDs, the content of the first session determines how COMAND handles the CD.

If the first session, for example, contains data in CD Audio format and the second session contains MP3 tracks, COMAND handles the CD as a conventional Audio CD. This means that the MP3 tracks cannot be accessed.

Similarly, if the first session contains MP3 tracks and the second session contains data in CD Audio format, COMAND handles the CD as an MP3 CD. Only the MP3 tracks can be accessed.

File Structure of Storage Medium

When creating an MP3 storage medium, you can organize MP3 tracks into folders. A folder can also contain additional folders. A storage medium may have a maximum of 255 folders in total. A maximum of 255 tracks and 255 folders are permissible per folder. A maximum of 4000 tracks in total are permissible per storage medium.

Track Names and Folder Names

When creating an MP3 storage medium, you can assign names to the MP3 tracks and to the folders.

COMAND uses these names in MP3 mode for the corresponding display. Empty folders or folders containing data other than MP3 tracks will not be displayed by COMAND.

If MP3 files are stored in the root directory itself, the root directory also counts as a folder. COMAND will then display the root directory name as a folder name.

Please note the following when assigning track names:

- Track names must contain at least one character.
- Track names must have the extension “mp3”.
- A period must appear between the track name and the extension.

ℹ COMAND does not support ID3 tags.

Permissible Formats

COMAND supports the following formats:

- MPEG1 audio layer 3 format
- Microsoft Windows® Media Audio V2, V7, V8 and V9 (WMA).

Notes on Copyright

The music tracks that you can create for playback in MP3 mode are generally copyright-protected under applicable international and national laws.

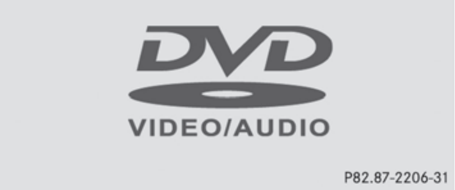
In many countries, the reproduction of copyrighted material is not permitted even if only for personal use without the express prior consent of the copyright holder.

Please check the current copyright laws for your country and comply with them.

These restrictions do not apply, for example, to your own compositions and recordings or for recordings for which authorization has been obtained from the copyright holder.

Notes about DVD Audio Discs

COMAND can playback commercially available, prerecorded Audio DVDs that bear the following label. You will usually find the label on the DVD booklet, the inlay or the DVD itself.



ℹ Audio DVDs differ from recordable DVD-R and DVD-RW discs.

Data on Audio DVDs are stored either in uncompressed format or in lossless compressed format. The sound quality on Audio DVDs is therefore better than on recordable DVDs that contain MP3 data because the MP3 format uses a lossy type of compression. You cannot delete data from or record additional data to commercially available, prerecorded Audio DVDs. Please note the following information about CDs/DVDs and pay special attention to the notes on copied and/or self-written CDs/DVDs.

Permissible Bit and Sampling Rates

- Fixed and variable bit rates from 32 kbps to 320 kbps
- Sampling rates from 8 kHz to 48 kHz

ℹ Only use MP3 tracks with a bit rate of 128 kbps or higher and with a sampling rate of 44.1 kHz or higher. Lower rates may result in impaired sound quality. This is particularly true if the surround sound function has been activated.

WMA (Windows® Media Audio) format of the following type:

- fixed bit rates from 5 kBit/s up to 384 kBit/s
- sampling rates from 8 kHz to 48 kHz.

COMAND does not support WMA files of the following type:

- DRM (Digital Rights Management) encrypted files

ℹ If other music files are stored in these audio formats on a storage medium, in addition to MP3 files, the loading process may take longer before the first track is played.

Notes about CD/DVD Discs

ℹ Discs with copy protection do not comply with the CD Audio standard and in some cases cannot be played by COMAND. When playing copied discs, problems may occur with the playback.

A wide variety of discs, disc writing software and writers are available. Due to this variety we cannot guarantee that the system will be able to play discs that you have written/copied yourself.

There may be playback problems with userburned CDs with a storage capacity of more than 700 MB. These CDs do not meet current valid standards.

ℹ When playing a DVD Audio, it may be the case with numerous albums that the last track does not contain any music and COMAND switches to the next track. This is due to the production method and does not imply a fault with the unit.

! Do not attach stickers or labels of any kind to discs. They may come loose and damage COMAND.

COMAND has been designed for discs meeting the requirements of standard EN 60908. Therefore, only discs with a maximum thickness of 1.3 mm can be used.

If a thicker disc is inserted, e.g. one which stores data on both sides, (DVD on one side, audio data on the other side), this cannot be ejected and COMAND will be damaged.

Do not use 8 cm diameter discs, not even with an adapter. Only use round discs with a diameter of 12 cm.

ℹ COMAND can play CD Audio with the high resolution surround format.

Notes on the Care of CD/DVD Discs

- Only touch the discs at the edges.
- Handle discs with care in order to prevent malfunctions during playback.
- Avoid scratching, leaving fingerprints and dust on the discs.
- Clean the discs occasionally with a commercially available cleaning cloth. Always wipe in a straight line from the inside outwards, never in a circular motion.
- The discs must only be labelled using pens specially designed for this purpose.
- After use, put the discs back into the box.
- Protect the discs from heat and direct sunlight.

Loading CDs and DVDs

⚠ **Warning**

Only load a CD or DVD when the vehicle is stationary. There is a risk of accident by being distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a CD/DVD while the vehicle is in motion.

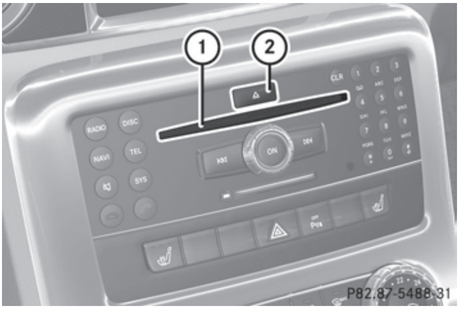
Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (appr. 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (appr. 14 m) every second.

ℹ If the CD/DVD is printed on one side, this side must face upwards when loaded. If neither side is printed, the side to be played must face downwards.

The system may not be able to play copy-protected CDs/DVDs.

Loading the DVD Changer

The DVD changer is a magazine with six built-in compartments.



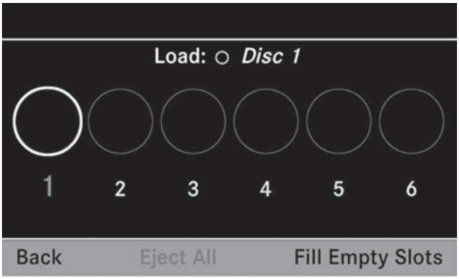
① Disc slot

② Load/Eject button (all magazine compartments)

Loading an Individual Magazine Compartment

▶ Press the Load ⏏ button.

A menu indicates which magazine compartments are currently loaded. The highlighted or currently playing compartment is indicated by a red number.



Magazine Menu

▶ **To select magazine compartment:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳

or slide ← ◎ →.

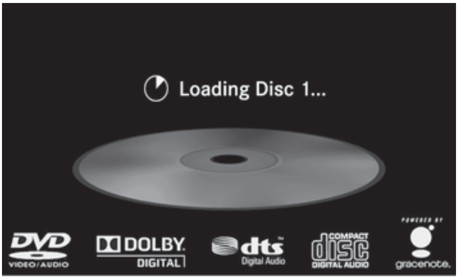
▶ **To start loading:** Press ◎.

The DVD changer will switch to the selected magazine compartment. The message `Please Wait...` will be displayed.

Then message `Please Insert Disc <x>` will be displayed.

ℹ Only insert a CD after COMAND has prompted you to do so with this message.

Only insert one CD per magazine compartment.



Loading Disc 1...

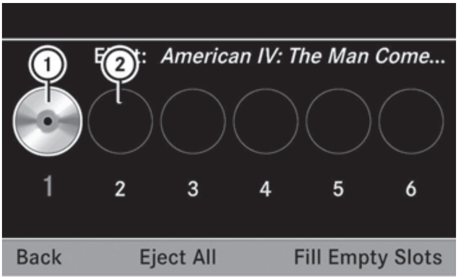
P82.87-3901-31

- ▶ Insert a disc into the slot with the printed side upwards.
  The DVD changer pulls in the disc and places it in the selected magazine compartment. The message `Loading Disc <x>` will be displayed.

ⓘ The loading process may take a while, depending on the type of disc. If you do not insert a disc, the display will switch back to the magazine menu after approximately 20 seconds.

The DVD changer plays the disc if

- it has been inserted correctly
- it is a permissible disc



P82.87-2161-31

Magazine menu, one disc loaded

① Magazine compartment occupied, ejecting possible

② Empty magazine compartment

- ▶ **To exit menu:** Press the Load ⏏ button again.

or

- ▶ Select `Back`

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button

Filling Empty Magazine Compartments

- ▶ Press the Load ⏏ button.
  The magazine menu appears. The currently playing compartment is indicated by a red number or, if the magazine is empty, compartment 1 is marked.
- ▶ Select `Fill Empty Slots`.
  The message `Please insert disc <x>` will be displayed.

ⓘ Only insert a CD after COMAND has prompted you to do so with this message. Only insert one CD per magazine compartment.

- ▶ Insert a disc into the slot with the printed side facing upwards.
  You see the `Please wait...` message. Once the disc is loaded, the DVD changer switches to the next empty compartment. You see these messages: `Please wait` and then `Please insert disc <x>`.
- ▶ Repeat the step until all compartments are loaded.
  The DVD changer plays the last disc you loaded if it has been inserted correctly and if it is a permissible type.

  If loading is not completed, COMAND plays the first disc inserted.
- ▶ **To end loading procedure:** Press the Load ⏏ button again.

or

- ▶ Select `Back`.

or

- ▶ Press the BACK button next to the COMAND controller.

Loading PCMCIA Memory Card

⚠ **Warning**

Only load a memory card when the vehicle is stationary. There is a risk of accident by being

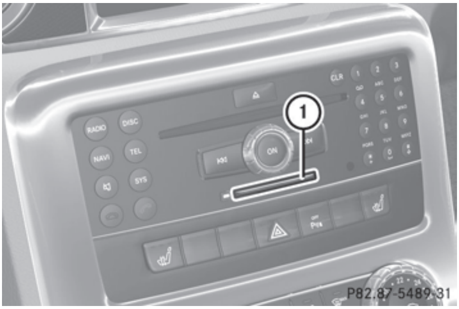
▷▷

distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a memory card while the vehicle is in motion.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (appr. 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (appr. 14 m) every second.

COMAND supports 16-bit full-size type I and II PCMCIA memory cards.

ℹ COMAND supports commercially available PCMCIA cards or PCMCIA card adapters with storage media that may not be designed for the temperatures which occur in the vehicle. You should therefore remove the PCMCIA card from the vehicle when not in use since extreme temperatures could damage these devices.



① PCMCIA memory card slot

- Push the PCMCIA memory card into the slot.
  The end with the contact must point towards the slot.

  COMAND loads the memory card and displays the message `Reading Memory Card`. If no MP3 tracks can be found, a message will be displayed.

Ejecting CDs and DVDs

⚠ **Warning**

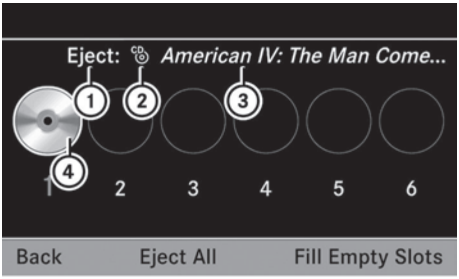
Only load a CD or DVD when the vehicle is stationary. There is a risk of accident by being distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a CD/DVD while the vehicle is in motion.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (appr. 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (appr. 14 m) every second.

ℹ If you eject a disc while another is being played, the DVD changer interrupts playback. Playback will continue once the disc has been ejected completely.

Ejecting One Disc

- Press Eject △ button.
  The magazine menu appears. The magazine compartment containing the current disc is highlighted.



P82.87-2162-31

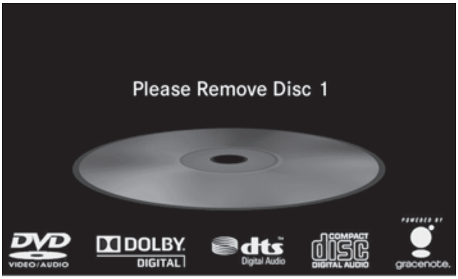
① Magazine compartment occupied, ejecting possible

② Disc type

③ Disc name (only if stored on disc)

④ Current disc

- **To select occupied magazine compartment:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ →.
- Press ◎.
  The `Ejecting disc <x>...` message appears. Then you see the following message:

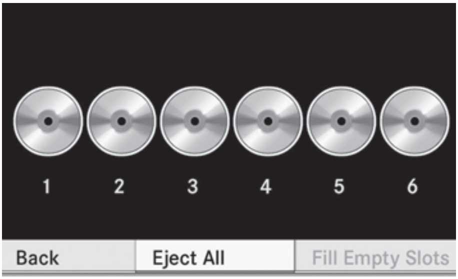

Please Remove Disc 1
DVD VIDEO/AUDIO
DOLBY DIGITAL
dts Digital Audio
COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO
POWERED BY gracenote.

P82.87-4445-31

- ▶ Remove the disc from the slot.
  If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the DVD changer will automatically pull it back in after a short while and resume playback.

Ejecting All Discs

- ▶ Press the Eject ⏏ button.
  The magazine menu appears.


1
2
3
4
5
6
Back
Eject All
Fill Empty Slots

P82.87-2164-31

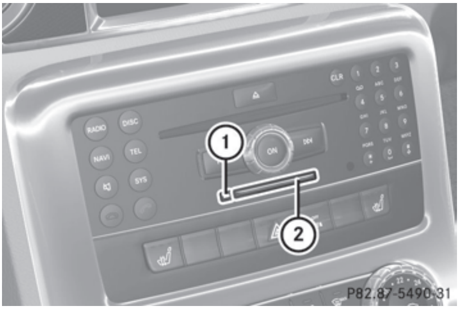
- ▶ Select `Eject All`.
  The DVD changer ejects the first disc found. The message `Ejecting disc <x>...` is displayed.
- ▶ Remove the disc from the slot when you see the message prompting you to do this.
  The DVD changer switches to the next occupied magazine compartment and ejects the disc.
- ▶ Repeat the last step until the magazine is empty.

Ejecting a PCMCIA Memory Card

⚠ Warning

Only load a memory card when the vehicle is stationary. There is a risk of accident by being distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a memory card while the vehicle is in motion.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (appr. 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (appr. 14 m) every second.


1
2
RADIO
DISC
NAVI
TEL
SYS
ON
CLR

P82.87-5490-31

① Eject button
② PCMCIA memory card slot

- ▶ Press Eject button ① twice.
  The PCMCIA memory card is ejected.
- ▶ Take the PCMCIA memory card out of slot ②.

Menu Overview

CD or DVD-A or MP3	Only with DVD-A: ❚❚/■/▶	Track list or Folder	Media	Sound
Normal track sequence	❚❚ Pause playback	Display track list (CD Audio/ DVD Audio mode only)	Media selection via media list • CD/DVD Changer • Memory Card • Music Register • Media Interface • Aux	Treble
Random tracks	■ Stop playback	Folder list (MP3 mode only)		Bass
Random folder (MP3 mode only)	▶ Restart or continue playback			Balance
Switches the CD database reading function on/off (CD mode only)				Surround sound

Switching to CD Audio, DVD Audio or MP3 Mode

From the Control Panel

▶ Insert a CD/DVD (▷ page 180) or a PCMCIA memory card (▷ page 181).
COMAND loads the medium inserted and begins playback.

or

▶ Press the DISC function button.

ℹ Pressing the function button switches directly to the disc mode selected last (CD Audio, DVD Audio, MP3-CD or DVD Video). COMAND then accesses all discs in the DVD changer, the memory card or the Music Register.

▶ If necessary, select CD/DVD Audio/ MP3 media (▷ page 186).

or

▶ **When playing a video DVD:** Open the media list as described in "Selecting DVD media" (▷ page 186).

▶ Select an audio storage medium.
This switches to the required disc mode.

Via the COMAND Controller

From Another Main Function

▶ Select `Audio` → `Audio` → `Disc` or `Memory Card` or `Music Register` in the audio menu display.

ℹ If the desired mode is also the last active mode, you only need to select `Audio`.

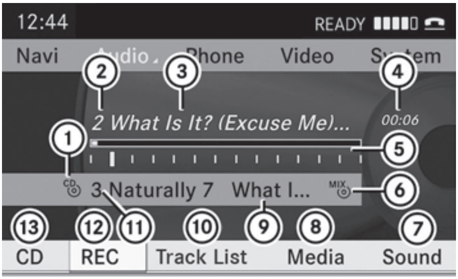
Within the Audio Function

- Select `Audio` → `Disc` or `Memory card` in the audio menu display.

ℹ `Disc` accesses audio discs in the DVD changer. `Memory Card` selects the slot for the PCMCIA memory card.

- Select CD/DVD Audio/MP3 as required (▷ page 186).
  The desired disc mode is activated.

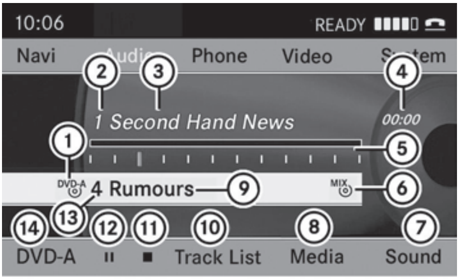
Example of CD Audio Mode Display


12:44
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
2 What Is It? (Excuse Me)...
00:06
3 Naturally 7 What I...
CD
REC
Track List
Media
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪
⑫
⑬

P82.87-3795-31

① Disc type CD
② Track number
③ Track name (only if stored on the disc as CD text or available from Gracenote®)
④ Elapsed track time
⑤ Visual track and time display
⑥ Current playback option
⑦ Sound settings
⑧ Media selection
⑨ Disc name (only if stored on the disc as CD text or available from Gracenote®)
⑩ Display track list
⑪ Disc position in the media list
⑫ Disc or track recording
⑬ Playback options

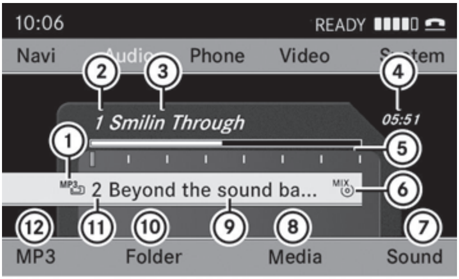
Example of DVD Audio Display


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
1 Second Hand News
00:00
4 Rumours
DVD-A
Track List
Media
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪
⑫
⑬
⑭

P82.87-4301-31

① Disc type DVD-A
② Track number
③ Track name (if available)
④ Elapsed track time
⑤ Visual time and track display
⑥ Current playback option
⑦ Sound settings
⑧ Media selection
⑨ Disc name (if available)
⑩ Display track list
⑪ Stop function
⑫ Pause function
⑬ Disc position in the media list
⑭ Playback options

Example display in MP3 mode


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
1 Smilin Through
05:51
2 Beyond the sound ba...
MP3
Folder
Media
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪
⑫

P82.87-3796-31

① Disc type MP3 or ▭ (memory card)
② Track number
③ Track or file name
④ Elapsed track time
⑤ Visual time and track display
⑥ Current playback option

⑦ Sound settings
⑧ Media selection
⑨ Current folder
⑩ Display folder list
⑪ Disc position in the media list
⑫ Playback options

ℹ An example of a media list display can be found on (▷ page 186).

Stop Function

ℹ This function is only available in DVD Audio mode.

- ▶ Switch to DVD Audio mode.
- ▶ **To interrupt playback:** Select ■.
  The display ❚❚ changes to ▶.
- ▶ **To resume playback:** Select ▶.
  Playback continues from the point where it was interrupted.
- ▶ **To stop playback:** Select ■ again when playback is interrupted.

or

- ▶ Select ■ twice during playback.
  Option selector remains at ▶.
- ▶ **To restart playback:** Select ▶.
  Playback starts from the beginning of the DVD.

Pause Function

In CD Audio, DVD Audio and MP3 Mode

- ▶ **To pause playback:** Briefly press 🔇.
  🔇 appears at the top left of the status bar.
- ▶ **To continue playback:** Briefly press 🔇 again.
  Playback continues from the point where it was paused. 🔇 disappears.

Only in DVD Audio mode

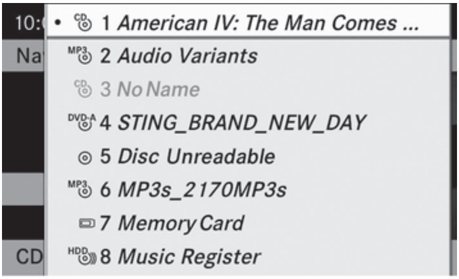
- ▶ **To pause playback:** Switch to DVD Audio mode.
- ▶ Select ❚❚.
  The display ❚❚ changes to ▶.
- ▶ **To resume playback:** Switch to DVD Audio mode.
  Playback continues from the point where it was paused.
- ▶ Select ▶.
  The display ▶ changes to ❚❚.

Selecting CD/DVD Audio/MP3 Media

- ▶ **In CD Audio, DVD Audio and MP3 mode:** Select `Media`.

or

- ▶ **In CD Audio and DVD Audio mode only:** Press ⊛ when the main area is highlighted.
  The media list appears. The dot • indicates the medium currently playing.



10:
Na
CD
• CD 1 American IV: The Man Comes ...
MP3 2 Audio Variants
CD 3 No Name
DVD-A 4 STING_BRAND_NEW_DAY
5 Disc Unreadable
MP3 6 MP3s_2170MP3s
7 Memory Card
HDD 8 Music Register

P82.87-2168-31

Media List

The media list shows the discs currently available:

- In the DVD changer (magazine compartments 1 to 6)
  The following storage media can be read: CD CD Audio, MP3 MP3-CD or MP3-DVD, DVD-A DVD Audio and DVD-V DVD Video
- PCMCIA memory card ▭ at position 7
- Music Register HDD at position 8

- ▶ **To select a disc:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- ▶ Press ⊛.

ℹ If you select a DVD Video DVD-V, COMAND switches to video mode (▷ page 201).

Selecting a Track

ⓘ For many operating functions you can also use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, e.g. the ▲, ▼ buttons, for selecting a track, a menu or scrolling through lists (▷ page 81).

Selection via Track Skip

- **To skip forwards or backwards to a track:** Rotate ↶ ◎ ↷ when the main area is highlighted.

or

- Press the ⏮ or ⏭ button.

ⓘ “Forward track skip” skips to the next track. “Backward track skip” skips to the beginning of the current track, if the track has been playing for more than 8 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 8 seconds, it will skip to the beginning of the previous track. If the playback option `Random Tracks` is switched on, the track sequence is random.

Selecting via Track List

- **In CD Audio and DVD Audio mode:** Select `Track List`.

or

- **In MP3 mode:** Press ☝ when the main area window is highlighted.
  The track list appears. The ● dot indicates the current track.
- **To select a track:** Rotate ↶ ◎ ↷ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Press ☝.

ⓘ In MP3 mode, the list shows all the tracks in alphabetical order.

Fast Forward/Reverse

- **When the main area is highlighted:** Slide and hold ← ◎ → until the desired position is reached.

or

- Press and hold the ⏮ or ⏭ button until the desired position has been reached.

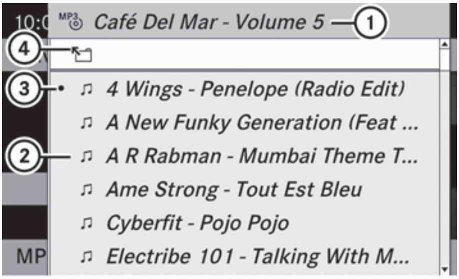
Selecting Folders

ⓘ This function is only available in MP3 mode.

- Switch to MP3 mode (▷ page 184).
- Select `Folder`.

or

- Press ☝ when the main area is highlighted.
  The folder list appears.



10:0

MP3 Café Del Mar - Volume 5

● ♫ 4 Wings - Penelope (Radio Edit)

♫ A New Funky Generation (Feat ...

♫ A R Rabman - Mumbai Theme T...

♫ Ame Strong - Tout Est Bleu

♫ Cyberfit - Pojo Pojo

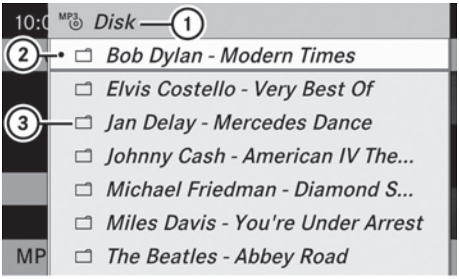
♫ Electribe 101 - Talking With M...

MP

P82.87-3825-31

① Current folder name
② Track symbol
③ Current track
④ Back folder symbol

- **To switch to the next folder up:** Select the ↰ symbol.
  The display changes to the next folder up (back folder).



- Bob Dylan - Modern Times
- Elvis Costello - Very Best Of
- Jan Delay - Mercedes Dance
- Johnny Cash - American IV The...
- Michael Friedman - Diamond S...
- Miles Davis - You're Under Arrest
- The Beatles - Abbey Road

P82.87-2170-31

① Disc name (if stored on disc)
② Current folder
③ Folder symbol

▶ **To select a folder:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ Press ◎.
The tracks of the folder appear.

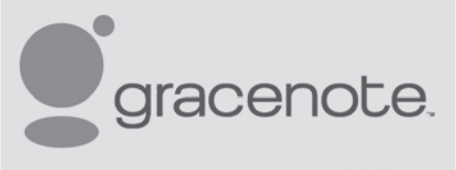
▶ **To select a track:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.

▶ Press ◎.
The track is played and the corresponding folder is now the active folder.

Gracenote® Media Database

ℹ This function is only available in CD Audio mode.

CD information including album title, artist name and track name is obtained from the Gracenote® Media Database. A version of the Gracenote® Media Database is stored on the COMAND's hard drive. Access to this database is indicated by the Gracenote logo being displayed in the lower right of some audio displays.



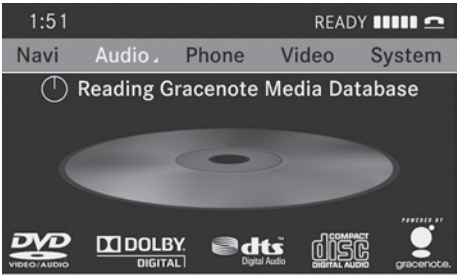
P82.86-9903-31

Many audio CDs contain CD text. COMAND uses the information contained in this text for displaying the name of the artist, album and track.

If the audio CD does not contain any CD text, COMAND can recognize unknown audio tracks in CD Audio mode with the aid of the Gracenote Media Database. For this to happen, the corresponding information must be stored in the Gracenote Media Database and the "Read CD Database" function must be switched on.

If this is the case, COMAND provides the corresponding data, such as name of artist, album and track, in the corresponding displays and lists.

If COMAND accesses the Gracenote Media Database while reading an audio CD, the following information is displayed:



Reading Gracenote Media Database

P82.87-3824-31

Switching "Read CD Database" Function On and Off

▶ Switch to CD Audio mode (▷ page 184).

▶ Select `CD` → `Read CD Database`.
A list opens from which you can select the desired data. Select `None` if you do not want to display any of the data.

Updating the Gracenote® Media Database

As new music CD releases occur it is necessary to update the Gracenote Media Database. Optimum Gracenote® music recognition function is only achieved when the most up-to-date database is available in your vehicle.

You can have the music recognition software updated at an Authorized Mercedes-Benz center by means of a DVD or perform the update process yourself.

ℹ The Gracenote® Media Database is updated at the same time as the map software (▷ page 100).

Setting Audio Format

It is only possible to set the audio format in DVD Audio mode. The number of available audio formats depends on the DVD. The content of a DVD Audio is called the “album”, which can be divided into a maximum of nine groups. A group may contain, for example, music of different sound qualities (stereo and multi-channel formats) or bonus tracks. Each group can include up to 99 tracks. If a DVD Audio only comprises one audio format, the “Group” menu item(s) cannot be selected.

- Switch to DVD Audio mode (▷ page 184).
- Select DVD-A → Group.
  The list of available audio formats appears. The dot ● indicates the format currently selected.
- **To change setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Press ◎.

Playback Options

The following options are available:

- Normal Track Sequence
  You will hear the tracks in the normal order (e.g. track 1, 2, 3, etc.).
- Random Tracks
  You will hear the tracks in random order (e.g. track 3, 8, 5, etc.).
- Random Folder (MP3 mode only)
  You hear the tracks in the currently active folder and any subfolders in random order.

- **To select an option:** Switch to CD Audio, DVD Audio or MP3 mode (▷ page 184).
- Select CD or DVD-A or MP3.
  The option list appears. A dot ● indicates the option selected.
- Select an option.
  The option is activated. For all options except Normal Track Sequence, you will see a corresponding display in the main area.

ℹ The Normal Track Sequence option is automatically selected when you change the medium you are currently listening to or when you select a different medium. If an option is selected, it remains selected after COMAND is switched on or off.

Music Register

You can record tracks from Audio CDs and store them in the Music Register. The memory capacity is 6 GB.

! Keep your original music files in a safe place. A fault with the COMAND may cause the music files stored in the Music Register to be lost. Mercedes-Benz USA, LLC is not liable for any loss of data.

Switching to the Music Register

From Another Main Function

- Select Audio → Audio → Music Register in the Audio menu display.

ℹ If Music Register was the last mode, you only need to select Audio.

Within the Audio Function

- Select Audio → Music Register.
  Music Register is loaded. The Music Register display appears.

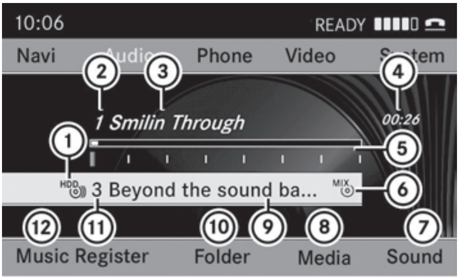
No music files available:

A message will be displayed.

- First record music files from an Audio CD (▷ page 190).

Music files available:

You will hear the first track of the first folder found or playback will start from the point listened to last.


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
1 Smilin Through
00:26
3 Beyond the sound ba...
MIX
Music Register
Folder
Media
Sound
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪
⑫

P82.87-3798-31

① Storage media type – Music Register HDD
② Track number
③ Track name
④ Elapsed track time
⑤ Visual time and track display
⑥ Current playback option
⑦ Sound settings
⑧ Media selection
⑨ Current folder
⑩ Folder functions
⑪ Storage medium position in the media list
⑫ Calls up Music Register menu

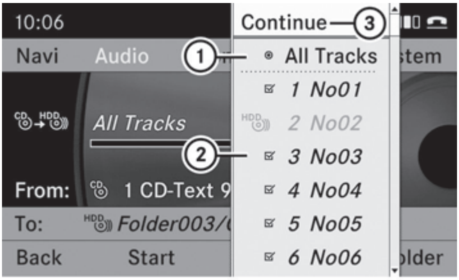
Recording Music Files

ⓘ CD information, including album title, artist name and track name is obtained from the Gracenote® Media Database (▷ page 188).

- ▶ In the `Disc` submenu with Audio CD inserted, select `REC`. The Record submenu appears.

Selecting Tracks to Be Recorded

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Tracks` is highlighted.
- ▶ Press ◎.
- ▶ Select tracks to be recorded by switching the check mark next to each track entry on or off.


10:06
Navi
Audio
System
All Tracks
From:
1 CD-Text 9
To:
Folder003/
Back
Start
Folder
Continue
● All Tracks
☑ 1 No01
2 No02
☑ 3 No03
☑ 4 No04
☑ 5 No05
☑ 6 No06
①
②
③

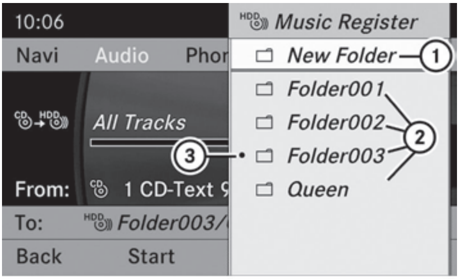
P82.87-2173-31

① Record all tracks (default)
② Option for selecting individual tracks
③ Confirm selection

ⓘ If you do not select individual tracks before recording, all tracks on the CD will be recorded.

Selecting a Destination Folder

- ▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until `Destination Folder` is highlighted.
- ▶ Press ◎.


10:06
Navi
Audio
Phone
All Tracks
From:
1 CD-Text 9
To:
Folder003/
Back
Start
Music Register
☐ New Folder
☐ Folder001
☐ Folder002
☐ Folder003
☐ Queen
①
②
③

P82.87-2174-31

Selection list

① Create new folder (default)
② Existing folders
③ Currently active folder

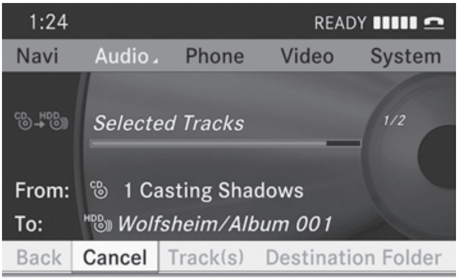
- **To select folder:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Press ⊛.

ℹ If you do not select a destination folder before recording, a new folder will be created.

Start the Recording

- Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until Start is highlighted.
- Press ⊛.
  In the display information about source, destination and progress of the recording is shown.

ℹ The Disc menu re-appears automatically after a successful recording.



Selected Tracks

From: 1 Casting Shadows

To: Wolfsheim/Album 001

P82.87-3799-31

- **To stop the recording:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → until Cancel is highlighted.
- Press ⊛.
  The Disc menu re-appears.

Deleting all Music Files

This function deletes all music files from Music Register.

- Select Music Register → Delete All Music Files.
  A prompt appears. No is highlighted.
- **Do not delete:** Press the ⊛ button.
  The Music Register display appears.
- **To delete:** Select Yes.
  A corresponding message appears.

Calling up Memory Space Info

- Select Music Register → Memory Info.

A window appears containing information on:

- Memory capacity
- Available memory
- Occupied memory
- Content (folders, tracks)

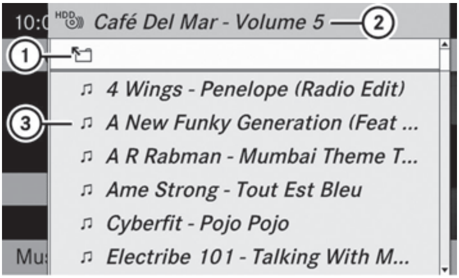
Folder Functions

You can view the content of Music Register, change folder or track names and delete individual folders or tracks.

- Select Folder in the submenu.

or

- Press ⊛ when the main area is highlighted.



Café Del Mar - Volume 5

♫ 4 Wings - Penelope (Radio Edit)
♫ A New Funky Generation (Feat ...
♫ A R Rabman - Mumbai Theme T...
♫ Ame Strong - Tout Est Bleu
♫ Cyberfit - Pojo Pojo
♫ Electribe 101 - Talking With M...

P82.87-3823-31

① Back folder symbol
② Current folder
③ Music file symbol

- **To switch to the next folder up:** Select the ⤴ symbol.
  The display changes to the next folder up.

Changing Folder/Track Name

- Select Folder.
- **To select a folder/track:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- Select Options → Change.
- Enter a name for the folder/track in the input line.
- **To save changes:** Select ok .

Deleting Folders/Track

- ▶ Select `Folder`.
- ▶ **To select a folder/track:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- ▶ Select `Options` → `Delete`.
  A query appears. `No` is highlighted.
- ▶ **Do not delete:** Press the ⊚ button.
- ▶ **To delete:** Select `Yes` and press ⊚.
  A message appears.

Playback Options

The following options are available:

- `Normal Track Sequence`
  You will hear the tracks in the normal sequence (e.g. track 1, 2, 3 etc.).
- `Random Tracks:`
  You hear the tracks in random order.
- `Random Folder`
  The tracks of the currently active folder and any subfolders are heard in random order.

- ▶ **To select an option:** Switch to Music Register (▷ page 189).
- ▶ Select `Music Register` in the submenu.
  The option list appears. A ● dot indicates the activated option.
- ▶ Select an option.
  The option is activated. A corresponding display will appear in the main area for all options except `Normal Track Sequence`.

ℹ The option `Normal Track Sequence` is automatically activated if you change the medium which is currently being played or if you select another medium. An activated option remains active after COMAND is switched on or off.

Media Interface

Important Notes

Connection Options

Via the UCI connection (Universal Consumer Interface) you can connect the following media to COMAND:

- iPods
- MP3 player
- USB devices

Supported iPod® Versions

The following iPod® versions are fully supported:

- iPod® mini
- iPod® nano
- iPod® classic
- iPod® touch

Supported USB Devices

The following USB devices are supported:

- USB sticks (flash memory)
- USB hard drives (1-inch, 1.8-inch and 2.5-inch drives) with a starting/continuous current rating of maximum 800 mA (otherwise a separate power supply will be necessary)

ℹ The Media Interface supports USB storage media of "USB Device Subclass 6". You can obtain information about the "USB Device Subclass 6" from the manufacturer.

Further Information on Supported Devices

Further information on compatible multimedia devices is available via the Internet at **http://www.mbusa-mobile.com**. Or call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372) (US), or Customer Relations at 1-800-387-0100 (Canada).

Supported Data Formats (USB devices)

The following data types are supported:

- MP3: CBR, VBR (up to 320 kbit/s)
- WMA: CBR, VBR (up to 320 kbit/s)

In order to display the metadata during playback, ID3 tags (version 1.x, 2.3, 2.4) and WMA tags in ASCII and UTF16 coding are supported.

Notes on USB Devices

- In order to keep the initialisation time short, do not store data other than music files on the USB device.
- Up to eight directory levels with up to 1,000 tracks are supported.
- Do not use a USB extension cable or adapter. These may impair functionality.
- Playlists are searched for in the background on the USB device and, if available, are offered beside folders in a separate category.
- You can only use USB devices formatted with the file system format FAT (File Allocation Table).

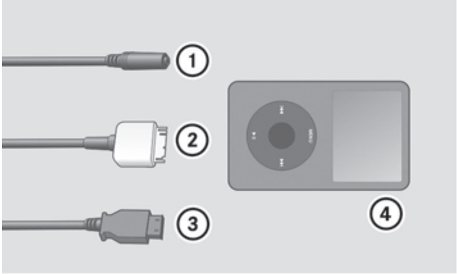
ℹ Files protected with DRM (Digital Rights Management) are not supported by the Media Interface.

Connecting External Devices

You will find the connection sockets in the glove compartment.

Never connect more than one device at a time. Please consult a Mercedes-Benz Service Center for further information.

ℹ Do not leave external devices in the vehicle, as functionality cannot be guaranteed above certain temperatures (such as inside a vehicle in direct sunlight). Mercedes-Benz does not take responsibility for any damage to external devices.



P82.60-6736-31

① Connection socket for 1/8 inch jack plug, for MP3 players, for example.

② iPod® plug for connecting an iPod®

③ USB socket for connecting a USB device

④ Example device: iPod®

▶ Connect the external device using appropriate connection ①, ② or ③.
Never connect more than one device at a time. You will otherwise not be able to play back from the external device.
COMAND activates the device.

If you remove a device, the `No Device Connected` message appears.

ℹ The connected iPod® or USB device should not be operated with a remote control (such as a Bluetooth remote control) while it is being operated with Media Interface, as this could cause unforeseen technical difficulties.

ℹ The initialisation period may be extended if you connect an iPod® or USB device which has a fully discharged battery.

ℹ Error messages appear while the device is being activated if:

- you have connected two devices at the same time
- COMAND does not support the device connected
- the device connected consumes too much power
- the Media Interface connection is defective

If necessary, consult a Mercedes-Benz Service Center.

Switching to Media Interface

From Another Main Function

▶ Select Audio → Audio → Media Interface in the audio menu display.

ⓘ If you previously selected operation with Media Interface, you need only select Audio.

or

▶ Press the DISC function button.
Switch on the previous disc operating mode.

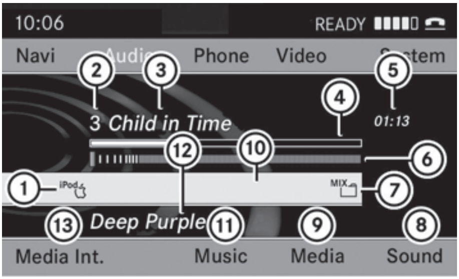
ⓘ If you previously selected operation with Media Interface, it will now be switched on.

▶ Select Media.
The media list appears. The ● dot indicates the current medium being played.

▶ Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the position of Media Interface is highlighted in the media list.

ⓘ If no device is connected, you will see the entry Media Interface instead of a device name.

▶ Press ◉.
COMAND activates the connected device (only for iPods and USB devices). You will see a corresponding message. The basic display then appears.



P82.87-2507-31

Example display: iPod® operation

① Device type
② Track number
③ Track name
④ Visual elapsed track time
⑤ Numeric elapsed track time (also in format 00:00:00 for audiobooks)
⑥ Visual track display
⑦ Current playback option
⑧ Sound settings
⑨ Media list
⑩ Album name, if available
⑪ Categories, playlists and/or folders
⑫ Artist, if available
⑬ Playback options

ⓘ If the device connected does not contain any playable tracks, a corresponding message appears.

Within the Audio Function

▶ Connect an external device (▷ page 193).
COMAND activates the device. The basic display appears.

or

▶ Select Audio → Media Interface.

ⓘ The type of device ① that has been connected is indicated by the corresponding icons for iPod®, MP3 player or USB mass storage device.

Selecting Music Files

ℹ COMAND displays the data stored on the iPod®, MP3 player or USB mass storage device in the storage structure used in the medium in question.

Selecting by Skipping to a Track

▶ **To skip forwards or backwards to a track:** Slide ← ◎ →.

or

▶ Press the ⏭ or ⏮ button.

ℹ Skipping forwards skips to the next track. Skipping backwards skips to the beginning of the current track if the track has been playing for more than 8 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 8 seconds, it skips to the start of the previous track. If you have selected a playback option other than `Normal Track Sequence`, the track sequence is random.

Selecting by Manual Track Number Entry

▶ **To make an entry:** Press the ⊛ button.
An input menu appears. The number of possible input places depends on the number of tracks stored.

▶ **To enter a track number:** Press a number key, such as ⑨.
The number is entered in the first position in the input line.

ℹ If an invalid number is entered, COMAND will ignore it and it will not be displayed.

▶ Enter more numbers if desired.

▶ **To confirm your entry:** Press the ◎ button.
The selected track is played.

Fast forward/rewind

▶ When the main area is highlighted, slide and hold ← ◎ → until the desired position has been reached.

or

▶ Press and hold the ⏭ or ⏮ button until the desired position has been reached.

Selecting a Category/Playlist/Folder

iPods and MP3 Players

You can select tracks by category for iPods and by folder for MP3 players.

Depending on the connected device, the categories may include:

- `Current track list`
- `Playlists` (e.g. `All`, `My top 25` or `Music videos`)
- `Artists`
- `Albums`
- `Podcasts`
- `Audiobooks`
- `Genres`
- `Composers`

ℹ Some playback categories contain the `All` entry. Further entries of this type can follow depending on the hierarchy level. After selecting a title at the track level, the entire content of the category selected will be played.

USB Devices

For USB mass storage devices, you can select folders and also playlists (if available). COMAND can also display the album name and artist (“metadata”) during playback, if this information has previously been entered.

Playlists are shown in the display with a particular icon. When you open the playlist, the selected tracks are opened and playback begins.

For USB mass storage devices, you can determine whether metadata from the tags in the coded music data should be displayed or whether the file name and directory should be displayed during playback.

- Select `Media Interface` → `Display Metadata`.

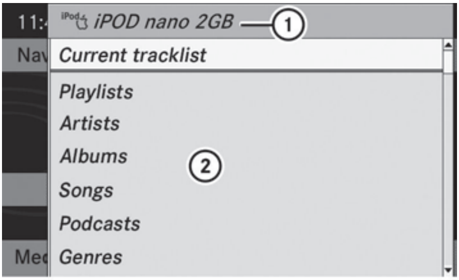
Selecting a Category and Opening a Folder

- **To open a category list/folder:** Press ⊛ when the main area is highlighted.

or

- Select `Music`.
  You will see the available categories or the folder content (e.g. other folders).

ℹ The `Music` menu item is not available until the device has been activated.


11:
iPOD nano 2GB
1
Nav
Current tracklist
Playlists
Artists
Albums
2
Songs
Podcasts
Med
Genres

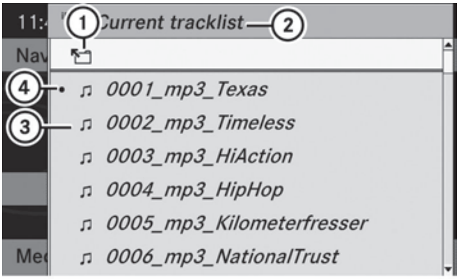
P82.87-2508-31

① Device name and device icon
② Selectable categories

- **To select a category/folder:** Slide ↑◎↓ and confirm with ⊛.
  You will see the content of the selected category or selected folder.

ℹ You may see the `Please wait...` message beforehand.

- If necessary, repeat this operating step until the tracks in the desired folder appear.


11:
1
Current tracklist
2
Nav
4
3
0001_mp3_Texas
0002_mp3_Timeless
0003_mp3_HiAction
0004_mp3_HipHop
0005_mp3_Kilometerfresser
Med
0006_mp3_NationalTrust

P82.87-2509-31

① Symbol for back folder
② Current category
③ Track icon
④ Current track

- **To select a track:** Slide ↑◎↓ and confirm with ⊛.
  The track is played.

or

- Select an album or folder and confirm with ⊛.
- **To select a track:** Slide ↑◎↓ and confirm with ⊛.
  After that, the first track of the album/folder is played.
- **To switch to the next folder up:** Select the ↰ icon.

ℹ The ↰ icon is always listed right at the top of the folder in question.

Playing the Content of a Category or Folder

- Select a category or folder.
- Press ⊛ for longer than two seconds.
  The content of the category or folder selected is played in accordance with the playback option (▷ page 197) selected.

Alphabetical Track Selection

iPods and MP3 Players

ℹ This function is available for categories which are arranged in alphabetical order.

This function is not available within playlists, for example.

- ▶ Select a category, e.g. artists.
  The available artists appear.
- ▶ Press the corresponding number key once or repeatedly to select the initial letter of the desired artist. For example, to select an artist whose name begins with C, press the number key "2" three times.
  You see the available letters at the bottom edge of the display.

  After a message, the first entry in the list which matches the letter entered is highlighted.

If there is no entry which matches the letter which has been entered, the last entry in the list which matches a previous letter is highlighted.

USB Devices

This function is available for directories which are arranged in alphabetical order. This function is not available within playlists.

- ▶ Press the number key in question once or repeatedly in a directory to select the initial letter of the desired artist.

  For example, to select an artist whose name begins with C, press the number key “2” three times.
  You see the available letters at the bottom edge of the display.

  If the directory only contains folders, COMAND searches for folders. The first entry in the list that matches the letter is highlighted.

  If this does not happen, COMAND searches for tracks. After a message, the first entry in the list which matches the letter entered is highlighted.

If there is no entry which matches the letter which has been entered, the last entry in the list which matches a previous letter is highlighted.

Selecting the Active Partition (USB Devices Only)

You can select this function for USB devices when the storage device is partitioned. Up to four partitions (primary or logical and FAT-formatted) are supported.

The Windows formatting program supports FAT partitions with either FAT16 or FAT32.

- ▶ Select `Media Interface` → `Select Active partition`.

Playback Options

The following options are available to you:

- `Normal Track Sequence:`
  You hear the tracks in their normal order (numerical or alphabetical).
- `Random Tracks:`

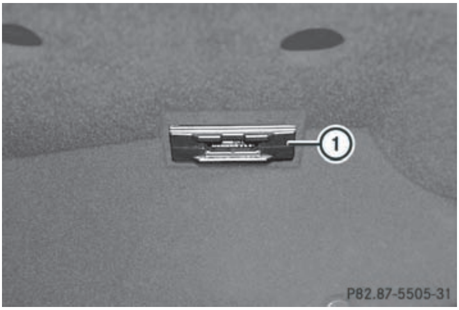
  You hear all tracks in random order.
- `Random Categories` or `Random Folder` (in the case of USB devices when `Folder` has been selected):

  You hear the tracks in the current active category or folder and any subfolders in random order.

- ▶ **To select an option:** Select `Media Interface` in the basic display.
  The option list appears. A ● dot indicates the option selected.
- ▶ Select an option.

Audio Aux

An external audio source (Aux) can be connected to COMAND via the adapter socket ① located inside the glovebox.



Switching to Audio Aux Mode

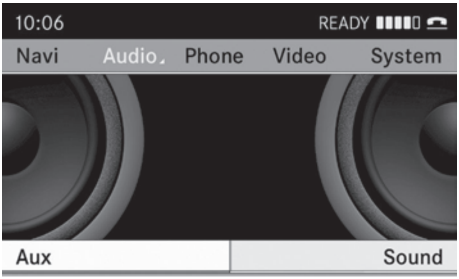
From Another Main Function

▶ Select `Audio` → `Audio` → `Aux` in the audio menu display.

ℹ If the last mode was audio Aux mode, you only need to select `Audio`.

Within the Audio Function

▶ Select `Audio` → `Aux`.
The Audio Aux menu appears. The medium in the external audio source is heard, provided it is connected and switched to playback.



ℹ Please see the corresponding operating instructions for how to operate the external audio source.

You can set the following in audio Aux mode:

- Volume (▷ page 89)
- Balance (▷ page 90)
- Treble and bass (▷ page 90)
- Bang & Olufsen (▷ page 90)

⚠ **Warning**

Due to the different volumes of the external audio sources, system messages (e.g. navigation announcements) may be much louder. You may need to disable these system messages or adjust the volume of these messages manually.

ℹ The volume of external audio sources is extremely variable. It is possible that a device connected as an external audio source will sound quieter or louder in the vehicle or that the usual maximum volume cannot be achieved. On certain devices the volume can be set separately. In this case, start at a moderate volume and increase it slowly. In this way, you can determine whether the system is capable of playback without distortion, even at high volume.

Video

General Information

Safety Notes

⚠ **Warning**

COMAND is classified as a Class 1 laser product. You must not open the casing. There is a risk of exposure to invisible laser radiation if you open the casing, or if the casing is faulty or damaged.

COMAND does not contain any parts that you are able to maintain yourself. For safety reasons, all maintenance work must be exclusively carried out by qualified technicians.

⚠ **Warning**

Only carry out the following when the vehicle is stationary:

- Inserting a disc
- Ejecting a disc

There is a risk of accident by being distracted from road and traffic conditions if you load a CD/DVD while the vehicle is in motion.

Vehicle Equipment

ⓘ This Operator’s Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Automatic Picture Switch-off

The video picture is only displayed if the gearshift lever is in “P” position.

When the gearshift lever is moved out of the “P” position, the following message is displayed: `In order not to distract you from the traffic situation, the picture is faded out while the vehicle is in motion.`

When the gearshift lever is moved back into the “P” position, the picture switches back on.

Notes on Storage Media

ⓘ When playing copied discs, problems may occur with the playback. A wide variety of disc-writing software and writers are available. Due to this variety we cannot guarantee that the system will be able to play discs that you have written/copied yourself.

! Do not affix stickers or labels to the discs, as they could peel off and damage COMAND. Stickers can cause the disc to bend, which can result in read errors and disc recognition problems.

! COMAND is designed to hold discs which comply with the EN 60908 standard. You can therefore only use discs with a maximum thickness of 1.3 mm.
If you insert thicker discs, e.g. those that contain data on both sides (DVD on one side and audio data on the other), they cannot be ejected and can damage COMAND.

Do not use discs with a diameter of 8 cm, even with an adapter. Only use round discs with a diameter of 12 cm.

Notes on the Care of Discs

- Only hold discs by the edge.
- Handle discs with care in order to prevent malfunctions during playback.
- Avoid scratching, leaving fingerprints and dust on the discs.
- Clean the discs occasionally with a commercially available cleaning cloth. Always wipe in a straight line from the inside outwards, never in a circular motion.
- The discs must only be labelled using pens specially designed for this purpose.
- After use, replace the discs into the sleeve.
- Protect the discs from heat and direct sunlight.

DVD Playback Conditions

Some DVDs may not comply with the NTSC or PAL TV playback standards. Sound, picture and other playback problems may occur when you play such DVDs.

As standard, COMAND can play video DVDs which meet the following criteria:

- Region code 1 or region code 0 (all regions)

ⓘ With a video DVD having another region code, a corresponding message will be displayed.

- PAL or NTSC TV standard

Information on this can usually be found either on the DVD itself or on the DVD sleeve.

ⓘ The factory setting for COMAND is region code 1. An authorized Mercedes-Benz Center can change this setting up to five times. This will enable you to play video DVDs with other region codes, provided that they have been made to the PAL or NTSC TV standard.

Functional Restrictions

It may be the case that some functions or actions may not be possible at certain times, or may not be possible in general, depending on the DVD.

When you activate such functions or actions, this is indicated by the ⃠ in the display.

Loading a DVD

▶ Proceed as described in the “Loading CDs and DVDs” section (▷ page 180).

Ejecting a DVD

▶ Proceed as described in the “Ejecting CDs and DVDs” section (▷ page 182).

Submenu Overview

DVD-Video	❚❚/▶	■	Media	Sound
DVD functions	❚❚ Pauses playback	■ Stops playback	Medium selection	Treble
Brightness	▶ Resumes playback			Bass
Contrast	▶ Restarts playback			Balance
Color				Surround sound
16:9 Optimized				
4:3				
Widescreen				

DVD Video

Switching to DVD Video

From the Control Panel

- ▶ Insert a DVD Video (▷ page 180).
  COMAND loads the medium inserted and starts playing it.

or

- ▶ **From another main function:** Press the DISC function button.
  The function button takes you directly to the last active disc mode (CD Audio , DVD Audio , MP3 CD, Media Interface or DVD Video). COMAND accesses all discs in the DVD changer.

  If you previously selected DVD Video mode, it will now be switched on.

  If you have another disc mode activated:
- ▶ Select `Media`.
  The media list appears.
- ▶ Select a DVD Video (▷ page 202).

Via COMAND Controller

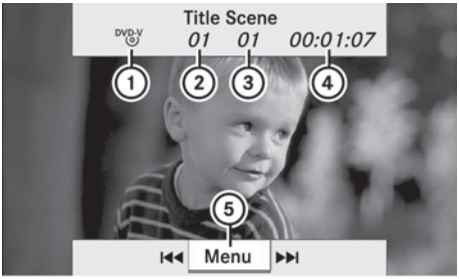
- ▶ Select `Video` from the main function line.

Displaying/Hiding Control Menu

- ▶ **To show:** Slide ↑◎↓.
- ▶ **To hide:** Slide ↑◎↓.

or

- ▶ Wait approximately eight seconds.



P82.87-2178-31

Control menu displayed

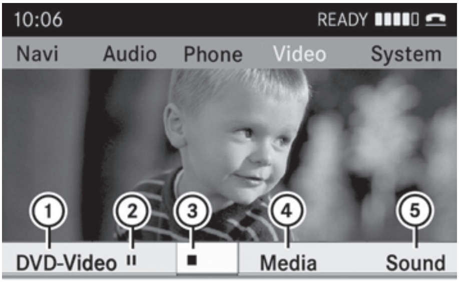
① Disc type
② Current title
③ Current scene
④ Elapsed title time
⑤ Display menu system

Displaying/Hiding Menu System

- **To show:** Press ⊛.

or

- When the control menu is shown, select `Menu`.
- **To hide:** Slide ↑ ◎ and select `Full screen`.


10:06
READY
Navi
Audio
Phone
Video
System
①
②
③
④
⑤
DVD-Video ❚❚
■
Media
Sound

P82.87-2179-31

Menu system displayed
① DVD Video menu
② Pause function
③ Stop function
④ Media selection
⑤ Sound settings

Fast Forward or Rewind

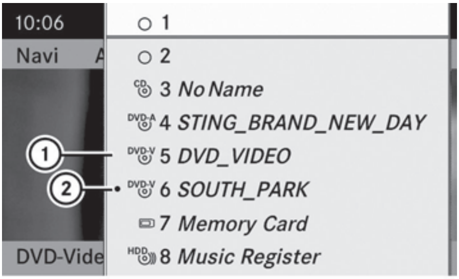
- Slide and hold ← ◎ → in Full Screen mode until the desired position is reached.

or

- Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ in the control panel until the desired position has been reached.
  You see the control menu.

Selecting DVD Media

- In DVD video mode, if necessary display the menu system (▷ page 202).
- Select `Media`.
  The media list appears. The ● dot indicates the current medium being played.


10:06
Navi
DVD-Vide
○ 1
○ 2
3 No Name
DVD-A 4 STING_BRAND_NEW_DAY
DVD-V 5 DVD_VIDEO
● DVD-V 6 SOUTH_PARK
7 Memory Card
HDD 8 Music Register
①
②

P82.87-2180-31

Media list
① Symbol for DVD Video
② DVD Video currently playing

- **To select video DVD-V:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓.
- **To confirm your selection:** Press ⊛.
  COMAND changes the medium.

ℹ If you select a CD, an DVD Audio or an MP3 medium, you switch to the audio mode in question. You can find further information about the media list on (▷ page 186).

Stop Function

- In DVD Video mode, display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- **To interrupt playback:** Select ■.
  The display ❚❚ changes to ▶.
- **To resume playback:** Select ▶.
  Playback continues from the point where it was interrupted. The menu system is hidden.
- **To stop playback:** Select ■ again while playback is interrupted.

or

- Select ■ twice during playback.
  Selection is at ▶.
- **To restart playback:** Select ▶.
  Playback restarts from the beginning. The menu system is hidden.

Pause Function

- ▶ In DVD Video mode, display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- ▶ **To pause playback:** Select ❚❚.
  The display ❚❚ changes to ▶.
- ▶ **To resume playback:** Select ▶.
  Playback continues from the point where it was paused. The menu system is hidden.

Selecting a Scene/Chapter

- ▶ **To skip forwards or backwards:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ← ◎ → in Full Screen mode.

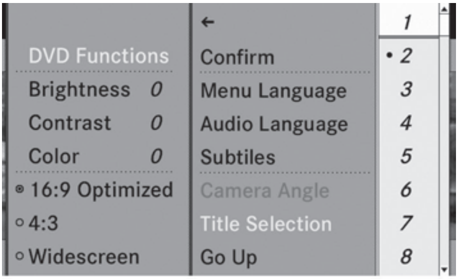
or

- ▶ Press the ⏮ or ⏭ button on the control panel.
  The control menu (▷ page 201) appears for approximately 8 seconds.

Selecting a Film/Track

ⓘ This function is only available if the DVD is divided into several films/tracks.

- ▶ Display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- ▶ Select `DVD-Video` → `DVD Functions`.
  A menu appears.



DVD function menu

- ▶ Turn ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until `Title Selection` is selected.
- ▶ **To call up the selection list:** Press ◎.
- ▶ Select a film/track.

Picture Settings

Adjusting the Brightness, Contrast or Color

- ▶ Display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- ▶ Select `DVD-Video` → `Brightness`, `Contrast` or `Color`.
- ▶ **To change the setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired setting is reached.
- ▶ **To save the setting:** Press ◎.

Changing the Picture Format

- ▶ Display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- ▶ Select `DVD-Video`.
  The DVD-Video menu appears. The filled-in option button in front of one of these menu items: `16:9 Optimized`, `4:3` or `Widescreen` indicates the format currently selected.
- ▶ **To change the format:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired format is selected.
- ▶ **To save the setting:** Press ◎.

DVD Menu

ⓘ The DVD menu is the menu stored on the DVD itself. It is structured in various ways according to the individual DVD and permits certain actions and settings.

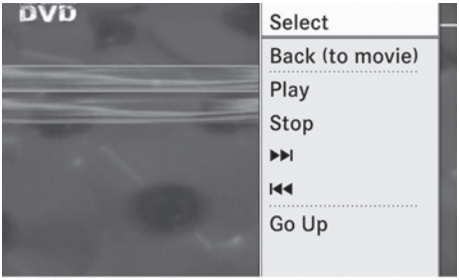
Opening the DVD Menu

- ▶ In DVD Video mode, if necessary, display the menu system (▷ page 202).
- ▶ Select `DVD-Video` → `DVD Functions` → `Menu`.
  The DVD menu appears.

Selecting Menu Items in the DVD Menu

- ▶ Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ or ← ◎ →.
- ▶ **To confirm your selection:** Press ◎.
  The selection menu appears.

ℹ Menu items which cannot be selected are greyed out.



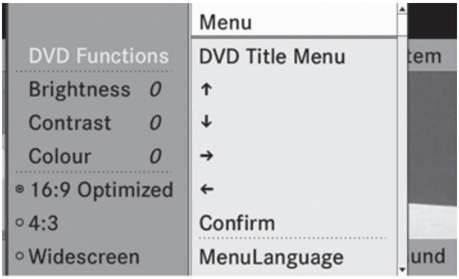
P82.87-2182-31

- **To confirm selection:** Select `Select`.
  COMAND will perform the action or displays a submenu represented by the menu item selected in the DVD menu. If necessary select from further options in the same way.
  COMAND then switches back to the DVD menu.

ℹ Depending on the DVD, it is possible the menu item `Play` either has no function or no function in certain parts of the DVD menu. This is indicated by the ⊘ symbol on the display.

or

- In DVD Video mode, if necessary, display the control menu (▷ page 202).
- Select `Menu` → `DVD Video` → `DVD Functions`



P82.87-2183-31

DVD menu

Stopping Film or Skipping to the Beginning or End of a Scene

- Select any menu item from the DVD menu.
  The selection menu appears.
- **To stop a film:** Select `Stop` from the menu.
- **To skip to the end of a scene:** Select ⏭ from the menu.
- **To skip to the beginning of a scene:** Select ⏮ from the menu.

ℹ Depending on the DVD, the ⏮ and ⏭ menu items may not function at all or may not function at certain points in the DVD menu. You will see the ⊘ symbol in the display as an indicator.

Moving up one Level in the DVD Menu

- Press the BACK button.

  or

- Select the corresponding menu item in the DVD menu.

  or

- Select any menu item from the DVD menu.
- Select `Go Up` from the selection menu.

ℹ Depending on the DVD, the `Play` menu item may not function at all or may not function at certain points in the DVD menu. You will see the ⊘ symbol in the display as an indicator.

Back to the Movie

- Press the BACK button repeatedly until you see the film.

  or

- Select the corresponding menu item in the DVD menu.
- Select the `Back (to movie)` menu item from the selection menu.

ℹ Depending on the DVD, the `Back (to movie)` menu item may not function in general or may not function at certain points in the DVD menu.

Setting the Language and Audio Format

ℹ This function is not available on all DVDs. Where available, you can set the DVD menu language and the audio language or audio format. The number of possible settings is dependent on the DVD content. It is possible that the settings may also be accessed in the DVD menu (▷ page 203).

- Display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- Select `DVD-Video` → `DVD Functions`.
- Select `Menu Language` or `Audio Language`.
  Both of these will bring up a selection menu after a few seconds. The ● dot in front of an entry indicates the currently selected language.
- **To change the setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired setting is reached.
- **To save the setting:** Press ⊛.

Subtitles and Camera Angle

ℹ These functions are not available on all DVDs. The number of subtitle languages and camera angles available depends on the content of the DVD. The settings may also be accessed in the DVD menu (▷ page 203).

- Display the menu system if necessary (▷ page 202).
- Select `DVD-Video` → `DVD Functions`.
- Select `Subtitles` or `Camera Angle`.
  Both of these will bring up a selection menu. The ● dot in front of an entry indicates the current setting.
- **To change the setting:** Rotate ⟲ ◎ ⟳ or slide ↑ ◎ ↓ until the desired setting is reached.
- **To save the setting:** Press ⊛.

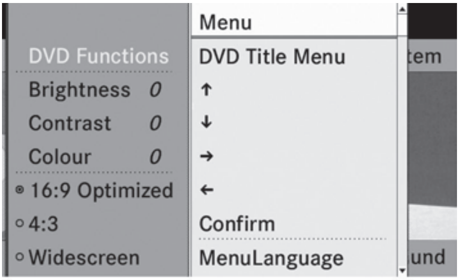
Interactive Content

DVDs may have interactive content (e.g. a video game).
In a video game, for example, you can control the play by selecting or triggering actions. The type and number of actions is dependent on the DVD.

- **To select an action:** Slide ↑ ◎ ↓ or ← ◎ →.
- **To trigger an action:** Press ⊛.
  A menu appears and the first entry, `Select`, is highlighted.
- Press ⊛.

or

- In DVD Video mode, if necessary display the control menu (▷ page 202).
- Select `Menu` → `DVD-Video` → `DVD Functions`.
- Select a directional arrow to select or trigger an action.



P82.87-2183-31

The way you can control the actions depends on the DVD.

Video Aux

Aux Connectors

An external video source (Video Aux) can be connected to COMAND via Media Interface (▷ page 193) adaptor socket located inside the glovebox.

ℹ In vehicles equipped with a rear view camera, the Video Aux connection cannot be used for external video sources.

Switching to Video Aux

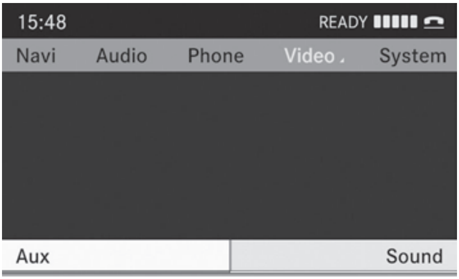
From Another Main Function

▶ Select Video → Video → Video Aux

ℹ If Video Aux mode was active last, you only need to select Video.

Within the Video Function

▶ Select Video → Video Aux
The Video Aux menu appears. The medium in the external video source is played, provided it is connected and switched to playback.



P82.87-2184-31

ℹ Please refer to the relevant operating guide for operation of the external video source.

Video Aux Settings

The following settings can be made in Video Aux mode:

- Volume (▷ page 89)
- Balance (▷ page 90)
- Treble and bass (▷ page 90)
- Bang & Olufsen sound system (▷ page 90)
- Picture (▷ page 203)

⚠ Warning

Due to the different volumes of the external audio sources, system messages (e.g. navigation announcements) may be much louder. You may need to disable these system messages or adjust the volume of these messages manually.

ℹ The volume of external audio sources is extremely variable. It is possible that a device connected as an external audio source will sound quieter or louder in the vehicle or that the usual maximum volume cannot be achieved. On certain devices the volume can be set separately. In this case, start at a moderate volume and increase it slowly. In this way, you can determine whether the system is capable of playback without distortion, even at a high volume.

Voice Control

Overview

Operating Safety

⚠ Warning!

Please devote your attention first and foremost to the traffic situation you are in. While the system permits hands-free phone operation, attention to traffic may be diverted not only by physical operation of a phone, but also by the distraction of a phone conversation while driving. As such, for safety reasons, we encourage the driver to stop the vehicle in a safe place before answering or placing a phone call.

For safety reasons, you should only select a destination when the vehicle is stationary.

While the navigation system provides directional assistance, the driver must remain focused on safe driving behavior, especially pay attention to traffic and street signs, and should utilize the system's audio cues while driving.

The navigation system does not supply any information on stop signs, yield signs, traffic regulations or traffic safety rules. Their observance always remains in the driver's personal responsibility. DVD maps do not cover all areas nor all routes within an area.

Traffic regulations always have priority over any route recommendations given.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

⚠ **Warning**

Navigation announcements are intended to direct you while driving without diverting your attention from the road and driving.

Please always use this feature instead of consulting the map display for directions. Consulting the symbols or map display for directions may cause you to divert your attention from driving and increase your risk of an accident.

⚠ **Warning!**

Please do not use the Voice Control System in an emergency, as the tone of your voice may change in a stressful situation. This could cause a delay in completing your phone call in a timely manner. This could distract you in an emergency situation and cause you to be involved in an accident.

Vehicle Equipment

ⓘ This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Symbols Only Used in this Chapter

The following symbols indicate:

🗣	that you have to say something
🔈	that there is a voice output from the voice control
▭	that the system shows information on the display.

Usage

You can use the voice control system to operate the following systems depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

- Phone
- Navigation
- Address book
- Audio (radio, satellite radio, DVD changer, memory card, music register, media interface)

Say the commands without pausing between individual words. If you enter a command that does not exist or is incorrect, the voice control system asks you for a new command with `Please repeat` or `Please repeat your entry!`. The voice control confirms important commands to you and gives you instructions in the event of incorrect entries.

Command Types

Voice control distinguishes between the following types of command:

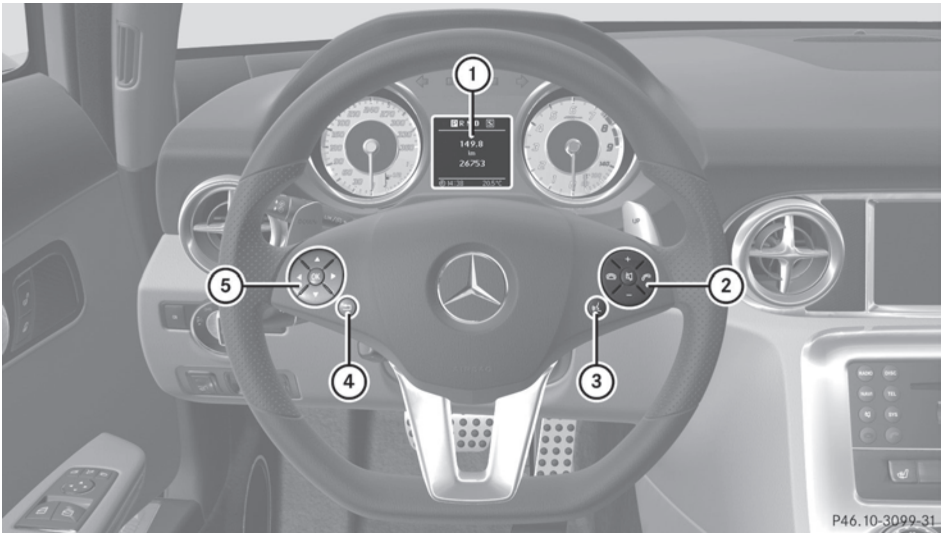
- Global commands:
  These are commands which can be called up at any time (e.g. help, navigation or phone commands).
- Local commands:
  These are commands which are only available for the active application (e.g. "Save").

Active Application

The local commands refer to the application currently shown on the display and to the audio source you are currently listening to.

For example, if you are listening to the radio while the navigation application is active on the display, you can operate both applications using voice control.

Operating Voice Control



① Multifunction display
② 🔇 Mute, [–] decreases the volume, [+] increases the volume
③ [🗣] Activates voice control
④ [↩] Cancels voice control

Starting the Dialog

▶ Switch on the ignition (see the vehicle Operator's Manual).

ℹ After the ignition has been switched on, it takes about 30 seconds for the voice control system to be ready for operation. During this period the message `Loading Speech Data` is displayed.

▶ Press the [🗣] button.
An acoustic signal confirms that the dialog has been started.

▶ Give a command.

Interrupting the Dialog

If a list appears on the display, you can use the “Pause” command to interrupt the dialog. You can then select an entry using the COMAND controller.

To resume the dialog with voice control, press the [🗣] button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Canceling the Dialog

▶ Press the [↩] button.

or

▶ Say the command `Cancel` (except when creating and storing voice tags, navigation entries or during individualization).

or

▶ Press any button on COMAND.

Adjusting the Volume

▶ Start the dialog.

▶ Give a command, e.g. `Help`.

- ▶ Press the + or – button.
  The volume increases or decreases during voice output.

or

- ▶ Set the volume for the voice output on the volume control for COMAND.

Display Messages

The audible help function can be supplemented by visual help on the display (▷ page 95). If the help function is switched on, the most important commands that are currently possible appear in the display when you start the dialog.

In the address book and navigation system, a selection list is shown in the display if voice control requires additional information from you.

Entering Numbers

- Digits from “zero” to “nine” are permitted.
- Say the phone number in groups of three to five digits.

Spell

- The letters of the alphabet and the numbers 0 to 9 are permitted.
- Say the letters in groups of five to seven letters.
- Say each individual letter clearly.

ℹ Using individualization, you can fine-tune voice control to your own voice and thus improve voice recognition. The process of individualization is described in chapter “System Settings” (▷ page 95).

ℹ If you use individualization, it may impair recognition of other users. Switch off individualization if it makes recognition of other users worse.

Phone

⚠ Warning

Some jurisdictions prohibit the driver from using a cellular telephone while driving. Whether or not prohibited by law, for safety reasons, the driver should not use the cellular telephone while the vehicle is in motion. Stop the vehicle in a safe location before placing or answering a call.

If you nonetheless choose to use the mobile phone while driving, please use the handsfree feature and be sure to pay attention to the traffic situation at all times. Use the mobile phone only when road, weather and traffic conditions permit. Otherwise, you may not be able to observe traffic conditions and could endanger yourself and others.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

Operation

You can use voice control to:

- place a call by using your voice to input a phone number
- store names and numbers in the address book
- dial a number from the address book
- dial a number from the received calls or latest calls list
- listen to the phone book
- retrieve and manage your voice mail and recorded announcement services
- redial

Voice control recognizes whether:

- your phone is switched on
- your phone is connected via Bluetooth®
- the car phone is registered with the relevant mobile phone network
- it is possible to dial

If it is not possible to dial, voice control issues a message to this effect.

ℹ You can still operate your phone using the keypad.

Commands

“Phone”

Use the “Phone” command to select the phone application. Use this command if you wish the digits entered to be shown on the display.

“Help Phone”

Voice control has an extensive help function. Using the “Help Phone” command, you can have all the essential commands for the phone read out (▷ page 226).

“Dial number”

You can use the “Dial number” command to dial a phone number.

The digits 0 to 9 and the word “Plus” are permitted.

“Plus” replaces the international dialing code, e.g. “00”.

Say the phone number in the form of a continuous string of digits or as blocks of digits, e.g. three to five digits.

Voice control repeats the digits it recognizes after each block of digits (with a pause of about half a second between each block of digits) and waits for you to continue speaking.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Dial number
🔈 Please say the number
🗣 Zero one three zero
🔈 Zero one three zero
🗣 Five zero zero five
🔈 Five zero zero five
🗣 Okay
🔈 Dialing number

ℹ You can also dial the specified number if you press the ☎ button on the multi-function steering wheel instead of the concluding command “Okay”.

“Confirm”

While you are entering a number, you can use the “Confirm” command to have all the spoken digits repeated by voice control. Voice control will then prompt you to continue with the entry.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Dial number
🔈 Please say the number
🗣 Zero one three zero
🔈 Zero one three zero
🗣 Confirm
🔈 Zero one three zero. Please continue.
🗣 Five zero zero five
🔈 Five zero zero five
🗣 Okay
🔈 Dialing number

ℹ You can also dial the specified number if you press the ☎ button on the multi-function steering wheel instead of the concluding command `Okay`.

“Correction”

While you are entering a number, you can use the “Correction” command to correct the block of digits last spoken. When you input this command, voice control deletes the last block of digits and repeats the digits input up to this point. Voice control will then prompt you to continue with the entry.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Dial number
🔈 Please say the number
🗣 Zero one three zero
🔈 Zero one three zero
🗣 Five zero zero five
🔈 Five zero zero five
🗣 Correction
🔈 Zero one three zero. Please continue.
🗣 Five zero zero five
🔈 Five zero zero five

🗣 Okay
🔈 Dialing number

“Delete”

While you are entering a number, you can use the “Delete” command to delete all the digits which have been entered. After you have input this command, voice control prompts you to enter additional digits or commands.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Dial number
🔈 Please say the number
🗣 Zero one three zero
🔈 Zero one three zero
🗣 Five zero zero five
🔈 Five zero zero five
🗣 Delete
🔈 Number deleted, please say the number again
🗣 Zero three seven three
🔈 Zero three seven three
🗣 Three nine one
🔈 Three nine one
🗣 Okay
🔈 Dialing number

“Save Name” (Address Book)

(▷ page 219)

“Dial Name” (Address Book)

(▷ page 219)

“Delete Name” (Address Book)

(▷ page 220)

“Read out Phone Book” and “Dialing a Phone Number”

You can use the “Read out phone book” command to listen to all entries in the phone book in which a phone number is also stored and, if required, select an entry.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Read out phone book

🔈 The system reads out all the address book entries with phone numbers. If the list contains more than 30 entries, the system asks you to say the name from which the reading shall be started.

▭ The system shows the list of phone book entries being read out.

- **To select an entry:** Press the 🎤 button immediately after the desired entry has been read out.

ⓘ If there is more than one phone number for an entry, voice control queries this.

🔈 Do you want to call Smith?
🗣 Home
🔈 Smith home. Dialing.

- **To cancel the dialog:** Press the ↩ button.
  The system confirms by responding “Cancel”.

“Redial”

You can use the “Redial” command to redial the number most recently called.

Managing Announcement Services or Voice Mail

You can also use voice control to manage your voice mail or recorded announcement services.

- Press the 🎤 button while a phone call is in progress.
  An acoustic signal confirms that the system is activated.
- Say the required digits (“zero” to “nine”).

or

- Say the required words “Star” or “Hash”.
- Say the concluding command “Okay”.
  The system dials the number entered.

Navigation

⚠ Warning!

For safety reasons, you should only select a destination when the vehicle is stationary. While the navigation system provides directional assistance, the driver must remain focused on safe driving behavior, especially pay attention to traffic and street signs, and should utilize the system's audio cues while driving.

The navigation system does not supply any information on stop signs, yield signs, traffic regulations or traffic safety rules. Their observance always remains in the driver's personal responsibility. DVD maps do not cover all areas nor all routes within an area.

Traffic regulations always have priority over any route recommendations given. Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

During route guidance, you will not receive information on:

- traffic lights
- stop and yield signs
- parking or stopping zones
- one-way streets
- narrow bridges
- other traffic regulation data

You should therefore always strictly observe traffic regulations while driving. Drive carefully and always obey traffic laws and road signs, even if they contradict navigation system instructions.

⚠ Warning!

Please do not use the Voice Control System in an emergency, as the tone of your voice may change in a stressful situation. This could cause a delay in completing your phone call in a timely manner. This could distract you in an emergency situation and cause you to be involved in an accident.

Operation

You can use voice control to:

- enter a state
- enter a province
- enter a city
- enter a district (center)
- enter a street
- enter an intersection
- enter a house number
- enter an entire address
- enter a zip code
- find address
- enter a point of interest
- select one of your previous destinations
- call up route information
- store a destination
- display the map
- enlarge/reduce the size of the map
- listen to the destination memory
- start and stop route guidance
- switch the guidance instructions on and off

▶ To select the navigation application press the 🗣 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

▶ Give the “Navigation” command.

▶ Press the 🗣 button.

▶ Give one of the navigation commands explained below.

Commands

You cannot start the route guidance until all the necessary address data has been entered.

“Help Navigation”/“Help”

Using the “Help navigation” command, you can have all the essential commands for the navigation system read out.

Entering an Address

ℹ If voice control fails to recognize your entry, it is advisable to spell the name of the town and street. Spell names of towns and streets when abroad.

The system guides you completely through the dialog to route guidance. As soon as a valid address is entered (at least the town), you can use the “Start route guidance” command to start the route guidance.

“Enter state”/“Enter province”

You can use the “Enter state”/“Enter province” command to change the state or province setting of the navigation system.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter state
🔈 Please enter the name of the state
🖥 The system shows a numbered list of possible state names on the display. If there is only one entry on the list, voice control asks if it is correct.
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted

“Enter Destination”

You can use the “Enter destination” command to enter a complete address.

The system guides you through the whole dialog. As soon as a valid address is entered (at least the town), you can use the “Start route guidance” command to start the route guidance.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter destination
🔈 Do you want to enter street first or town first?
🗣 Town
🔈 Please say the name of the town
🗣 Albany
🔈 Loading list of towns
🖥 The system shows a numbered list of possible city names on the display. If there is only one entry on the list, voice control asks if it is correct.
🔈 Please select a line number.
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted
🔈 Would you like to enter a street?
🗣 Yes
🔈 Please say the name of the street
🗣 Park Avenue
🔈 Loading list of streets
🖥 The system shows a numbered list of possible street names on the display. If there is only one entry on the list, voice control asks if it is correct.
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted
🔈 Would you like to enter a house number?
🗣 No
🔈 Would you like to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes
🔈 Starting route guidance

The system stores the selected destination and starts route guidance.

If you give one of the following commands, the system guides you through the dialog to route guidance.

“Enter Town”

You can use the “Enter town” command to enter any town in the state or province that is currently selected.

ℹ If the city you require does not appear in the list or the system fails to recognize the name of the town, it can be entered by using the “Spell town” command.

ℹ You can use the “Next page” or “Previous page” commands to scroll through the list. You can use the “Correction” command to enter the name of the town again.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter town
🔈 Please say the name of the town
🗣 Albany
🔈 Loading list of towns
🖵 The system shows a numbered list of possible town names on the display. If there is only one entry on the list, voice control asks if it is correct.
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted

The town is stored for route guidance.

"Spell town"

Using the "Spell town" command, you can spell any town. This may be necessary if certain town or street names are not recognized.

Say the letters in the form of a continuous string of letters. In the case of long names, it is not always necessary to spell the whole name. Usually only the first five to seven letters are required.

A list of city names will appear in the display and you can choose the one you require.

Say each individual letter clearly.

It is not easy to avoid confusion of similarsounding letters (e.g. D and E).

Example of dialog:

🗣 Spell town
🔈 Please spell the town
🗣 F-R-E-N-S
🔈 Loading list of towns
🖵 The system shows a numbered list of city names on the display
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Number three
🔈 Number three accepted

The town is stored for route guidance.

ℹ You can use the "Next page" or "Previous page" commands to scroll through the list.

You can use the "Correction" command to spell the town again from the beginning.

ℹ Note that the list in the display is sorted according to the probability of voice recognition.

"Enter District" (Center)

You can use the "Enter district" command to enter an area in a city which you have selected previously.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter district
🔈 Please say the name of the district
🗣 Manhattan
🖵 The system shows a numbered list of districts in the display if the selected city has more than one district
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted

The district is stored for route guidance.

"Enter Street"

You can use the "Enter Street" command to enter the name of any street in the selected city.

ℹ If only a few streets are stored for a selected town, they will be displayed for selection immediately after you give the "Enter Street" command.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter Street
🔈 Please say the name of the street
🗣 Mabel's Street
🖵 The system shows a numbered list of street names on the display
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Number three
🔈 Number three accepted

The street name is stored for route guidance.

“Correction”

If you have entered or spelled a city or street, you can use the “Correction” command to enter the city or street again or spell it from the beginning.

“Enter Intersection”

You can use the “Intersection” command to specify an intersection of two streets.

No street has been entered yet

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter Intersection
🔈 Please say the name of the first street
🗣 Main street
🔈 Please select a line number or say continue
🗣 Number 1
🔈 Number 1 accepted
🔈 Please say the name of the intersecting street
🗣 Mable street
🔈 Please select a line number or say continue
🗣 Number 4
🔈 Number 4 accepted
🔈 Do you want to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes

The route guidance to the specified intersection is started.

A street has already been entered

Example of dialog:

🗣 Enter Intersection
🔈 Please say the name of the intersecting street
🗣 Mable street
🔈 Please select a line number or say continue
🗣 Number 4
🔈 Number 4 accepted
🔈 Do you want to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes

The route guidance to the specified intersection is started.

In connection with the "Enter Destination" dialog

ℹ You can enter an intersection instead of a house number in the “Enter Destination” dialog.

Example of dialog (continues “Enter Destination” dialog):

🔈 Do want to enter a house number?
🗣 Enter Intersection
🔈 Please say the name of the intersecting street
🗣 Mable street
🔈 Please select a line number or say continue
🗣 Number 4
🔈 Number 4 accepted
🔈 Do you want to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes

The route guidance to the specified intersection is started.

“House Number”

You can use the “House number” command to specify the house number for the selected street in individual digits.

Example of dialog:

🗣 House number
🔈 Please say the house number in single digits
🗣 Three four
🔈 Three four
🗣 Okay

The house number is stored for route guidance.

“Points of interest” (POI)

You can use the “Points of interest” command to select specific destinations (gas stations, airports, stations, etc.).

Example of dialog:

🗣 Point of interest
▭ The system shows the following list in the display:
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1 ...
🔈 Line number 1 accepted
▭ The system shows a numbered list of POI categories
🔈 Please select a line number or say the category name
🗣 Line number 5
▭ The system shows a numbered list with destinations from the selected category
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted

The specific destination which has the number one is stored for route guidance.

ℹ Depending on the selected area, other lists may be shown.

You can only select points of interest in the state or province the navigation system is set for.

Selecting next point of interest

You can use the following commands to select nearby points of interest:

- “Next gas station”
- “Next car park”
- “Next Mercedes-Benz Service”
- “Next restaurant”
- “Next hospital”

Example of dialog:

🗣 Next gas station
▭ The system shows a numbered list of gas stations on the display
🔈 Please select a line number.
🗣 Line number 1
▭ Line number one accepted. Would you like to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes

The route guidance for this point of interest is started.

or

🗣 No
🔈 Do you want to save the destination?
🗣 Yes

The dialog continues as shown in the section “Save destination”.

“Last Destinations”

You can use the “Last destinations” command to reselect a destination from a list of the previously selected destinations.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Last destinations
▭ The system shows a numbered list of the previously selected destinations
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
▭ Line number one accepted. Would you like to start route guidance?
🗣 Yes

The route guidance for this destination is started.

“Save Destination”

You can use the “Save destination” command to save the current destination in the address book by means of a voice name.

ℹ If the desired voice name already exists in the address book, the system asks if you want to add the address.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Save destination
🔈 Please say the name
🗣 Smith
🔈 Please repeat the name
🗣 Smith

🔈 Where would you like to save: home or work?
🗣 Work
🔈 The destination has been saved.

"Find Address"

You can use the "Find address" command to select a previously saved address and start route guidance.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Find address
🔈 Please say the name
🗣 Smith
▭ The system shows a numbered list of saved addresses in the display
🔈 Please select a line number
🗣 Line number 1
🔈 Line number 1 accepted
🔈 Smith. Starting route guidance.

"Start Route Guidance"

When Route Guidance is inactive, you can use the "Start route guidance" command to start route guidance once a valid destination has been entered.

🗣 Start route guidance
🔈 Starting route guidance

"Route Information"

You can use the "Route information" command to have the following information on your currently planned route read out:

- Distance to destination
- Remaining driving time
- Expected arrival time

"Guidance Instructions On"

When you use the "Guidance instructions on" command, voice control repeats the last driving tip. If the driving tip output has been switched off up to this point, it is now switched on again.

"Guidance Instructions Off"

You can use this command to switch off the route guidance voice output.

"Cancel Route Guidance"

You can use this command to stop route guidance.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Cancel route guidance
🔈 Are you sure you want to cancel route guidance?
🗣 Yes
🔈 Cancelling route guidance

Voice control cancels route guidance.

or

🗣 No
🔈 Continuing route guidance.

The dialog with voice control is terminated. Route guidance remains activated.

"Zoom In"/"Zoom Out"

You can use these commands to zoom the map display one step in or out.

"Zoom In Completely"/"Zoom Out Completely"

You can use these commands to set the map display directly to the smallest or largest scale.

"Read Out Destination Memory"

You can use the "Read out destination memory" command to listen to the entries from the address book's destination memory and, if required, navigate to one of them.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Read out destination memory
The system reads out all entries, from the address book destination memory. If the list contains more than 30 entries, the system asks you to say the name from which the reading shall be started.

ⓘ If you do not say a name, voice control reads out all destination entries.

▶ **To select an entry and set an address:** Press the 🗣 button at the selected entry.

🔈 If there is more than one address, the system asks “Navigate to: home or work?”

🗣 Home

The system starts route guidance.

▶ **To cancel the dialog:** Press the ↩ button.
You have canceled the dialog. The system confirms by responding “Cancel”.

Address Book

⚠ **Warning!**

Please devote your attention first and foremost to the traffic situation you are in.

Before your journey, please familiarize yourself with the address book functions.

Only use the Voice Control System when road and traffic conditions permit you to do so. Otherwise you could be involved in an accident in which you or others could be injured.

Overview

The address book gives you the option of storing information about people in the form of entries.

Using voice control, you can dial a phone number stored in the address book or start route guidance for a stored address.

Apart from the speaker-dependent voice names stored in the address book, voice control can recognize all the entries in the name fields of the address book. Recognition of the entries in the address book depends on the text that was entered. To make a call you must say the text of the entry.

Check the address book entries for the following:

- The name entries, e.g. last name and first name, are in the right fields.
- Do not use abbreviations or acronyms.
- Avoid unnecessary spaces in names.
- Do not use special characters.

You can improve voice recognition by saving a speaker-dependent voice name for address book entries.

Use a speaker-dependent voice name:

- for names which are difficult to pronounce
- to distinguish names which sound similar
- for names which are not pronounced as they are written

Voice control can store up to 50 of these address book entries by means of a speaker-dependent voice name.

Operation

You can use voice control at any time to:

- save a name
- select a name
- delete a name
- list the address book
- delete the address book
- open the address book
- open an entry from the address book
- list the phone book
- list the destination memory

▶ **To open the address book:** Press the 🗣 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

▶ Give the “Address book” command.

▶ Press the 🗣 button.

▶ Give one of the address book commands explained below.

Commands

"Address Book"

- **To open the address book:** Say the command "Address book".

"Help Address Book"

- Using the "Help address book" command, you can have all the essential commands for the address book read out.

"Save Name"

Use the "Save name" command to save a phone number with a voice name for a specific speaker. Use this command for a name which is complicated or which is pronounced differently as it is spelled, for example, because it is a foreign name. When you have given the command "Save Name", voice control prompts you to enter a phone number.

The digits 0 to 9 and the word "Plus" are permitted.

"Plus" replaces the international dialing code, e.g. "00".

Say the phone number in the form of a continuous string of digits or as blocks of digits, e.g. three to five digits.

Voice control repeats the digits it recognizes after each block of digits (with a pause of about half a second between each block of digits) and waits for you to continue speaking.

When you have given the command "Okay", voice control prompts you two or three times to say the name. When repeating the name, make sure that you pronounce it in exactly the same way as you did the first time. Otherwise, the name cannot be saved and voice control aborts the saving procedure.

Example of dialog:

🗣	Save name
🔈	Please say the number
🗣	Zero one three zero
🔈	Zero one three zero
🗣	Five zero zero five
🔈	Five zero zero five
🗣	Okay
🔈	Please say the name.
🗣	Smith
🔈	Please repeat the name.
🗣	Smith
🔈	Would you like to save the number in a category?
🗣	No
🔈	Name and number saved

"Dial Name"

You can use the "Dial name" command to place a call by selecting a name from your address book. You can choose either a voice name or say a name entry.

Only say the surname if only the surname is entered in the address book.

Say the surname first and then the first name if both are entered in the address book.

Example of dialog:

🗣	Dial name
🔈	Please say the name
🗣	Smith
	If there is more than one phone number for an entry, voice control queries this:
🔈	Do you want to make a work call or a home call? or Please select a line number
🗣	Work
🔈	Smith work. Dialing number.

"Find Name"

Use the "Find name" command to search for a name in the address book. Voice control then asks what action you want it to perform: for example call the selected number, start route guidance to the saved address or open the entry.

Example of dialog:

🗣	Find name
🔈	Please say the name

🗣 Smith

▭ The system shows a numbered list in the display.

🔈 Please select a line number.

🗣 Line number 1 ...

🔈 Line number 1 accepted.
The system opens the first entry on the list.

If the selected entry contains at least one phone number or an address, voice control asks whether you want to dial the number or navigate to the stored address.

“Find Address”

(▷ page 217)

“Delete Name”

Use the “Delete name” command to delete a voice name from your address book.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Delete name

🔈 Please say the name

🗣 Smith

🔈 Do you want to delete Smith?

🗣 Yes

🔈 The voice name has been deleted

“Read Out Address Book”

You can use the “Read out address book” command to listen to all names and voice names in the address book. You can select an entry during this.

If no name is entered in the name field of the address book, the phone number or the address is read out. A name can be entered later in the name field.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Read out address book

The system reads out all address book entries. If there are more than 30 entries, the system asks from which entry it should start the reading.

ⓘ If you do not say a name, voice control reads out all address book entries.

- ▶ **To select an address book entry:**
Press the 🗣 button at the selected entry.
The entry is selected and shown on the display. Voice control asks whether the selected entry should be called, navigated to or opened.
- ▶ **To cancel the dialog:**
Press the ↩ button.
You have cancelled the dialog. The system confirms by responding “Cancel”.

“Delete Address Book”

You can use the “Delete address book” command to delete individual voice names or all the voice names in the address book. The address data is not deleted.

“Open Entry”

You can use the “Open entry” command to open any address book entry.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Open entry

🔈 Please say the name

🗣 Smith

▭ The system shows a numbered list in the display.

🔈 Please select a line number.

🗣 Line number 1 ...

🔈 Line number 1 accepted.
The system opens the first entry on the list.

If the selected entry contains at least one phone number or an address, voice control asks whether you want to dial the number or navigate to the stored address.

“Spell Entry”

You can use the “Spell entry“ command to open any address book entry by spelling the name.

Say the letters in the form of a continuous string of letters (five to seven letters).

A list of possible entries will appear in the display and you can choose the one you require.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Spell entry

🔈 Please spell the name.

🗣 S-M-I-T-H

🖵 The system shows a numbered list in the display.

🔈 Please select a line number.

🗣 Number four

🔈 Number four accepted

The system opens the fourth entry on the list.

If the selected entry contains at least one phone number or an address, voice control asks whether you want to dial the number or navigate to the stored address.

ℹ You can use the “Next page” or “Previous page” commands to scroll through the list. You can use the “Correction” command to spell the name again.

Radio and Satellite Radio

⚠ **Warning!**

Please devote your attention first and foremost to the traffic situation you are in.

Before your journey, please familiarize yourself with the radio functions.

Only use the Voice Control System when road and traffic conditions permit you to do so. Otherwise you could be involved in an accident in which you or others could be injured.

Operation

You can use voice control to:

- select the waveband
- find a station
- select a frequency (FM, AM)
- select a category (Satellite radio)
- listen to the station list
- save a voice name for a station
- delete a station list (voice names only)
- delete a station (voice name only)
- select a channel number (Satellite radio)

The names of all received and stored stations are available for voice recognition. To improve voice recognition, you can store a voice name for a specific speaker.

▶ **To select the radio or satellite radio application:** Press the 🗣 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

▶ Say the command `Radio` or `Satellite Radio`.

▶ Press the 🗣 button.

▶ Say one of the radio or satellite radio commands explained below.

Commands

You can always give the commands for the radio when you are listening to the radio, even if a different application is shown on the display.

“Help Radio”

Using the “Help Radio” command, you can have all the commands for the radio read out.

“Help Satellite Radio”

Using the “Help Satellite Radio” command, you can have all the commands for the satellite radio read out.

Selecting a Waveband

You can set the waveband with the following commands:

- “FM”
- “AM”

“Next Station”/“Previous Station”

You can start manual tuning and set the next station using the following commands:

- “Next station”
- “Previous station”

“Next Category”/“Previous Category”

You can use the following commands to change the category on satellite radio:

- “Next category”
- “Previous category”

Selecting the Frequency (FM Range)

You can select frequencies within the FM range (87.7 to 107.9 MHz) directly. Voice control also recognizes the words “frequency”, “point” and “megahertz”.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Eighty seven point nine megahertz
▢ Voice control sets the frequency.

Selecting the Frequency (AM Range)

You can select frequencies within the AM range (530 to 1710 kHz) directly. Voice control also recognizes the words “frequency” and “kilohertz”.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Five hundred and thirty kilohertz
▢ Voice control sets the frequency.

“Save Station”

Using the “Save station” command you can give a voice name to the station currently selected. You can also use this command to improve voice recognition for difficult names or if you want to use a name of your own. You could, for example, save a station with the name “Favorite station”.

When you have given the command, voice control prompts up to three times to say the station name. When repeating the station name, make sure that you pronounce it in exactly the same way as you did the first time. Otherwise, the name cannot be saved and voice control aborts the saving procedure.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Save station
🔈 Please say the station name
🗣 Favorite station
🔈 Please repeat the station name.
🗣 Favorite station
🔈 The station has been saved.

“Select Station”

Using the “Select station” command, you can select a station.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Select station
🔈 Please say the station name
🗣 Favorite station
▢ Voice control sets the station

“Station 'Favorite Station'”

Using this command, you can select a station.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Station 'Favorite station'
▢ Voice control sets the station 'Favorite station'

“Select Category” (Satellite radio)

Using the “Select category” command, you can select an available category.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Select category
🔈 Please say the category name
🗣 News
▢ Voice control sets the category

“Category News” (Satellite Radio)

Use this command to select a satellite radio category.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Category news

▭ Voice control sets the category

“Enter Channel Number” (Satellite Radio)

Use the command “Enter channel number” to select a satellite radio category.

“Read Out Station List” and “Selecting a Station”

Using the “Read out station list” command, you can hear a list of all receivable stations and choose one from your station list.

ℹ If voice control does not recognize the station name, have it read out the list of stations. This allows you to check whether you have saved the station you require in the station list.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Read out station list

The system reads out the station list.

If the station you require is read out:

- ▶ Press the 🗣 button.
  The system sets the corresponding frequency.
- ▶ **To cancel the dialog:** Press the ↩ button.
  You have cancelled the dialog. The system confirms by responding “Cancel”.

“Delete Station”

You can use the “Delete station” command to delete a voice name for a station from your station list.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Delete station

🔈 Which station name do you want to delete?

🗣 Favorite station

🔈 Do you want to delete 'Favorite station'?

🗣 Yes

🔈 Station deleted.

“Delete Station List”

You can use the “Delete station list” command to delete all voice names or individual ones from your station list.

Example of dialog:

🗣 Delete station list

🔈 Would you like to delete all voice names from the station list?

🗣 Yes

🔈 Are you sure?

🗣 Yes

🔈 All voice names have been deleted from the station list

▭ The system permanently deletes all voice names in the station list.

or

🗣 No

The system reads out the list of stations.

When the system reads out the stations to be deleted:

- ▶ Press the 🗣 button.
  The station to be deleted is selected. The system reads out the selected station again.

🔈 Do you want to delete 'Favorite station'?

🗣 Yes

🔈 Station deleted

▭ The system deletes the station and reads out the remaining entries in the station list.

or

🗣 No

The system continues to read out the list of stations.

DVD Changer

⚠ Warning

Please devote your attention first and foremost to the traffic situation you are in.

Before your journey, please familiarize yourself with the disc functions.

Only use the Voice Control System when road and traffic conditions permit you to do so. Otherwise you could be involved in an accident in which you or others could be injured.

Operation

You can use voice control to:

- select a CD/DVD
- select a track
- select a directory in MP3 operation
- select a group in DVD Audio operation

ℹ On the command “Next/previous CD/ DVD”, the DVD changer changes from one CD/ DVD to the next, skipping any empty compartments. If you select an empty compartment with the “CD/DVD 1 to CD/ DVD 6” command, the current compartment remains selected.

▶ To select the CD application: Press the 🗣 button.

▶ Say one of the following commands:

- “CD player/CD changer”
- “DVD audio”
- “DVD video”
- “MP3”

▶ Press the 🗣 button.

▶ Give one of the CD or DVD commands explained below.

Commands

“Help CD”/“Help DVD”/“Help MP3”

With the commands:

- “Help CD”
- “Help DVD audio”
- “Help DVD video”
- “Help MP3”

you can have all the commands for the CD, DVD or MP3 read out.

“Next CD/DVD”

With the “Next CD”/“Next DVD” commands, you can select the next Audio CD/ DVD from your DVD changer.

“Track 1” to “Track 99”

With the “Track 1” to “Track 99” commands, you can select a track number from the inserted CD/DVD.

“Next Track”

You can use the “Next track” command to select the next track.

“Previous Track”

With the “Previous track” or “Repeat track” commands, you can have the track just played repeated. If the command is spoken as the first few seconds of the track are played, the previous track is selected.

“Group 1” to “Group 9”

With the “Group 1” to “Group 9” commands, you can select a group on an inserted Audio DVD.

“Next Group”/“Previous Group”

With the “Next group”/“Previous group” commands, you can select the next or previous group on the inserted Audio DVD.

“Next Folder”/“Previous Folder”

With the “Next folder”/“Previous folder” commands, you can select a folder on the inserted CD/DVD in MP3 mode.

“Memory Card”

With the “Memory card” command, you can switch to the PCMCIA card on the COMAND system.

"DVD Video"

With the "DVD video" command, you can start a Video DVD on the COMAND system.

"Music Register"

With the "Music register" command, you can change to the internal music register (hard disk) of COMAND.

"Media Interface"

With the "Media interface" command, you can change to the external device that is connected to the media interface of COMAND.

External Equipment (Aux)

"Audio Aux"

You can use the "Audio Aux" command to activate the Aux input.

Command List

In the Command list section, you will find all the main commands for operating voice control. The commands available to you depend on the vehicle's equipment.

ℹ Some functions have several voice commands to facilitate operation. These are grouped together between the separator lines in the list and can be used interchangeably.

General Commands

- Yes
- Correct
- Okay

- Cancel

- No

- Pause

- Address book

- MP3

- CD changer

- CD

- Navigation
- Route guidance
- Nav

- DVD video

- DVD audio

- Radio

- Satellite radio / Sirius

- Phone

- Messages

- Video

- Correction
- Wrong
- Incorrect

- Help

- Help functions
- Help devices

- Help voice control [system]
- Help voice control/voice control help
- General help

- 0 – 9 (Numbers)

- a – z (Letters of the alphabet)

- Continue
- Go forward
- Next page

- Previous page
- Go back
- Back

- Help radio

- Help phone/help telephone

- Help address book

- Help CD changer

- Help DVD
- Help DVD changer

- Help DVD audio
- Help DVD audio changer

- Help MP3
- Help MP3 changer

- Help navigation
- Help route guidance
- Help nav

Phone Commands

- Phone
- Telephone on/phone on

- Save
- Save name
- Save number
- Save phone number

- Dial number
- Dial phone number

- Confirm
- Confirm number
- Confirm phone number

- List phone book
- Read out phone book

- Redial
- Redial last number
- Redial last phone number

- Correction
- Incorrect
- Wrong number
- Wrong phone number

- Delete
- Delete name
- Delete phone number

Navigation Commands

- Navigation
- Route guidance
- Nav

- Guidance/ route guidance instructions on
- Switch guidance/ route guidance instructions on
- Listen to guidance/ route guidance instructions

- Guidance/ route guidance instructions off
- Switch off guidance/ route guidance instructions
- Mute guidance/ route guidance instructions

- House number
- Enter house number

- Map
- Show map
- Map on/switch on map

- Zoom in
- Zoom in on map

- Zoom out
- Zoom out of map

- Zoom out completely

- Zoom in completely

- Enter state
- Change state
- Enter province
- Change province
- Enter destination area
- Another state

- Last destinations

- Enter town
- Enter name of town

- Spell town
- Spell name of town

- District
- Enter district
- Center
- Enter center

- Spell district
- Spell center

- Enter intersection
- Intersection

- Point(s) of interest/POI(s)
- Enter point(s) of interest/POI(s)

- Street
- Enter street
- Name of street
- Enter name of street

- Spell street
- Spell name of street

- Enter destination

- Save destination
- Save address

- Start route guidance/routing/ destination guidance
- Begin route guidance
- Begin destination guidance
- Continue route guidance/destination guidance

- Cancel route guidance/navigation/ nav/destination guidance
- Exit route guidance/navigation/nav/ destination guidance
- Stop route guidance/navigation/ nav/ destination guidance
- Terminate route guidance/navigation/ nav/destination guidance

- Next gas station

- Next Mercedes-Benz Service
- Next workshop
- Next MB service

- Next hospital

- Next car park

- Next restaurant

Address Book Commands

- Address book

- Read out/play address book
- List address book

- Delete address book

- Spell entry
- Spell name

- Find entry

- Delete name

- Read out/play destination memory
- List destination memory

- <voice_name_tu>

- <voice_name_ad> car
- <voice_name_ad> car phone

- <voice_name_ad> landline
- <voice_name_ad> landline phone

- <voice_name_ad> mobile
- <voice_name_ad> mobile phone
- <voice_name_ad> phone

- <voice_name_ad> work
- <voice_name_ad> home

- Work
- Office
- Company/business

- Car
- Car phone

- Landline
- Landline phone

- Mobile
- Mobile phone

- Work car
- Work car phone
- Car phone work/office/business/company

- Work/office/business/company/landline
- Work/office/business/company/landline telephone/phone
- Landline telephone/phone work/office/business/company

- Work/office/business/company/mobile
- Work/office/business/company/phone
- Mobile phone work/office/business/company

- Home

- Home car
- Home car phone
- Car phone home

- Home landline
- Home landline telephone/phone
- Landline telephone/phone home

- Home mobile
- Home mobile phone
- Mobile phone home

- Dial name

- Save name
- Save number
- Save telephone/phone number

- Accept
- Accept name
- Accept phone number
- Okay
- Finished

- <1>–<6>
- Select 1–select 6
- Number 1–number 6

Audio and Video Commands

- Audio

Radio

- Radio on

- 87 7 megahertz - 107 9 megahertz
- 87 point 7 to 107 point 9
- 87 point 7 megahertz to 107 point 9 megahertz
- Frequency 87 7 to frequency 107 9
- Frequency 87 point 7 to frequency 107 point 9
- Frequency 87 point 7 megahertz to frequency 107 point 9 megahertz

- FM

- AM

- Weatherband

- Next station
- Other station
- Station search

- Station <voice_name>

- Delete station

- Save station

- Select station

- List station list
- Read out station list

- Delete station list

- Previous station
- Last station

Satellite Radio (SIRIUS XM)

- Satellite Radio on/SIRIUS on

- Next station
- Other channel

- Channel <voice_name>

- Delete channel

- Save channel

- Select channel

- List channel list
- Read out channel list

- Delete channel list

- Last channel
- Previous station

- Next category
- Previous category

- Category <category name>

- Select category

- List category list
- Read out category list

- Previous category
- Last category

CD Changer

- CD changer

- Next CD
- Other CD

- Previous CD
- Last CD

- Next track
- Other track

- Previous track
- Last track
- Repeat/replay track

- CD 1 to CD 6
- CD number 1 to CD number 6

- Track 1 to Track 99
- Track number 1 to Track number 99

MP3

- MP3
- MP3 changer (on)

- Next MP3
- Other MP3

- Previous MP3
- Last MP3
- Repeat/replay MP3

- Next directory
- Other directory

- Previous directory
- Last directory

- Next track
- Other track

- Previous track
- Last track
- Repeat/replay track

- Track 1 to Track 99
- Track number 1 to Track number 99

- MP3 1 to MP3 6
- MP3 number 1 to MP3 number 99

Music Register

- Music register
- Hard disk

Memory Card

- Memory card

DVD Audio

- DVD audio
- DVD audio changer on

- Next DVD audio
- Other DVD audio

- Previous DVD audio
- Last DVD audio

- Next directory
- Other directory

- Previous directory
- Last directory

- Next group
- Other group

- Previous group
- Last group

- Group 1 to 9
- Group number 1 to 9

- Next track
- Other track

- Previous track
- Last track
- Repeat/replay track

- Track 1 to Track 99
- Track number 1 to Track number 99

- DVD audio 1 to DVD audio 6
- DVD audio number 1 to DVD audio number 6

Media interface

- Media interface

Aux

Audio aux

Video

- Video
- DVD video

Trouble Shooting

Problem	**Possible Cause/ Consequence**	**Suggested Solutions**
Voice control does not understand you.	You have not operated the system from the driver's seat.	▶ Only operate the system from the driver's seat.
	You have spoken too exaggeratedly, too loudly or too quietly.	▶ State the commands coherently and clearly without exaggerating.
An address book entry without a speaker-dependent voice name is not recognized.	The fields in the address book entry for the last name and first name are both filled in, but you only said the first name or the last name.	▶ Say the last name and then the first name of the address book entry in full.
	The names entered in the address book do not sound sufficiently different, or are not pronounced as they are written.	▶ Make sure the address book entries are plausible. Check the address book entries for the following: • The name entries, e.g. last name and first name, are in the right fields. • Do not use abbreviations or acronyms. • Avoid unnecessary spaces in names. • Do not use special characters.
An address book entry without a speaker-dependent voice name is not recognized.	The names entered in the address book do not sound sufficiently different, or are not pronounced as they are written.	▶ Create a speaker-dependent voice name. or ▶ Give the “Read out address book” command. The system reads out the address book. ▶ Press the 🗣 button when the name you want is read out.

Problem	Possible Cause/ Consequence	Suggested Solutions
	The sound of the voice names in the address book is not sufficiently different.	▶ The voice names entered in the address book must sound as different as possible, e.g. store the names White and Wright as “Mr White office” and “Mr Wright John”. or ▶ Give the “Read out address book” command. The system reads out the address book. ▶ Press the 🗣 button when the name you want is read out.
A station list entry is not recognized.	The voice names for the stations in the address book do not sound sufficiently different.	▶ Save a speaker-dependent voice name for the station (▷ page 219) or ▶ Give the “Read out station list” command. The system reads out the station list. ▶ Press the 🗣 button when the station you want is read out. The station is selected.
If you are making speaker-dependent voice names, the system prompts you to enter them several times.	The two voice names differ from each other.	▶ Say the voice name with the same intonation both times.

Help Function

Voice control has a comprehensive help function to assist the user.

The voice control help function provides:

- general information about how best to operate voice control
- a list of the possible commands

“Help Voice Control”

You can use the “Help Voice Control” command to obtain information about how best to operate voice control.

“Help”

If you press the 🗣 button and say the command “Help”, you will receive help for the application currently selected.

If you select the “Help” command during a voice dialog, for example after the “Dial number” command, you will receive help explaining how the dialog continues.

You can also request the help function for a specific system, for example with the “Help phone” command.

If you have activated the help window, you will see a selection of the possible commands on the display (▷ page 95).

Vehicle equipment 236
Locking and unlocking 236
Starter switch positions 241
Seats 243
Multifunction steering wheel 245
Mirrors 246
Memory function 249
Lighting 249
Wipers 253
Power windows 255
Driving and parking 257
AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission 263
Instrument cluster 271
Control system 272
Driving systems 290
Climate control system 298
Rear window defroster 304
Loading and storing 304
Useful features 306

Vehicle equipment

This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Locking and unlocking

Notes

⚠ Observe Safety notes, see page 57.

When unlocking or locking the vehicle with the SmartKey an acoustic signal sounds. You can switch the acoustic signal on and off via the control system (▷ page 286).

When unlocking the vehicle, all turn signal lamps flash once. An acoustic signal sounds once, and the locking knobs in the doors move up.

The outside door handles move out.

The anti-theft alarm system is disarmed.

When locking the vehicle, all turn signal lamps flash three times. An acoustic signal sounds three times, and the locking knobs in the doors move down.

The outside door handles retract.

The anti-theft alarm system is armed.

All doors and the trunk must be closed.

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle with the SmartKey, the battery in the SmartKey is discharged, the SmartKey is malfunctioning, or the vehicle battery is drained.

- ▶ Check the battery in the SmartKey (▷ page 237) and replace them if necessary.
- ▶ Use the mechanical key to unlock the driver's door (▷ page 398) and the trunk (▷ page 398).
- ▶ Use the mechanical key to lock the vehicle (▷ page 398).
- ▶ Have the vehicle battery and the vehicle battery connections checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

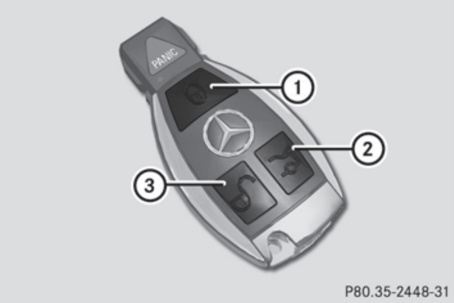
If the SmartKey is malfunctioning, contact Roadside Assistance or an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

SmartKey

Your vehicle comes supplied with two SmartKeys, each with remote control and a removable mechanical key.

The SmartKey centrally locks and unlocks

- the doors
- the trunk lid
- the fuel filler flap



① 🔒 Lock button

② Unlock button for trunk lid

③ 🔓 Unlock button

USA only:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The product label with FCC ID and IC certification number can be found in the battery case.

ℹ Canada only:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The product label with FCC ID and IC certification number can be found in the battery case.

Factory setting

▶ **Global unlocking:** Press button 🔓.

Unless you open a door or the trunk within approximately 40 seconds after unlocking the vehicle:

- The vehicle will be locked again.
- The anti-theft alarm system will be rearmed.

▶ **Global locking:** Press button 🔒.

Selective setting

If you frequently travel alone, you may wish to reprogramm the SmartKey. Pressing button 🔓 will then only unlock the driver's door and the fuel filler flap.

▶ **Switching on/off:** Press and hold buttons 🔓 and 🔒 simultaneously for approximately 6 seconds until the battery check lamp (▷ page 237) flashes twice.

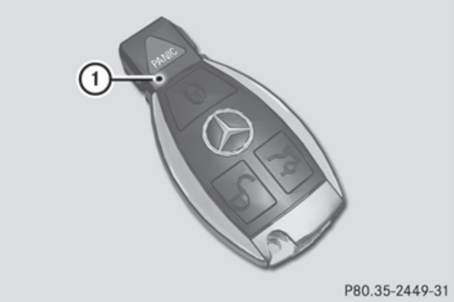
The SmartKey will then function as follows:

▶ **Unlocking driver's door and fuel filler flap:** Press button 🔓 once.

▶ **Global unlocking:** Press button 🔓 twice.

▶ **Global locking:** Press button 🔒.

Checking SmartKey battery



P80.35-2449-31

▶ Press button 🔒 or 🔓 on the SmartKey.
Battery check lamp ① comes on briefly to indicate that the SmartKey battery is in order.

If the battery check lamp does not come on briefly during check, the SmartKey battery is discharged.

▶ Replace the battery (▷ page 399).

ℹ You can obtain the required battery at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

ℹ If the battery is checked within signal range of the vehicle, pressing button 🔒 or 🔓 will lock or unlock the vehicle accordingly.

Loss of the SmartKey

If you lose your SmartKey or mechanical key, you should do the following:

▶ Have the SmartKey deactivated by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

▶ Report the loss of the SmartKey or the mechanical key to your car insurance company immediately.

▶ Have the mechanical lock replaced if necessary.

Any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to supply you with a replacement. For information on replacing the SmartKey, see “Replacing the SmartKey” (▷ page 238).

Replacing the SmartKey

Only you, or someone authorized by you can order a replacement key from any Mercedes-Benz Center. In order to do so, the Mercedes-Benz Center will require proof of identity and vehicle ownership with original documents, including the following:

If you are the current owner of the vehicle:

- the vehicle’s current state registration
- a current identity card, passport, or drivers license

If you are an authorized person:

- the vehicle’s current state registration
- a current identity card, passport, or drivers license for the authorized individual
- signed and dated authorization from the owner of the vehicle for which the key is being requested

ℹ Duplicated or photocopied documentation will not be accepted.

Activating the key

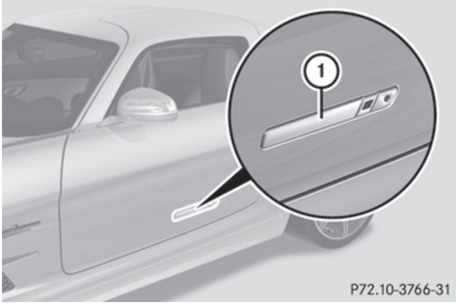
Once you, or an authorized person, has provided the appropriate documents, the Mercedes-Benz Center will need to synchronize the key to your vehicle before it can be used. In order to do so, the Mercedes-Benz Center need access to your vehicle.

Doors

! The doors swing up when opened. Make sure there is sufficient space above the vehicle.

Opening from the outside

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 238.**



▶ Aim transmitter eye of the SmartKey at driver’s outside door handle ①.

▶ Press button 🔓 on the SmartKey.
Outside door handle ① moves out.

▶ Lift the door using outside door handle ① and swing it up as far as it will go.

Closing from the outside

▶ Pull the door down at its outer edge or the inside door handle and let it engage in the lower position.

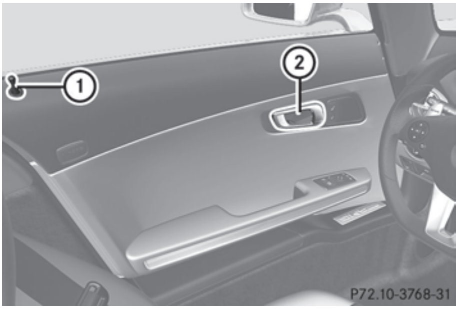
Opening from the inside

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 238.**

You can open a door from the inside only when the door is unlocked.

Open door only when conditions are safe to do so.

The doors are unlocked automatically when you turn off the engine after driving.



Example illustration driver's door

- ▶ Press central unlocking switch (▷ page 239).

or

- ▶ Pull locking knob ① up.
- ▶ Pull on inside door handle ② on the respective door.
- ▶ Swing the door up as far as it will go.

Automatic central locking

The doors lock automatically when the vehicle is set into motion.

The doors are unlocked when you turn off the engine after driving.

The doors are designed to unlock automatically after an accident if the force of the impact exceeds a preset threshold.

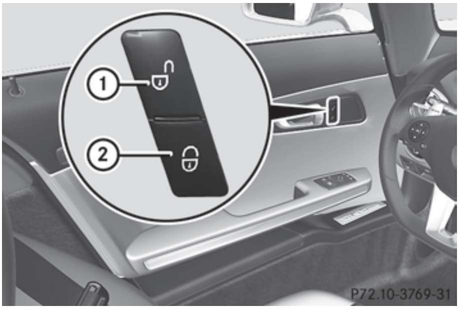
The vehicle locks automatically when the ignition is switched on and the wheels are turning at a vehicle speed of above 9 mph (15 km/h). You could therefore lock yourself out when the vehicle is pushed or towed or is on a test stand.

Locking and unlocking from the inside

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

You can lock or unlock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking or unlocking switch. This can be useful, for example, if you want to lock the vehicle before starting to drive.

The central locking or unlocking switch does not lock or unlock the fuel filler flap.



- ▶ **Locking:** Press central locking switch ②. When all doors are closed, the vehicle locks.
- ▶ **Unlocking:** Press central unlocking switch ①.

If the vehicle has been locked centrally with the SmartKey, it will not unlock using the central unlocking switch.

Opening the trunk

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure the trunk is closed when the engine is running and while driving. Among other dangers, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) gases may enter vehicle interior resulting in unconsciousness and death.

! When you open the trunk, the trunk lid swings open upwards. Always make sure there is sufficient overhead clearance.

A minimum height clearance of 5.5 ft (1.68 m) is required to open the trunk lid.

Opening the trunk from the outside

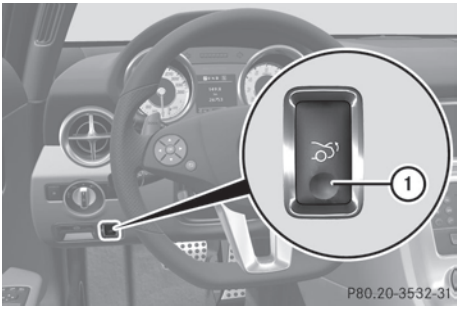
P80.20-3588-31

- ▶ Press button on the SmartKey.
  The trunk unlocks and opens slightly.
- ▶ Reach into the gap and lift the trunk lid.

If the trunk does not open, it is still locked separately (▷ page 241).

Opening the trunk from the inside

You can open the trunk when the vehicle is stationary.



- ▶ Press remote trunk opening switch ① until the trunk unlocks and opens slightly.
- ▶ Lift the trunk lid.

If the trunk does not open, it is still locked separately (▷ page 241).

Closing the trunk

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure the trunk is closed when the engine is running and while driving. Among other dangers, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) gases may enter vehicle interior resulting in unconsciousness and death.

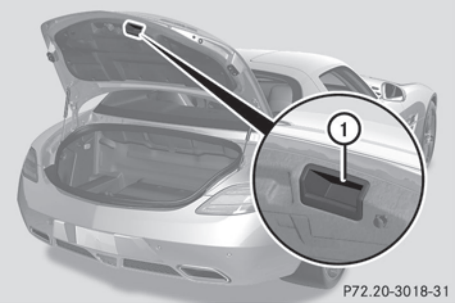
⚠ **Warning!**

To prevent possible personal injury, always keep hands and fingers away from the trunk opening when closing the trunk lid. Be especially careful when small children are around.

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

Do not leave the SmartKey in the open trunk. You may lock yourself out.

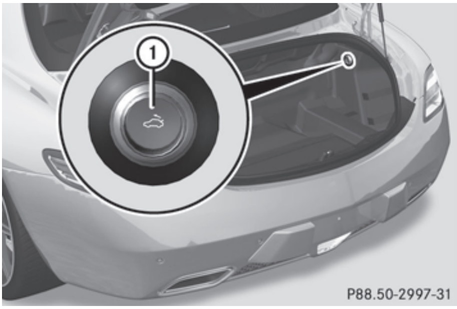
If the vehicle was previously locked centrally with the SmartKey, the trunk lid will lock automatically when closed. All turn signal lamps flash three times and an acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm locking.



- ▶ Pull the trunk lid down at handle ① firmly.

Trunk lid emergency release

The trunk lid can be opened from inside the trunk with the emergency release button.



- ▶ Briefly press emergency release button ①.
  The trunk lid unlocks and opens slightly.
- ▶ Push up the trunk lid to fully open.

The emergency release button unlocks the trunk while the vehicle is standing still or in motion.

Illumination of the emergency release button:

- The button flashes for 30 minutes after opening the trunk.
- The button flashes for 60 minutes after closing the trunk.

The emergency release button does not unlock the trunk, if the vehicle battery is discharged or disconnected.

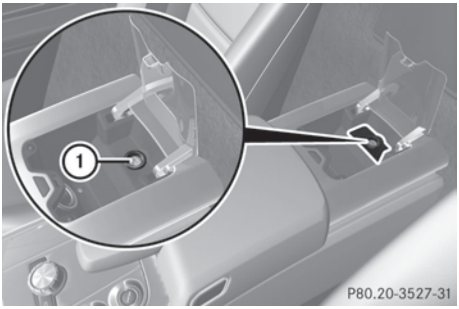
If the vehicle has previously been locked centrally with the SmartKey, opening the trunk from the inside using the emergency release button will trigger the anti-theft alarm system.

To cancel the alarm, see (▷ page 67).

Valet locking

You can lock the trunk separately with the mechanical key. This denies unauthorized access to the trunk, e.g. when you valet park the vehicle.

- ▶ Leave only the SmartKey less its mechanical key with the vehicle.
- ▶ **Valet locking:** Close the trunk (▷ page 240).
- ▶ Remove the mechanical key from the SmartKey (▷ page 397).
- ▶ Open the rear storage compartment in the center console (▷ page 304).



- ▶ Insert the mechanical key into trunk lid lock ①.
- ▶ Turn the mechanical key clockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ In this position, pull out the mechanical key.
- ▶ Check whether the trunk is locked.

The trunk remains locked even when the vehicle is centrally unlocked.

You can then only open the trunk with the mechanical key.

- ▶ **Canceling:** Insert the mechanical into trunk lid lock ①.
- ▶ Turn the mechanical key counterclockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ In this position, pull out the mechanical key.
  You can now open the trunk.

Starter switch positions

KEYLESS-GO

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

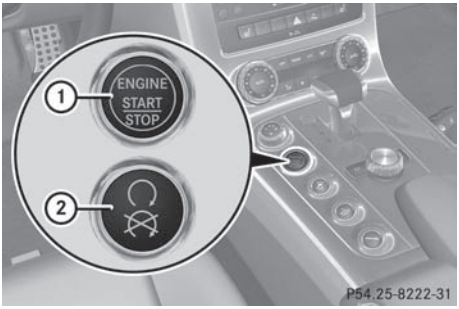
You can start the engine and turn it off again using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button. The KEYLESS-GO start/stop button is located in the center console. The KEYLESS-GO start/stop button is illuminated when the vehicle is unlocked.

The SmartKey must be located in the vehicle. It will, however, not be detected in the trunk.

Pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button without depressing the brake pedal corresponds to the various starter switch positions (▷ page 242).

Pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button with the brake pedal firmly depressed will start the engine (▷ page 258).

The function of the SmartKey overrules the KEYLESS-GO function.



KEYLESS-GO start/stop button

① USA only

② Canada only

Position 0

Before you press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button, the vehicle's on-board electronics have status **0** (as with SmartKey removed).

Position 1

▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once.
This supplies power for some electrical consumers, e.g. wipers.

ℹ When you now press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button

- once more, the ignition (position **2**) is switched on
- twice more the power supply is again switched off

Ignition (or position 2)

▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button twice.
This supplies power for all electrical consumers.

When you switch on the ignition, all lamps in the instrument cluster come on. The low-beam headlamp indicator lamp, high-beam headlamp indicator lamp, and the turn signal indicator lamps will only come on if activated. If a lamp in the instrument cluster fails to come on when the ignition is switched on, have it checked and replaced if necessary. If a lamp in the instrument cluster remains on after starting the engine or comes on while driving, refer to "Lamps in instrument cluster" (▷ page 388).

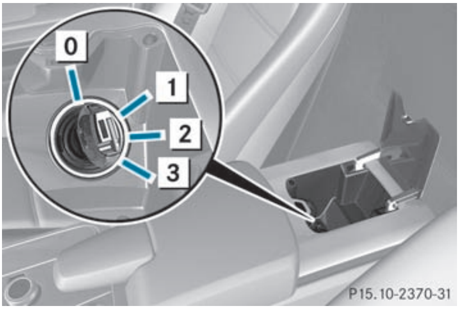
ℹ When you now press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once and the driver's door is open, the power supply is switched off.

ℹ When you now press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once, the power supply is again switched off.

SmartKey

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

The starter switch is located in the rear storage compartment of the center console.



0 For removing SmartKey

1 Power supply for some electrical consumers, e.g. wipers

2 Ignition (power supply for all electrical consumers) and driving position

3 Starting position

When you switch on the ignition, all lamps in the instrument cluster come on. The low-beam headlamp indicator lamp, high-beam headlamp indicator lamp, and the turn signal indicator lamps will only come on if activated. If a lamp in the instrument cluster fails to come on when the ignition is switched on, have it checked and replaced if necessary. If a lamp in the instrument cluster remains on after starting the engine or comes on while driving, refer to “Lamps in instrument cluster” (▷ page 388).

▶ Always remove the SmartKey from the starter switch when the engine is not in operation.
This will help to prevent accelerated vehicle battery discharge or a completely discharged vehicle battery.

If the SmartKey cannot be turned in the starter switch, the vehicle battery may not be sufficiently charged.

▶ Check the vehicle battery and charge it if necessary (▷ page 410).

or

▶ Get a jump start (▷ page 413).

ℹ If the SmartKey does not belong to the vehicle, the SmartKey can be turned in the starter switch. However, the ignition does not switch on and the engine does not start.

Seats

Safety notes

⚠ Warning!

In order to avoid possible loss of vehicle control the following must be done before the vehicle is put into motion:

- seat adjustment
- steering wheel adjustment
- rear view mirror adjustment
- fastening of seat belts

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the driver’s seat while driving. Adjusting the seat while driving could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Never ride in a moving vehicle with the seat backrest in an excessively reclined position as this can be dangerous. You could slide under the seat belt in a collision. If you slide under it, the seat belt would apply force at the abdomen or neck. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The seat backrest and seat belts provide the best restraint when the wearer is in a position that is as upright as possible and seat belts are properly positioned on the body.

⚠ Warning!

Your seat must be adjusted so that you can correctly fasten your seat belt.

Observe the following points:

- Adjust the seat backrest until your arms are slightly angled when holding the steering wheel.
- Adjust the seat to a comfortable seating position that still allows you to reach the accelerator/brake pedal safely. The position should be as far back as possible with the driver still able to operate the controls properly.
- Never place hands under the seat or near any moving parts while a seat is being adjusted.

Failure to do so could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

⚠ Warning!

The power seats can be operated at any time. Therefore, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. A child’s unsupervised access to a vehicle could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

⚠ **Warning!**

Children 12 years old and under must be seated and properly secured in an appropriately sized infant restraint, toddler restraint, or booster seat recommended for the size and weight of the child. For additional information, see section "Children in the vehicle".

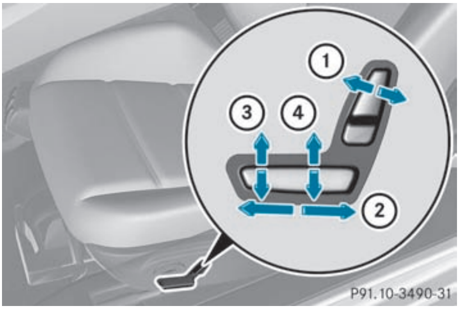
A child's risk of serious or fatal injuries is significantly increased if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle and/ or the child is not properly secured in the child restraint.

Seat adjustment

! When moving the seats, make sure there are no items in the footwell or behind the seats. Otherwise, you could damage the seats and/or the items.

Power seats

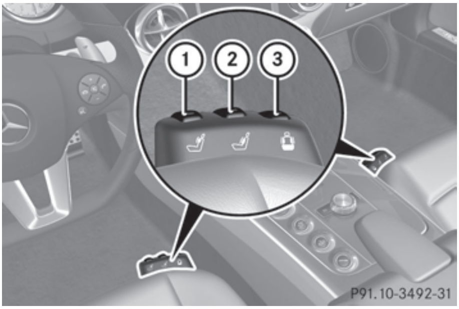
ℹ The memory function (▷ page 249) lets you store the settings for the seat position together with the settings for the steering wheel and the exterior rear view mirrors.



- **Seat backrest tilt:** Press the switch forward or backward in direction of arrow ①.
- **Seat fore and aft adjustment:** Press the switch forward or backward in direction of arrow ②.
- **Seat cushion tilt:** Press the switch up or down in direction of arrow ③ until your upper legs are lightly supported.
- **Seat height:** Press the switch up or down in direction of arrow ④.

Adjusting dorsal and lateral support

You can adjust the contour of the seats for dorsal and lateral support individually.



① Adjustment of backrest curvature in the area of your back

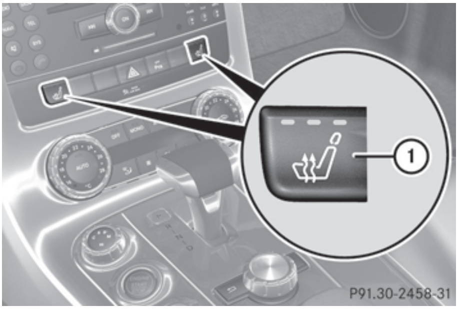
② Adjustment of backrest curvature in the lumbar area

③ Adjustment of lateral support and guidance

- **Adjusting seat:** Switch on the ignition.
- Press upper or lower part of switches ①, ②, or ③.

ℹ Readjust the seat if the settings do not correspond with the desired curvature anymore.

Seat heating



The red indicator lamps in seat heating switch ① come on to show which heating level you have selected.

The seat heating switches from level **3** (high) to level **2** after approximately 5 minutes.

The seat heating switches from level **2** to level **1** (low) after approximately 10 minutes.

After approximately 20 minutes in level **1**, the seat heating switches off automatically.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ **Switching on:** Press seat heating switch ①.

  Three red indicator lamps in seat heating switch ① come on.
- ▶ Press seat heating switch ① repeatedly until the desired seat heating level is set.

If there is insufficient voltage the seat heating switches off automatically.

The seat heating will switch back on again automatically as soon as sufficient voltage is available.

Multifunction steering wheel

Safety notes

⚠ **Warning!**

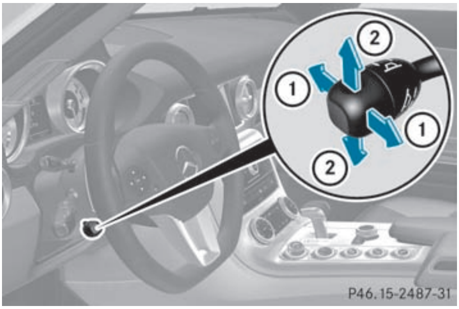
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Adjusting the steering wheel while driving could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

The electrical steering wheel adjustment feature can be operated at any time. Therefore, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. A child's unsupervised access to a vehicle could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

Make sure

- you can reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent at the elbows
- you can move your legs freely
- all displays (including malfunction and indicator lamps) on the instrument cluster are clearly visible

Steering wheel adjustment



- ▶ **Adjusting steering wheel in or out:** Move stalk in direction of arrows ①.
- ▶ **Adjusting steering wheel up or down:** Move stalk in direction of arrows ②.

ℹ The memory function (▷ page 249) lets you store the settings for the steering wheel together with the settings for the seat position and the exterior rear view mirrors.

Easy-entry/exit feature

This feature allows the driver an easier entry into and exit from the vehicle. When entering and exiting the vehicle, the steering wheel is in its uppermost position.

The easy-entry/exit feature can be activated or deactivated in the `Convenience` submenu of the control system (▷ page 286).

⚠ Warning!

You must make sure no one can become trapped or injured by the moving steering wheel when the easy-entry/exit feature is activated.

To stop steering wheel movement, move steering wheel adjustment stalk or press one of the memory position buttons.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Children could open the driver's door and unintentionally activate the easy-entry/exit feature, which could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

With the easy-entry/exit feature activated, the steering wheel will return to its last set position when

- you close the driver's door with the ignition switched on
- when you insert the SmartKey into the starter switch or press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once with the driver's door closed

ℹ The last set steering wheel position is stored when the ignition is switched off or the position is stored in memory (▷ page 249).

With the easy-entry/exit feature activated, the steering wheel tilts upwards when

- you remove the SmartKey from the starter switch
- when you open the driver's door with the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button in position **1** or the SmartKey in starter switch position **0** or **1**

ℹ When the current position for the steering wheel is in the uppermost tilt position, the steering wheel will no longer be able to move upward when the easy-entry/exit feature is activated.

The adjustment procedure is briefly interrupted when the engine is started.

⚠ Warning!

Let the system complete the adjustment procedure before setting the vehicle in motion. All steering wheel adjustment must be completed before setting the vehicle in motion. Driving off with the steering wheel still adjusting could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Crash-responsive exit aid

When you open the driver's door after an accident has occurred, the steering column moves up. The position of the SmartKey in the starter switch is insignificant. This function facilitates exiting as well as rescue of vehicle occupants.

The crash-responsive exit aid can only be triggered when the easy-entry/exit feature is activated via the control system.

Mirrors

Notes

Adjust the interior and exterior rear view mirrors before driving so that you have a good view of the road and traffic conditions.

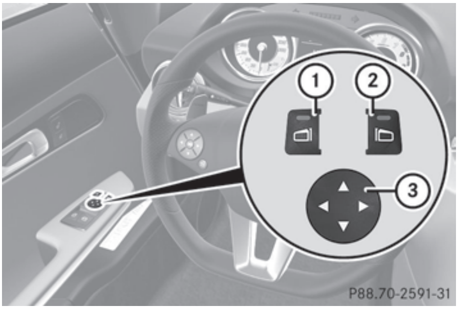
Interior rear view mirror

▶ Adjust the interior rear view mirror manually.

Exterior rear view mirrors

⚠ Warning!

Exercise care when using the passenger-side exterior rear view mirror. The mirror surface is convex (outwardly curved surface for a wider field of view). Objects in mirror are closer than they appear. Check your interior rear view mirror and glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.



ℹ You can store the settings for the exterior rear view mirror position with the memory function (▷ page 249).

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Press button ① for the driver's side exterior rear view mirror or button ② for the passenger-side exterior rear view mirror.
  The indicator lamp in the respective button comes on.
  If you do not make adjustments to the selected exterior rear view mirror within 15 seconds, the indicator lamp goes out. You will then have to select the desired exterior rear view mirror again before adjustments can be made. Adjustments can only be made with the indicator lamp for the respective exterior rear view mirror button illuminated.
- ▶ Press adjustment button ③ up, down, left or right according to the desired setting.

! If an exterior rear view mirror was forcibly hit from the front, manually snap it back into place.

ℹ At low ambient temperatures, the exterior rear view mirrors will be heated automatically.

Auto-dimming rear view mirrors

The exterior rear view mirror on the driver's side and the interior rear view mirror will respond automatically to glare when the ignition is switched on and incoming light from headlamps falls on the sensor in the interior rear view mirror.

The rear view mirrors will not react if the transmission is set to reverse gear **R** or the interior lighting is switched on.

⚠ **Warning!**

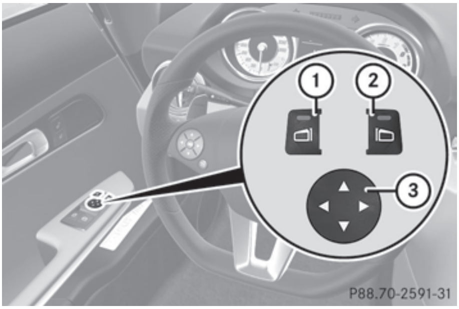
The auto dimming function does not react if incoming light is not aimed directly at sensors in the interior rear view mirror.

Light hitting the mirror(s) at certain angles (incident light) could blind you. As a result, you may not be able to observe traffic conditions and could cause an accident.

Exterior rear view mirror parking position

To assist during parking maneuvers, you can set the passenger-side exterior rear view mirror so that you can see the rear wheel and the road curb.

Setting and storing the parking position



- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into reverse gear **R**.

- Press button ②, to select the passenger-side exterior rear view mirror.
- Adjust the passenger-side exterior rear view mirror with adjustment button ③ so that you see the rear wheel and the road curb.
  The exterior rear view mirror parking position is stored.

If the exterior rear view mirror does move, repeat the above steps. After the setting is stored, you can move the exterior rear view mirror again.

Calling up the parking position

- Switch on the ignition.
- Shift the transmission into reverse gear **R**.
  The passenger-side exterior rear view mirror moves to the stored parking position.

The passenger-side exterior rear view mirror returns to its previously stored driving position

- 10 seconds after you have shift the transmission out of reverse gear **R**
- immediately once your vehicle exceeds a speed of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h)
- immediately when you press button ① to select the driver's side exterior rear view mirror

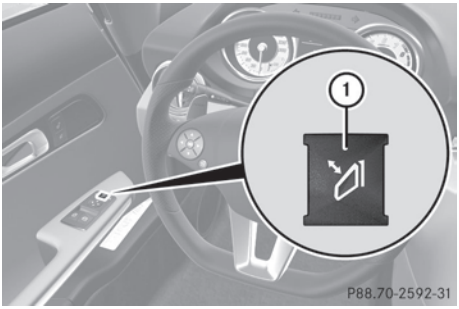
Power-folding exterior rear view mirrors

! Before you drive the vehicle through an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior rear view mirrors. Otherwise they may get damaged.

Folding in and out manually

The mirrors do not fold out if they have been folded in manually. Please make sure both mirrors are folded out before driving off.

The exterior rear view mirrors can vibrate if they are not folded out completely.



- Switch on the ignition.
- **Folding in:** Briefly press button ①.
  Both exterior rear view mirrors fold in.

At speeds above approximately 30 mph (47 km/h), you will not be able to fold the exterior mirrors in.

- **Folding out:** Briefly press button ①.
  Both exterior rear view mirrors fold out.

Synchronizing

The power-folding rear view mirrors may have to be synchronized after the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the exterior rear view mirrors do not fold properly upon locking or unlocking the vehicle, do the following:

- Make sure the power-folding function in the control system is activated (▷ page 286).
- Switch on the ignition.
- Briefly press button ①.

When the exterior rear view mirrors fold properly upon locking the vehicle, the exterior mirrors are synchronized. Otherwise repeat the above steps.

Folding in and out automatically

The function must be activated in the Convenience submenu (▷ page 287).

The exterior rear view mirrors fold in automatically as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside.

The exterior rear view mirrors fold out automatically as soon as the vehicle is unlocked and the driver’s or passenger door is subsequently opened.

Memory function

Notes

With the memory function you can store up to three different configurations per front seat.

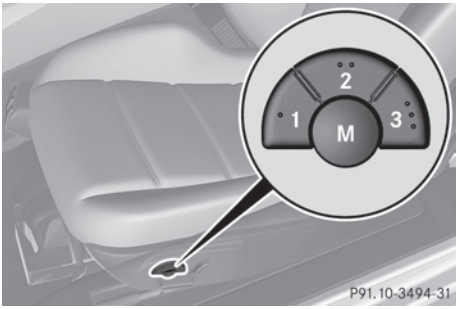
Each memory position button on the driver’s side can store all of the following settings:

- Seat position and dorsal support
- Steering wheel position
- Exterior rear view mirrors’ position

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate the memory function while driving. Activating the memory function while driving could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Each memory position button on the passenger side can store the setting of the seat position and dorsal support.



Storing positions into memory

▶ Adjust the seats.

▶ On the driver’s side, also adjust the steering wheel and exterior rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

▶ Press memory button **M** once and within 3 seconds press memory position button **1**, **2** or **3**.

When the settings are stored to the selected position, an acknowledgement signal sounds.

Recalling positions from memory

▶ Press and hold desired memory position button **1**, **2** or **3** until the seat has moved to the stored position completely. On the driver’s side, also wait for the steering wheel and exterior rear view mirrors to move to the stored position.

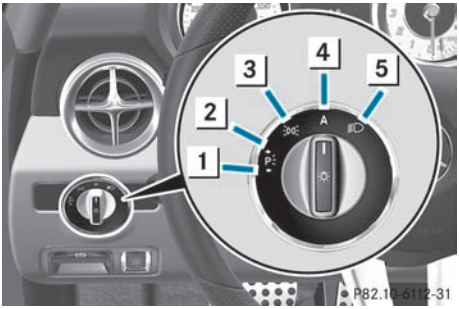
ℹ Releasing the memory position button stops movement to the stored positions immediately.

Lighting

Notes

ℹ If you drive in countries with left-hand driving, you must have the headlamps modified for symmetrical low beams. Relevant information can be obtained at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Exterior lamp switch



1	⇠P≡	Standing lamps, left
2	P≡⇢	Standing lamps, right
3	≡OO≡	Parking lamps[5] Daytime running lamp mode
4	A	Automatic headlamp mode Daytime running lamp mode
5	≡D	Low-beam headlamps or high-beam headlamps

ℹ The exterior lamps (except standing lamps or parking lamps) go out automatically when you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off or remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

When the parking lamps are switched on and you remove the SmartKey from the starter switch and open the driver's door, an acoustic signal sounds.

In addition the message `Switch Off Lights` appears in the multifunction display.

Switch off the parking lamps manually.

! Failure to switch off the parking lamps when leaving the vehicle may result in a discharged battery.

ℹ For better detection of the vehicle, the LED daytime running lamps are dimmed to parking lamp level when the low-beam headlamps are switched on.

Low-beam headlamps

The low-beam headlamps can be switched on and off with the exterior lamp switch.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ **Switching on:** Turn the exterior lamp switch to position ≡D.
  The following lamps come on:
  - Low-beam headlamps
  - Parking lamps[5]
  - Green indicator lamp ≡D in the instrument cluster

Automatic headlamp mode

⚠ **Warning!**

If the exterior lamp switch is set to A, the headlamps will not automatically come on under foggy conditions. This could endanger you and/or others. Thus, turn the exterior lamp switch to ≡D under foggy conditions.

The automatic headlamp feature is only an aid to the driver. The driver is responsible for the operation of the vehicle's lights at all times.

- ▶ **Switching on:** Turn the exterior lamp switch to position A.

When ambient light is low: When the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button has been pressed once or when the SmartKey is in starter switch position **1**, the parking lamps[5] come on automatically.
When the engine is running, the low-beam headlamps come on additionally.

When ambient light is bright: When the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button has been pressed once or when the SmartKey is in starter switch position **1**, all lamps are off.
When the engine is running, the daytime running lamps[6] come on automatically.

When the low-beam headlamps are switched on, the green indicator lamp ≡D in the instrument cluster comes on.

---

[5] When the parking lamps are on, the tail lamps, the license plate lamps, the side marker lamps, and the instrument cluster illumination are also on.

[6] USA only: The daytime running lamp mode must be activated via the control system.

Once the low-beam headlamps are on, the high-beam headlamps are also available.

Daytime running lamp mode

In Canada, the daytime running lamp mode is mandatory and therefore in a constant mode.

In the USA, the daytime running lamp mode is activated by default.

▶ Make sure the daytime running lamp mode is activated in the control system, see “Switching daytime running lamp mode on or off (USA only)” (▷ page 284).

▶ Turn the exterior lamp switch to position A.
When the engine is running and the ambient light is bright, the daytime running lamps come on.

In low ambient lighting conditions, the following lamps will come on additionally:

- Low-beam headlamps
- Parking lamps[5]
- green indicator lamp ≣D in the instrument cluster

You can only switch on the high-beam headlamps when the low-beam headlamps are on.
The high-beam flasher is available at all times.

Canada only

When the engine is running, and you

- shift from a driving position to park position **P** with the vehicle at a standstill, the daytime running lamps or the low-beam headlamps will go out with a delay of 3 minutes
- turn the exterior lamp switch to position ⋺00⋲, the daytime running lamps and the parking lamps[5] come on in bright ambient lighting conditions.
- turn the exterior lamp switch to position ≣D, the manual headlamp mode has priority over the daytime running lamp mode

  The corresponding exterior lamps come on (▷ page 250).

USA only

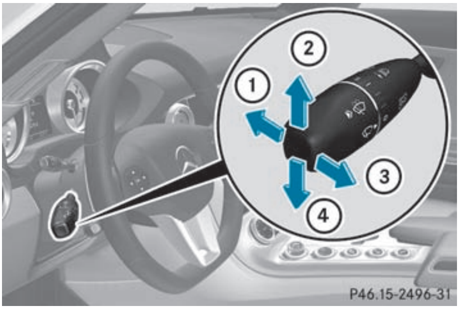
When the engine is running, and you turn the exterior lamp switch to position ⋺00⋲ or ≣D, the manual headlamp mode has priority over the daytime running lamp mode.

The corresponding exterior lamps come on (▷ page 250).

Locator lighting

The locator lighting is described in the “Control system” section, see “Switching locator lighting on or off” (▷ page 285).

Combination switch



Turn signals

▶ Press the combination switch in direction of arrow ② or ④.
The corresponding turn signal indicator lamp ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster flashes.

The combination switch resets automatically after major steering wheel movements.

---

[5] When the parking lamps are on, the tail lamps, the license plate lamps, the side marker lamps, and the instrument cluster illumination are also on.

To signal minor directional changes:

▶ Press the combination switch only to the point of resistance in direction of arrow ② or ④ and release.
The corresponding turn signal lamps will flash three times.

High beam

▶ Turn the exterior lamp switch to position ≣D (▷ page 250).

▶ **Switching on:** Push the combination switch in direction of arrow ①.
The high-beam headlamp indicator lamp ≣D in the instrument cluster comes on.

▶ **Switching off:** Pull the combination switch in direction of arrow ③ to its original position.

ℹ Also note the information on high-beam headlamps with activated automatic headlamp mode (▷ page 250) or the daytime running lamp mode (▷ page 251).

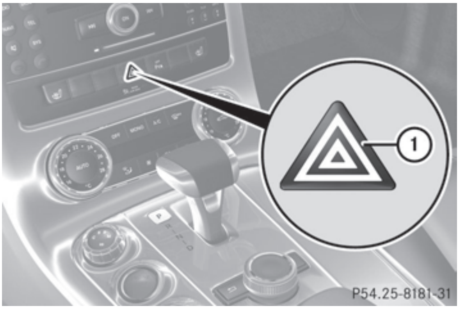
High-beam flasher

▶ **Switching on:** Pull the combination switch briefly in direction of arrow ③.

Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher can be switched on at all times, even with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch.

The hazard warning flasher comes on automatically when an air bag deploys.



▶ **Switching on:** Press hazard warning flasher switch ①.
All turn signal lamps are flashing.

ℹ With the hazard warning flasher activated and the combination switch set for either left or right turn, only the respective left or right turn signals will operate when the ignition is switched on.

▶ **Switching off:** Press hazard warning flasher switch ① again.

ℹ If the hazard warning flasher has been activated automatically, press hazard warning flasher switch ① to switch it off.

Headlamp cleaning system

The headlamps will be cleaned with a high-pressure water jet automatically when the engine is running and you have

- switched on the headlamps

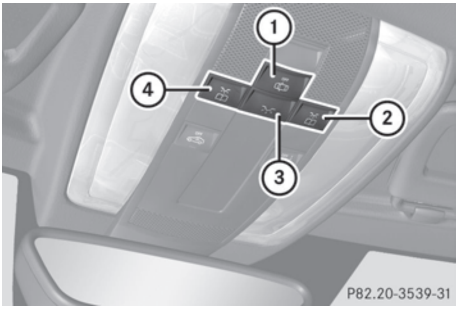
  and
- the windshield wipers have wiped the windshield with washer fluid for the first time

The headlamps are cleaned every tenth time the windshield is washed with washer fluid.

The counter resets when you switch off the ignition.

For information on filling up the washer reservoir, see “Washer system and headlamp cleaning system” (▷ page 325).

Interior lighting



① OFF Automatic control on/off
② Right reading lamp on/off
③ Interior lighting on/off
④ Left reading lamp on/off

Automatic control

- **Activating:** Press button OFF.

  Button OFF disengages and sits flush with the other buttons.

  The interior lighting comes, when you
  - unlock the vehicle
  - open a door
  - remove the SmartKey from the starter switch (`Interior Lighting Delay:` must be enabled (▷ page 286))

The interior lighting goes out after a short time.

ⓘ If a door remains open, the interior lamps go out automatically after approximately 5 minutes.

- **Deactivating:** Press button OFF.

  Button OFF engages.

Manual control

! An interior lamp switched on manually does not go out automatically.

Leaving an interior lamp switched on for an extended period of time with the engine turned off could result in a discharged battery.

- **Switching interior lighting on/off:** Press switch .
- **Switching reading lamps on/off:** Press respective button .

Emergency lighting

When the interior lighting is set to automatic mode, the interior lighting comes on automatically if the vehicle is involved in an accident.

Switching off:

- Press hazard warning flasher switch (▷ page 252).

or

- Lock the vehicle with the SmartKey and then unlock it.

Wipers

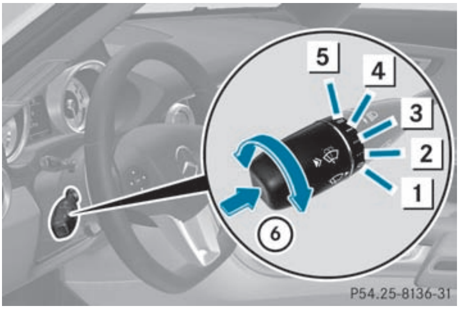
Notes

! Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. Dust that accumulates on a windshield might scratch the glass and/or damage the wiper blades when wiping occurs on a dry windshield. If it is necessary to operate the wipers in dry weather conditions, always operate the wipers with washer fluid.

Windshield wipers

- Observe notes on page (▷ page 253).

Switching on/off



Combination switch

1 0 Windshield wipers off
2 ••• Slow intermittent wiping[7]
3 •••• Fast intermittent wiping[8]
4 — Slow continuous wiping
5 ═ Fast continuous wiping
⑥ Single wipe/ Wiping with washer fluid

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Turn the combination switch to the desired position, depending on the intensity of the rain.

Intermittent wiping

Only switch on intermittent wiping under wet weather conditions or in the presence of precipitation.

When you select intermittent wiping, the rain sensor is activated. The rain sensor sets a suitable wiping interval depending on the wetness of the sensor surface automatically.

! Do not leave windshield wipers on an intermittent setting when the vehicle is taken to an automatic car wash or during windshield cleaning. Windshield wipers will operate in the presence of water sprayed on the windshield, and windshield wipers may be damaged as a result.

! If you have set intermittent wiping, dirt on the surface of the rain sensor or optical effects may cause the windshield wipers to wipe in an undesired fashion. This could then damage the windshield wiper blades or scratch the windshield. You should therefore switch off the windshield wipers when weather conditions are dry.

▶ Turn the combination switch to position ••• or ••••.
After the initial wipe, pauses between wipes are controlled by the rain sensor automatically.

Intermittent wiping is interrupted when the vehicle is at a standstill and a door is opened. This protects persons getting into or out of the vehicle from being sprayed.

Intermittent wiping will be continued when all doors are closed and

- the transmission is in drive position **D** or reverse gear **R**

  or

- the wiper setting is changed using the combination switch

Single wipe

▶ Press the combination switch briefly in direction of arrow ⑥ to the resistance point.
The windshield wipers wipe one time without washer fluid.

Wiping with washer fluid

▶ Press the combination switch in direction of arrow ⑥ past the resistance point.
The windshield wipers operate with washer fluid.

i To prevent smears on the windshield or noisy/chattering wiper blades, wipe with washer fluid every now and then even when it is raining.

---

[7] Rain sensor operation with low sensitivity.
[8] Rain sensor operation with high sensitivity.

For information on filling up the washer reservoir, see “Washer system and headlamp cleaning system” (▷ page 325).

For information on cleaning the headlamps with washer fluid, see “Headlamp cleaning system” (▷ page 252).

Problems with wipers

❗ If anything blocks the windshield wipers (leaves, snow, etc.), switch them off immediately.

For safety reasons, do the following before attempting to remove any blockage:

- Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
- Turn off the engine by pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button and open the driver’s door (with the driver’s door open, starter switch is in position **0**, same as with SmartKey removed from starter switch).

  or
- Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.
- Engage the electronic parking brake.
- Remove blockage.
- Turn the windshield wipers on again.

If the windshield wipers fail to function at all with the combination switch in position ••• or ••••,

- set the combination switch to the next higher wiper speed
- have the windshield wipers checked at the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center

Power windows

Opening and closing

The door windows are opened and closed electrically. The switches for all windows are located on the driver’s door. The switch for operating the passenger-side windows is located on the passenger door.

⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

⚠ **Warning!**

When opening or closing the door windows, make sure there is no danger of anyone being harmed by the opening/closing procedure.

The door windows are equipped with the express operation and automatic reversal function. If in express operation mode a door window encounters an obstruction that blocks its path, the automatic reversal function will stop the door window and open it slightly.

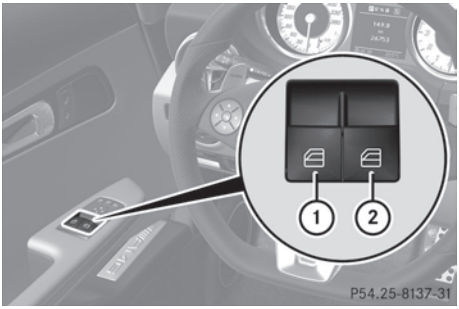
The door windows operate differently when the switch is pulled and held. See the “Closing when a door window is blocked” section in this chapter for details.

The closing of the door windows can be immediately halted by releasing the switch or, if the switch was pulled past the resistance point and released, by either pressing or pulling the respective switch.

If a door window encounters an obstruction that blocks its path in a circumstance where you are closing the door windows by pressing and holding button 🔒 on the SmartKey the automatic reversal function will not operate.

ℹ You can also open or close the door windows using the SmartKey, see “Summer opening feature” (▷ page 256) and “Convenience closing feature” (▷ page 257).

ℹ After switching off the ignition or removing the SmartKey from the starter switch, you can operate the door windows until you open a door. If no door was opened you can operate the door windows for up to 5 minutes.



▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ **Opening/closing:** Press or pull and hold switch ① or ② to the resistance point.
The corresponding door window moves downward or upward until you release the switch.

▶ **Express operation:** Press or pull switch ① or ② past the resistance point and release.
The corresponding door window opens or closes completely.

▶ **Stopping during express operation:** Press or pull the respective switch again.

Closing when a door window is blocked

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure that nobody can become trapped and be seriously or even fatally injured when closing a door window with greater force or without automatic reversal function.

If the upward movement of a door window is blocked during the closing procedure, the door window will stop and open slightly.

▶ Immediately after the door window has stopped because it was blocked, pull and hold the respective switch upward until the door window is fully closed.
The door window closes with greater force.

If the door window is blocked again and opens slightly:

▶ Immediately after the door window was blocked, pull and hold the respective switch upward until the door window is fully closed.
The door window closes without automatic reversal function.

⚠ **Warning!**

Pulling and holding the switch to close the door window immediately after it had been blocked two times will cause the door window to close without the anti-entrapment feature for as long as you hold the switch.

Synchronizing power windows

The power windows must be synchronized if they cannot be fully closed (express operation).

Each power window must be synchronized separately.

▶ Close all doors.

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Pull and hold switch ① or ② (▷ page 255) until the respective power window is closed.
The power window opens again slightly.

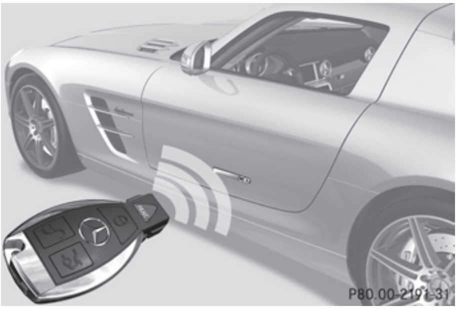
▶ Pull and hold the respective switch once more immediately until the power window is closed completely.

▶ Hold the respective switch for approximately 1 second.
The power window is synchronized.

Summer opening feature

When the weather is warm, you can ventilate the vehicle before driving off by opening the door windows.

The summer opening feature can only be activated via the remote control of the SmartKey. The SmartKey must be in close proximity to the driver's outside door handle.



- ▶ Aim the transmitter eye of the SmartKey at the driver's outside door handle.
- ▶ Press button 🔓 on the SmartKey to unlock the vehicle.

  Keep button 🔓 pressed until the door windows have reached the desired position.
- ▶ Release button 🔓 on the SmartKey to interrupt the opening procedure.

Convenience closing feature

When locking the vehicle, you can close the door windows.

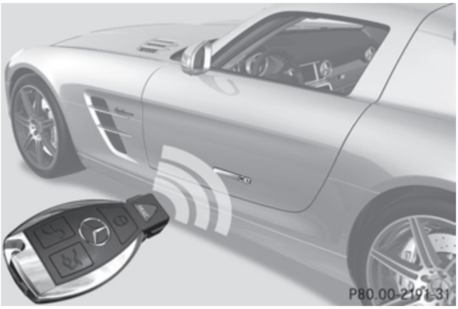
⚠ Warning!

When closing the door windows, make sure there is no danger of anyone being harmed by the closing procedure.

If potential danger exists, proceed as follows:

- Release button 🔒 to stop the closing procedure. To open, press and hold button 🔓. To continue the closing procedure after making sure that there is no danger of anyone being harmed by the closing procedure, press and hold button 🔒.

The SmartKey must be in close proximity to the driver's outside door handle.



- ▶ Aim the transmitter eye of the SmartKey at the driver's outside door handle.
- ▶ Press button 🔒 on the SmartKey to lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press and hold button 🔒 on the SmartKey until the door windows are closed completely.
- ▶ Release button 🔒 on the SmartKey to interrupt the extending procedure.

Driving and parking

Safety notes

⚠ Warning!

Make sure absolutely no objects are obstructing the pedals' range of movement. Keep the driver's footwell clear of all obstacles. If there are any floormats or carpets in the footwell, make sure the pedals still have sufficient clearance.

During sudden driving or braking maneuvers the objects could get caught between or under the pedals. You could then no longer brake or accelerate. This could lead to accidents and injury.

⚠ Warning!

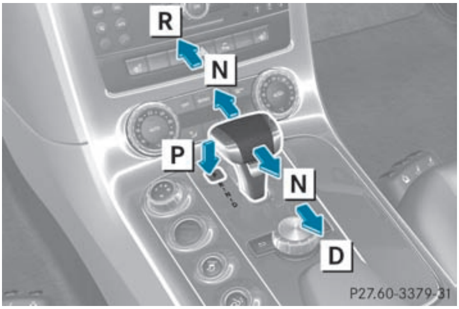
With the engine not running, there is no power assistance for the brake and steering systems. In this case, it is important to keep in mind that a considerably higher degree of effort is necessary to brake and steer the vehicle. Adapt your driving accordingly.

Starting the engine

⚠ **Warning!**

Inhalation of exhaust gas is hazardous to your health. All exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), and inhaling it can cause unconsciousness and possible death.

Do not run the engine in confined areas (such as a garage) which are not properly ventilated. If you think that exhaust gas fumes are entering the vehicle while driving, have the cause determined and corrected immediately. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with at least one window fully open at all times.



Gearshift pattern for AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission

P	Park position
R	Reverse gear
N	Neutral position
D	Drive position

For more information, see "AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission" (▷ page 263).

- Make sure the transmission is in park position **P**.

With KEYLESS-GO

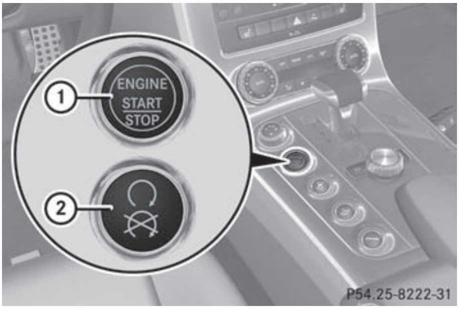
⚠ **Warning!**

As long as the SmartKey is in your vehicle, the vehicle can be started. Therefore, never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as they could otherwise accidentally start the engine.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the SmartKey with you and lock the vehicle. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. A child's unsupervised access to a vehicle could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

You can start your vehicle without the SmartKey in the starter switch using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.

The SmartKey must be located in the vehicle. It will, however, not be detected in the trunk.



KEYLESS-GO start/stop button

① USA only

② Canada only

- Depress the brake pedal during the starting procedure.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal.
- Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once.
  The engine starts automatically.

With SmartKey

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal.
- Turn the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **3** (▷ page 242) and release it.
  The engine starts automatically.

Starting difficulties

! Remember that extended starting attempts can drain the battery.

The engine does not start. You can hear the starter.

There could be a malfunction in the engine electronics or in the fuel supply system.

Carry out the following steps:

- ▶ If you are starting the engine with the SmartKey: Turn the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **0** and repeat the starting procedure.
- ▶ If you are starting the engine with KEYLESS-GO: Close any doors that may be open to allow for better detection of the SmartKey.

or

- ▶ Start the engine with the SmartKey as radio signals from another source may be interfering with the KEYLESS-GO function.
- ▶ Repeat the starting procedure.

If the engine does not start after several starting attempts:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

The engine does not start. You cannot hear the starter.

The battery may not be charged sufficiently.

- ▶ Get a jump start (▷ page 413).

If the engine will not start despite a jump start:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

The starter has been exposed to excessive temperatures.

- ▶ Let the starter cool for about 2 minutes.
- ▶ Repeat the starting procedure.

If the engine does not start after several starting attempts:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

Driving off

⚠ **Warning!**

On slippery road surfaces, never downshift in order to obtain braking action. This could result in drive wheel slip and reduced vehicle control. Your vehicle’s ABS will not prevent this type of loss of control.

! Do not run a cold engine at high engine speeds. Running a cold engine at high engine speeds may shorten the service life of the engine. This is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Drive off immediately after starting the engine to warm up the engine efficiently. The engine must be at operating temperature before using full engine power. The engine has reached operating temperature once the engine oil temperature indicator in the AMG menu of the control system has stopped flashing.

At engine temperatures below 32℉ (0℃), the engine’s maximum speed is restricted in order to protect it from damage. Avoid driving your vehicle at full speed when the engine is cold to prevent premature engine wear and/or diminished comfort.

! You have forgotten to release the electronic parking brake when driving off if

- an acoustic warning sounds
- the message `Release Parking Brake` appears in the multifunction display
- the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake PARK (USA only) or Ⓟ (Canada only) in the instrument cluster flashes

Release the electronic parking brake.

! Avoid spinning of a drive wheel. This may cause serious damage to the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! Simultaneously depressing the accelerator pedal and applying the brakes reduces engine performance and causes premature brake and drivetrain wear which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

ℹ Once the vehicle is in motion, the automatic central locking function engages and the locking knobs in the doors move down.

AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> It is dangerous to shift the transmission out of park position **P** or neutral position **N** if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

! Only shift the transmission into reverse gear **R** or park position **P** when the vehicle is stopped. Otherwise the transmission could be damaged.

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
  The gear selector lever can now be used.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into drive position **D** or reverse gear **R**.

ℹ Shifting the transmission out of park position **P** is only possible with the brake pedal depressed.

Only depressing the brake pedal releases the gear selector lever lock.

- ▶ Wait for the gear selection process to complete before setting the vehicle in motion.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal.
- ▶ Carefully depress the accelerator pedal.
  The electronic parking brake releases automatically.
  The red indicator lamp PARK (USA only) or Ⓟ (Canada only) in the instrument cluster goes out.

After a cold start, the transmission shifts at a higher engine speed. This allows the catalytic converter to reach its operating temperature earlier.

For more information on driving, see “Driving instructions” (▷ page 258).

Problems while driving

The engine runs erratically and misfires

- The engine electronics may not be operating properly.
- Unburned gasoline may have entered the catalytic converter and damaged it.

- ▶ Give very little gas.
- ▶ Have the problem checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

The coolant temperature is above 248°F (120°C)

The coolant is too hot and is no longer cooling the engine.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible.
- ▶ Turn off the engine immediately.
- ▶ Allow the engine and coolant to cool off.
- ▶ Check the coolant level and add coolant if necessary (▷ page 324).

In case of accident

If the vehicle is leaking fuel:

- ▶ Do not start the engine under any circumstances.
- ▶ Exit the vehicle at a safe distance from the roadway.
- ▶ Notify local fire and/or police authorities.

If the extent of the damage cannot be determined:

- ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

If no damage on major assemblies, fuel system, and engine mount can be determined:

- ▶ Start the engine in the usual manner.

Parking

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not park in areas where the hot exhaust system could come into contact with combustible materials. Combustible materials such as grass, hay or leaves could be ignited and cause a vehicle fire.

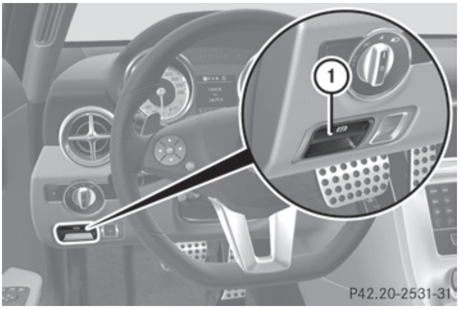
Unintended vehicle movement could cause serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle or the vehicle drivetrain. To reduce such risks, always do the following before turning off the engine and leaving the vehicle:

- Keep right foot on the brake pedal.
- Engage the electronic parking brake.
- Shift the transmission into park position **P**.
- Slowly release the brake pedal.
- When parked on an incline, always turn the front wheels towards the road curb.
- Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button, or turn the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **0** and remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.
- Take the SmartKey with you and lock the vehicle when leaving.

Electronic parking brake

⚠ **Warning!**

When leaving the vehicle, always remove the SmartKey from the starter switch, take it with you, and lock the vehicle. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Children could release the electronic parking brake and/or shift the transmission out of park position **P**, either of which could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.



Engaging electronic parking brake

- ▶ Press handle ①.
  The red indicator lamp PARK (USA only) or Ⓟ (Canada only) in the instrument cluster comes on.

ℹ You can engage the electronic parking brake even when the SmartKey is removed from the starter switch.

Releasing electronic parking brake manually

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Pull handle ①.
  The red indicator lamp PARK (USA only) or Ⓟ (Canada only) in the instrument cluster goes out.

Releasing electronic parking brake automatically

The electronic parking brake releases automatically when all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

- The engine is running.
- The transmission is in drive position **D** or reverse gear **R**. With the transmission in reverse gear **R** the trunk lid must be closed.
- The hood is closed.
- You have fastened your seat belt.
- You depress on the accelerator pedal.

ℹ If you have not fastened your seat belt, the following conditions must be met in order for the electronic parking brake to release automatically:

- The driver's door is closed and you shift the transmission out of park position **P**.

or

- The driver's door is closed and you drive faster than 2 mph (3 km/h).

Emergency braking with electronic parking brake

In an emergency situation, you can also brake your vehicle by using the electronic parking brake.

▶ While driving, press handle ①.
All four wheels of the vehicle will be braked for as long as you press and hold the handle for the electronic parking brake. The longer you keep the handle pressed, the stronger your vehicle will be braked.

During the braking procedure

- an acoustic warning sounds
- the message `Release Parking Brake` appears in the multifunction display
- the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake **PARK** (USA only) or Ⓟ (Canada only) in the instrument cluster flashes

Once the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the electronic parking brake will engage automatically.

Turning off the engine

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. With the engine not running, there is no power assistance for the brake and steering systems. In this case, it is important to keep in mind that a considerably higher degree of effort is necessary to brake and steer the vehicle.

▶ Shift the transmission into park position **P** .

With KEYLESS-GO

▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.
With the driver's door closed, the starter switch is now in position **1**. With the driver's door opened, the starter switch is set to position **0**, same as the SmartKey removed from the starter switch (▷ page 242).

Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 367).

ℹ The transmission will shift into neutral position **N** automatically when you turn off the engine with the transmission in reverse gear **R** or drive position **D**.

The transmission will remain in neutral position **N** for approximately 30 minutes when you have shifted the transmission to neutral position **N** before turning off the engine.

The transmission will shift into park position **P** automatically when you open a door during this period.

ℹ In an emergency you can turn off the engine while driving by pressing and holding the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button for approximately 3 seconds.

With SmartKey

! Do not remove the SmartKey from the starter switch while driving. When driving at low speed, the transmission will otherwise shift into park position **P** automatically. The transmission could be damaged as a result.

▶ Turn the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **0**.

▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 367).

ℹ The transmission will shift into neutral position **N** automatically when you turn off the engine with the transmission in reverse gear **R** or drive position **D**.

The transmission will remain in neutral position **N** for approximately 30 minutes when you have shifted the transmission to neutral position **N** before turning off the engine.

The transmission remains in neutral position **N** even when you open a door.

AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission

Introduction

For information on driving with the AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission, see “Driving and parking” (▷ page 257).

⚠ Warning!

Make sure absolutely no objects are obstructing the pedals’ range of movement. Keep the driver’s footwell clear of all obstacles. If there are any floormats or carpets in the footwell, make sure the pedals still have sufficient clearance.

During sudden driving or braking maneuvers the objects could get caught between or under the pedals. You could then no longer brake or accelerate. This could lead to accidents and injury.

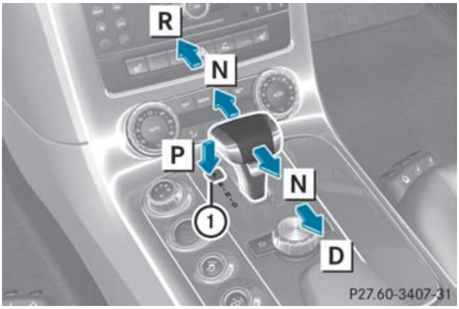
! Allow the engine to warm up under low load use. Do not place full load on the engine until the operating temperature has been reached.

Avoid spinning of a drive wheel for an extended period when driving off on slippery road surfaces.

This may cause serious damage to the engine and the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

ⓘ During the brief warm-up, transmission upshifting is delayed. This allows the catalytic converter to heat up more quickly to operating temperature.

Gear selector lever



Gearshift pattern for AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission

①	Button for selecting park position **P**
P	Park position
R	Reverse gear
N	Neutral position
D	Drive position

⚠ Warning!

It is dangerous to shift the transmission out of park position **P** or neutral position **N** if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

! The vehicle must be stopped when you shift the transmission

- directly between drive position **D** and reverse gear **R**
- directly between reverse gear **R** and drive position **D**
- directly into park position **P**

Otherwise the transmission could be damaged.

ⓘ Shifting the transmission out of park position **P** is only possible with the brake pedal depressed.

Without the brake pedal depressed, the gear selector lever can be moved up or down, but the parking pawl remains engaged, not allowing shifting to occur.

ℹ The gear selector lever always returns to its original position.

The current transmission position **P**, **R**, **N**, or **D** appears in the multifunction display (▷ page 265).

There are additional indicators on the cover of the shifting gate showing the current gear selector lever position.

The indicators come on when you insert the SmartKey into the starter switch, and go out when you remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

Shifting into park position P

- ▶ With the vehicle at a standstill, press button ① on the gearshift pattern (▷ page 263).

KEYLESS-GO: When you turn off the engine using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button and open a door, the transmission will shift into park position **P** automatically.

SmartKey: When you turn off the engine using the SmartKey, and remove the SmartKey from the starter switch or open a door, the transmission will shift into park position **P** automatically.

ℹ You cancel park position **P** when you depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector lever forward or back past the first point of resistance. The transmission shifts into neutral position **N**.

Shifting into neutral position N

- ▶ With the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Move the gear selector lever forward or back to the first point of resistance.

ℹ The transmission will remain in neutral position **N** for approximately 30 minutes when you have shifted the transmission to neutral position **N** before turning off the engine. The transmission will shift into park position **P** automatically when you open a door or remove the SmartKey from the starter switch during this period. The transmission remains in neutral position **N** when the SmartKey is in the starter switch or when you open a door.

Shifting into reverse gear R

- ▶ With the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Move the gear selector lever forward past the first point of resistance.

Shifting into drive position D

- ▶ With the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Move the gear selector lever back past the first point of resistance.

Shifting procedure

The transmission selects individual gears automatically, depending on

- the selected gear range (▷ page 266)
- the selected program mode:
  C/**S**/**S+**/**M** and **RS** (▷ page 267)
- the position of the accelerator pedal
- the vehicle speed

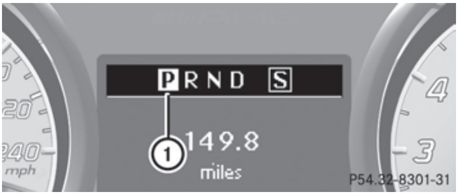
With drive position **D** selected, you can influence transmission shifting by

- limiting the gear range
- extending the gear range
- changing the gears manually

Double-clutching is active when downshifting in all program modes. Double-clutching reduces load-alteration effects and supports sporty driving. The degree to which you perceive double-clutching acoustically varies depending on the selected program mode.

Transmission positions

The current transmission position appears in the multifunction display.



① Transmission position indicator

If the current transmission position does not appear in the multifunction display due to a malfunction, for example, make sure that the transmission is in the desired position.

- ▶ Shift the transmission into drive position **D**.
- ▶ Select automatic program mode **C** (▷ page 267).
- ▶ Do not limit the gear range.
- ▶ Drive off carefully.

	Effect
P	**Park position** Shift the transmission into park position **P** only when the vehicle is stopped. The park position is not intended to serve as a brake when the vehicle is parked. Rather, the driver should always engage the electronic parking brake in addition to shifting the transmission into park position **P** to secure the vehicle. If the vehicle's electrical system is malfunctioning, the transmission could remain locked in park position **P**. ▶ Have the vehicle's electrical system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
R	**Reverse gear** Shift the transmission into reverse gear **R** only when the vehicle is stopped.

	Effect
N	**Neutral position** No power is transmitted from the engine to the drive axle. When the brakes are released, the vehicle can be moved freely (pushed or towed). To avoid damage to the transmission, never shift the transmission into neutral position **N** while driving. Exception: If the ESC is switched off or malfunctioning, shift the transmission into neutral position **N** if the vehicle is in danger of skidding. **!** Coasting the vehicle, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in neutral position **N** can result in transmission damage that is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.
D	**Drive position** The transmission shifts automatically. All forward gears are available.

Driving tips

Kickdown

Use the kickdown when you want maximum acceleration.

▶ Depress the accelerator pedal past the point of resistance.
Depending on the engine speed the transmission shifts into a lower gear.

Working on the vehicle

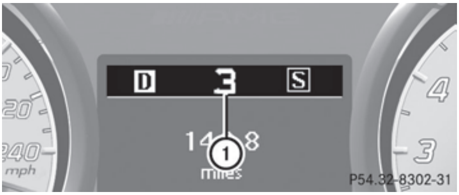
⚠ **Warning!**

When working on the vehicle, engage the electronic parking brake and shift the transmission into park position **P**. Otherwise the vehicle could roll away which could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

Gear ranges

With the transmission in drive position **D** and driving in automatic program mode **C**, **S**, or **S+**, you can limit or extend the gear range, see “One-touch gearshifting” (▷ page 267).

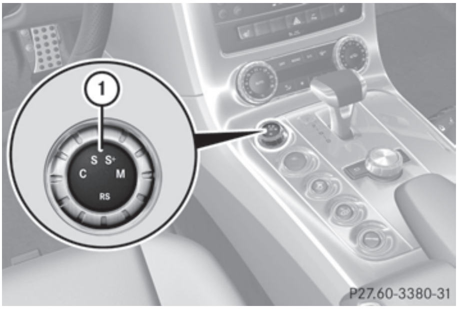
The current gear range appears in the multifunction display.



① Gear range indicator

	Effect
3	With this selection you can use the braking effect of the engine.
2	Allows the use of the engine’s braking effect when driving • on steep downgrades • in mountainous regions • under extreme operating conditions
1	For maximum use of the engine’s braking effect on very steep or lengthy downgrades.

Automatic shift program

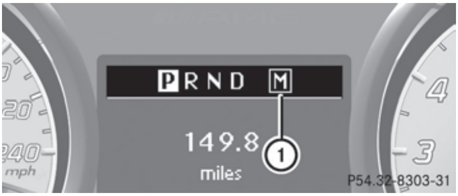


Program mode selector dial

C Comfort	For standard driving
S Sport	For sporty driving
S+ Sport Plus	For sporty driving with shorter shift times
M Manual	For manual gearshifting (▷ page 268)
RS RACE START	For optimum acceleration from a standing start

ℹ Program mode **RS** cannot be selected while driving. For more information, see “RACE START” (▷ page 292).

The current program mode appears in the multifunction display.



① Program mode indicator

ℹ In addition, the currently selected program mode is indicated in red on the program mode selector dial.

You should only change the program mode when the transmission is in park position **P**.

Automatic program mode **S** or **S+** will not be stored. When the engine is turned off with the automatic program mode **S** or **S+** selected, the transmission will go to the automatic program mode **C** when the engine is restarted.

▶ Turn the program mode selector dial until the letter of the desired program mode appears in the multifunction display.

Selecting program mode **C** means:

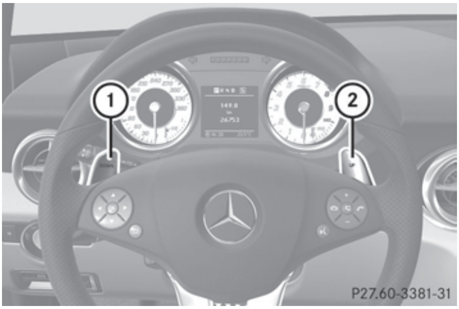
- The vehicle starts out more gentle, both forward and reverse, except when driving off with full throttle.
- Traction and driving stability are improved on icy roads.
- Upshifts occur earlier even when you give more gas. The engine then operates at lower revolutions and the wheels are less likely to spin.

Selecting program mode **S** means that upshifts occur later.

One-touch gearshifting

With the transmission in drive position **D** and driving in automatic program mode **C**, **S**, or **S+**, you can limit or extend the gear range using the gear selector lever or the steering wheel gearshift control.

For information on using the gear selector lever or the steering wheel gearshift control in manual program mode **M**, see “Manual shift program” (▷ page 268).



Steering wheel gearshift control

ℹ You cannot shift with the steering wheel gearshift control when the transmission is in park position **P**, neutral position **N**, or reverse gear **R**.

Limiting gear range

⚠ **Warning!**

On slippery road surfaces, never downshift in order to obtain braking action. This could result in drive wheel slip and reduced vehicle control. Your vehicle's ABS will not prevent this type of loss of control.

▶ Briefly pull left gearshift control ①.

or

▶ Move the gear selector lever forward briefly (▷ page 263).
The transmission will shift into the next lower gear as permitted by the shift program. This action simultaneously limits the gear range of the transmission.

ℹ To avoid overrevving the engine when downshifting, the transmission will not shift into a lower gear if the engine's maximum speed would be exceeded.

Extending gear range

▶ Briefly pull right gearshift control ②.

or

▶ Move the gear selector lever back briefly (▷ page 263).
The transmission will shift into the next higher gear as permitted by the shift program. This action simultaneously extends the gear range of the transmission.

ℹ If you press on the accelerator pedal when the engine has reached the revolution limit of the current gear range, the transmission will upshift beyond any gear range limit selected.

Canceling gear range limit

▶ Pull and hold right gearshift control ② until the gear range indicator disappears from the multifunction display.

or

▶ Move the gear selector lever back and hold it there until the numeral for the current gear disappears from the multifunction display.
The transmission will shift from the current gear range directly into drive position **D**.

Shifting into optimal gear range

▶ Pull and hold left gearshift control ①.

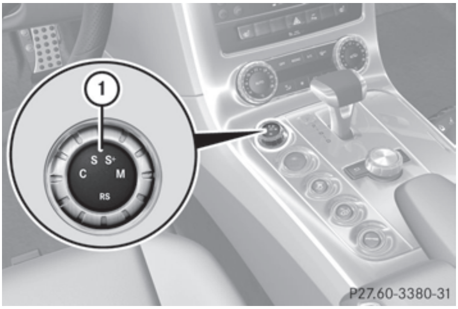
or

▶ Move the gear selector lever forward and hold it there.
The transmission will select the gear range suited for optimal acceleration and deceleration automatically. This will involve shifting down one or more gears.

Manual shift program

Manual program mode **M** differs with regard to spontaneity, response time, and shifting smoothness from automatic program modes **S** or **S+**.

In manual program mode **M**, system-controlled automatic gearshifting is switched off. You need to change the gears by manually upshifting or downshifting using the gear selector lever or the steering wheel gearshift control.



Program mode selector dial

C Comfort	For standard driving
S Sport	For sporty driving
S+ Sport Plus	For sporty driving with shorter shift times
M Manual	For manual gearshifting
RS RACE START	For optimum acceleration from a standing start

ℹ Program mode **RS** cannot be selected while driving. For more information, see “RACE START” (▷ page 292).

ℹ In addition, the currently selected program mode is indicated in red on the program mode selector dial.

The current program mode appears in the multifunction display (▷ page 267).

For information on automatic program mode (**C**, **S**, or **S+**), see “Automatic shift program” (▷ page 267) and “One-touch gearshifting” (▷ page 267).

Activating manual shift program

- Turn the program mode selector dial until `M` appears in the multifunction display. In addition, `M` is indicated in red on the program mode selector dial.
  The transmission switches to manual program mode **M**. Automatic shifting is switched off. The gear range is not limited.

You can change the gears manually with drive position **D** selected. You can upshift or downshift through the gears in succession.

ℹ Manual program mode **M** will not be stored. When the engine is turned off with manual program mode **M** selected, the transmission will go to automatic program mode **C** when the engine is restarted.

Upshifting

! In manual program mode **M**, the transmission will not upshift, even if the engine has reached its overrevving range. Shift up into the next gear before the engine has reached its overrevving range. Make absolutely certain that the engine speed does not reach the red marking on the tachometer. Otherwise the engine could be damaged which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

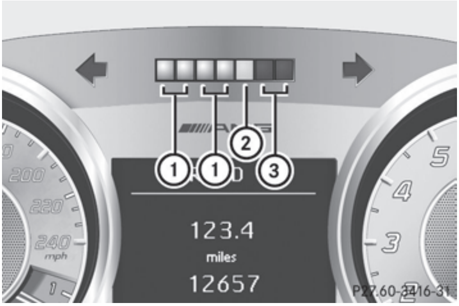
- Move the gear selector lever back briefly (▷ page 263).

or

- Briefly pull right gearshift control ② (▷ page 267).
  The transmission shifts into the next higher gear.

Upshift indicator

In manual program mode **M**, the upshift indicator in the multifunction display advises you to upshift before the engine reaches the overspeed range. Thus you can drive at the maximum engine speed for each gear without overrevving the engine.



The white segments ① and the yellow segment ② come on in succession from left to right.

The optimal moment to upshift is reached when the red segments ③ come on and the message up appears in the multifunction display:

- ▶ Shift the transmission from current gear into the next higher gear.
  The fuel supply will otherwise be interrupted to prevent the engine from overrevving.

Downshifting

⚠ Warning!

On slippery road surfaces, never downshift in order to obtain braking action. This could result in drive wheel slip and reduced vehicle control. Your vehicle's ABS will not prevent this type of loss of control.

- ▶ Move the gear selector lever forward briefly (▷ page 263).

or

- ▶ Briefly pull left gearshift control ① (▷ page 267).
  The transmission shifts into the next lower gear.

ℹ When you brake or stop, the transmission shifts down into a gear from which you can easily accelerate or take off.

Kickdown

Using the kickdown while driving in manual program mode **M** is not possible.

Deactivating manual shift program

- ▶ Turn the program mode selector dial until C or S appears in the multifunction display.

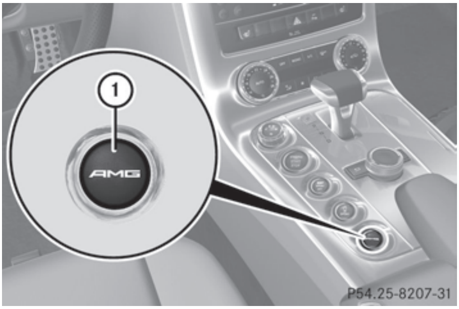
or

- ▶ Restart the engine.
  The transmission will go to automatic program mode **C**.

Manual program mode **M** is not stored.

AMG button (SETUP)

You can select a preset driving program (SETUP) and store it using the AMG button.



- ▶ **Storing:** Press and hold AMG button ① until an acoustic signal sounds.
- ▶ **Selecting:** Press AMG button ①.
  The selected driving program is selected.
- ▶ **Displaying:** Press AMG button ① briefly.
  In the multifunction display, the SETUP appears in the AMG menu (▷ page 288).

Emergency operation (limp-home mode)

If vehicle acceleration becomes less responsive or sluggish or the transmission no longer shifts, the transmission is most likely operating in limp-home (emergency operation) mode. In this mode only second gear and reverse gear **R** can be selected.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into park position **P**.
- ▶ Turn off the engine.
- ▶ Wait at least 10 seconds before restarting.
- ▶ Restart the engine.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into drive position **D** (for second gear) or reverse gear **R**.
- ▶ Have the transmission checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

Instrument cluster

Introduction

For a full view illustration of the instrument cluster, see “Instrument cluster” (▷ page 34).

⚠ **Warning!**

No messages will be displayed if either the instrument cluster or the multifunction display is inoperative.

As a result, you will not be able to see information about your driving conditions, such as

- speed
- outside temperature
- warning/indicator lamps
- malfunction/warning messages
- failure of any systems

Driving characteristics may be impaired.

If you must continue to drive, do so with added caution. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

The language setting for the multifunction display can be changed via COMAND system (▷ page 99).

Activating the instrument cluster

The instrument cluster is activated when you

- open the driver’s door
- switch on the ignition
- switch on the exterior lamps

Engine oil temperature gauge

The engine oil temperature gauge is located in the instrument cluster. The engine oil temperature may rise up to 140℃ under normal driving conditions.

! The engine should not be operated with the engine oil temperature above 140℃. Doing so may cause serious damage which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

The temperature of the transmission fluid and coolant are displayed in the AMG menu (▷ page 287).

Tachometer

The red marking on the tachometer (▷ page 34) denotes excessive engine speed.

! Avoid driving at excessive engine speeds, as it may result in serious engine damage that is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

To help protect the engine, the fuel supply is interrupted if the engine is operated within the red marking.

Outside temperature indicator

The outside temperature indicator is displayed in the multifunction display (▷ page 273).

⚠ **Warning!**

The outside temperature indicator is not designed to serve as an ice-warning device and is therefore unsuitable for that purpose.

Indicated temperatures just above the freezing point do not guarantee that the road surface is free of ice. The road may still be icy, especially in wooded areas or on bridges.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge is on the left-hand side of the instrument cluster (▷ page 34). Once the fuel level has fallen below the reserve mark, the yellow fuel tank reserve warning lamp ⛽ for the fuel reserve comes on.

Control system

Introduction

The control system is activated as soon as the starter switch is in position **2**.

The control system enables you to call up information about your vehicle and to change vehicle settings.

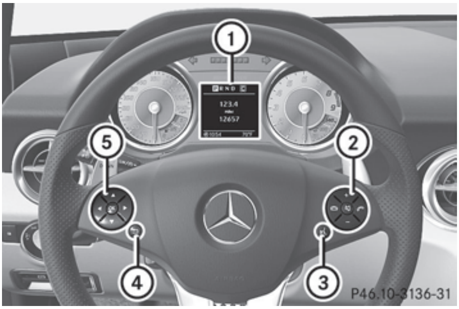
For example, you can use the control system to find out when your vehicle is next due for maintenance service, to call up statistical data on your vehicle, and much more.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> A driver's attention to the road and traffic conditions must always be his/her primary focus when driving.
>
> For your safety and the safety of others, selecting features through the multifunction steering wheel should only be done by the driver when traffic and road conditions permit it to be done safely.
>
> Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

The control system relays information to the multifunction display.

Multifunction steering wheel

The displays in the multifunction display and the settings in the control system are controlled by using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.



①	Multifunction display	
②	Press button	
	☎	to end a call to reject an incoming call
	☎	to answer a call to dial[9] to redial[9]
	🔇	to mute
	Press button	
	+ −	to set the volume to operate the RACETIMER
③	Press button	
	🗣	to activate the Voice Control System
④	Press button briefly	
	↩	to cancel the Voice Control System to go back to confirm messages
	Press and hold button	
	↩	to select the standard display
⑤	Press button	
	▶ ◀	to call up line for menus and to select menus

---

[9] Function only available in telephone menu.

Press button briefly	
▲ ▼	to select submenu or scroll through lists within Audio menu to select previous or next track, scene or stored station within Tel menu to switch to the phone book and select a name or number
Press and hold button	
▲ ▼	within Audio menu to select a track or scene with quick search or to select previous or next station in station list or wave band within Tel menu to start the quick search in the phone book
Press button	
OK	to confirm selection or messages

Depending on the selected menu, pressing the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel will alter what appears in the multifunction display.

The information available in the multifunction display is arranged in menus and accompanying functions and submenus.

The individual functions are then found within the relevant menu (radio or CD operations under Audio, for example). These functions serve to call up relevant information or to customize the settings for your vehicle.

It is helpful to think of the menus, and the functions within each menu, as being arranged in a circular pattern.

In the Settings menu, instead of functions, you will find a number of submenus for calling up and changing settings. For instructions on using these submenus, see “Settings menu” (▷ page 282).

The number of menus available in the system depends on which optional equipment is installed in your vehicle.

Using the control system

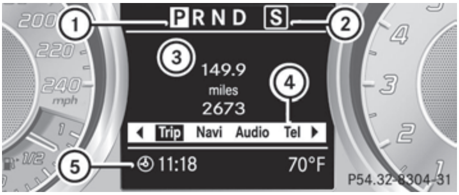
- **To select a menu:** Press button ◀ or ▶.
- **To select a submenu:** Press button ▼ or ▲.
- **To go to the next higher menu level:** Press button ↩.
- **To select the standard display:** Press button ↩ repeatedly until the standard display featuring the odometer and speedometer appears.

or

- Press and hold button ↩ until the standard display featuring the trip odometer and the main odometer appears.
- **To confirm selection:** Press button OK.
- **To confirm display message:** Press button OK or ↩.
  The control system saves certain display messages. Calling up display messages (▷ page 282).

For information about warning and malfunction messages appearing in the multifunction display (▷ page 364).

Multifunction display



① Transmission position/gear range indicator

② Transmission program mode indicator

③ Text field

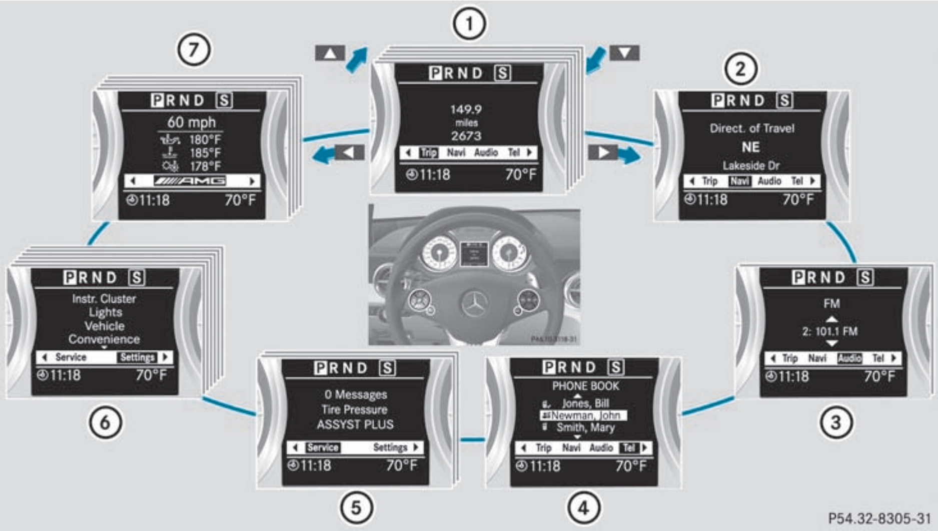
④ Line for main menus

⑤ Digital clock/outside temperature indicator

Settings, functions, submenus as well as any malfunctions appear in the text field.

For more information on menus displayed in the multifunction display, see “Menus and submenus” (▷ page 275).

Menus and submenus


①
PRND S
149.9
miles
2673
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18 70°F
②
PRND S
Direct. of Travel
NE
Lakeside Dr
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18 70°F
③
PRND S
FM
2: 101.1 FM
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18 70°F
④
PRND S
PHONE BOOK
Jones, Bill
Newman, John
Smith, Mary
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18 70°F
⑤
PRND S
0 Messages
Tire Pressure
ASSYST PLUS
Service Settings
11:18 70°F
⑥
PRND S
Instr. Cluster
Lights
Vehicle
Convenience
Service Settings
11:18 70°F
⑦
PRND S
60 mph
180°F
185°F
178°F
AMG
11:18 70°F
P54.32-8305-31

	Function
①	**Trip** menu (▷ page 275)
②	**Navi** menu (▷ page 277)
③	**Audio** menu (▷ page 168)
④	**Tel** menu (▷ page 280)
⑤	**Service** menu (▷ page 281)
⑥	**Settings** menu (▷ page 282)
⑦	**AMG** menu (▷ page 287)

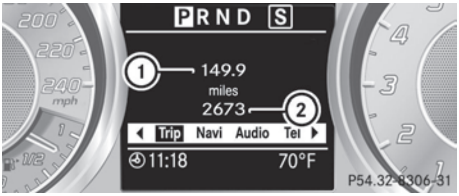
Trip computer menu

In the `Trip` menu, you can show an additional display for the speedometer and call up or reset your vehicle's statistical data.

The following information is available:

- Standard display (▷ page 275)
- Fuel consumption statistics since start (▷ page 276)
- Fuel consumption statistics since last reset (▷ page 276)
- Resetting values (▷ page 276)
- Remaining driving range (▷ page 277)
- Digital Speedometer (▷ page 277)

Standard display


PRND S
①
149.9
miles
2673
②
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18 70°F
P54.32-8306-31

In the standard display, the trip odometer ① and the main odometer ② appear in the multifunction display.

If another display appears instead of the standard display:

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Trip menu.

or

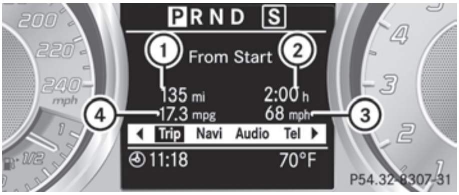
- ▶ Press button ↩ repeatedly until the standard display appears.

or

- ▶ Press and hold button ↩ until the standard display appears.

Fuel consumption statistics since start

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Trip menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select From Start.


P R N D S
①
From Start
②
135 mi
2:00 h
④
17.3 mpg
68 mph
③
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8307-31

① Distance driven since start

② Time elapsed since start

③ Average speed since start

④ Average fuel consumption since start

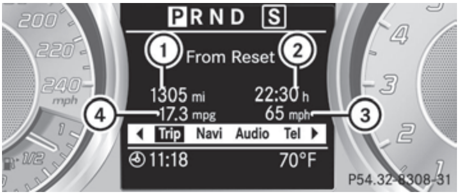
All statistics stored since the last engine start will be reset approximately 4 hours after the ignition is switched off.

Resetting will not occur if you turn the SmartKey back to position **1** or **2** within this time period.

The fuel consumption statistics since start reset automatically to 0 after 9 999 miles or 999 hours, whichever occurs first.

Fuel consumption statistics since last reset

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Trip menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select From Reset.


P R N D S
①
From Reset
②
1305 mi
22:30 h
④
17.3 mpg
65 mph
③
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8308-31

① Distance driven since last reset

② Time elapsed since last reset

③ Average speed since last reset

④ Average fuel consumption since last reset

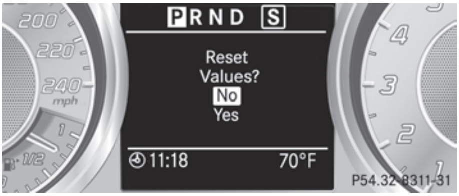
The fuel consumption statistics since last reset automatically to 0 after 99 999 miles or 9 999 hours, whichever occurs first.

Resetting values

You can reset the values for the following functions:

- Trip odometer
- Fuel consumption statistics since start
- Fuel consumption statistics since last reset

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Trip menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the function you wish to reset.
- ▶ Press button OK.


P R N D S
Reset
Values?
No
Yes
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8311-31

Example illustration: Reset fuel consumption statistics since start

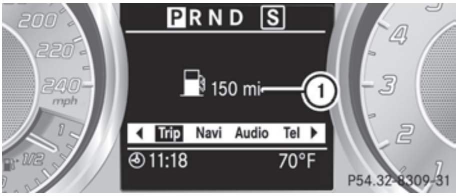
- Press button ▼ to select `Yes`.
- Press button OK to confirm.

Remaining driving range

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Trip` menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the estimated remaining driving range.

  Note that the values are calculated based on the current fuel tank level and the current driving style. Make sure to refuel in time.

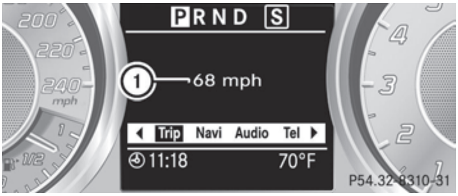
  If only very little fuel is left in the tank, a vehicle at the fuel pump ⛽ appears instead of the estimated remaining driving range.


PRND S
150 mi
1
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8309-31

① Estimated remaining driving range

Digital speedometer

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Trip` menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the digital speedometer.


PRND S
1
68 mph
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8310-31

① Digital speedometer

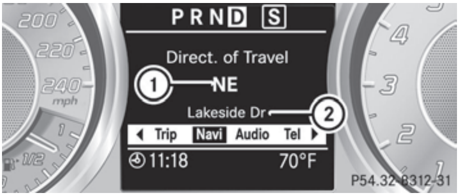
Navi menu

The `Navi` menu contains the functions needed to operate your navigation system.

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Navi` menu.

Route guidance not active

The multifunction display shows the direction of travel and the name of the street you are currently driving on, if known by the navigation system.


PRND S
Direct. of Travel
1
NE
Lakeside Dr
2
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8312-31

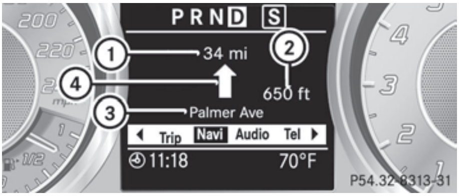
① Direction of travel

② Street you are currently driving on

Route guidance active

The image in the multifunction display depends on whether you are being notified of a driving maneuver.

No notification of driving maneuver


PRND S
1
34 mi
2
4
650 ft
3
Palmer Ave
Trip Navi Audio Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8313-31

Example illustration

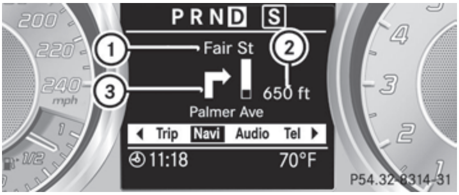
① Distance to destination

② Distance to next driving maneuver

③ Street you are currently driving on

④ Symbol for “follow the course of the road”

Driving maneuver announced without lane advice


P R N D S
1
Fair St
2
3
650 ft
Palmer Ave
Trip
Navi
Audio
Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8314-31

Example illustration

① Street into which the driving maneuver leads

② Distance to driving maneuver and graphical distance representation

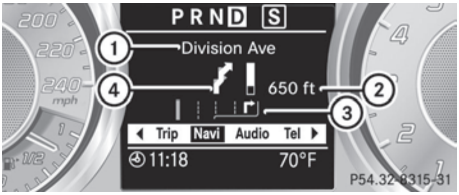
③ Symbol for driving maneuver

When you are being notified of a driving maneuver, you will see a visual distance display next to the driving maneuver symbol ②. The visual distance display is reduced from bottom to top the closer you come to the announced driving maneuver.

Driving maneuver announced with lane advice

Lane advice is displayed only when the respective data are available on the digital map.

When driving on multilane roads or highways, the COMAND system can display lane advice for the next driving maneuver.


P R N D S
1
Division Ave
4
650 ft
2
3
Trip
Navi
Audio
Tel
11:18
70°F
P54.32-8315-31

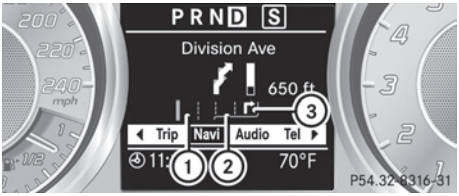
① Road into which the driving maneuver leads

② Distance to driving maneuver and graphical distance representation

③ Lane advice

④ Symbol for driving maneuver

During a driving maneuver additional lanes may become available on the road or highway.


P R N D S
Division Ave
650 ft
3
Trip
Navi
Audio
Tel
11:
1
2
70°F
P54.32-8316-31

① Through lane

② Lane that opened up during the driving maneuver

③ Recommended lane for the driving maneuver

For more information on lane advice, see (▷ page 135).

Navigation status displays in the multifunction display

While route guidance is active, the following messages may be shown in the multifunction display:

- 🏁

  You have reached your destination.
- `Within Destination Area`

  You have arrived in the area of your destination. The message appears, for example, for relatively large POIs.
- `New Route...`

  The COMAND system calculates a new route, e.g. because you have deviated from the calculated route or due to a detour report. Afterward, the COMAND system continues route guidance.
- `Calculating Route`

  The COMAND system is calculating a route. Afterward, the COMAND system starts route guidance.
- `Off Map`

  The vehicle's location is outside of the digital map's range. The vehicle is in an off-map position (▷ page 135).
- `Off Mapped Road`

The vehicle is either on a road that has not been digitized (▷ page 135) or on the side of a road, e.g. in a parking space.

- `No Route`
  The COMAND system cannot calculate a route to the selected destination.
- `Direct. of Dest.`
  The vehicle has gone off the map during route guidance (▷ page 135).

For more information on status displays, see (▷ page 135).

Audio menu

The functions in the `Audio` menu operate the audio equipment which you have currently switched on.

The following functions are available:

- Selecting radio station (▷ page 279)
- Operating audio devices/audio media (▷ page 279)
- Operating video DVD (▷ page 280)

If the COMAND system is currently switched off, the message `Audio Off` appears in the multifunction display.

▶ **To adjust the volume:** Press button + or − on the multifunction steering wheel.

Selecting radio station

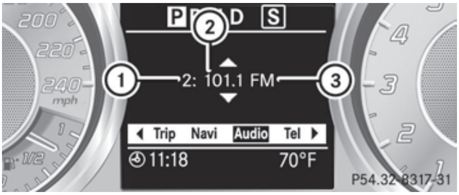
ⓘ The SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio is treated as a radio application.

For more information on SIRIUS XM Satellite Radio, see (▷ page 173).

Additional optional satellite radio equipment and a subscription to a satellite radio service provider are required for satellite radio operation. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for details and availability for your vehicle.

▶ Switch on the COMAND system (▷ page 75) and select radio.

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Audio` menu.
The currently tuned station appears in the multifunction display.



Example illustration

① Stored memory position

② Station frequency

③ Wave band setting

▶ **Selecting next or previous stored station:** Press button ▼ or ▲ briefly to select a stored station.

▶ **Selecting next or previous station in wave band:** Press and hold button ▼ or ▲ to select a station.

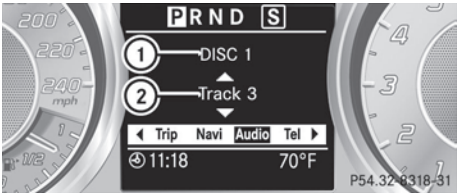
You can only store new stations using the corresponding feature on the radio (▷ page 171).

You can also operate the radio in the usual manner.

Operating audio devices/audio media

▶ Switch on the COMAND system and select the audio device or audio media (▷ page 168).

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Audio` menu. The settings for the currently being played audio device/audio media appear in the multifunction display.



Example illustration

① Disc number

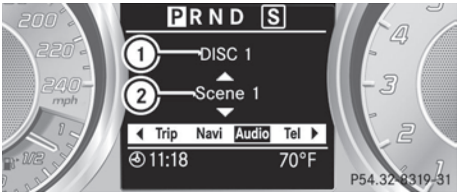
② Current track

- ▶ **Selecting next or previous track:** Press button ▼ or ▲ briefly.
- ▶ **Selecting a track from the track list (quick search):** Press and hold button ▼ or ▲.

The current track does not appear during Audio AUX mode operation.

Operating video DVD

- ▶ Switch on the COMAND system and select DVD Video (▷ page 201).
- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Audio` menu.



① Disc number

② Current scene

- ▶ **Selecting next or previous scene:** Press button ▼ or ▲ briefly.
- ▶ **Selecting a scene from the scene list (quick search):** Press and hold button ▼ or ▲.

Tel menu

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> A driver's attention to the road must always be his/her primary focus when driving. For your safety and the safety of others, we recommend that you pull over to a safe location and stop before placing or taking a telephone call. If you choose to use the telephone while driving, please use the hands-free device and only use the telephone when weather, road and traffic conditions permit.
>
> Some jurisdictions prohibit the driver from using a mobile phone while driving a vehicle.
>
> Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

You can connect your telephone to the COMAND system via Bluetooth® (▷ page 149).

- ▶ Switch on the telephone and the COMAND system (▷ page 75).
- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Tel` menu.

One of the following messages will appear in the multifunction display:

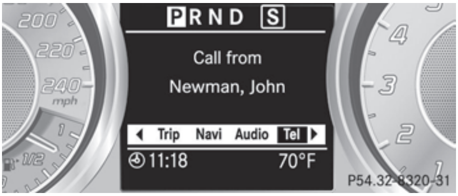
- `No Service`: No network is available.
- `Ready for Bluetooth Telephony...`: The telephone has not been connected to the COMAND system via Bluetooth® yet.

- ▶ Connect the telephone to the COMAND system via Bluetooth®.

- `Phone Ready` or name of the network provider (if available): The telephone has found a network and is ready for use. You can operate it using the control system.

Answering a call

When your telephone is ready to receive calls, you can answer a call at any time. In the multifunction display you will then see the following message:



Example illustration

- ▶ Press button ☎.
  You have answered the call.

The caller's number appears only if it is transmitted.

The caller's name appears only if the number and the name are stored in the phone book.

Ending a call or rejecting an incoming call

- ▶ Press button ☏.

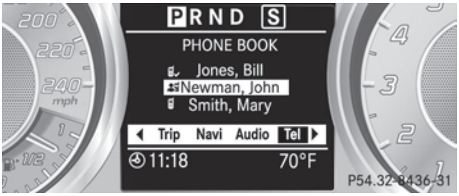
Dialing a number from the phone book

When your telephone is ready to receive calls, you may select and dial a number from the phone book at any time.

ℹ To use the phone book of the COMAND system you can import business cards (vCards) from external Bluetooth® phones into your COMAND system's phone book (▷ page 153).

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Tel` menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ or OK to switch to the phone book.
  The stored names are displayed in ascending alphabetical order.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the desired entry.

  If you press and hold button ▼ or ▲ the system scrolls rapidly through the list of names (quick search). After holding button ▼ or ▲ for a short while the scrolling speed increases. Release the button to stop the quick search. The search stops automatically at the end of the list.



Example illustration

- ▶ If the Symbol ◢ appears on the right-hand side of the name several entries are present for the same name: Press button ☎ or OK and select the desired entry.
- ▶ Press button ☎ or OK.
  The control system dials the selected phone number.

  If the connection is successful and this feature is supported by your network provider, the name of the party (if stored in your phone book) you are calling will appear in the multifunction display.

  The control system stores the dialed number in the redial memory.

or

- ▶ Press button ☏ or ↩ if you do not want to make the call.

Redialing

The control system stores the most recently dialed phone numbers. This eliminates the need to search through your entire phone book.

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Tel` menu.
- ▶ Press button ☎.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the desired number or name.
- ▶ Press button ☎ or OK.
  The control system dials the selected phone number.

Service Menu

In the `Service` menu the following functions are available:

- Vehicle status message memory (▷ page 282)
- Checking tire inflation pressure electronically with the Advanced TPMS (▷ page 329)
- Calling up the maintenance service indicator display (▷ page 353)

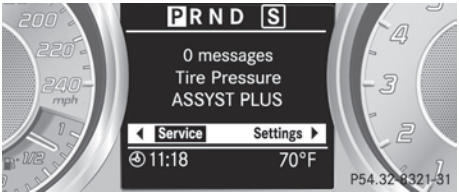
Vehicle status message memory

Use the vehicle status message memory function to scan malfunction and warning messages that may be stored in the system. Such messages appear in the multifunction display and are based on conditions or system status the vehicle's system has recorded.

⚠ Warning!

Malfunction and warning messages are only indicated for certain systems and are intentionally not very detailed. The malfunction and warning messages are simply a reminder with respect to the operation of certain systems. They do not replace the owner's and/or driver's responsibility to maintain the vehicle's operating safety. Have all required maintenance and safety checks performed on the vehicle. Bring the vehicle to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center to address the malfunction and warning messages.

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Service menu.
If conditions have occurred causing status messages to be recorded, the number of messages appears in the multifunction display:



0 messages
Tire Pressure
ASSYST PLUS

▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Messages function.

▶ Press button OK to confirm.
The stored messages will now be displayed in the order in which they have occurred.
For malfunction and warning messages, see "Vehicle status messages in the multifunction display" (▷ page 364).

▶ Use button ▼ or ▲ to scroll through the messages.

If you turn off the engine by pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button and then open the driver's door, all messages will be deleted from the message memory.

Settings menu

Introduction

In the Settings menu there are two functions: The function Factory Setting (▷ page 282), with which you can reset the settings to the original factory settings and a collection of submenus (▷ page 283) with which you can make individual settings for your vehicle.

Resetting to factory settings

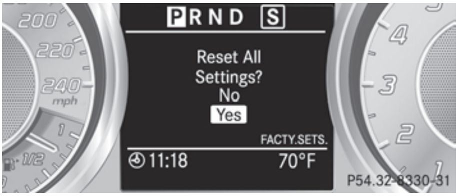
You can reset most of the settings of the submenus to the factory settings.

For safety reasons, the function Daytime Running Lights in the Lights submenu cannot be reset while driving.

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.

▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Factory Setting function.

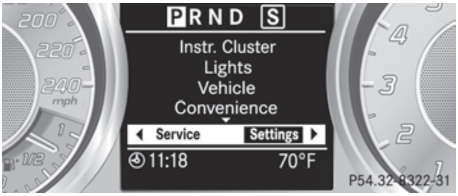
▶ Press button OK.
The function Reset All Settings? appears in the multifunction display.



- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select Yes or No. Select Yes if you want to reset to factory settings.
- ▶ Press button OK to confirm.
  The confirmation message appears in the multifunction display.

Submenus in the Settings menu

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.



- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select a submenu.
- ▶ Scroll down with button ▼, scroll up with button ▲.

With the selection marker on the desired submenu, use the button OK to access the individual functions within that submenu. Once within the submenu, you can use button ▲ to move to the next function or button ▼ to move to the previous function within that submenu.

The following lists show what settings can be changed within the various menus. Detailed instructions on making individual settings can be found on the following pages.

Instrument cluster submenu

- Selecting speedometer display mode (▷ page 283)
- Permanent display (speed display or outside temperature) (▷ page 283)

Lights submenu

- Switching daytime running lamp mode on or off (USA only) (▷ page 284)
- Adjusting illumination brightness for display and switches (▷ page 285)
- Switching locator lighting on or off (▷ page 285)
- Switching interior lighting delayed shut-off on or off (▷ page 286)

Vehicle submenu

- Switching acoustic lock feedback on or off (▷ page 286)

Convenience submenu

- Activating easy-entry/exit feature (▷ page 245)
- Switching fold-in function for exterior rear view mirrors on or off (▷ page 287)

Instrument cluster submenu

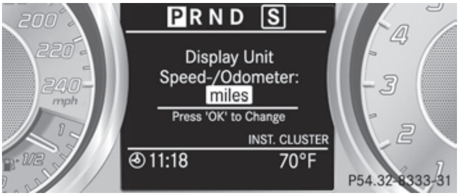
Access the Instr. Cluster submenu via the Settings menu. Use the Instr. Cluster submenu to change the instrument cluster display settings.

The following functions are available:

- Selecting speedometer display mode (▷ page 283)
- Permanent display (speed display or outside temperature) (▷ page 284)

Selecting speedometer display mode

- ▶ Press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Instr. Cluster submenu.
- ▶ Press button OK.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Display Unit Speed-/Odometer: function.
  The current setting is shown.


Display Unit Speed-/Odometer: miles

- ▶ Press button OK to change the setting. Depending on the previous setting the Display Unit Speed-/Odometer: will be set to miles or km.

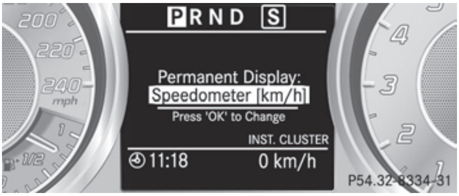
The selected display unit is valid for:

- Odometer and trip odometer
- Trip computer
- Digital speedometer in the trip menu
- Digital speedometer in the AMG menu
- Cruise control
- Navigation displays

Permanent display

You can use the Permanent Display: function to choose to display either the outside temperature or the speed in kilometers (USA) or miles (Canada) permanently.

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Instr. Cluster submenu.
- ▶ Press button OK.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Permanent Display: function.
  The current setting is shown.


Permanent Display: Speedometer [km/h]

- ▶ Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the Permanent Display: will be switched between Outside Temperature or Speedometer (km/h) (USA)/ Speedometer (miles) (Canada).

Lights submenu

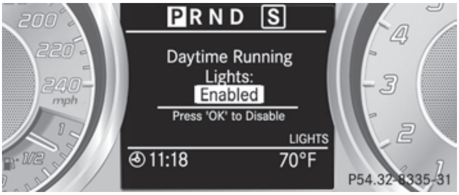
Access the Lights submenu via the Settings menu. Use the Lights submenu to change the lamp and lighting settings on your vehicle.

The following functions are available:

- Switching daytime running lamp mode on or off (USA only) (▷ page 284)
- Adjusting illumination brightness for display and switches (▷ page 285)
- Switching locator lighting function on or off (▷ page 285)
- Switching interior lighting delayed shut-off on or off (▷ page 286)

Switching daytime running lamp mode on or off (USA only)

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Lights submenu.
- ▶ Press button OK.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Daytime Running Lights: function.
  The current setting Enabled or Disabled is shown.


Daytime Running Lights: Enabled

- ▶ Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the Daytime Running Lights: mode will be Enabled or Disabled.

With Daytime Running Lights: mode enabled and the exterior lamp switch at position 0 or A, the daytime running lamps are switched on when the engine is running.

In low ambient light conditions the following lamps will come on additionally:

- Low-beam headlamps
- Parking lamps
- Tail lamps
- License plate lamps
- Side marker lamps

For more information on the daytime running lamp mode, see (▷ page 251).

ℹ Make sure the exterior lamp switch is set to ≣D or A when you switch off the daytime running lamps while driving at night.

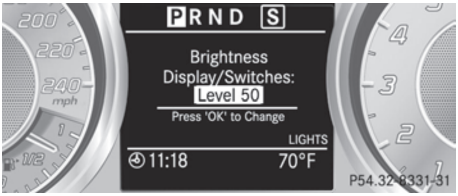
For safety reasons, resetting all the functions of all submenus to the factory settings while driving (▷ page 282) will not deactivate the daytime running lamp mode.

The following message appears in the multifunction display:
`Cannot Be Completely Reset to Factory Settings while Driving.`.

Adjusting illumination brightness for display and switches

Use this function to adjust the brightness of the multifunction display and switches.

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Settings` menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the `Lights` submenu.
- ▶ Press button OK.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to set the `Brightness Display/Switches:`.



Brightness Display/Switches:
Level 50
Press 'OK' to Change

The setting `Level 10` represents the darkest level and setting `Level 100` the brightest level. The brightness is switched off at setting `Level 0`.

Switching locator lighting on or off

With the `Locator Lighting:` function activated and the exterior lamp switch in position A

- the exterior lamps will come on during darkness when the vehicle is unlocked with the SmartKey.

  The lamps will go out when the driver's door is opened.

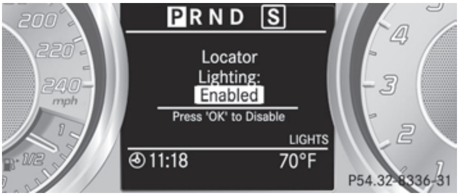
  If you do not open the driver's door after unlocking the vehicle with the SmartKey, the lamps will go out automatically after approximately 40 seconds.
- the exterior lamps will remain on for 15 seconds during darkness after exiting the vehicle and closing all doors.

  If, after turning off the engine, you do not open or close a door, the lamps will automatically go out after 60 seconds.

The following lamps will come on

- Parking lamps
- Tail lamps
- License plate lamps
- Side marker lamps

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the `Settings` menu.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the `Lights` submenu.
- ▶ Press button OK.
- ▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the `Locator Lighting:` function.
  The current setting `Enabled` or `Disabled` is shown.



Locator Lighting:
Enabled
Press 'OK' to Disable

- Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the Locator Lighting: function will be Enabled or Disabled.

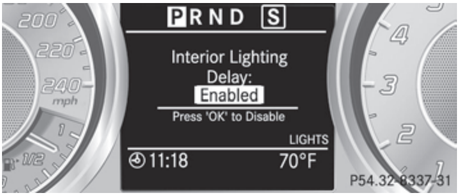
You can temporarily deactivate the headlamps delayed shut-off feature:

- Before exiting the vehicle, set the starter switch to position **0** using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.
- Set the starter switch to position **2** and back to position **0** using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.
  The headlamps delayed shut-off feature is deactivated. It will reactivate as soon as you start the engine.

Switching interior lighting delayed shut-off on or off

Use this function to set whether you would like the interior lighting to remain on for 10 seconds during darkness after you have set the starter switch to position **0** using the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button.

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Lights submenu.
- Press button OK.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Interior Lighting Delay: function.
  The current setting Enabled or Disabled is shown.



PRND S

Interior Lighting Delay:
Enabled
Press 'OK' to Disable

LIGHTS

11:18 70°F

- Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the interior lighting delayed shut-off feature will be Enabled or Disabled.

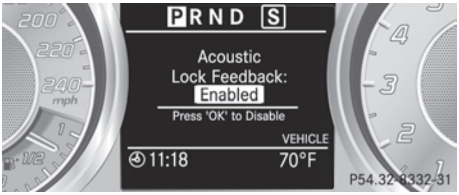
Vehicle submenu

Access the Vehicle submenu via the Settings menu. Use the Vehicle submenu to switch the acoustic lock feedback on or off.

Switching acoustic lock feedback on or off

Use this function to determine whether an acoustic signal sounds when you lock or unlock the vehicle.

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Vehicle submenu.
- Press button OK.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Acoustic Lock Feedback: function.
  The current setting Enabled or Disabled is shown.



PRND S

Acoustic Lock Feedback:
Enabled
Press 'OK' to Disable

VEHICLE

11:18 70°F

- Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the Acoustic Lock Feedback: function will be Enabled or Disabled.

Convenience submenu

Access the Convenience submenu via the Settings menu. Use the Convenience submenu to activate the easy-entry/exit feature (▷ page 286).

Activating easy-entry/exit feature

Use this function to activate and deactivate the easy-entry/exit feature (▷ page 245).

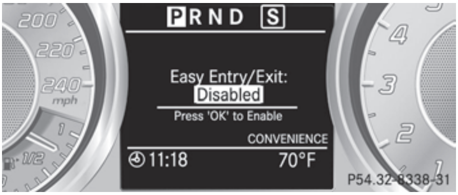
⚠ **Warning!**

You must make sure no one can become trapped or injured by the moving steering wheel when the easy-entry/exit feature is activated.

To stop steering wheel movement, move steering wheel adjustment stalk or press one of the memory position buttons.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Children could open the driver's door and unintentionally activate the easy-entry/exit feature, which could result in an accident and/or serious personal injury.

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Convenience submenu.
- Press button OK.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Easy Entry/Exit: function.
  The current setting Enabled or Disabled is shown.


PRND S

Easy Entry/Exit:
Disabled
Press 'OK' to Enable
CONVENIENCE
11:18 70°F

- Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the Easy Entry/Exit: feature will be Enabled or Disabled.

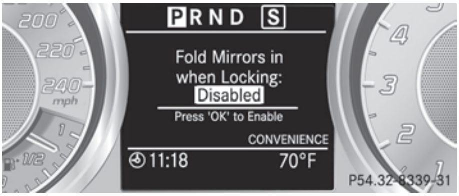
Switching fold-in function for exterior rear view mirrors on or off

Use this function to set the exterior rear view mirrors to be folded in automatically when you lock your vehicle.

With this function set to Enabled and the exterior rear view mirrors folded in using the button on the door control panel (▷ page 248), the exterior rear view mirrors will not fold out when you switch on the ignition. You will then have to fold out the exterior rear view mirrors using the button on the door control panel (▷ page 248).

Make sure both exterior rear view mirrors are folded out completely before driving off.

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings menu.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Convenience submenu.
- Press OK.
- Press button ▼ or ▲ to select the Fold Mirrors in when Locking: function.
  The current setting Enabled or Disabled is shown.

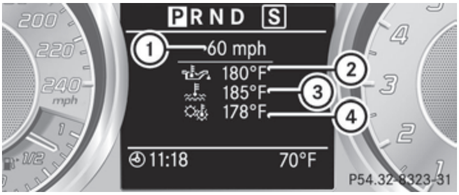

PRND S

Fold Mirrors in
when Locking:
Disabled
Press 'OK' to Enable
CONVENIENCE
11:18 70°F

- Press button OK to change the current status.
  Depending on the previous status, the automatic fold-in function for exterior rear view mirrors will be Enabled or Disabled.

AMG menu

- Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the AMG menu.



① Digital speedometer
② Engine oil temperature indicator
③ Coolant temperature indicator
④ Transmission fluid temperature indicator

The engine oil temperature flashes if the engine oil temperature has not yet reached

176℉ (80℃). During this time, avoid driving at full engine speed.

Use buttons ▼ or ▲ to select the following functions in the AMG menu:

- SETUP (▷ page 288)
- RACETIMER (▷ page 288)
- Overall analysis (▷ page 289)
- Lap analysis (▷ page 289)

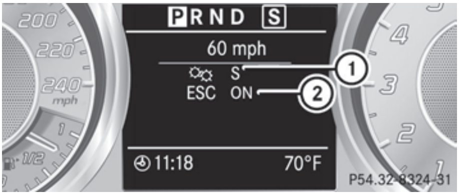
SETUP

SETUP indicates the current driving program mode and the ESC mode.

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the AMG menu.
- ▶ Press button ▲ to select SETUP.

or

- ▶ Tap the AMG button on the center console (▷ page 270).



① Transmission program mode indicator
② ESC mode indicator

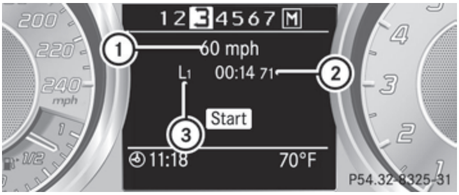
RACETIMER

⚠ **Warning!**

The RACETIMER feature is only for use on roads and in conditions where high speed driving is permitted. Racing on public roads is prohibited under all circumstances. The driver is and must always remain responsible for following posted speed limits.

The RACETIMER allows you to time and save driving stretches.

- ▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ to select the AMG menu.
- ▶ Press button ▲ repeatedly until the RACETIMER appears in the multifunction display.



① Digital tachometer
② RACETIMER
③ Lap number

You can start the RACETIMER when the engine is running or the starter switch is in position **2** (▷ page 241).

While the RACETIMER is being displayed, you cannot adjust the audio volume using buttons + or –.

- ▶ **Starting:** Press button +.
- ▶ **Displaying intermediate time:** Press button – while the timer is running. The intermediate time is shown for 5 seconds.
- ▶ **Stopping:** Press button +.

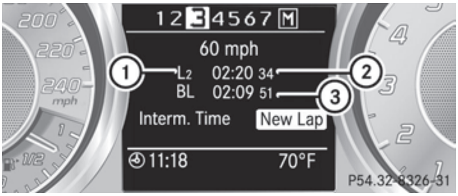
When you stop the vehicle and turn off the engine and do not open the driver’s door, the RACETIMER stops timing. Timing is resumed when you press button + after switching the ignition back on or restarting the engine.

Saving lap time and starting a new lap

You can save up to 16 laps.

- ▶ Press button – while the timer is running.
  The intermediate time will be shown for 5 seconds.
- ▶ Press button – within 5 seconds.
  The intermediate time shown will be saved as a lap time.

The RACETIMER begins timing the new lap. The new lap begins to be timed as soon as the intermediate time is called up.


1 2 3 4 5 6 7 M
60 mph
L2 02:20 34
BL 02:09 51
Interm. Time
New Lap
11:18
70°F
200
220
240
mph
1/2
4
3
2
①
②
③
P54.32-8326-31

① RACETIMER
② Best lap time
③ Lap number

Resetting current lap

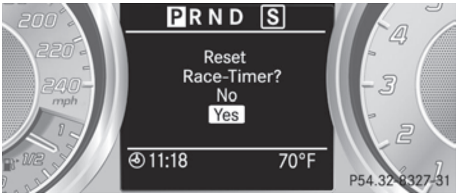
- ▶ Press button [+] while the timer is running.
  The timer stops.
- ▶ Press button [–].
  The lap time is reset to “0”.

Deleting all laps

It is not possible to delete a single saved lap.

When you turn off the engine, the RACETIMER will be reset to “0” after 30 seconds. All laps are deleted.

- ▶ Press button [+] while the timer is running.
  The timer stops.
- ▶ Press button [OK].
  The reset menu appears in the multifunction display.

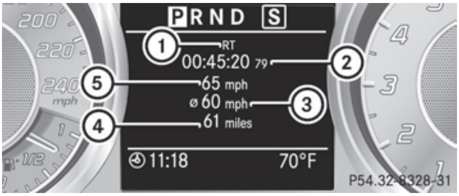

P R N D S
Reset
Race-Timer?
No
Yes
11:18
70°F
200
220
240
mph
1/2
4
3
2
P54.32-8327-31

- ▶ Press button [▼] to select `Yes` and confirm with button [OK].
  The saved laps are deleted.

Overall analysis

This function is only available if you have saved at least one lap and have stopped the RACETIMER.

- ▶ Press button [◀] or [▶] to select the `AMG` menu.
- ▶ Press button [▲] repeatedly until the overall analysis appears in the multifunction display.


P R N D S
RT
00:45:20 79
65 mph
ø 60 mph
61 miles
11:18
70°F
200
220
240
mph
1/2
4
3
2
①
②
③
④
⑤
P54.32-8328-31

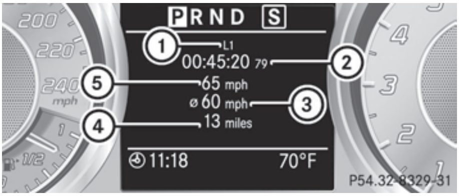
① Overall analysis of RACETIMER
② Overall driving time
③ Average speed
④ Overall distance driven
⑤ Maximum speed

Lap analysis

This function is only available if you have saved at least two laps and have stopped the RACETIMER.

- ▶ Press button [◀] or [▶] to select the `AMG` menu.
- ▶ Press button [▲] repeatedly until the lap analysis appears in the multifunction display.

Each lap is shown in its own submenu. The fastest lap is indicated by flashing symbol ①.


P R N D S
L1
00:45:20 79
65 mph
ø 60 mph
13 miles
11:18
70°F
200
220
240
mph
1/2
4
3
2
①
②
③
④
⑤
P54.32-8329-31

① Lap number
② Lap time

③ Average speed during lap
④ Lap length
⑤ Maximum speed during lap

▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to see other lap analyses.

Driving systems

Introduction

This section describes the following driving systems of your vehicle:

- Cruise control
- RACE START
- Hill-start assist system
- Parktronic system
- Rear view camera

The driving safety systems ABS, Adaptive Brake, BAS, EBP, ESC and Trunk Wing are described in the “Safety and security” section (▷ page 61).

Cruise control

The cruise control maintains the speed you set for your vehicle automatically.

The use of the cruise control is recommended for driving at a constant speed for extended periods of time.

The currently set speed or last set speed (“Resume” function) appears in the multifunction display for approximately 5 seconds.

⚠ **Warning!**

The cruise control is a convenience system designed to assist the driver during vehicle operation. The driver is and must always remain responsible for the vehicle’s speed and for safe brake operation.

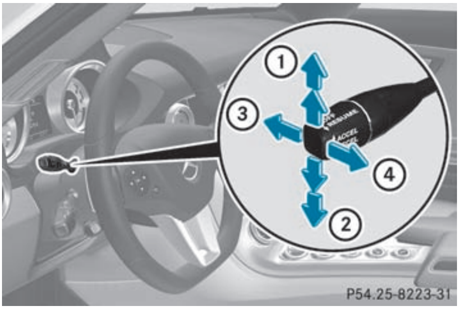
Only use the cruise control if the road, traffic, and weather conditions make it advisable to travel at a constant speed.

- The use of the cruise control can be dangerous on winding roads or in heavy traffic because conditions do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.
- The use of the cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. Rapid changes in tire traction can result in wheel spin and loss of control.
- Deactivate the cruise control when driving in fog.

The “Resume” function should only be operated if the driver is fully aware of the previously set speed and wishes to resume this particular preset speed.

⚠ **Warning!**

The cruise control brakes automatically so that the set speed is not exceeded.



① Setting current or higher speed
② Setting current or lower speed
③ Canceling the cruise control
④ Activating the cruise control or resuming to last set speed

Activating cruise control

You can activate the cruise control at a vehicle speed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

You cannot activate the cruise control

- when you brake
- when you have engaged the electronic parking brake

- when the transmission is in park position **P**, reverse gear **R**, or neutral position **N**
- the ESC is switched off or has switched off due to a malfunction

The vehicle speed displayed in the speedometer can briefly vary from the speed setting for the cruise control system.

Setting current speed

▶ Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed.

▶ Briefly lift the cruise control lever in direction of arrow ① or press in direction of arrow ②.

▶ Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

ℹ On uphill grades, the cruise control may not be able to maintain the set speed. Once the grade eases, the set speed will be resumed.

On downhill grades, the cruise control maintains the set speed by braking with the vehicle's brake system. In addition, on longer downhill grades the transmission will downshift automatically.

Canceling cruise control

▶ Depress the brake pedal.

or

▶ Briefly push the cruise control lever in direction of arrow ③.
The last set speed is stored for later use.

The last stored speed is deleted from memory when the engine is turned off.

The cruise control switches off automatically when you depress the brake pedal or you engage the electronic parking brake.

The cruise control also switches off automatically when

- the vehicle speed falls below 20 mph (30 km/h)
- the ESC is in operation
- the ESC is switched off with the ESC switch
- the ESC has switched off due to a malfunction
- you shift the transmission into neutral position **N** while driving

An acoustic warning will sound. Observe additional messages in the multifunction display that may appear.

Depressing the accelerator pedal does not deactivate the cruise control. After a brief acceleration (e.g. for passing), the cruise control will resume the last set speed.

Changing the set speed

⚠ **Warning!**

Keep in mind that it may take a brief moment until the vehicle has made the necessary adjustments.

Increase or decrease the set vehicle speed to a value that the prevailing road conditions and legal speed limits permit. Otherwise, sudden and unexpected acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle could cause an accident and/or serious injury to you and others.

You can increase or decrease the set speed in 1 mph (Canada: 1 km/h) increments or in 5 mph (Canada: 10 km/h) increments.

When you use the cruise control lever to decelerate, the brake system will brake the vehicle automatically if the engine's braking power does not brake the vehicle sufficiently.

▶ **Increasing:** Lift the cruise control lever in direction of arrow ① and hold it up until the desired speed is reached.

▶ **Decreasing:** Press the cruise control lever in direction of arrow ② and hold it down until the desired speed is reached.

▶ Release the cruise control lever.
The new speed is set and the vehicle will accelerate or decelerate.

Adjustment in 1 mph (Canada: 1 km/h) increments

ℹ The set speed value is increased or decreased in 1 mph (Canada: 1 km/h) increments each time you lift or press the cruise control lever up or down to the resistance point.

- ▶ **Increasing:** Briefly lift the cruise control lever up to the resistance point in direction of arrow ①.
- ▶ **Decreasing:** Briefly press the cruise control lever down to the resistance point in direction of arrow ②.
- ▶ Release the cruise control lever.
  The new speed is set and the vehicle will accelerate or decelerate.

Adjustment in 5 mph (Canada: 10 km/h) increments

ⓘ The set speed value is increased or decreased in 5 mph (Canada: 10 km/h) increments each time you lift or press the cruise control lever up or down past the resistance point.

- ▶ **Increasing:** Briefly lift the cruise control lever up past the resistance point in direction of arrow ①.
- ▶ **Decreasing:** Briefly press the cruise control lever down past the resistance point in direction of arrow ②.
- ▶ Release the cruise control lever.
  The new speed is set and the vehicle will accelerate or decelerate. Keep in mind that it may take a brief moment until the vehicle has reached the set speed.

Setting stored speed (Resume function)

⚠ **Warning!**

The set speed stored in memory should only be set again if prevailing road conditions and legal speed limits permit. Possible acceleration or deceleration differences arising from returning to the preset speed could cause an accident and/or serious injury to you and others.

- ▶ Briefly pull the cruise control lever in direction of arrow ④.
  If no speed is stored, the current speed is set and stored.
- ▶ Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

The last stored speed is deleted from memory when the engine is turned off.

RACE START

RACE START enables optimum acceleration from a standing start with suitable high-grip road surface conditions.

⚠ **Warning!**

RACE START is only available when ESC SPORT is activated. ESC SPORT only stabilizes the vehicle to a certain extent if it is swerving or the wheels are spinning.

RACE START may only be used on closed roads. Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit the current road and weather conditions.

Conditions for activation

RACE START can be activated when

- the doors are closed
- the trunk is closed
- the hood is closed
- the engine is running and the transmission and the engine have reached their operating temperature. The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature indicator in the multifunction display stops flashing.
- ESC SPORT is switched on (▷ page 62)
- the multifunction steering wheel is in the straight-ahead position
- the vehicle is standing still and the brake pedal is depressed (left foot)
- the transmission is in drive position **D**

Activating RACE START

- Depress the brake pedal with your left foot and keep it depressed.
- Turn the program mode selector dial clockwise (▷ page 267) until the **RS** lamp on the dial comes on.
  The message RACE START Confirm: Paddle UP Cancel: Paddle DOWN appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ When the activation conditions are not fulfilled anymore, RACE START is canceled. The message RACE START Canceled appears in the multifunction display.

- To cancel: Pull left steering wheel gearshift control (▷ page 267).

or

- To confirm: Pull right steering wheel gearshift control (▷ page 267).
  The message RACE START Available Depress gas pedal. appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ If you do not depress the accelerator pedal within a few seconds, RACE START is canceled. The message RACE START Not Possible See Operator's Manual appears in the multifunction display.

- Depress the accelerator pedal fully.
  The engine speed increases.

  The message RACE START Release brake to start appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ If you do not release the brake pedal within a few seconds, RACE START is canceled. The message RACE START Canceled appears in the multifunction display.

- Take your foot off the brake pedal while keeping the accelerator pedal depressed.
  The vehicle pulls away at maximum acceleration.

  The message RACE START Active appears in the multifunction display.

RACE START deactivates at a vehicle speed of approximately 30 mph (Canada: 50 km/h). The transmission switches to program mode **S+**. ESC SPORT remains switched on.

RACE START is canceled immediately if you release the accelerator pedal while RACE START is active or when the activation conditions are not fulfilled anymore. The message RACE START Not Possible See Operator's Manual appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ If RACE START is used repeatedly in a short period of time, it is only available again after having driven the vehicle a certain distance.

Hill-start assist system

On uphill grades, the hill-start assist system maintains the pressure in the brake system for approximately 1 second after you have released the brake pedal. Therefore, you can start off smoothly without the vehicle moving immediately after releasing the brake pedal.

⚠ **Warning!**

The hill-start assist system is not designed to function as a parking brake. It does not prevent the vehicle from moving when parked on an incline.

Always engage the electronic parking brake in addition to shifting the transmission into park position **P**.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Shift the transmission into drive position **D** or reverse gear **R**.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Carefully depress the accelerator pedal.

The hill-start assist system is inactive

- when starting off on a level road or downhill grades
- with the transmission in neutral position **N**
- with the electronic parking brake engaged
- if the ESC has switched off due to a malfunction

Parktronic system

The Parktronic system is an electronic parking aid with ultrasonic sensors designed to assist the driver during parking maneuvers. The Parktronic system indicates the relative distance between the vehicle and an obstacle visually and audibly.

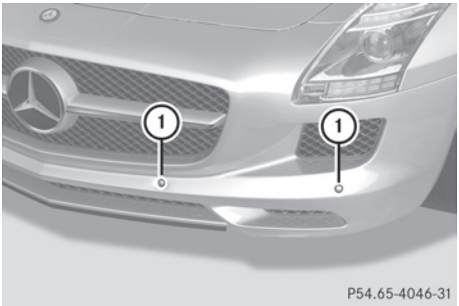
The Parktronic system is activated automatically when

- you switch on the ignition
  and
- you release the electronic parking brake
  or
- you start the engine
  and
- shift the transmission into drive position **D**, reverse gear **R**, or neutral position **N**

The Parktronic system deactivates at speeds above approximately 11 mph (18 km/h). At lower speeds, the Parktronic system activates again.

The Parktronic system also deactivates when you shift the transmission into park position **P** or engage the electronic parking brake and turn off the engine.

The Parktronic system monitors the surroundings of your vehicle with four sensors in the front bumper and four sensors in the rear bumper.



Example illustration, sensors in the front bumper

To function properly, sensors ① must be free of dirt, ice, snow and slush. Clean sensors ① regularly. Be careful not to scratch or damage sensors ①, see “Cleaning the Parktronic system sensors” (▷ page 357).

⚠ **Warning!**

The Parktronic is a supplemental system. It is not intended to, nor does it replace, the need for extreme care. The responsibility during parking and other critical maneuvers always remains with the driver.

⚠ **Warning!**

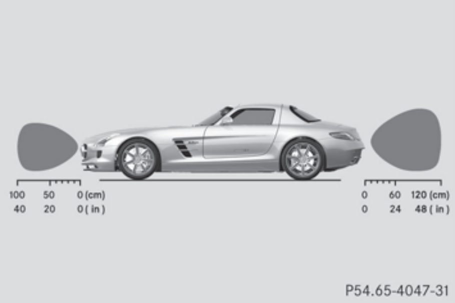
Make sure no persons or animals are in or near the area in which you are parking/ maneuvering. Otherwise, they could be injured.

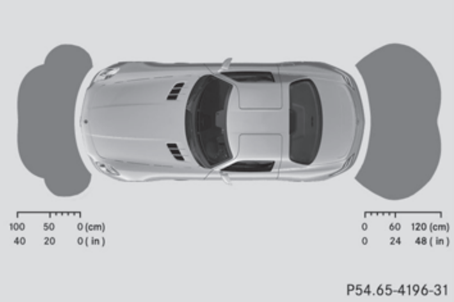
! Special attention must be paid to objects with smooth surfaces or low silhouettes (e.g. trailer couplings, painted posts, elevated crossbars or road curbs). Such objects may not be detected by the system and can damage the vehicle.

During parking maneuvers, pay special attention to objects located above or below the height of the sensors (e.g. street curbs, painted posts, or trailer hitches etc.). The Parktronic system will not detect such objects at close range and damage to your vehicle or the object may result.

! Ultrasonic signals from outside sources (e.g. truck air brakes, car wash, or jackhammers) may impair the operation of the Parktronic system.

Range of the sensors





Front sensors

Center	approx. 40 in (100 cm)
Corners	approx. 24 in (60 cm)

Rear sensors

Center	approx. 48 in (120 cm)
Corners	approx. 32 in (80 cm)

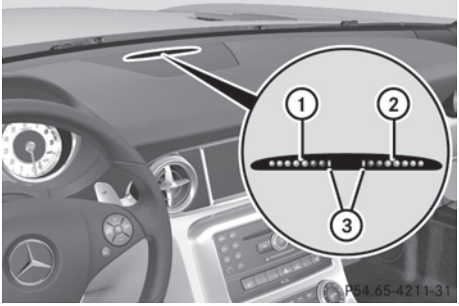
Minimum distance

Center	approx. 12 in (30 cm)
Corners	approx. 12 in (30 cm)

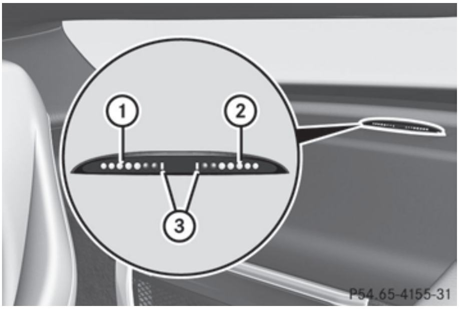
If the Parktronic system detects an obstacle in this range, all the distance warning segments illuminate and you hear a warning signal. If the obstacle is closer than the minimum distance, the actual distance may no longer be indicated by the Parktronic system.

Warning indicators

Visual signals indicate the relative distance between the sensors and an obstacle.



Front area warning indicators



Rear area warning indicators

Each warning indicator is divided into five yellow and two red distance segments for left side ① and right side ② of the vehicle. The Parktronic system is ready to measure when yellow readiness indicators ③ are illuminated.

The current transmission position determines which warning indicator will be activated.

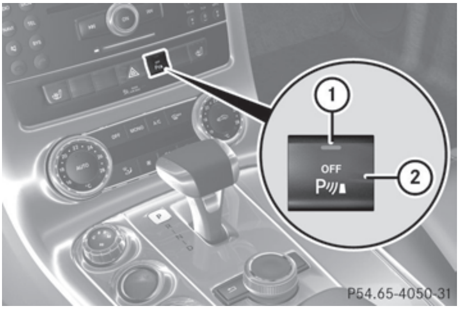
Current transmission position	Warning indicator
D	Front area activated
R	Front and rear area activated
N	With the electronic parking brake engaged: neither activated With the electronic parking brake released: front and rear area activated

As your vehicle approaches an object, one or more distance segments will illuminate, depending on the distance. When the seventh distance segment illuminates, you have reached the minimum distance.

- **Front area:** An intermittent acoustic warning will sound as the first red distance segment illuminates and a constant acoustic warning lasting a maximum of 2 seconds will sound for the second red distance segment. The signal is canceled when the transmission is shifted into park position **P**.
- **Rear area:** An intermittent acoustic warning will sound as the first red distance segment illuminates and a constant acoustic warning lasting a maximum of 2 seconds will sound for the second red distance segment. The signal is canceled when the transmission is shifted into drive position **D** or park position **P**.

Switching the Parktronic system on/off

The Parktronic system switches on automatically when the ignition is switched on.



▶ **Switching off:** Press Parktronic switch ②.
Indicator lamp ① comes on.

▶ **Switching on:** Press Parktronic switch ② again.

Parktronic system malfunction

There is a malfunction in the Parktronic system, if only the red distance segments illuminate and an acoustic warning sounds. The Parktronic system will switch off automatically after 20 seconds and indicator lamp ① in Parktronic switch ② comes on.

▶ Have the Parktronic system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

If only the red distance segments illuminate and no acoustic warning sounds, the Parktronic system sensors are dirty (e.g. dirt, ice, snow and slush). Another cause could be interference from other radio or ultrasonic signals (e.g. truck air brakes, car wash, or jackhammers). The Parktronic system will switch off automatically after 20 seconds and indicator lamp ① in Parktronic switch ② comes on.

▶ Switch off the ignition.

▶ Clean the Parktronic system sensors (▷ page 357).

▶ Switch on the ignition.

or

▶ Check the Parktronic system operation at another location to rule out interference from outside radio or ultrasonic signals.

Rear view camera

The rear view camera is an optical parking aid.

The area behind the vehicle appears in the COMAND system display as a mirror image, like in the rear view mirror.

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure no persons or animals are in or near the area in which you are parking/ maneuvering. Otherwise, they could be injured.

⚠ **Warning!**

The rear view camera is only an aid and may display obstacles

- from a distorted perspective
- inaccurately
- may not display obstacles at all

The rear view camera does not relieve you of the responsibility to be cautious. Take care and pay careful attention. The rear view camera may not show objects which are

- very close to the rear bumper
- under the rear bumper

You are responsible for safety at all times and must continue to pay attention to the immediate surroundings when parking and maneuvering. This includes the area behind, in front of, and beside the vehicle. Otherwise you could endanger yourself and/or others.

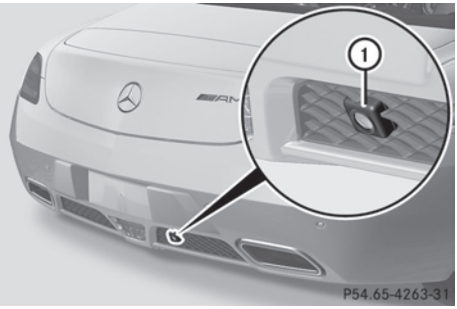
⚠ **Warning!**

The rear view camera either will not function or will not function to its full capability if

- the trunk lid is open
- it is raining very hard, snowing or foggy
- it is night or you are parking/maneuvering your vehicle in an area where it is very dark
- the camera is exposed to a very bright white light
- the immediate surroundings are illuminated with fluorescent light (the COMAND system display can flicker)
- there is a sudden change in temperature, e.g. if you drive into a heated garage from the cold (lens condensation)
- the camera lens is dirty or covered
- the rear of your vehicle is damaged

  In this case, have the position and setting of the camera checked by a qualified specialist workshop. Mercedes-Benz recommends that you contact a Mercedes-Benz Center for this purpose.

Do not use the rear view camera in these situations. Otherwise you could injure yourself or others and/or damage property including your vehicle while parking/maneuvering.



Camera lens ① must be free of dirt, ice, snow, and slush to function properly. Clean the camera lens regularly. Being careful not to scratch or damage the camera lens, see “Cleaning the rear view camera lens” (▷ page 357).

Switching on or off

▶ **Switching on:** Switch on the ignition.

▶ Make sure the rear view camera is switched on in the COMAND system (▷ page 99).

▶ Switch on the COMAND system.

▶ Shift the transmission to reverse gear **R**.
The area behind the vehicle appears in the COMAND system display.

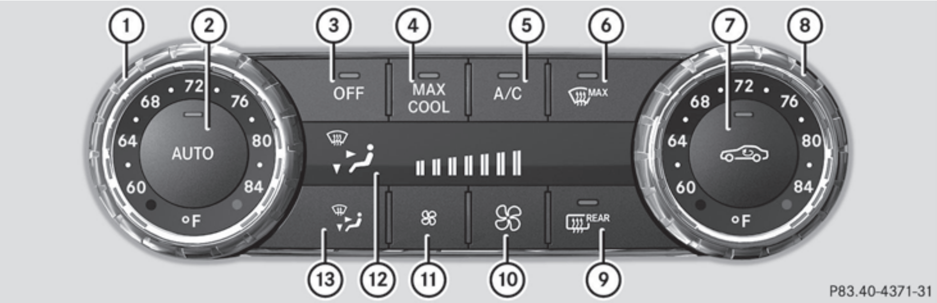
ⓘ The image from the rear view camera will no longer be displayed if you select another function on the COMAND system while reverse gear **R** is engaged. To display the image again, disengage and reengage reverse gear **R**.

▶ **Switching off:** Shift the transmission into park position **P**, neutral position **N**, or drive position **D**.

Climate control system

Control panel

Dual-zone automatic climate control



	Function	Recommendation/Notes	
①	Temperature control, driver's side	ⓘ Set the temperature to 72℉ (22℃).	(▷ page 300)
②	Air distribution and air volume (automatic mode)	ⓘ Switch on the automatic mode. The indicator lamp in button AUTO comes on.	(▷ page 300)
③	Climate control on/off	ⓘ Switch on/off the climate control system.	(▷ page 299)
④	MAX COOL on/off (USA only)		(▷ page 303)
	MONO Adopting driver's side settings for all zones (Canada only)		(▷ page 303)
⑤	A/C cooling on/off	ⓘ Switch on/off the air conditioning.	(▷ page 300)
⑥	Front defroster	ⓘ Keep this setting selected only until the windshield or the side windows are clear again.	(▷ page 302)
⑦	Air recirculation	ⓘ Only use this function for a short time, e.g. in a tunnel. Otherwise, the windows can fog up due to lack of fresh air.	(▷ page 303)
⑧	Temperature control, passenger side	ⓘ Set the temperature to 72℉ (22℃).	(▷ page 300)
⑨	Rear window defroster		(▷ page 304)

	Function	Recommendation/Notes	
⑩	Increasing air volume		(▷ page 302)
⑪	Decreasing air volume		(▷ page 302)
⑫	Display		
⑬	Air distribution		(▷ page 302)

Notes on climate control system

The climate control system is operational whenever the engine is running. You can operate the climate control system in either the automatic or manual mode. The system cools or heats the interior depending on the selected interior temperature.

It can only function optimally when you are driving with the windows closed.

Nearly all dust particles, pollutants and odors are filtered out before outside air enters the passenger compartment through the air distribution system.

⚠ **Warning!**

Severe conditions (e.g. strong air pollution) may require replacement of the filter before its scheduled replacement interval. A clogged filter will reduce the air volume to the interior and the windows could fog up, impairing visibility and endangering you and others. Have a clogged filter replaced as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

The air conditioning will not engage (no cooling) if the **A/C** mode (▷ page 300) is deactivated.

⚠ **Warning!**

Follow the recommended settings for heating and cooling given on the following pages. Otherwise the windows could fog up, impairing visibility and endangering you and others.

▶ Keep the air intake grille in front of the windshield free of snow and debris.

Do not obstruct air flow by placing objects on the air flow-through exhaust slots below the rear window.

ℹ If the vehicle interior is hot, ventilate the interior before driving off, see "Summer opening feature" (▷ page 256). The climate control will then adjust the interior temperature to the set value much faster.

Deactivating the climate control system

⚠ **Warning!**

When the climate control system is deactivated, the outside air supply and circulation are also deactivated. Only choose this setting for a short time. Otherwise the windows could fog up, impairing visibility and endangering you and others.

▶ **Deactivating:** Press button OFF.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

▶ **Reactivating:** Press button OFF.
The indicator lamp in the button goes out. The previous settings are once again in effect.

or

▶ Press button AUTO.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on. Air volume and air distribution are adjusted automatically.

Air conditioning

The air conditioning is operational while the engine is running and cools the interior air to the temperature set by the operator. In addition, the air conditioning dehumidifies the interior air and helps prevent window fogging.

⚠ **Warning!**

If you deactivate the air conditioning, the vehicle will not be cooled when weather conditions are warm. The windows can fog up more quickly. Window fogging may impair visibility and endanger you and others.

ℹ Condensated water may drip out from underneath the vehicle. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction.

The air conditioning uses the refrigerant R134a. This refrigerant is free of CFCs which are harmful to the ozone layer.

Deactivating

It is possible to deactivate the air conditioning. The interior air will then no longer be cooled or dehumidified.

▶ Press button A/C.
The indicator lamp in the button goes out.

The cooling function switches off after a short delay.

Activating

Moist air can fog up the windows. You can dehumidify the interior air with the air conditioning.

▶ Press button A/C.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

ℹ The evaporator will be vented when the air conditioning has been in use. Approximately 1 hour after locking the vehicle, the blower switches on automatically. The blower will run for 30 minutes at its lowest level. The blower noise is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. When you unlock the vehicle in the meantime, venting will be interrupted. If the vehicle battery is low, automatic evaporator venting will not occur in order to preserve the battery.

Automatic mode

When operating the climate control system in automatic mode, the interior air temperature, air volume and air distribution are adjusted automatically.

In automatic mode, cooling with dehumidification is switched on. This function can be switched off if necessary.

⚠ **Warning!**

If you deactivate the air conditioning, the vehicle will not be cooled when weather conditions are warm. The windows can fog up more quickly. Window fogging may impair visibility and endanger you and others.

▶ Set the desired temperature (▷ page 300).

▶ **Activating:** Press button AUTO.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on. The air volume and air distribution are adjusted automatically.

▶ **Deactivating:** Press button ✻, ✻ or ⤵.
The indicator lamp in button AUTO goes out. The automatic operation of air volume and air distribution switches off. The symbols of air distribution or air volume appear in display ⑫ (▷ page 298).

▶ Adjust air distribution (▷ page 302).

▶ Adjust air volume (▷ page 302).

Setting temperature

You can adjust the air temperature on each side of the passenger compartment. You should raise or lower the temperature setting in small increments, preferably starting at 72℉ (22℃).

- **Increasing/decreasing:** Turn temperature controls ① and ⑧ (▷ page 298) slightly clockwise or counterclockwise.

Adjusting air vents

⚠ **Warning!**

When operating the climate control, the air that enters the passenger compartment through the air vents can be very hot or very cold (depending on the set temperature). This may cause burns or frostbite to unprotected skin in the immediate area of the air vents.

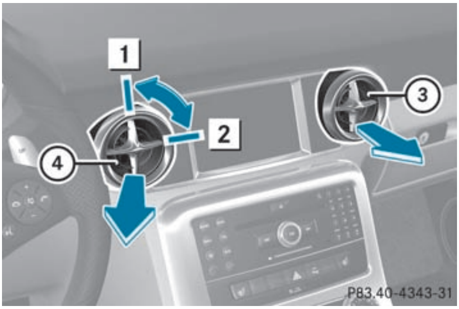
Always keep sufficient distance between unprotected parts of the body and the air vents. If necessary, use the air distribution adjustment to direct the air to air vents in the vehicle interior that are not in the immediate area of unprotected skin.

For best possible performance of the climate control:

- Keep the air intake grille in front of the windshield free of snow, leaves, sticks, and any other debris.
- Always keep all air vents and grilles in the passenger compartment free from obstruction.

ⓘ For draft-free ventilation, move the adjustable center and side air vents to the middle position.

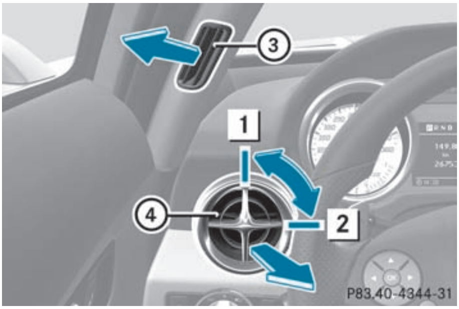
Center air vents



1 Center air vent open
2 Center air vent closed
③ Right center air vent, adjustable
④ Left center air vent, adjustable

- **Opening center air vent:** Turn the cross in center air vent ③ or ④ in the direction of the arrow to position 1.
- **Closing center air vent:** Turn the cross in center air vent ③ or ④ in the direction of the arrow to position 2.

Side air vents



Example illustration driver's side

1 Side air vent open
2 Side air vent closed
③ Left side defroster air vent, fixed
④ Left side air vent, adjustable

- **Opening side air vent:** Turn the cross in side air vent ④ in the direction of the arrow to position 1.
- **Closing side air vent:** Turn the cross in side air vent ④ in the direction of the arrow to position 2.

ℹ Side air vent ④ is never closed completely, even when side defroster air vent ③ is closed.

Adjusting air distribution

The symbols shown in display ⑫ (▷ page 298) on the climate control panel represent the following functions:

Symbol	Function
	Directs air through the defroster air vents to the windshield and door windows
	Directs air through the center and side air vents
	Directs air to the footwells
	Directs air through the center and side air vents and to the footwells (USA only)
	Directs air into the entire vehicle interior (Canada only)
	Directs air through the center, side and defroster air vents to the windshield and door windows (Canada only)
	Directs air through the defroster air vents to the windshield and door windows and to the footwells

- Press button repeatedly until you have select the desired setting and the corresponding symbol is shown in display ⑫.

Adjusting air volume

- **Decreasing/increasing:** Press button ✻ or ✻.

Front defroster

You can use this setting to defrost the windshield, for example if it is iced up.

You can also defog the windshield and the door windows.

ℹ Keep this setting selected only until the windshield or the door windows are clear again.

- **Activating:** Press button MAX.
  The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The climate control switches to the following functions automatically:

- cooling on to dehumidify
- most efficient blower speed and heating power, depending on outside temperature
- air flows onto the windshield and the door windows
- the air recirculation mode is switched off

ℹ You can adjust the air volume when the front defroster is switched on.

- **Deactivating:** Press button MAX again.
  The indicator lamp in the button goes out. The previous settings are once again in effect. The cooling remains switched on. The air recirculation remains switched off.

or

- Press button AUTO.
  The indicator lamp in button MAX goes out. Air volume and air distribution are adjusted automatically.

ℹ To deactivate defrosting, you can also press button OFF or turn temperature controls.

Windshield fogged on the outside

▶ Switch the windshield wipers on (▷ page 253).

If the automatic mode of the climate control is switched off:

▶ Press button repeatedly until one of the following symbols or appears in display ⑫ (▷ page 298).

Maximum cooling MAX COOL

MAX COOL is only available in U.S. vehicles.

MAX COOL is only operational when the engine is running.

You can use this setting to provide the fastest possible cooling of the vehicle interior (when windows are closed).

▶ **Activating:** Press button MAX COOL.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The climate control switches automatically to the following functions:

- maximum cooling
- maximum blowing power
- the air recirculation mode is switched on

▶ **Deactivating:** Press button MAX COOL again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes out. The previous settings are once again in effect.

ℹ To switch the maximum cooling function off, you can also press button OFF, AUTO or MAX.

Air recirculation mode

Switch to air recirculation mode to prevent unpleasant odors from entering the vehicle from the outside (e.g. before driving through a tunnel). This setting cuts off the intake of outside air and recirculates the air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ Warning!

Fogged windows impair visibility, endangering you and others. If the windows begin to fog on the inside, switching off the air recirculation mode immediately should clear interior window fogging. If interior window fogging persists, make sure the air conditioning is activated, or press button MAX.

▶ **Activating:** Press button .
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

ℹ The air recirculation mode is activated automatically at high outside temperatures.

The indicator lamp in button is not lit when the air recirculation mode is switched on automatically.

A quantity of outside air is added after approximately 30 minutes.

▶ **Deactivating:** Press button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes out.

ℹ The manually selected air recirculation mode is deactivated automatically:

- after 5 minutes if the outside temperature is below approximately 41℉ (5℃)
- after 5 minutes if the air conditioning is turned off
- after 30 minutes if the outside temperature is above approximately 41℉ (5℃)

Using driver-side settings for passenger side

This feature is only available in Canada vehicles.

You can use the settings of the driver’s side, such as temperature, air volume and air distribution, for the passenger side.

- **Activating:** Adjust the air temperature, air volume and air distribution.
- Press button MONO.

  The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

  The driver-side settings are used for the passenger side.
- **Deactivating:** Press button MONO again.

  The indicator lamp in the button goes out.

Rear window defroster

⚠ Warning!

Any accumulation of snow and ice should be removed from the rear window before driving. Visibility could otherwise be impaired, endangering you and others.

The rear window defroster uses a large amount of power. To keep the battery drain to a minimum, switch off the defroster as soon as the rear window is clear. The defroster is switched off automatically after some time of operation depending on the outside temperature.

- Switch on the ignition.
- **Switching on:** Press button REAR.

  The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
- **Switching off:** Press button REAR again.

The rear window defroster switches off when the battery voltage is too low. Too many electrical consumers may be operating simultaneously.

- Switch off consumers that are currently not needed if required.

Loading and storing

Parcel net

⚠ Warning!

The parcel net is intended for storing lightweight items only, such as road maps, mail, etc.

Heavy objects, objects with sharp edges, or fragile objects may not be transported in the parcel net. In an accident, during hard braking, or sudden maneuvers, they could be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause injury to vehicle occupants.

The parcel net cannot protect transported goods in the event of an accident.

A parcel net is located in the passenger footwell.

Storage compartments

⚠ Warning!

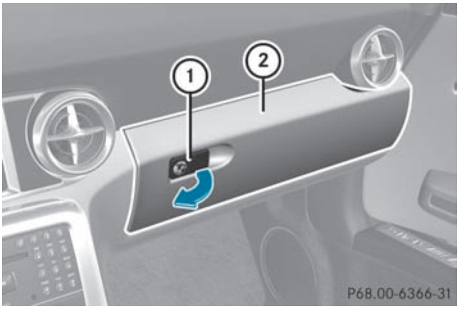
To help avoid personal injury during a collision or sudden maneuver, exercise care when storing objects in the vehicle. Put luggage or cargo in the trunk if possible.

Keep compartment lids closed. This will help to prevent stored objects from being thrown about and injuring vehicle occupants during

- braking
- vehicle maneuvers
- an accident

Glove box

Depending on vehicle equipment, an AUX socket or a media interface is located in the glove box. For information on Audio AUX mode, see (▷ page 197) and for media interface, see (▷ page 192).



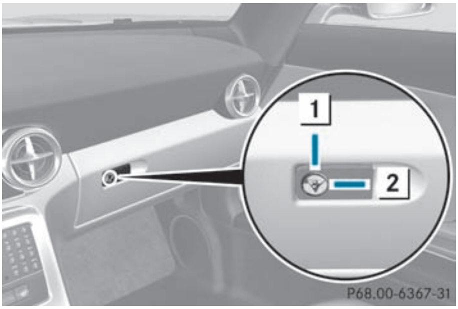
- **Opening:** Pull glove box lid release ①.

- **Closing:** Push glove box lid ② upwards until it engages.

Locking/unlocking the glove box separately

You can lock the glove box, e.g. when the vehicle is in the shop for service.

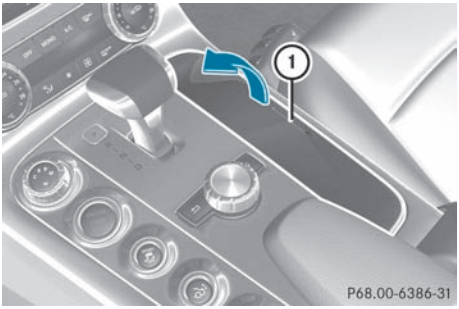
The glove box can only be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.



- Remove the mechanical key from the SmartKey (▷ page 397).
- Insert the mechanical key into the glove box lock.
- **Locking:** Turn mechanical key to position 2.
- **Unlocking:** Turn mechanical key to position 1.
- Remove mechanical key from the glove box lock.

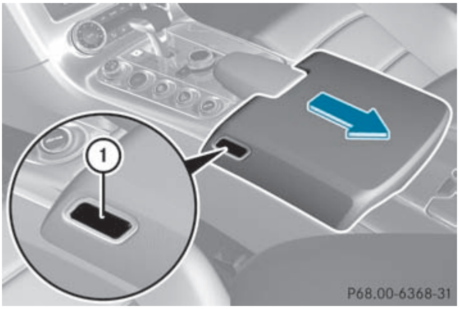
Front storage compartment in center console

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may equipped with an ashtray instead of a storage compartment.



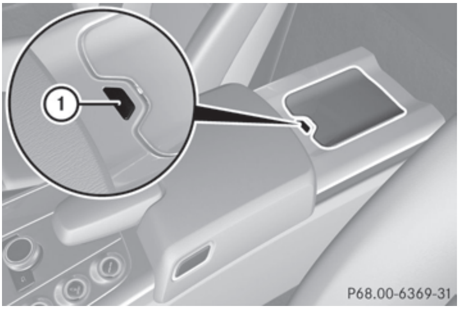
- **Opening:** Tap on center of cover ①.
  The cover opens automatically.
- **Closing:** Fold cover ① down.

Armrest storage compartment



- **Opening:** Press button ① on the left or right of the armrest and pull the armrest in the direction of the arrow.
- **Closing:** Press button ① on the left or right of the armrest and push the armrest in the opposite direction of the arrow.

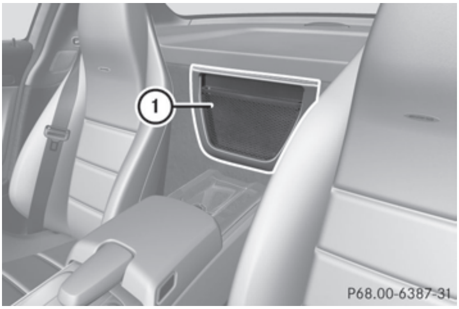
Rear storage compartment in center console



- Press button ①.
  The cover opens automatically.

Storage pocket on the rear panel

A storage pocket is located at the rear panel between the seats.



① Storage pocket

Useful features

Cup holder

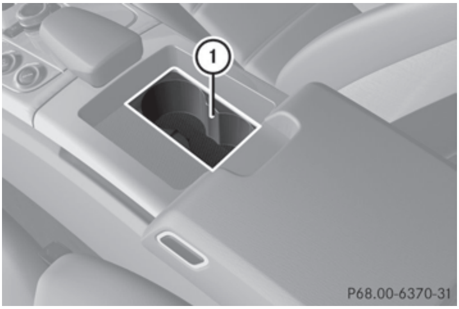
⚠ Warning!

In order to help prevent spilling liquids on vehicle occupants and/or vehicle equipment, only use containers that fit into the cup holder. Use lids on open containers and do not fill containers to a height where the contents, especially hot liquids, could spill during braking, vehicle maneuvers, or in an accident. Liquids spilled on vehicle occupants may cause serious personal injury. Liquids spilled on vehicle equipment may cause damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

When not in use, keep the cup holder closed. An open cup holder may cause injury to you or others when contacted during braking, vehicle maneuvers, or in an accident.

Keep in mind that objects placed in the cup holder may come loose during braking, vehicle maneuvers, or in an accident and be thrown around in the vehicle interior. Objects thrown around in the vehicle interior may cause an accident and/or serious personal injury.

- Open storage compartment under the armrest (▷ page 304).

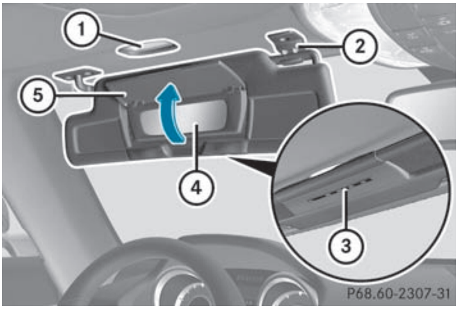


① Cup holder

Sun visors

⚠ Warning!

Do not use the vanity mirror while driving. Keep the vanity mirrors in the sun visors closed while vehicle is in motion. Reflected glare can endanger you and others.



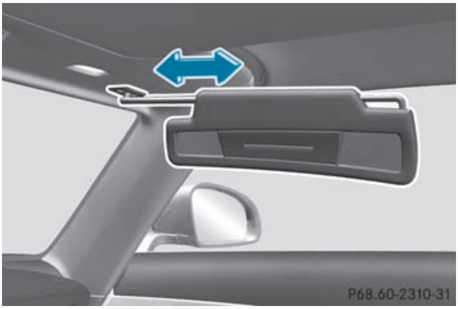
- ① Vanity mirror lamp
- ② Mounting
- ③ Holder, e.g. for gas cards
- ④ Vanity mirror
- ⑤ Vanity mirror cover

Glare through the windshield

- ▶ Flip sun visor down when you experience glare.

Glare through a door window

- ▶ Close vanity mirror cover ⑤ if opened.
- ▶ Disengage sun visor from mounting ②.
- ▶ Pivot sun visor to the side.



- ▶ Adjust sun visor by pushing or pulling.

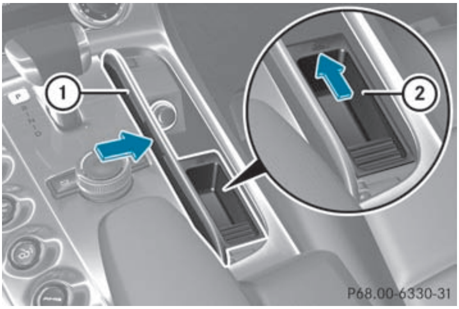
Vanity mirror

Vanity mirror lamp ① only functions when the sun visor is engaged in mounting ②.

- ▶ Flip sun visor down.
- ▶ Lift up vanity mirror cover ⑤.
  Vanity mirror lamp ① comes on.

Ashtray

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may equipped with a storage compartment instead of an ashtray.



- ▶ **Opening:** Tap on center of cover ①.
  The cover opens automatically.
- ▶ **Removing ashtray insert:** Press ashtray insert ② forward in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ Remove ashtray insert ②.
- ▶ **Reinstalling ashtray insert:** Place ashtray insert into the holder and push it in the opposite direction of the arrow until it engages.
- ▶ **Closing:** Fold cover ① down.

Cigarette lighter

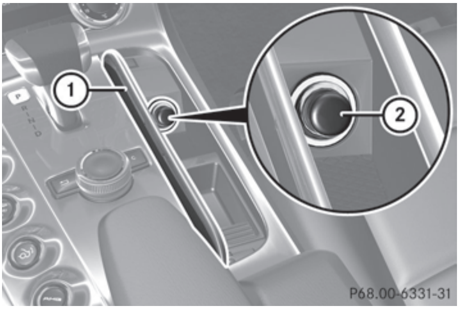
⚠ **Observe Safety notes, see page 57.**

⚠ **Warning!**

Never touch the heating element or sides of the lighter; they are extremely hot. Hold the knob only.

Make sure any children traveling with you do not injure themselves or start a fire with the hot cigarette lighter.

If the engine is off and the cigarette lighter is being used extensively, the vehicle battery may become discharged.



- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ **Opening:** Tap on center of cover ①.
  The cover opens automatically.
- ▶ Push in cigarette lighter ②.
  Cigarette lighter ② will pop out automatically when hot.
- ▶ Take out cigarette lighter ②.
- ▶ Reinsert cigarette lighter ② in its socket after use.

Power outlet

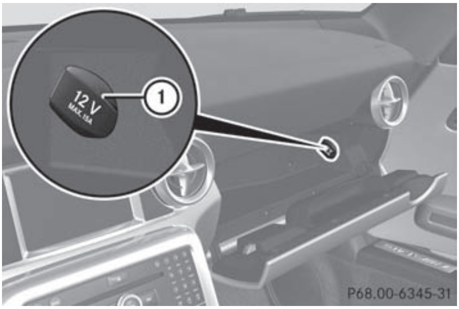
The power outlets can be used to accommodate 12V DC electrical accessories (e.g. auxiliary lamps, mobile phone chargers) up to a maximum of 15 A (180 W).

If the engine is off and the power outlets are being used extensively, the vehicle battery may become discharged.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.

Power outlet in glove box

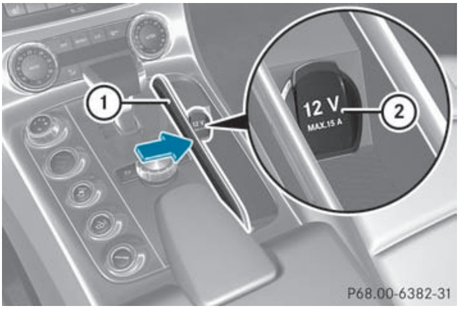
- ▶ Open the glove box (▷ page 304).



① Power outlet

Power outlet in center console

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may equipped with a cigarette lighter instead of a power outlet.



- ▶ **Opening:** Tap on center of cover ①.
  The cover opens automatically.
- ▶ Flip up cover ② and insert electrical plug (cigarette lighter type).

mbrace

In Canada, the system is referred to as Tele Aid (**Tele**matic **A**larm **I**dentification on **D**emand).

! In order to activate the mbrace system, a subscriber agreement must be completed. To ensure your system is activated and operational, please press Information button ☎ i to perform the acquaintance call. Failure to complete either of these steps may result in a system that is not activated.

If you have any questions regarding activation, please call the Response Center at 866-990-9007 (USA only) or 1-888-923-8367 (Canada only).

Shortly after the completion of your mbrace acquaintance call, you will receive an account number via email. You will also receive a two-part welcome kit via mail that will provide your account and Personal Identification Number (PIN). You will only need the PIN once to access the mbrace account section in “Owners Online” at **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

The mbrace system is available if

- it has been activated and is operational. Activation requires a subscription for monitoring services, connection and cellular air time
- vehicle battery power is available
- the relevant cellular phone network and GPS signals are available

ℹ Location of the vehicle on a map is only possible if the vehicle is able to receive signals from the GPS satellite network and pass the information on to the Response Center.

The mbrace system

The mbrace system consists of three types of response:

- Automatic and manual emergency
- Roadside Assistance
- Information

To adjust the speaker volume during a mbrace call do the following:

▶ Press button + or − on the multifunction steering wheel.

or

▶ Use the volume adjustment button on your COMAND system.

Be sure to check “Owners Online” at **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only) for more information and a description of all available features.

System self-test

The system performs a self-test after you have switched on the ignition.

⚠ **Warning!**

A malfunction in the system has been detected if any or all of the following conditions occur:

- The indicator lamp in the SOS button does not come on during the system self-test.
- The indicator lamp in the wrench button ☎🔧 does not come on during the system self-test.
- The indicator lamp in the Information button ☎ℹ does not come on during the system self-test.
- The indicator lamp in the SOS button, wrench button ☎🔧, or Information button ☎ℹ remains illuminated constantly in red after the system self-test.
- The message `Tele Aid Inoperative` or `Tele Aid Not Activated` appears in the multifunction display after the system self-test.

If a malfunction is indicated as outlined above, the system may not operate as expected. In case of an emergency, help will have to be summoned by other means.

Have the system checked at the nearest Mercedes-Benz Center or contact the Response Center at 866-990-9007 (USA only) or 1-888-923-8367 (Canada only) as soon as possible.

Emergency calls

! In order to activate the mbrace system, a subscriber agreement must be completed. To ensure your system is activated and operational, please press Information button ☎ℹ to perform the acquaintance call. Failure to complete either of these steps may result in a system that is not activated.

If you have any questions regarding activation, please call the Response Center at 866-990-9007 (USA only) or 1-888-923-8367 (Canada only).

An emergency call is initiated automatically following an accident in which the Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs) or air bags have deployed.

ⓘ An automatically initiated mbrace emergency call cannot be canceled.

An emergency call can also be initiated manually (▷ page 310).

Once the emergency call is in progress, the indicator lamp in the SOS button will begin to flash. The message `Connecting Call` appears in the multifunction display and the COMAND system is muted. When the connection is established, the message `Call Connected` appears in the multifunction display.

All information relevant to the emergency, such as the location of the vehicle (determined by the GPS satellite location system), vehicle model, identification number and color are generated.

A voice connection between the Response Center and the occupants of the vehicle will be established automatically soon after the emergency call has been initiated. The Response Center will attempt to determine the nature of the emergency more precisely, provided they can speak to an occupant of the vehicle.

ⓘ If no vehicle occupant responds, emergency services will be sent to the vehicle immediately.

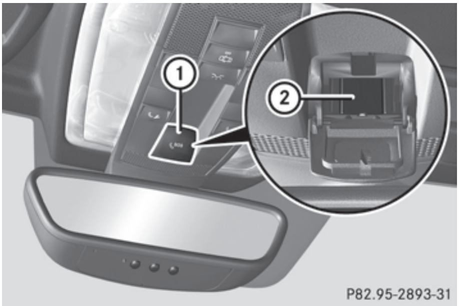
⚠ Warning!

If the indicator lamp in the SOS button is flashing continuously and there was no voice connection to the Response Center established, then the mbrace system could not initiate an emergency call (e.g. the relevant cellular phone network is not available).

The message `Call Failed` appears in the multifunction display for approximately 10 seconds.

Should this occur, assistance must be summoned by other means.

Initiating an emergency call manually



- ▶ Briefly press on cover ① to open.
- ▶ Press SOS button ② briefly.
  The indicator lamp in SOS button ② will flash until the emergency call is concluded.
- ▶ Wait for a voice connection to the Response Center.
- ▶ Close cover ① after the emergency call is concluded.

⚠ Warning!

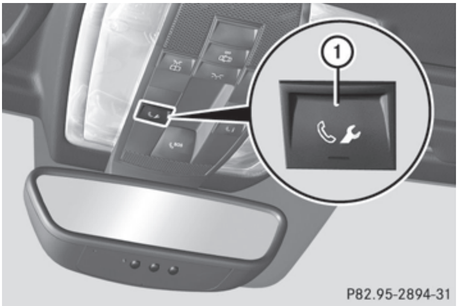
If you feel at any way in jeopardy when in the vehicle (e.g. smoke or fire in the vehicle, vehicle in a dangerous road location), please do not wait for voice contact after you have pressed the emergency button. Carefully leave the vehicle and move to a safe location. The Response Center will automatically contact local emergency officials with the vehicle's approximate location if they receive an automatic SOS signal and cannot make voice contact with the vehicle occupants.

- **Terminating calls:** Press button ☎ on the multifunction steering wheel.

or

- Press the respective button for ending a telephone call on the COMAND system.

Wrench button



- Press and hold wrench button ① for longer than 2 seconds.
  A call to a Mercedes-Benz Roadside Assistance representative will be initiated. The indicator lamp in wrench button ① will flash while the call is in progress. The message `Connecting Call` will appear in the multifunction display and the COMAND system is muted.

When the connection is established, the message `Call Connected` appears in the multifunction display. The mbrace system will transmit data generating the vehicle identification number, model, color and location (subject to availability of cellular and GPS signals).

ⓘ The COMAND system display indicates that a mbrace call is in progress. While the call is connected you can change to the navigation menu by pressing the NAVI button on the COMAND system. Spoken commands are not available.

A voice connection between the Roadside Assistance representative and the occupants of the vehicle will be established.

- Describe the nature of the need for assistance.

The Mercedes-Benz Roadside Assistance representative will either dispatch a qualified Mercedes-Benz technician or arrange to tow your vehicle to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. For services such as labor and/or towing, charges may apply. Refer to the Roadside Assistance brochure for more information.

Sign and Drive services (USA only): Services such as a jump start, a few gallons of fuel or the replacement of a flat tire with the vehicle spare wheel are obtainable at no charge.

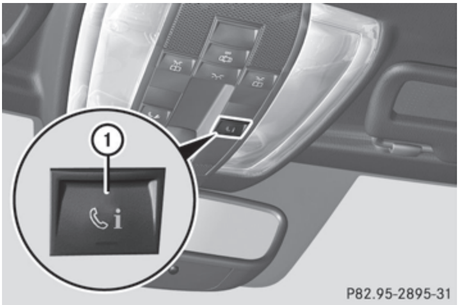
ⓘ If the indicator lamp in wrench button ① is flashing continuously and there was no voice connection to the Response Center established, then the mbrace system could not initiate a Roadside Assistance call (e.g. the relevant cellular phone network is not available). The message `Call Failed` appears in the multifunction display.

- **Terminating calls:** Press button ☎ on the multifunction steering wheel.

or

- Press the respective button for ending a telephone call on the COMAND system.

Information button



- Press and hold Information button ① for longer than 2 seconds.
  A call to the Response Center will be initiated. The indicator lamp in Information button ① will flash while the call is in progress. The message `Connecting`

`Call` will appear in the multifunction display and the COMAND system is muted.

When the connection is established, the message `Call Connected` appears in the multifunction display. The mbrace system will transmit data generating the vehicle identification number, model, color and location (subject to availability of cellular and GPS signals).

ℹ The COMAND system display indicates that a mbrace call is in progress. While the call is connected you can change to the navigation menu by pressing the NAVI button on the COMAND system. Spoken commands are not available.

A voice connection between the Response Center representative and the occupants of the vehicle will be established. Information regarding the operation of your vehicle, the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or Mercedes-Benz USA products and services is available to you.

For more details concerning the mbrace system, please visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only) and log in to “Owners Online”.

ℹ If the indicator lamp in Information button ① is flashing continuously and there was no voice connection to the Response Center established, then the mbrace system could not initiate an Information call (e.g. the relevant cellular phone network is not available). The message `Call Failed` appears in the multifunction display.

- **Terminating calls:** Press button ☎ on the multifunction steering wheel.

or

- Press the respective button for ending a telephone call on the COMAND system.

Call priority

If other service calls such as a Roadside Assistance call or Information call are active, an emergency call is still possible. In this case, the emergency call will take priority and override all other active calls.

The indicator lamp in the respective button flashes until the call is concluded. Automatic initiated emergency calls can only be terminated by a Response Center representative. All other calls can be terminated by pressing button ☎ on the multifunction steering wheel or the respective button for ending a telephone call on the COMAND system.

ℹ When a mbrace call has been initiated, the COMAND system is muted. The mobile phone is no longer connected to the COMAND system. If you must use this phone, we recommend that you use it only with the vehicle at a standstill in a safe location.

Points of Interest Destination Download to the COMAND system

ℹ For information on components and operating principles of the COMAND system, see (▷ page 70).

This service is only available as part of the PLUS package.

Point of Interest (POI) Destination Download allows an mbrace Customer Specialist to access information from an impressively large nationwide database for download to your vehicle’s navigation system. If you know the address of your destination, the Customer Specialist can download the address to your vehicle’s navigation system. You can also request points of interest near your location. Once the information is downloaded to your vehicle, the navigation system will generate a route to that destination. You can choose to save it in the system’s memory for future use.

Route Assistance

This service is only available as part of the PLUS package.

With the Route Assistance service you get professional, reliable guidance from an mbrace Customer Specialist without leaving your vehicle.

Using your current location and intended destination, a Customer Specialist can find the best route and provide turn-by-turn directions, giving you the reassurance of live assistance in times of need. Route Assistance is available at the touch of a button, even if your vehicle is not equipped with a COMAND navigation system.

Search & Send

“Search & Send” is a navigation destination address entry service. For more information on “Search & Send”, see (▷ page 125).

Remote door lock

If you have forgotten to lock your vehicle and are no longer near it, you can have it locked remotely through the Response Center.

The vehicle can be remotely locked within four days after the ignition has been switched off.

- Contact Response Center at 866-990-9007 (USA only) or 1-888-923-8367 (Canada only).
  You will be asked to provide your Personal Identification Number (PIN).

When you are inside your vehicle the next time and switch on the ignition, the message `Tele Aid Doors Locked Remotely` will appear on the multifunction display.

ℹ The remote door lock feature is available if the relevant cellular phone network is available and data connection is possible.

Stolen Vehicle Recovery Services

In the event your vehicle was stolen:

- Report the incident to the police.
  The police will issue a numbered incident report.
- Pass this number on to the Response Center along with your Personal Identification Number (PIN).
  The Response Center will then attempt to covertly contact the vehicle’s mbrace system. Once the vehicle is located, the Response Center will contact the local law enforcement and you. The vehicle’s location will only be provided to law enforcement.

ℹ If the anti-theft alarm stays on for more than 30 seconds, the mbrace system will notify the Response Center automatically.

Garage door opener

The integrated remote control can operate up to three separately controlled devices compatible with HomeLink® or some other systems.

⚠ **Warning!**

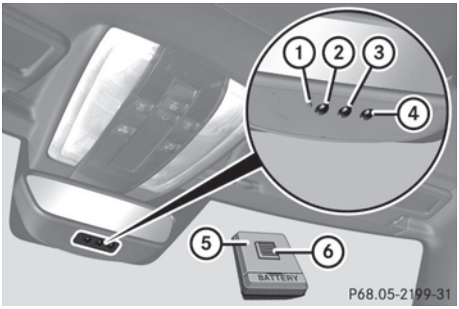
Before programming the integrated remote control to a garage door opener or gate operator, make sure people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential harm or damage. When programming a garage door opener, the door moves up or down. When programming a gate operator, the gate opens or closes.

Do not use the integrated remote control with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object - signaling the door to stop and reverse - does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards.

▷▷

When programming a garage door opener, park vehicle outside the garage.

Do not run the engine while programming the integrated remote control. Inhalation of exhaust gas is hazardous to your health. All exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), and inhaling it can cause unconsciousness and possible death.



Interior rear view mirror with integrated remote control

Hand-held remote control ⑤ is not part of the vehicle equipment.

Programming the integrated remote control

- **Step 1:** Switch on the ignition.
- **Step 2:** If you have previously programmed a signal transmitter button and wish to retain its programming, proceed to step 3.

or

- If you are programming the integrated remote control for the first time, press and hold the two outer signal transmitter buttons ② and ④ and release them when indicator lamp ① begins to flash after approximately 20 seconds.

  Do not hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds.
  This procedure erases any previous settings for all three channels and initializes the memory. If you later wish to program a second and/or third hand-held transmitter to the remaining two signal transmitter buttons, do not repeat this step and begin directly with step 3.
- **Step 3:** Hold the end of hand-held remote control ⑤ of the device you wish to train approximately 2 to 12 in (5 to 30 cm) away from the signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④) to be programmed, while keeping indicator lamp ① in view.
- **Step 4:** Using both hands, simultaneously press hand-held remote control button ⑥ and the desired signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④). Do not release the buttons until step 5 is completed.
  Indicator lamp ① will flash, first slowly and then rapidly.

ℹ Indicator lamp ① flashes immediately the first time the signal transmitter button is programmed. If this button has already been programmed, the indicator lamp will start flashing after 20 seconds.

- **Step 5:** After indicator lamp ① changes from a slow to a rapidly flashing light, release the hand-held remote control button and the signal transmitter button.
- **Step 6:** Press and hold the just-trained signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④) and observe indicator lamp ①.
  If indicator lamp ① stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the respective signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④) is pressed and released.

ℹ If indicator lamp ① flashes rapidly for approximately 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with programming steps 8 through 12 as your garage door opener may be equipped with the “rolling code” feature.

- **Step 7:** To program the remaining two signal transmitter buttons, repeat the steps above starting with step 3.

Rolling code programming

To train a garage door opener (or other rolling code devices) with the rolling code feature, follow these instructions after completing the "Programming" portion (steps 1 through 6) of this text. For your convenience and to complete the procedure faster, you might want to have someone assist you.

- **Step 8:** Locate the "training" button on the garage door opener motor head unit.

ℹ Exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand. Depending on manufacturer, the "training" button may also be referred to as "learn" or "smart" button. If there is difficulty locating the transmitting button, refer to the garage door opener Operator's Manual.

- **Step 9:** Press the "training" button on the garage door opener motor head unit.
  The "training light" is activated.

  You have 30 seconds to initiate the following two steps.
- **Step 10:** Return to the vehicle and firmly press, hold for 2 seconds and release the programmed signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④).
- **Step 11:** Press, hold for 2 seconds and release same signal transmitter button a second time to complete the training process.

ℹ Some garage door openers (or other rolling code equipped devices) may require you to press, hold for 2 seconds and release the same signal transmitter button a third time to complete the training process.

- **Step 12:** Confirm the garage door operation by pressing the programmed signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④).
- **Step 13:** To program the remaining two signal transmitter buttons, repeat the steps above starting with step 3.

Gate operator/Canadian programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to "time-out" (or quit) after several seconds of transmission which may not be long enough for the integrated signal transmitter to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to "time-out" in the same manner.

If you live in Canada or if you are having difficulties programming a gate operator (regardless of where you live) by using the programming procedures, replace step 4 with the following:

- **Step 4:** Press and hold the signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④). Do not release this button until it has been successfully trained.
- While still holding down the signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④), "cycle" your hand-held remote control button ⑥ as follows: Press and hold button ⑥ for 2 seconds, then release it for 2 seconds, and again press and hold it for 2 seconds. Repeat this sequence on the hand-held remote control until the frequency signal has been learned.
  Upon successful training, indicator lamp ① will flash slowly and then rapidly after several seconds.
- Proceed with programming step 5 and step 6 to complete.

ℹ Upon completion of programming the integrated remote control, make sure you retain the hand-held remote control that came with the garage door opener, gate operator or other device. You may need it for use in other vehicles, for future programming of an integrated remote control, or simply for continued use as a hand-held remote control to operate the respective device in other situations.

Reprogramming a single signal transmitter button

To program a device using a signal transmitter button previously trained, follow these steps:

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Press and hold the desired signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④). Do not release the button.
Indicator lamp ① will begin to flash after 20 seconds.

▶ Without releasing the signal transmitter button, proceed with programming starting with step 3.

Operation of integrated remote control

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Select and press the appropriate integrated signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④) to activate the remote controlled device.
The integrated remote control transmitter continues to send the signal as long as the button is pressed – up to 20 seconds.

Erasing the integrated remote control memory

ℹ If you sell your vehicle, erase the codes of all three channels.

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Simultaneously press and hold outer signal transmitter buttons ② and ④, for approximately 20 seconds, until indicator lamp ① flashes rapidly. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.
The codes of all three channels are erased.

Programming tips

If you are having difficulty programming the integrated remote control, here are some helpful tips:

- Check the frequency of hand-held remote control ⑤ (typically located on the reverse side of the remote). The integrated remote control is compatible with radio-frequency devices operating between 280-390 MHz.
- Put a new battery in hand-held remote control ⑤. This will increase the likelihood of the hand-held remote control sending a stronger and more accurate signal to the integrated remote control.
- While performing step 3, hold hand-held remote control ⑤ at different lengths and angles from the signal transmitter button (②, ③ or ④) you are programming. Attempt varying angles at the distance of 2 to 12 inches (5 to 30 cm) away or the same angle at varying distances.
- If another hand-held remote control is available for the same device, try the programming steps again using that other hand-held remote control. Make sure new batteries are in the hand-held remote control before beginning the procedure.
- Straighten the antenna wire from the garage door opener assembly. This may help improve transmitting and/or receiving signals.

ℹ Certain types of garage door openers are incompatible with the integrated remote control. If you should experience further difficulties with programming the integrated remote control, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center, or call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Assistance Center (USA only) at 1-800-FOR-MERCedes (1-800-367-6372), or the HomeLink® Hotline (USA only) at 1-800-355-3515, or the Customer Service (Canada only) at 1-800-387-0100.

ℹ USA only:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

ℹ Canada only:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

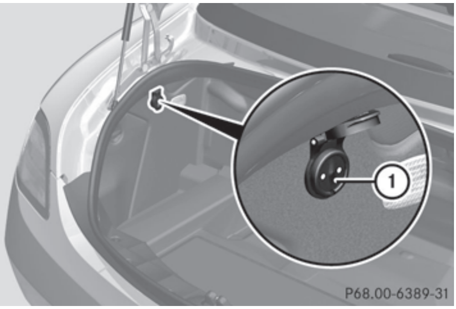
1. This device may not cause interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Trickle charge socket

The trickle charge socket is located on the driver's side of the trunk. The trickle charge socket is suitable for connection of a trickle charger only. A trickle charger can be purchased at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.



- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the trunk (▷ page 239).
- ▶ Connect the trickle charger to trickle charge socket ①. Observe the instructions of the trickle charger manufacturer.

ℹ A trickle charger that is connected to trickle charge socket ① can only maintain the charge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle battery is discharged, it must be charged with a battery charge unit. For more information on charging the battery, see (▷ page 412).

Floormat (driver's side)

⚠ **Warning!**

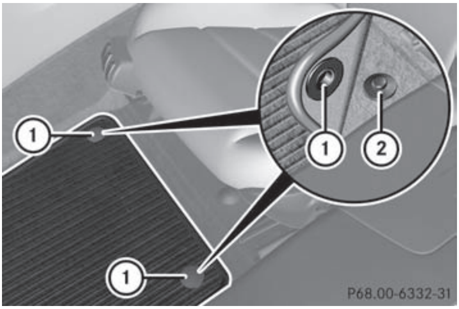
Whenever you are using a floormat, make sure there is enough clearance and that the floormat is securely fastened.

The floormat should always be securely fastened using the fastening equipment.

Before driving off, check that the floormat is securely in place and adjust it if necessary. A loose floormat could slip and hinder proper functioning of the pedals.

Do not place several floormats on top of each other as this may impair pedal movement.

- ▶ Move the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible.



- ▶ **Removing:** Pull floormat off of retainer pins ②.
- ▶ **Installing:** Press floormat eyelets ① onto retainer pins ②.

Operation

Vehicle equipment 320
The first 1000 miles (1500 km) 320
At the gas station 320
Engine compartment 322
Tires and wheels 326
Winter driving 347
Driving instructions 348
Maintenance 352
Vehicle care 354

Vehicle equipment

ⓘ This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

The first 1000 miles (1500 km)

The more cautiously you treat your vehicle during the break-in period, the more satisfied you will be with its performance later on.

- Drive your vehicle during the first 1 000 miles (1 500 km) at varying but moderate vehicle and engine speeds.
- During the first 1 000 miles (1 500 km), do not exceed a speed of 85 mph (140 km/h).
- During this period, avoid engine speeds above 4 500 rpm in each gear.
- During this period, avoid heavy loads (full throttle driving) and excessive engine speeds (no more than $^2/_3$ of maximum rpm in each gear).
- Shift gears in a timely manner.
- Avoid accelerating by kickdown.
- Do not attempt to slow the vehicle down by shifting to a lower gear using the gear selector lever.
- Select gear ranges **3**, **2** or **1** (▷ page 266) only when driving at moderate speeds (for hill driving).
- Select **C** as the preferred shift program (▷ page 267) for the first 1 000 miles (1 500 km).

After 1 000 miles (1 500 km) you may gradually increase vehicle and engine speeds to the permissible maximum.

All of the above instructions also apply when driving the first 1 000 miles (1 500 km) after the engine or the transmission has been replaced.

ⓘ Always obey applicable speed limits.

At the gas station

Refueling

⚠ **Warning!**

Gasoline is highly flammable and poisonous. It burns violently and can cause serious personal injury.

Never allow sparks, flames or smoking materials near gasoline!

Turn off the engine before refueling.

Whenever you are around gasoline, avoid inhaling fumes and any skin or clothing contact. Extinguish all smoking materials.

Direct skin contact with fuels and the inhalation of fuel vapors are damaging your health.

⚠ **Warning!**

Overfilling of the fuel tank may create pressure in the system which could cause a gas discharge. This could cause the gas to spray back out when removing the fuel pump nozzle, which could cause personal injury.

! Never refuel vehicles with gasoline engine with diesel fuel. Even small amounts of diesel fuel will damage the fuel system and engine. Damage resulting from the use of non-approved fuels or fuel additives or resulting from mixing gasoline with diesel fuel is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! If you have accidentally filled the tank with incorrect or non-approved fuel, do not switch on the ignition. Otherwise the incorrect or non-approved fuel will get into the fuel lines. The fuel system must be drained completely. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center to have the fuel system drained completely.

! To prevent damage to the catalytic converters, only use premium unleaded gasoline in this vehicle.

Any noticeable irregularities in engine operation should be repaired promptly.

Otherwise, excessive unburned fuel may reach the catalytic converter, causing it to overheat and potentially start a fire.

i Only use premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum Posted Octane Rating of 91 (average of 96 RON/86 MON).

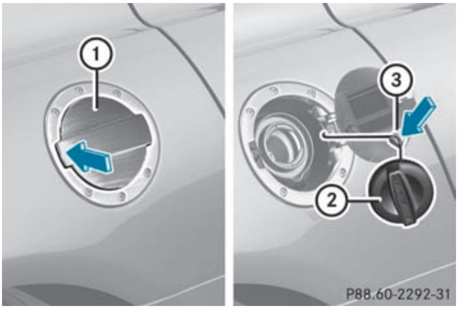
Information on gasoline quality can normally be found on the fuel pump. Please contact gas station personnel in case labels on the pump cannot be found.

For more information on gasoline, see "Premium unleaded gasoline" (▷ page 425), see "Fuel requirements" (▷ page 427), or contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center, or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the SmartKey automatically locks/unlocks the fuel filler flap.

i In case the central locking system does not release the fuel filler flap, or the opening mechanism is clamping, contact Roadside Assistance or an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

The fuel filler flap is located on the right-hand side of the vehicle towards the rear.



▶ Turn off the engine.

i Leaving the engine running and the fuel filler cap open can cause the yellow engine malfunction indicator lamp to illuminate.

For more information, see also "Practical hints" (▷ page 394).

▶ Open the driver's door. This puts the starter switch in position **0**, same as with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch. The driver's door then can be closed again.

or

▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

▶ **Opening:** Press fuel filler flap ① at the point indicated by the arrow.

▶ Turn fuel filler cap ② counterclockwise.

▶ Take off fuel filler cap ②.

! The fuel filler cap is tethered to the fuel filler neck. Do not drop the cap. It could damage the vehicle paint finish.

▶ Secure fuel filler cap ② by clipping the plastic tether into hook ③ on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

▶ Fully insert filler nozzle unit and refuel.

▶ Only fill your tank until the filler nozzle unit cuts out – **do not top off or overfill**.

▶ **Closing:** Turn fuel filler cap ② clockwise until it audibly engages.

i Close the fuel filler flap before locking the vehicle. Otherwise the flap locking pin will prevent closing the fuel filler flap.

▶ Close fuel filler flap ①.

Check regularly and before a long trip

For information on quantities and requirements of operating agents, see "Fuels, coolants, lubricants, etc." (▷ page 425).

Check the following:

- Engine oil level (▷ page 323)
- Tire inflation pressure (▷ page 329)
- Coolant level (▷ page 324)

- Vehicle lighting (▷ page 400)
- Washer system and headlamp cleaning system (▷ page 325)
- Brake fluid level (▷ page 325)

Engine compartment

Hood

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not pull the release lever while the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise the hood could be forced open by passing air flow.

This could cause the hood to come loose and injure you and/or others.

Opening

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not open the hood when the engine is overheated. You could be seriously injured. Observe the coolant temperature display to determine whether the engine may be overheated. If you see flames or smoke coming from the engine compartment, move away from the vehicle. Wait until the engine has cooled. If necessary, call the fire department.

⚠ **Warning!**

You could be injured when the hood is open – even when the engine is turned off.

Parts of the engine can become very hot. To prevent burns, let the engine cool completely before touching any components on the vehicle. Comply with all relevant safety precautions.

⚠ **Warning!**

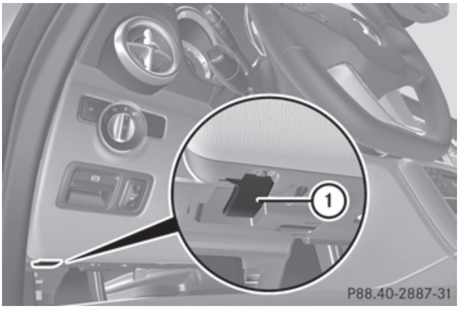
To help prevent personal injury, stay clear of moving parts when the hood is open and the engine is running.

The radiator fan may continue to run for approximately 30 seconds or may even restart after the engine has been turned off. Stay clear of fan blades.

⚠ **Warning!**

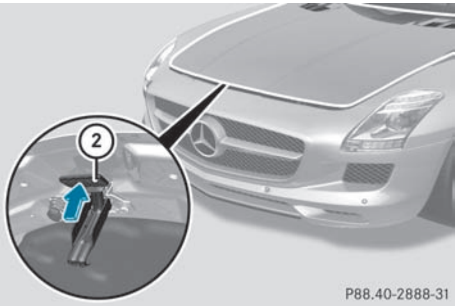
The engine is equipped with a transistorized ignition system. Because of the high voltage it is dangerous to touch any components (ignition coils, spark plug sockets, diagnostic socket) of the ignition system

- with the engine running
- while starting the engine
- when the ignition is switched on and the engine is turned manually



▶ Pull hood lock release lever ①.
The hood is unlocked.

! Never open the hood if the wiper arms are folded forward away from the windshield. Otherwise the windshield wipers or the hood could be damaged.



▶ Push handle ② under the hood upwards.

▶ Pull up on the hood and then release it.
The hood will be held open at shoulder height by gas-filled struts automatically.

Closing

⚠ **Warning!**

When closing the hood, use extreme caution not to catch hands or fingers. Be careful that you do not close the hood on anyone.

Make sure the hood is securely engaged before driving off. Do not continue driving if the hood can no longer engage after an accident, for example. The hood could otherwise come loose while the vehicle is in motion and injure you and/or others.

- Let the hood drop from a height of approximately 8 in (20 cm).
- Check to make sure the hood is fully closed.

  If you can raise the hood at a point above the headlamps, then it is not properly closed. Open it again and let it drop with somewhat greater force.

Engine oil

The amount of oil your engine consumes will depend on a number of factors, including driving style. Increased oil consumption can occur when the vehicle is new or the vehicle is driven frequently at higher engine speeds.

Engine oil consumption checks should only be made after the vehicle break-in period.

! Do not use any special lubricant additives, as these may damage the drive assemblies. Using special additives not approved by Mercedes-Benz may cause damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

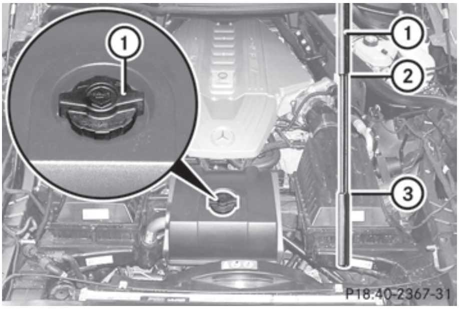
For further information contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Notes on checking engine oil level

- Park the vehicle on level ground.
- Turn off the engine at operating temperature after 30 seconds of idling.

Checking engine oil level

- Open the hood (▷ page 322).



- Unscrew oil filler cap ① with integrated oil dipstick.
- Wipe oil dipstick clean.
- Screw filler cap ① back on as far as it will go.
- Unscrew oil filler cap ① once more and read the oil dipstick.

  The oil level is correct when it is between lower (min) mark ③ and upper (max) mark ② of oil dipstick ①.

ⓘ The filling quantity between the upper and lower marks on the oil dipstick is approximately 1.6 US qt. (1.5 l).

- If necessary, add engine oil.

For more information on engine oil, see “Fuels, coolants, lubricants etc.” (▷ page 425).

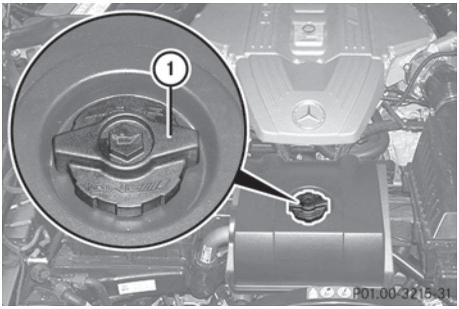
For information on messages in the multifunction display concerning engine oil, see the “Practical hints” section (▷ page 383).

Adding engine oil

! Only use approved engine oils and oil filters required for vehicles with Maintenance System. For a listing of approved engine oils and oil filters, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

The following will result in engine or emission control system damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty:

- Using engine oils and oil filters of specification other than those expressly required for the Maintenance System.
- Changing of oil and oil filter at change intervals longer than those called for by the Maintenance System.
- Using any oil additives.



▶ Unscrew oil filler cap ① with integrated oil dipstick.

▶ Add engine oil as required. Be careful not to overfill with oil.

Be careful not to spill any oil when adding. Avoid environmental damage caused by oil entering the ground or water.

! Excess oil must be siphoned or drained off. It could cause damage to the engine and emission control system not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

▶ Screw filler cap ① back on filler neck. Make sure the filler cap engages.

For more information on engine oil, see the "Technical data" section (▷ page 425) and (▷ page 426).

Transmission fluid level

The transmission fluid level does not need to be checked. If you notice transmission fluid loss or gearshifting malfunctions, have an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center check the transmission.

Coolant level

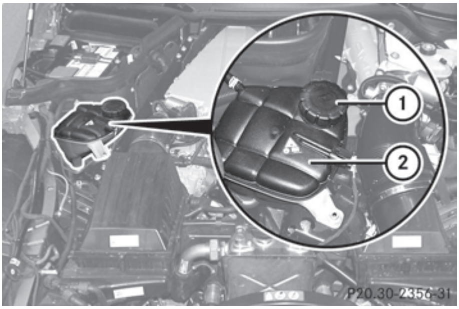
The engine coolant is a mixture of water and anticorrosion/antifreeze.

When checking the coolant level, the vehicle must be parked on level ground, and the coolant temperature must be below 158℉ (70℃).

⚠ **Warning!**

In order to avoid any potentially serious burns:

- Use extreme caution when opening the hood if there are any signs of steam or coolant leaking from the cooling system, or if the coolant temperature display indicates that the coolant is overheated.
- Do not remove the cap on the coolant expansion tank if the coolant temperature is above 158℉ (70℃). Allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap. The coolant expansion tank contains hot fluid and is under pressure.
- Using a rag, slowly open the cap approximately $^1/_2$ turn counterclockwise to relieve excess pressure. If opened immediately, scalding hot fluid and steam will be blown out under pressure.
- Do not spill antifreeze on hot engine parts. Antifreeze contains ethylene glycol which may burn if it comes into contact with hot engine parts.



- ▶ Using a rag, slowly open cap ① approximately $^{1}/_{2}$ turn counterclockwise to relieve excess pressure.
- ▶ Continue turning cap ① counterclockwise and remove it.

  The coolant level is correct if the level

  - for cold coolant: reaches the top of the mark (plastic bridge) in coolant expansion tank ②
  - for warm coolant: is approximately 0.6 in (1.5 cm) higher
- ▶ Add coolant as required.
- ▶ Screw cap ① back on and tighten it.

For more information on coolant, see the "Technical data" section (▷ page 425) and (▷ page 428).

Washer system and headlamp cleaning system

⚠ **Warning!**

Washer solvent/antifreeze is highly flammable. Do not spill washer solvent/antifreeze on hot engine parts, because it may ignite and burn. You could be seriously burned.

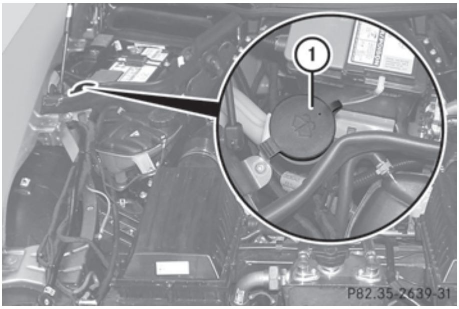
! Always use washer solvent/antifreeze where temperatures may fall below freezing point. Failure to do so could result in damage to the washer system/fluid reservoir.

! Only use washer fluid which is suitable for plastic lenses. Improper washer fluid can damage the plastic lenses of the headlamps.

! Do not use distilled or deionized water in the washer fluid reservoir. Otherwise, the washer fluid level sensor could be damaged.

Fluid for the washer system and the headlamp cleaning system is supplied from the washer fluid reservoir.

During all seasons, use MB Windshield Washer Concentrate "MB SummerFit". Mix it with water or premixed washer solvent/antifreeze depending on the ambient temperature (▷ page 425).



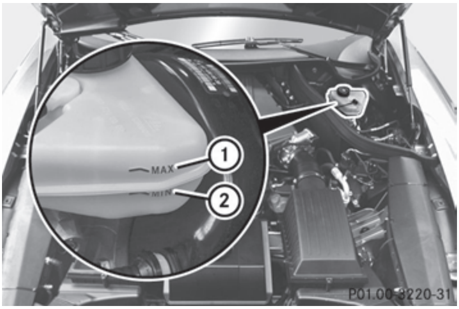
- ▶ **Opening washer fluid reservoir:** Pull tab of cap ① upwards.
- ▶ Refill the washer fluid reservoir.
- ▶ **Closing washer fluid reservoir:** Press cap ① onto filler hole until it engages.

For more information, see "Washer system and headlamp cleaning system" (▷ page 425).

Brake fluid level

! If you find that the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir has fallen to the minimum mark or below, have the brake system checked for brake pad thickness and leaks immediately. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately. Do not add brake fluid as this will not solve the problem. For more information, see "Practical hints".

When checking the brake fluid level, the vehicle must be parked on level ground.



The brake fluid level is correct when it is between lower mark (MIN) ② and upper mark (MAX) ① of the brake fluid reservoir.

Tires and wheels

Safety notes

Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for information on tested and recommended rims and tires for summer and winter operation. They can also offer advice concerning tire service and purchase.

⚠ **Warning!**

Replace rims or tires with the same designation, manufacturer and type as shown on the original part. For further information contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. If incorrectly sized rims and tires are mounted, the wheel brakes or suspension components can be damaged. Also, the operating clearance of the wheels and the tires may no longer be correct.

⚠ **Warning!**

Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire tread is worn to minimum tread depth, or if the tires have sustained damage, replace them.

When replacing rims, only use genuine Mercedes-Benz wheel bolts specified for the particular rim type. Failure to do so can result in the bolts loosening and possibly an accident.

Retreaded tires are not tested or recommended by Mercedes-Benz, since previous damage cannot always be recognized on retreads. The operating safety of the vehicle cannot be assured when such tires are used.

⚠ **Warning!**

If you feel a sudden significant vibration or ride disturbance, or you suspect that possible damage to your vehicle has occurred, you should turn on the hazard warning flashers, carefully slow down, and drive with caution to an area which is a safe distance from the road.

Inspect the tires and the vehicle underbody for possible damage. If the vehicle or tires appear unsafe, have the vehicle towed to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or tire dealer for repairs.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not drive with a flat tire. A flat tire affects the ability to steer or brake the vehicle. You could lose control of the vehicle. Continued driving with a flat tire or driving at high speed with a flat tire will cause excessive heat build-up and possibly a fire.

Important guidelines

- Only use sets of tires and rims of the same type and make.
- Tires must be of the correct size for the rim.
- Break in new tires for approximately 60 miles (100 km) at moderate speeds.
- Regularly check the tires and rims for damage. Dented or bent rims can cause tire inflation pressure loss and damage to the tire beads.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded, check tire inflation pressure and correct as required.
- Do not allow your tires to wear down too far. Adhesion properties on wet roads are

sharply reduced at tread depths of less than $^1/_8$ in (3 mm).

- When replacing individual tires, you should mount new tires on the front wheels first (on vehicles with same-sized wheels all around).

Recommended tire inflation pressure

⚠ Warning!

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.

Do not overload the tires by exceeding the specified load limit as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar. Overloading the tires can overheat them, possibly causing a blowout. Overloading the tires can also result in handling or steering problems, or brake failure.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Tire and Loading Information placard located on the driver's door B-pillar (▷ page 334).

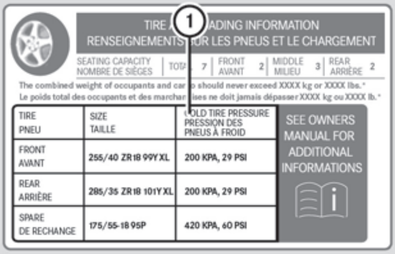
The tire inflation pressure should be checked regularly. Only adjust the tire inflation pressure on cold tires. The tires can be considered cold if the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Depending on the ambient temperature, the driving speed and the tire load, the tire temperature changes. When the tire temperature changes by 18°F (10°C), the tire inflation pressure will change by approximately 10 kPa (0.1 bar, 1.5 psi). Keep this in mind when checking tire inflation pressure on warm tires and adjust the tire pressure only if the tire inflation pressure is too low for the current operating conditions. If you check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are warm, the reading will be higher than the cold reading. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the specified cold tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the tire will be underinflated.

Follow recommended cold tire inflation pressures listed on Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar.

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best handling, tread life and riding comfort.

In addition to the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar, also consult the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the filler flap for any additional information pertaining to special driving situations. For more information, see "Important notes on tire inflation pressure" (▷ page 328).

ⓘ Data shown on Tire and Loading Information placard example are for illustration purposes only. Tire data are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in the following illustration. Refer to Tire and Loading Information placard on vehicle for actual data specific to your vehicle.



TIRE A ADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS UR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE SIÈGES | TOTA 7 | FRONT AVANT 2 | MIDDLE MILIEU 3 | REAR ARRIÈRE 2

The combined weight of occupants and car o should never exceed XXXX kg or XXXX lbs.*
Le poids total des occupants et des marchar ises ne doit jamais dépasser XXXX kg ou XXXX lb.*

TIRE PNEU	SIZE TAILLE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
FRONT AVANT	255/40 ZR18 99Y XL	200 KPA, 29 PSI
REAR ARRIÈRE	285/35 ZR18 101Y XL	200 KPA, 29 PSI
SPARE DE RECHANGE	175/55-18 95P	420 KPA, 60 PSI

SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATIONS

P40.00-2133-31

The Tire and Loading Information placard lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures ① for maximum loaded vehicle weight. The tire inflation pressures listed apply to the tires installed as original equipment.

Important notes on tire inflation pressure

Warning!

If the tire inflation pressure drops repeatedly, check the tires for punctures from foreign objects and/or whether air is leaking from the valves or from around the rim.

Tire temperature and tire inflation pressure are also increased while driving, depending on the driving speed and the tire load.

If you will be driving your vehicle at high speeds of 100 mph (160 km/h) or higher, where it is legal and conditions allow, consult the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the fuel filler flap on how to adjust the cold tire inflation pressure. If you do not adjust the tire inflation pressure, excessive heat can build up and result in sudden tire failure.

If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressure, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

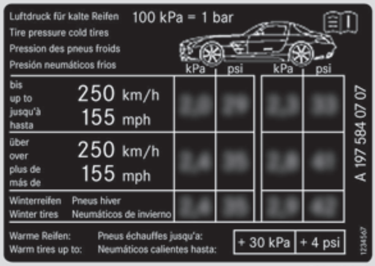
ⓘ Driving comfort may be reduced when the tire inflation pressure is adjusted to the value for speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) as specified on the tire inflation pressure label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Make sure to readjust the tire inflation pressure for normal driving speeds.

Supplemental tire inflation pressure information for different loading conditions of the vehicle can be found on the tire inflation pressure label. The tire inflation pressure label is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Unless specified otherwise, the tire inflation pressures on the tire inflation pressure label are valid for all approved, factory-equipped tires.

ⓘ Data shown on tire inflation pressure label examples are for illustration purposes only. Tire inflation pressure data are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in the following illustrations. Refer to the tire inflation pressure label on vehicle for actual data specific to your vehicle.


Luftdruck für kalte Reifen
Tire pressure cold tires
Pression des pneus froids
Presión neumáticos frios
100 kPa = 1 bar
kPa
psi
kPa
psi
bis
up to
jusqu'à
hasta
250 km/h
155 mph
über
over
plus de
más de
250 km/h
155 mph
Winterreifen
Winter tires
Pneus hiver
Neumáticos de invierno
Warme Reifen:
Warm tires up to:
Pneus échauffes jusqu'a:
Neumáticos calientes hasta:
+ 30 kPa
+ 4 psi
A 197 584 07 07
1234567

P40.00-2180-31

Potential problems associated with underinflated and overinflated tires

Underinflated tires

Warning!

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Underinflated tires can

- cause excessive and uneven tire wear
- adversely affect fuel economy
- lead to tire failure from being overheated
- adversely affect handling characteristics

Overinflated tires

Warning!

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.

Overinflated tires can

- adversely affect handling characteristics
- cause uneven tire wear
- be more prone to damage from road hazards
- adversely affect ride comfort
- increase stopping distance

Checking tire inflation pressure

Safety notes

⚠ **Warning!**

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.

Do not overload the tires by exceeding the specified load limit as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar. Overloading the tires can overheat them, possibly causing a blowout. Overloading the tires can also result in handling or steering problems, or brake failure.

Check the tire inflation pressure at least once a month.

Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold.

Checking tire inflation pressure manually

Follow the steps below to achieve correct tire inflation pressure:

▶ Remove the cap from the valve on one tire.

▶ Firmly press a tire gauge onto the valve.

▶ Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire gauge and check against the recommended tire inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar (▷ page 334). If necessary, add air to achieve the recommended tire inflation pressure.

▶ If you have overfilled the tire, release tire inflation pressure by pushing the metal stem of the valve with e.g. a tip of a pen. Then recheck the tire inflation pressure with the tire gauge.

▶ Install the valve cap.

▶ Repeat this procedure for each tire.

Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System (Advanced TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with the Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System (Advanced TPMS). It measures the tire inflation pressure in the vehicle's tires and issues warnings in case of pressure loss in one or more of the tires.

The TPMS is equipped with a combination low tire pressure/TPMS malfunction telltale (USA) or a low tire pressure telltale (Canada) in the instrument cluster. Depending on how the telltale illuminates, it indicates a low tire pressure condition or a malfunction in the TPMS system itself:

- If the telltale illuminates continuously, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. There is no malfunction in the TPMS.
- USA only: If the telltale flashes for 60 seconds and then stays illuminated, the TPMS system itself is not operating properly.

The TPMS only functions on wheels that are equipped with the proper electronic sensors.

⚠ **Warning!**

The TPMS does not indicate a warning for wrongly selected inflation pressures. Always adjust tire inflation pressure according to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the supplemental tire inflation pressure information on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

The TPMS is not able to issue a warning due to a sudden dramatic loss of pressure (e.g. tire blowout caused by a foreign object). In this case bring the vehicle to a halt by carefully applying the brakes and avoiding abrupt steering maneuvers.

⚠ **Warning!**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked at least once a month when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar or the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the fuel filler flap. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard or the tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

USA only:

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of incompatible replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

ℹ USA only:

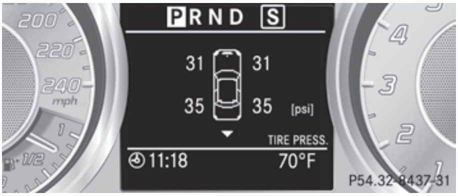
If a condition causing the TPMS to malfunction develops, it may take up to 10 minutes for the system to signal a malfunction using the TPMS telltale flashing and illumination sequence.

The telltale extinguishes after a few minutes driving if the malfunction has been corrected.

Tire pressure inquiries are made using the multifunction display. The current tire inflation pressure for each tire appears in the multifunction display after a few minutes of driving.

ℹ Possible differences between the readings of a tire pressure gauge of an air hose, e.g. gas station equipment, and the vehicle's control system can occur. The tire pressure displayed by the control system apply to sea level. In high-altitude locations, the reading on a tire pressure gauge will be higher than the reading issued by the vehicle's control system. Do not reduce the tire inflation pressure under such circumstances.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press button ◀ or ▶ on the multifunction steering wheel to select the Service menu (▷ page 281).
- Press button ▲ or ▼ to select Tire Pressure.
- Press button OK.
  The current inflation pressure for each tire appears in the multifunction display.



Example illustration

When the vehicle has been parked for longer than 20 minutes, the message Tire pressures will be displayed after driving a few minutes appears in the multifunction display.

The TPMS recognizes new wheels or sensors automatically after the learn-in phase. As long as the tire inflation pressure values cannot be allocated to the individual wheels, the message Tire Pressure Monitor Active appears. Despite this message, the tire inflation pressure values are monitored already.

ℹ Operating radio transmission equipment (e.g. wireless headsets, two-way radios) in or near the vehicle could cause the TPMS to malfunction.

ℹ USA only:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

ℹ Canada only:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

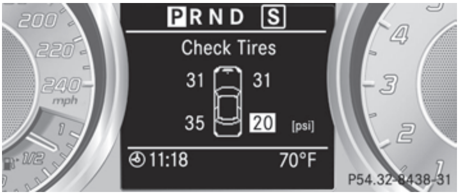
1. This device may not cause interference, and

2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Any unauthorized modification to this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Tire inflation pressure warnings

If the system detects a significant loss of tire inflation pressure in one or more than one tire, a message appears in the multifunction display. In addition, an acoustic warning sounds and the low tire pressure telltale in the instrument cluster comes on.



Example illustration

The respective tire is indicated by a red rectangle.

Restarting Advanced TPMS

⚠ **Warning!**

It is the driver's responsibility to set the tire inflation pressure to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure. Underinflated tires affect the ability to steer or brake the vehicle. You might lose control over the vehicle.

When you restart the TPMS, the system sets new reference values for each tire.

The TPMS must be restarted when you have adjusted the tire inflation pressure to a new level (e.g. because of different load or driving conditions). The TPMS is then recalibrated to the current tire inflation pressures.

ℹ Canada only:
The TPMS usually recognizes tire pressure adjustments and sets new reference values automatically. You can, however, restart the TPMS manually as described.

Restart the TPMS after adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the inflation pressure recommended for the vehicle operating condition. Tire inflation pressure should only be adjusted on cold tires. Observe the recommended tire inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar. Some vehicles may have supplemental tire inflation pressure information for driving at high speeds or for vehicle loads less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition. If such information is provided, it can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

▶ Using the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar (▷ page 334) or the supplemental tire inflation pressure information on the inside of the fuel filler flap, make sure the tire inflation pressure of all four tires is correct.

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ on the multifunction steering wheel to select the `Service` menu.

▶ Press button ▲ or ▼ on the multifunction steering wheel to select `Tire Pressure`.

▶ Press button OK.
The current inflation pressure for each tire appears in the multifunction display or the following message appears in the multifunction display:
`Tire pressures`
`will be displayed`
`after driving`
`a few minutes`

▶ Press button ▼.
The following message appears in the multifunction display:
`Use Current`
`Pressures as New`
`Reference Values`
`Press 'OK' to Confirm`

▶ Press button OK.
The following message appears in the multifunction display:
`Tire Press. Monitor`
`Restarted`
After driving a few minutes the system verifies that the current tire inflation pressures are within the system's specified range. Afterwards the current tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values and then monitored.

▶ **If you wish to cancel:** Press button ↰.

or

▶ Press button ▲ to exit the menu screen.

ℹ When the wheel positions have been changed, the inflation pressure of a tire may be displayed for the wrong position temporarily. After driving for a few minutes, the inflation pressure will be shown for the correct position.

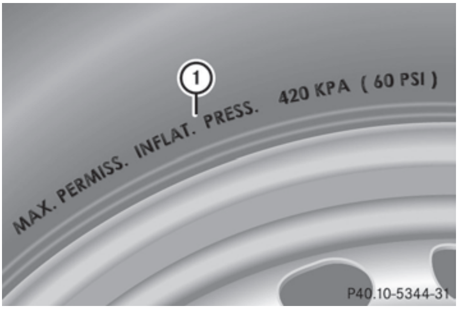
Maximum tire inflation pressure

⚠ Warning!

Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure. Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.


①
MAX. PERMISS. INFLAT. PRESS. 420 KPA (60 PSI)
P40.10-5344-31

ⓘ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

This is the maximum permissible tire inflation pressure ① for the tire.

Always follow the recommended tire inflation pressure (▷ page 327) for proper tire inflation.

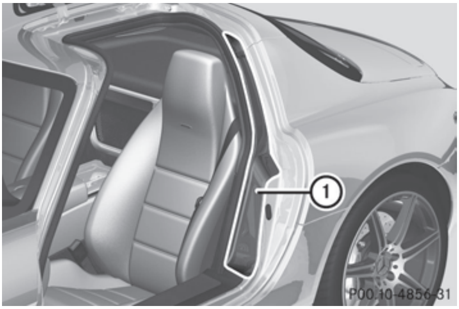
Loading the vehicle

Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry.

(1) The Tire and Loading Information placard can be found on the driver's door B-pillar. This placard tells you important information about the number of people that can be in the vehicle and the total weight that can be carried in the vehicle. It also contains information on the proper size and recommended tire inflation pressures for the original equipment tires on your vehicle.

(2) The certification label, also found on the driver's door B-pillar. It tells you about the gross weight capacity of your vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. The certification label also tells you about the front and rear axle weight capacity, called the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

The GAWR is the total allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). Never exceed the GVWR or GAWR for either the front axle or rear axle.



① Driver's door B-pillar

Following is a discussion on how to work with the information contained on the Tire and Loading Information placard with regards to loading your vehicle.

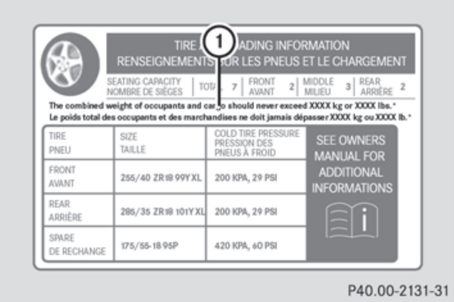
Tire and Loading Information

⚠ Warning!

Do not overload the tires by exceeding the specified load limit as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar. Overloading the tires can overheat them, possibly causing a blowout. Overloading the tires can also result in handling or steering problems, or brake failure.

Tire and Loading Information placard

ℹ Data shown on Tire and Loading Information placard example are for illustration purposes only. Load limit data are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in the following illustration. Refer to Tire and Loading Information placard on vehicle for actual data specific to your vehicle.


1
TIRE ADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS UR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE SIÈGES
TOTAL 7
FRONT AVANT 2
MIDDLE MILIEU 3
REAR ARRIÈRE 2
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXXX kg or XXXX lbs.*
Le poids total des occupants et des marchandises ne doit jamais dépasser XXXX kg ou XXXX lb.*
TIRE PNEU
SIZE TAILLE
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
FRONT AVANT
255/40 ZR18 99Y XL
200 KPA, 29 PSI
REAR ARRIÈRE
285/35 ZR18 101Y XL
200 KPA, 29 PSI
SPARE DE RECHANGE
175/55-18 95P
420 KPA, 60 PSI
SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATIONS
P40.00-2131-31

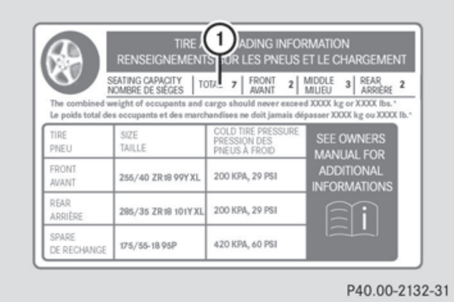
The Tire and Loading Information placard showing load limit information ① is located on the driver's door B-pillar (▷ page 334).

▶ Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kilograms or XXX lbs." on the Tire and Loading Information placard.

The combined weight of all occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue load (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced in that statement.

Seating capacity

ℹ Data shown on Tire and Loading Information placard example are for illustration purposes only. Seating capacity data are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in the following illustration. Refer to Tire and Loading Information placard on vehicle for actual data specific to your vehicle.


1
TIRE ADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS UR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE SIÈGES
TOTAL 7
FRONT AVANT 2
MIDDLE MILIEU 3
REAR ARRIÈRE 2
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXXX kg or XXXX lbs.*
Le poids total des occupants et des marchandises ne doit jamais dépasser XXXX kg ou XXXX lb.*
TIRE PNEU
SIZE TAILLE
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
FRONT AVANT
255/40 ZR18 99Y XL
200 KPA, 29 PSI
REAR ARRIÈRE
285/35 ZR18 101Y XL
200 KPA, 29 PSI
SPARE DE RECHANGE
175/55-18 95P
420 KPA, 60 PSI
SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATIONS
P40.00-2132-31

The seating capacity gives you important information on the number of occupants that can be in the vehicle. The Tire and Loading Information placard showing seating capacity ① is located on the driver's door B-pillar (▷ page 334).

Steps for determining correct load limit

The following steps have been developed as required of all manufacturers under Title 49, Code of U.S. Federal Regulations, Part 575 pursuant to the "National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966".

▶ **Step 1:** Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's Tire and Loading Information placard.

▶ **Step 2:** Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

- **Step 3:** Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX lbs.
- **Step 4:** The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1 400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1 400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
- **Step 5:** Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
- **Step 6 (if applicable):** If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle (▷ page 337).

The following table shows examples on how to calculate total and cargo load capacities with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. The following examples use a load limit of 1 500 lbs. **This is for illustration purposes only.** Make sure you are using the actual load limit for your vehicle stated on the vehicle’s Tire and Loading Information placard (▷ page 335).

		Example 1	**Example 2**
Step 1	**Combined weight limit of occupants and cargo from Tire and Loading Information placard**	1 500 lbs	1 500 lbs
Step 2	**Number of occupants (driver and passengers)**	1	2
	Occupants weight	Occupant 1: 175 lbs	Occupant 1: 175 lbs Occupant 2: 195 lbs
	Combined weight of all occupants	175 lbs	370 lbs
Step 3	**Available cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (total load limit from Tire and Loading Information placard minus combined weight of all occupants)**	1 500 lbs - 175 lbs = 1 325 lbs	1 500 lbs - 370 lbs = 1 130 lbs

The higher the weight of all occupants, the less cargo and luggage load capacity is available.

For more information, see “Trailer tongue load” (▷ page 337).

Certification label

Even after careful determination of the combined weight of all occupants, cargo and the trailer tongue load (if applicable) (▷ page 337) as to not exceed the permissible load limit, you must make sure your vehicle never exceeds the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle. You can obtain the GVWR and

GAWR from the certification label. The certification label can be found on the driver's door B-pillar, see the "Technical data" section (▷ page 421).

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR): The total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all cargo, and the trailer tongue load (if applicable) must never exceed the GVWR.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR): The total allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear).

To assure that your vehicle does not exceed the maximum permissible weight limits (GVWR and GAWR for front and rear axle), have the loaded vehicle (including driver, passengers and all cargo and, if applicable, trailer fully loaded) weighed on a suitable commercial scale.

Trailer tongue load

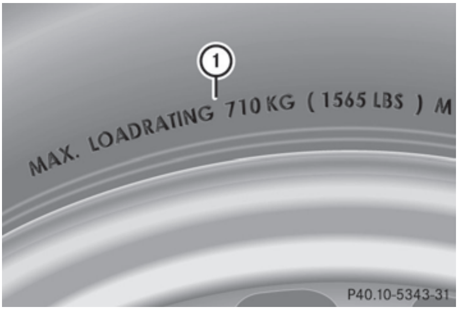
The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the load you can carry in your vehicle. If a trailer is towed, the tongue load must be added to the weight of all occupants riding and any cargo you are carrying in the vehicle. The tongue load typically is 10% of the trailer weight and everything loaded in it.

Your Mercedes-Benz has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their cargo. Mercedes-Benz does not recommend trailer towing with your vehicle.

Maximum tire load

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not overload the tires by exceeding the specified load limit as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar. Overloading the tires can overheat them, possibly causing a blowout. Overloading the tires can also result in handling or steering problems, or brake failure.



ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

The maximum tire load rating ① is the maximum weight the tires are designed to support.

For more information on tire load rating, see (▷ page 341).

For information on calculating total and cargo load capacities, see (▷ page 335).

Direction of rotation

Unidirectional tires offer added advantages, such as better hydroplaning performance. To benefit, however, you must make sure the tires rotate in the direction specified.

An arrow on the sidewall indicates the intended direction of rotation of the tire.

Spare wheels may be mounted against the direction of rotation (spinning) even with a unidirectional tire for temporary use only until the regular drive wheel has been repaired or replaced. Always observe and follow applicable temporary use restrictions and speed limitations indicated on the spare wheel.

Tire care and maintenance

⚠ **Warning!**

Regularly check the tires for damage. Damaged tires can cause tire inflation pressure loss. As a result, you could lose control of your vehicle.

Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire tread is worn to minimum tread depth, or if the tires have sustained damage, replace them.

Check the tire inflation pressure at least once a month. For more information on checking tire inflation pressure, see “Recommended tire inflation pressure” (▷ page 327).

Tire inspection

Every time you check the tire inflation pressure, you should also inspect your tires for the following:

- excessive treadwear (▷ page 338)
- cord or fabric showing through the tire’s rubber
- bumps, bulges, cuts, cracks or splits in the tread or side of the tire

Replace the tire if you find any of the above conditions.

Make sure you also inspect the spare tire periodically for condition and inflation. Spare tires will age and become worn over time even if never used, and thus should be inspected and replaced when necessary.

Life of tire

⚠ **Warning!**

Tires and spare tire should be replaced after 6 years, regardless of the remaining tread.

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including but not limited to:

- Driving style
- Tire inflation pressure
- Distance driven

Tread depth

⚠ **Warning!**

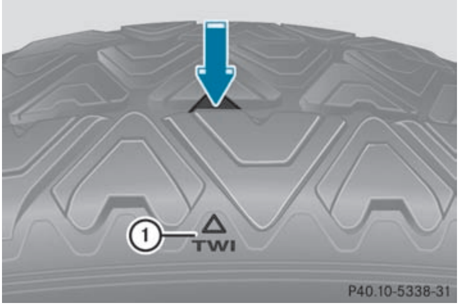
Although the applicable federal motor vehicle safety laws consider a tire to be worn when the treadwear indicators (TWI) become visible at approximately $^1/_{16}$ in (1.6 mm), we recommend that you do not allow your tires to wear down to that level. As tread depth approaches $^1/_8$ in (3 mm), the adhesion properties on a wet road are sharply reduced.

Depending upon the weather and/or road surface (conditions), the tire traction varies widely.

Do not allow your tires to wear down too far. Adhesion properties on wet roads are sharply reduced at tread depths of less than $^1/_8$ in (3 mm).

Treadwear indicators (TWI) are required by law. These indicators are located in six places on the tread circumference and become visible at a tread depth of approximately $^1/_{16}$ in (1.6 mm), at which point the tire is considered worn and should be replaced.

The recommended minimum tire tread depth for summer tires is $^1/_8$ in (3 mm). The recommended minimum tire tread depth for winter tires is $^1/_6$ in (4 mm).



Treadwear indicator ① appears as a solid band across the tread.

Storing tires

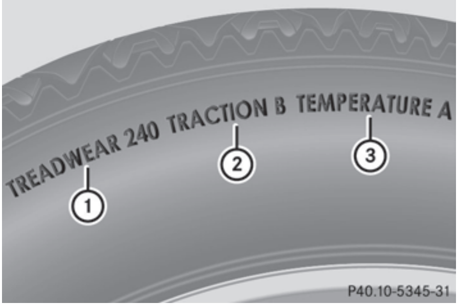
! Keep unmounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Cleaning tires

! Never use a round nozzle to power wash tires. The intense jet of water can result in damage to the tire.

Always replace a damaged tire.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards


TREADWEAR 240 TRACTION B TEMPERATURE A
①
②
③
P40.10-5345-31

The Uniform Tire Quality Grading is a U.S. Government requirement designed to give drivers consistent and reliable information regarding tire performance. Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear ①, traction ②, and temperature resistance ③. Although not a Government of Canada requirement, all tires made for sale in North America have these grades branded on the sidewall.

i For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

Quality grades can be found, where applicable, on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear	Traction	Temperature
200	AA	A

All passenger car tires must conform to federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified U.S. Government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half ($1\ ^1/_2$) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

⚠ **Warning!**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ **Warning!**

If ice has formed on the road, tire traction will be substantially reduced. Under such weather conditions, drive, steer and brake with extreme caution.

The safe speed on a wet, snow covered or icy road is always lower than on a dry road.

You should pay particular attention to the condition of the road whenever the outside temperature is close to the freezing point.

Mercedes-Benz recommends winter tires (▷ page 347) with a minimum tread depth of approximately $^{1}/_{6}$ in (4 mm) on all four wheels for the winter season to ensure normal balanced handling characteristics. On packed snow, they can reduce your stopping distance compared to summer tires. Stopping distance, however, is still considerably greater than when the road is not covered with snow or ice. Exercise appropriate caution.

! Avoid spinning of a drive wheel. This may cause serious damage to the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Temperature

⚠ **Warning!**

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause excessive heat build-up and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Rotating tires

⚠ **Warning!**

Rotate front and rear wheels only if the tires are of the same dimension.

If your vehicle is equipped with mixed-size tires (different tire dimensions front vs. rear), tire rotation is not possible.

⚠ **Warning!**

Have the tightening torque checked after changing a wheel. Wheels could become loose if not tightened with a torque of 96 lb-ft (130 Nm).

Only use genuine Mercedes-Benz wheel bolts specified for your vehicle's rims.

Tire rotation can be performed on vehicles with tires of the same dimension all around. If your vehicle is equipped with tires of the same dimension all around, tires can be rotated, observing a front-to-rear rotation pattern that will maintain the intended rotation (spinning) direction of the tire (▷ page 337).

In some cases, such as when your vehicle is equipped with mixed-size tires (different tire dimension front vs. rear), tire rotation is not possible.

If applicable to your vehicle's tire configuration, tires can be rotated according to the tire manufacturer's recommended intervals in the tire manufacturer's warranty pamphlet located in your vehicle literature portfolio. If none is available, tires should be rotated every 3 000 to 6 000 miles (5 000 to 10 000 km), or sooner if necessary, according to the degree of tire wear. The same rotation (spinning) direction must be maintained.

Rotate tires before the characteristic tire wear pattern becomes visible (shoulder wear on front tires and tread center wear on rear tires).

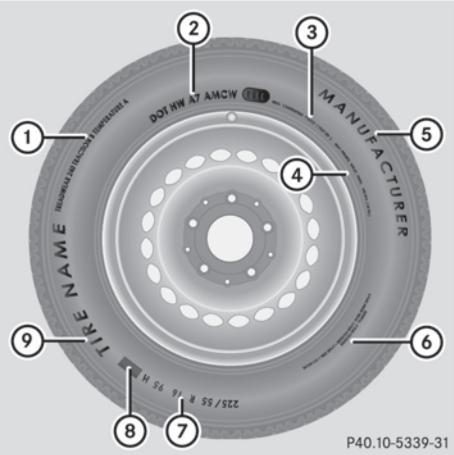
Thoroughly clean the mounting face of wheels and brake disks, i.e. the inner side of the wheels/tires, during each rotation. Check for and ensure proper tire inflation pressure.

For information on wheel change, see "Wheel change" (▷ page 405).

Tire labeling

Besides tire name (sales designation) and manufacturer name, a number of markings can be found on a tire.

Following are some explanations for the markings on your vehicle's tires:



① Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards (▷ page 339)

② DOT, Tire Identification Number (▷ page 344)

③ Maximum tire load (▷ page 337)

④ Maximum tire inflation pressure (▷ page 333)

⑤ Manufacturer

⑥ Tire ply material (▷ page 344)

⑦ Tire size designation, load and speed rating (▷ page 341)

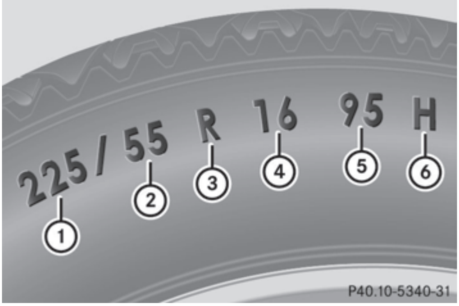
⑧ Load identification (▷ page 343)

⑨ Tire name

ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

For more information, see "Rims and tires" (▷ page 346).

Tire size designation, load and speed rating



① Tire width

② Aspect ratio in %

③ Radial tire code

④ Rim diameter

⑤ Load index

⑥ Speed symbol

ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

General: Depending on the design standards used, the tire size molded into the sidewall may have no letter or a letter preceding the tire size designation.

No letter preceding the size designation (as illustrated above): Passenger car tire based on European design standards.

Letter "P" preceding the size designation: Passenger car tire based on U.S. design standards.

Letter "LT" preceding the size designation: Light Truck tire based on U.S. design standards.

Letter "T" preceding the size designation: Temporary spare tires which are high pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only.

Tire width

Tire width ① indicates the nominal tire width in millimeters.

Aspect ratio

Aspect ratio ② is the dimensional relationship between tire section height and section width and is expressed in percentage. The aspect ratio is arrived at by dividing section height by section width.

Tire code

Tire code ③ indicates the tire construction type. The “R” stands for radial tire type. Letter “D” means diagonal or bias ply construction; letter “B” means belted-bias ply construction.

At the tire manufacturer’s option, any tire with a speed capability above 149 mph (240 km/h) can include a “ZR” in the size designation (for example: 245/40 ZR 18). For additional information, see “Tire speed rating” (▷ page 342).

Rim diameter

Rim diameter ④ is the diameter of the bead seat, not the diameter of the rim edge. The rim diameter is indicated in inches (in).

Load index

⚠ **Warning!**

The tire load rating must always be at least half of the GAWR of your vehicle. Otherwise, tire failure may be the result which may cause an accident and/or serious injury to you or others.

Always replace rims and tires with the same designation, manufacturer and type as shown on the original part.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not overload the tires by exceeding the specified load limit as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver’s door B-pillar. Overloading the tires can overheat them, possibly causing a blowout. Overloading the tires can also result in handling or steering problems, or brake failure.

Load index ⑤ is a numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can support.

For example, a load rating of 91 corresponds to a maximum load of 1356 lb (615 kg) the tire is designed to support. See also “Maximum tire load” (▷ page 337) where the maximum load associated with the load index is indicated in kilograms and lbs.

For additional information on the load index, see “Load identification” (▷ page 343).

Speed symbol

⚠ **Warning!**

Even when permitted by law, never operate a vehicle at speeds greater than the maximum speed rating of the tires.

Exceeding the maximum speed for which tires are rated can lead to sudden tire failure, causing loss of vehicle control and possibly resulting in an accident and/or serious personal injury and possible death, for you and for others.

Regardless of the tire speed rating, local speed limits should be obeyed. Use prudent driving speeds appropriate to prevailing conditions.

Speed symbol ⑥ indicates the approved maximum speed (tire speed rating) for the tire.

Summer tires

Index	Speed rating
Q	up to 100 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)
ZR...Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)

Index	Speed rating
ZR...(..Y)	above 186 mph (300 km/h)
ZR	above 149 mph (240 km/h)

- At the tire manufacturer's option, any tire with a speed capability above 149 mph (240 km/h) can include a "ZR" in the size designation (for example: 245/40 ZR18). To determine the maximum speed capability of the tire, the service description for the tire must be referred to.

  The service description is comprised of load index ⑤ and speed symbol ⑥.

  If your tire includes "ZR" in the size designation and no service description is given, the tire manufacturer must be consulted for the maximum speed capability.

  If a service description is given, the speed capability is limited by the speed symbol in the service description. Example: 245/40 ZR18 97Y. In this example, "97Y" is the service description. The letter "Y" designates the speed rating and the speed capability of the tire is limited to 186 mph (300 km/h).
- Any tire with a speed capability above 186 mph (300 km/h) must include a "ZR" in the size designation AND the service description must be placed in parenthesis. Example: 275/40 ZR 18 (99Y). The "(Y)" speed symbol in parenthesis designates the maximum speed capability of the tire as being above 186 mph (300 km/h). Consult the tire manufacturer for the actual maximum permissible speed of the tire.

All-season and winter tires

Index	Speed rating
Q M+S [10]	up to 100 mph (160 km/h)
T M+S [10]	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
H M+S [10]	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V M+S [10]	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)

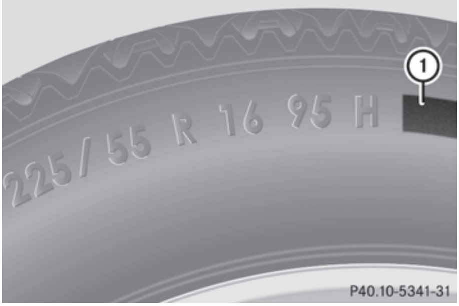
ℹ Not all M+S rated tires provide special winter performance. Make sure the tires you use show M+S and the mountain/snowflake ❄ marking on the tire sidewall. These tires meet specific snow traction performance requirements of the Rubber Manufacturers Association (RMA) and the Rubber Association of Canada (RAC) and have been designed specifically for use in snow conditions.

The factory equipped tires on your vehicle may have a tire speed rating above the maximum speed permitted by the electronic speed limiter.

Make sure your tires have the required tire speed rating as specified for your vehicle in the "Technical data" section (▷ page 424), for example when purchasing new tires.

If you are uncertain about the correct reading of the information given on a tire's sidewall, any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to assist you.

Load identification



ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

---

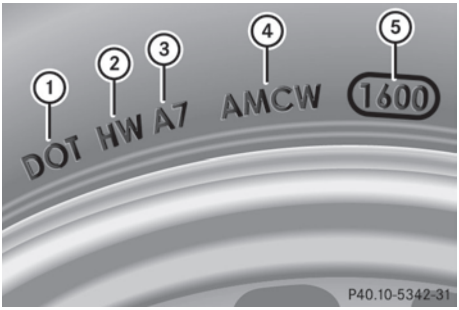
[10] or M+S ❄ for winter tires

In addition to the load index, special load identification ① may be molded into the tire sidewall following the letter designating the speed symbol ⑥ (▷ page 341).

- No specification given: absence of any text (like in above example) indicates a standard load (SL) tire.
- XL or Extra Load: designates an extra load (or reinforced) tire.
- Light Load: designates a light load tire.
- C, D, E: designates load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure.

DOT, Tire identification number (TIN)

U.S. tire regulations require each new tire manufacturer or tire retreader to mold a TIN into or onto a sidewall of each tire produced.



The TIN is a unique identifier. The TIN facilitates efforts by tire manufactures to notify purchasers in recall situations or other safety matters concerning tires. It gives purchasers the means to easily identify such tires.

The TIN is comprised of "Manufacturer's identification mark" ②, "Tire size" ③, "Tire type code" ④ and "Date of manufacture" ⑤.

ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

DOT (Department of Transportation)

Tire branding symbol ① denotes that the tire meets requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Manufacturer's identification mark

Manufacturer's identification mark ② denotes the tire manufacturer.

New tires have a mark with two symbols.

Retreaded tires have a mark with four symbols. For more information on retreaded tires, see (▷ page 326).

Tire size

Code ③ indicates the tire size.

Tire type code

Tire type code ④ may, at the option of the manufacturer, be used as a descriptive code for identifying significant characteristics of the tire.

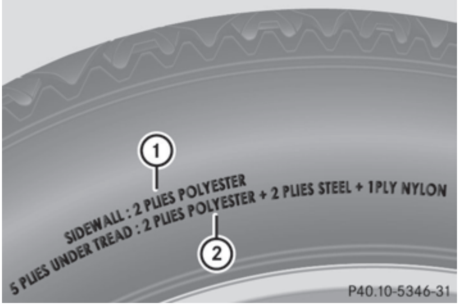
Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture ⑤ identifies the week and year of manufacture.

The first two figures identify the week, starting with "01" to represent the first full week of the calendar year. The second two figures represent the year.

For example, "3208" represents the 32nd week of 2008.

Tire ply material


①
SIDEWALL : 2 PLIES POLYESTER
5 PLIES UNDER TREAD : 2 PLIES POLYESTER + 2 PLIES STEEL + 1PLY NYLON
②
P40.10-5346-31

ℹ For illustration purposes only. Actual data on tires are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in above illustration.

This marking tells you about the type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall ① and under the tread ②.

Tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Air pressure

The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi), kilopascal (kPa), or bar.

Aspect ratio

Dimensional relationship between tire section height and section width expressed in percentage.

Bar

Metric unit for air pressure. There are 14.5038 pounds per square inch (psi) to 1 bar; there are 100 kilopascals (kPa) to 1 bar.

Bead

The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Cold tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure when your vehicle has been sitting for at least 3 hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Curb weight

The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, and, if so equipped, air conditioning and additional optional equipment, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT (Department of Transportation)

A tire branding symbol which denotes the tire meets requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

The GAWR is the maximum permissible axle weight. The gross vehicle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR for the front and rear axle indicated on the certification label located on the driver's door B-pillar.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

The GVW comprises the weight of the vehicle including fuel, tools, spare wheel, installed accessories, passengers and cargo and, if applicable, trailer tongue load. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the certification label located on the driver's door B-pillar.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum permissible vehicle weight of the fully loaded vehicle (weight of the vehicle including all options, passengers, fuel, and cargo and, if applicable, trailer tongue load). It is indicated on the certification label located on the driver's door B-pillar.

Kilopascal (kPa)

Metric unit for air pressure. There are 6.9 kPa to 1 psi; another metric unit for air pressure is bar. There are 100 kilopascals (kPa) to 1 bar.

Load index

Numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can support.

Maximum load rating

The maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, total load limit, and production options weight.

Maximum permissible tire inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire.

Normal occupant weight

The number of occupants the vehicle is designed to seat, multiplied by 68 kilograms (150 lb).

Occupant distribution

The distribution of occupants in a vehicle at their designated seating positions.

Production options weight

The combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kilograms) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

PSI (Pounds per square inch)

A standard unit of measure for air pressure.

Recommended tire inflation pressure

The recommended tire inflation pressure for normal driving conditions is listed on the Tire and Loading Information placard located on the driver's door B-pillar. It provides best handling, tread life and riding comfort. Supplemental information pertaining to special driving situations can be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Rim

A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall

The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

TIN (Tire Identification Number)

Unique identifier which facilitates efforts by tire manufacturers to notify purchasers in recall situations or other safety matters concerning tires and gives purchasers the means to easily identify such tires. The TIN is comprised of "Manufacturer's identification mark", "Tire size", "Tire type code" and "Date of manufacture".

Tire ply composition and material used

This indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

Tire speed rating

Part of tire designation (speed symbol); indicates the speed range for which a tire is approved.

Total load limit

Rated cargo and luggage load plus 68 kilograms (150 lb) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Traction

The adhesive friction of a tire on a surface on which it moves. The amount of grip provided.

Tread

The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear indicators

Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars" that show across the tread of a tire when only $^1/_{16}$ in (1.6 mm) of tread remains.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards

A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using U.S. government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

Load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing it by two.

Winter driving

General information

Have your vehicle winterized at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Winter tires

Always use winter tires at temperatures below 45℉ (7℃) and whenever wintry road conditions prevail. Not all M+S rated tires provide special winter performance. Make sure the tires you use show the mountain/snowflake 🏔 marking on the tire sidewall. These tires meet specific snow traction performance requirements of the Rubber Manufacturers Association (RMA) and the Rubber Association of Canada (RAC) and have been designed specifically for use in snow conditions. Use of winter tires is the only way to achieve the maximum effectiveness of your vehicle's driving safety systems such as the ABS and the ESC in winter operation.

For safe handling, make sure all mounted winter tires are of the same make and have the same tread design.

⚠ **Warning!**

Winter tires with a tread depth of less than $^{1}/_{6}$ in (4 mm) must be replaced. They are no longer suitable for winter operation.

For information on winter tires for your vehicle model, see the "Technical data" section (▷ page 424).

Always observe the speed rating of the winter tires installed on your vehicle.

After installing winter tires:

- ▶ Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust it if necessary (▷ page 329).
- ▶ Restart the Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System (▷ page 329).

ℹ Vehicle speeds of up to 149 mph (240 km/h) with winter tires of version 1: As opposed to the information given on the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the fuel filler flap, the tire inflation pressure can be reduced by

- front -30 kPa (0.3 bar, 4 psi)
- rear -90 kPa (0.6 bar, 9 psi)

The continuous-travel comfort increases while the fuel consumption may be increased slightly.

Snow chains

❗ Some tire sizes do not leave adequate clearance for snow chains. To help avoid serious damage to your vehicle or tires, make sure the use of snow chains is permissible as specified in the "Technical data" section of this Operator's Manual.

Snow chains should only be driven on snow-covered roads at speeds not to exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Remove chains as soon as possible when driving on roads without snow.

Observe the following guidelines when using snow chains:

- Use of snow chains is not permissible with all wheel/tire combinations (▷ page 424).
- Use snow chains in pairs and on rear wheels only. Follow the manufacturer's mounting instructions.

❗ If snow chains are mounted to the front wheels, they may scrape against the body or axle components. The tires or the vehicle could be damaged as a result.

- Only use snow chains that are approved by Mercedes-Benz. Any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to advise you on this subject.
- Use of snow chains may be prohibited depending on location. Always check local and state laws before installing snow chains.

ℹ When driving with snow chains, you may wish to switch off the ESC (▷ page 62) before setting the vehicle in motion. This will improve the vehicle's traction.

Winter driving instructions

⚠ **Warning!**

If the vehicle becomes stuck in snow, make sure snow is kept clear of the exhaust pipe and from around the vehicle with the engine running. Otherwise, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) gases may enter vehicle interior resulting in unconsciousness and death.

To assure sufficient fresh air ventilation, open a window slightly on the side of the vehicle not facing the wind.

⚠ **Warning!**

The outside temperature indicator is not designed to serve as an ice-warning device and is therefore unsuitable for that purpose.

Indicated temperatures just above the freezing point do not guarantee that the road surface is free of ice. The road may still be icy, especially in wooded areas or on bridges.

⚠ **Warning!**

On slippery road surfaces, never downshift in order to obtain braking action. This could result in drive wheel slip and reduced vehicle control. Your vehicle's ABS will not prevent this type of loss of control.

The most important rule for slippery or icy roads is to drive sensibly and to avoid abrupt acceleration, braking and steering maneuvers. Do not use the cruise control system under such conditions.

When the vehicle is in danger of skidding, shift the transmission to neutral position **N**. Try to keep the vehicle under control by corrective steering action.

ℹ For information on driving with snow chains, see "Snow chains" (▷ page 347).

Road salts and chemicals can adversely affect braking efficiency. Increased pedal force may become necessary to produce the normal brake effect.

Depressing the brake pedal periodically when traveling at length on salt-strewn roads can bring road-salt-impaired braking efficiency back to normal.

If the vehicle is parked after being driven on salt-treated roads, the braking efficiency should be tested as soon as possible after driving is resumed.

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure not to endanger any other road users when carrying out these braking maneuvers.

Driving instructions

Drive sensibly - save fuel

To save fuel you should:

- Keep tires at the recommended inflation pressures.
- Remove unnecessary loads.
- Allow engine to warm up under low load use.
- Avoid frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- Have all maintenance work performed at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Booklet and as required by the Maintenance system. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Fuel consumption is also increased by driving in cold weather, in stop-and-go traffic, on short trips and in mountainous areas.

Drinking and driving

⚠ **Warning!**

Drinking and driving and/or taking drugs and driving are very dangerous combinations. Even a small amount of alcohol or drugs can affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment.

The possibility of a serious or even fatal accident are greatly increased when you drink or take drugs and drive.

Do not drink or take drugs and drive or allow anyone to drive who has been drinking or taking drugs.

Pedals

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure absolutely no objects are obstructing the pedals' range of movement. Keep the driver's footwell clear of all obstacles. If there are any floormats or carpets in the footwell, make sure that the pedals still have sufficient clearance.

During sudden driving or braking maneuvers, the objects could get caught between the pedals. You could then no longer brake or accelerate. This could lead to accidents and injury.

Power assistance

⚠ **Warning!**

There is no power assistance for the steering and the brake when the engine is not running.

Steering and braking requires significantly more effort and you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.

Do not turn off the engine while the vehicle is in motion.

Brakes

Downhill grades

! When driving down long and steep grades, relieve the load on the brakes by shifting into a lower gear to use the engine's braking power. This helps prevent overheating of the brakes and reduces wear.

When using the engine's braking power, a drive wheel may not spin for an extended period of time, e.g. on slippery road surfaces. This may cause serious damage to the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Continuous or hard braking

⚠ **Warning!**

Resting your foot on the brake pedal will cause excessive and premature wear of the brake pads.

It can also result in the brakes overheating, thereby significantly reducing their effectiveness. It may not be possible to stop the vehicle in sufficient time to avoid an accident.

After hard braking, it is advisable to drive on for some time, rather than immediately park, so that the air stream will cool down the brakes faster.

Wet roads

⚠ **Warning!**

After driving in heavy rain for some time without applying the brakes or through water deep enough to wet brake components, the first braking action may be somewhat reduced and increased pedal pressure may be necessary to obtain expected brake effect. Maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front.

To help prevent brake disk corrosion after driving on wet or salt-covered roads, it is advisable to brake the vehicle with considerable force prior to parking. The heat generated serves to dry the brakes.

Salt-covered roads

⚠ **Warning!**

A layer of salt on the brake discs and the brake linings may cause a delay in the braking effect, resulting in a significantly increased braking distance, which could lead to an accident.

To avoid this danger, you should:

- occasionally brake carefully when you are driving on salt-covered roads, so that any layer of salt that may have built up on the brake discs and the brake linings is removed without putting other road users at risk
- maintain a greater distance to the vehicle ahead and drive with particular care
- carefully apply the brakes at the end of a trip and immediately after commencing a new trip, so that salt residues are removed from the brake disc

Brake service

! The brake fluid level in the reservoir may be too low if the red brake warning lamp in the instrument cluster comes on while the engine is running and an acoustic warning sounds. Observe additional messages in the multifunction display that may appear.

Brake pad wear or a leak in the system may be the reason for low brake fluid in the reservoir.

Have the brake system inspected immediately. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

All checks and service work on the brake system should be carried out by qualified technicians only. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Only install brake pads and use brake fluid recommended by Mercedes-Benz.

⚠ **Warning!**

If other than recommended brake pads are installed, or other than recommended brake fluid is used, the braking properties of the vehicle can be degraded to an extent that safe braking is substantially impaired. This could result in an accident.

! Because the ESC operates automatically, the engine and ignition must be shut off (KEYLESS-GO start/stop button in position **0** or **1**, or SmartKey in starter switch position **0** or **1**) when the electronic parking brake is being tested on a brake test dynamometer or when the vehicle is being towed with the rear axle raised.

Active braking action through the ESC may otherwise seriously damage the brake system which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

If your brake system is only subjected to moderate loads, you should occasionally test the effectiveness of the brakes by applying above-normal braking pressure at higher speeds. This will also enhance the grip of the brake pads.

⚠ **Warning!**

Make sure not to endanger any other road users when carrying out these braking maneuvers.

Refer to the description of the Brake Assist System (BAS) (▷ page 62).

High-performance brake system and ceramic brake system

⚠ **Warning!**

New vehicle brake pads and disks, and replacement brake pads and disks may take several hundred miles of driving until they provide optimum braking efficiency. Until that time, you may need to use increased brake pedal pressure while braking. Please be aware of this and adjust your driving and braking accordingly during this break-in period.

Excessive high-demand braking will cause correspondingly high brake wear. Please be attentive to the brake warning lamp in the instrument cluster and brake condition messages in the multifunction display. Especially for high performance driving, it is important to maintain and have the brake system checked regularly.

The high-performance brake system is designed to operate under the extremely high operating demands required to accommodate the performance capabilities of the vehicle.

The brakes may produce a squeaking-type noise depending on the

- vehicle speed
- brake force applied
- ambient conditions, e.g. temperature and humidity

As with any brake system, the wear of individual brake system components such as brake pads or disks strongly depends on your driving style and the conditions under which you operate the vehicle. Thus, a driving style calling for high-demand braking will cause your vehicle's brakes to wear more quickly.

Driving off

Warm up the engine smoothly. Do not place full load on the engine until the operating temperature has been reached.

! When driving off on a slippery surface, do not allow a drive wheel to spin for an extended period with the ESC switched off. Doing so may cause serious damage to the drivetrain which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! Simultaneously depressing the accelerator pedal and applying the brakes reduces engine performance and causes premature brake and drivetrain wear which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Hydroplaning

Depending on the depth of the water layer on the road, hydroplaning may occur, even at low speeds and with new tires. In heavy rain or when conditions indicate possible hydroplaning:

▶ Reduce vehicle speed.

▶ Avoid track grooves in the road.

▶ Apply brakes cautiously.

Standing water

! Do not drive through flooded areas. Before driving through water, determine its depth.

If you must drive through standing water, drive slowly to prevent water from entering the passenger compartment or the engine compartment. Water in these areas could cause damage to electrical components or wiring of the engine or transmission, or could result in water being ingested by the engine through the air intake causing severe internal engine damage. Any such damage is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Driving abroad

If you plan to drive the vehicle outside the U.S. or Canada, you should request dealer network information for your destination from any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Control and operation of radio transmitters

Safety notes

⚠ **Warning!**

Please do not forget that your primary responsibility is to drive the vehicle. A driver's attention to the road must always be his/her primary focus when driving. For your safety

▷▷

and the safety of others, we recommend that you pull over to a safe location and stop before placing or taking a telephone call.

If you choose to use the telephone[11] while driving, please use the hands-free device and only use the telephone when road, weather and traffic conditions permit. Some jurisdictions prohibit the driver from using a mobile telephone while driving a vehicle.

Only operate the COMAND[11] (Cockpit Management and Data System) if road, weather and traffic conditions permit. Otherwise, you may not be able to observe traffic conditions and could endanger yourself and others.

Bear in mind that at a speed of just 30 mph (approximately 50 km/h), your vehicle is covering a distance of 44 feet (approximately 14 m) every second.

Emission control

Certain systems of the engine serve to keep the toxic components of the exhaust gases within permissible limits required by law.

These systems will function properly only when maintained strictly according to factory specifications. Any adjustments on the engine should, therefore, be carried out only by qualified Mercedes-Benz Center authorized technicians.

Engine adjustments should not be altered in any way. Moreover, the specified service procedures must be carried out regularly according to Mercedes-Benz servicing requirements. For details refer to the Maintenance Booklet.

⚠ **Warning!**

Inhalation of exhaust gas is hazardous to your health. All exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), and inhaling it can cause unconsciousness and possible death.

Do not run the engine in confined areas (such as a garage) which are not properly ventilated. If you think that exhaust gas fumes are entering the vehicle while driving, have the cause determined and corrected immediately. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with at least one window fully open at all times.

Maintenance

Notes

The Maintenance System in your vehicle tracks the distance driven and the time elapsed since the last maintenance service. It calculates other maintenance service work required, and calls for the next maintenance service accordingly.

We strongly recommend that you have your vehicle serviced at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. Have it serviced in accordance with the Maintenance Booklet at the times called for by the maintenance service indicator.

ℹ Failure to have the vehicle maintained in accordance with the Maintenance Booklet and maintenance service indicator at the designated times/mileage will result in vehicle damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Maintenance service indicator message

Information on maintenance work and maintenance intervals are specified in the Maintenance Booklet. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center, or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only) for additional information.

The maintenance service indicator message will notify you when the next maintenance service is required.

---

[11] Observe all legal requirements.

Starting approximately 1 month before the next maintenance service is required, one of the following messages will appear in the multifunction display. The messages will appear while you are driving or when you switch on the ignition (example service A):

`Next Service A in XXXX mi (km)`

`Next Service A in XX days`

`Service A Due`

200
220
240
mph
1/2
PRND S
Next Service A
in 310 mi
ASSYST PLUS
11:18
70°F
4
3
2
1
P54.32-8439-31

An additional number or a further letter in combination with the maintenance type can be indicated. This indicates that further auxiliary maintenance work is required. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for more information.

Clearing the maintenance service indicator message

The maintenance service indicator message is cleared automatically

- after approximately 10 seconds when you switch on the ignition
- after approximately 10 seconds when reaching the service threshold while driving
- after approximately 30 seconds, once the suggested maintenance service term has passed

▶ **Clearing the maintenance service indicator message manually:** Press button ↩ or button OK on the multifunction steering wheel.
The standard display appears in the multifunction display.

Maintenance service term exceeded

If you have exceeded the suggested maintenance service term, you will see the following message in the multifunction display:

`Service A Exceeded by XXXXX mi (km)`

`Service A Exceeded by XXX days`

In addition, a signal sounds when the message appears.

Any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will reset the maintenance service indicator following a completed maintenance service.

Calling up the maintenance service indicator display

ⓘ The menu overview can be found on (▷ page 275).

You can call up the maintenance service indicator display at any time to check when the next maintenance service is required.

▶ Switch on the ignition.
The standard display of the control system appears (▷ page 275).

▶ Press button ◀ or ▶ on the multifunction steering wheel to select the `Service` menu.

▶ Press button ▼ or ▲ to select `ASSYST PLUS`.

▶ Press button OK on the multifunction steering wheel to confirm.
The maintenance service indicator display with the maintenance service deadline appears in the multifunction display.

ⓘ If the battery was disconnected, the days of disconnection will not be included in the count shown by the maintenance service indicator. To arrive at the true maintenance service deadline, you will need to subtract these days from the days shown in the maintenance service indicator message or maintenance service indicator display.

Resetting the maintenance service indicator

In the event that the maintenance service on your vehicle is not carried out at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center, you can have the maintenance service indicator reset.

The automotive maintenance facility carrying out the maintenance service will find the information for resetting the maintenance service indicator in the maintenance-relevant literature for your vehicle.

Such literature is available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or directly from Mercedes-Benz.

! If the maintenance service indicator was reset inadvertently, have an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center correct it.

Only reset the maintenance service indicator if the proper maintenance service has been performed. Not following the proper maintenance service as described in the Maintenance Booklet will result in engine damage and/or other vehicle damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Vehicle care

Cleaning and care of the vehicle

Notes

Regular and proper care will help to maintain the value of your vehicle.

⚠ **Warning!**

Many cleaning products can be hazardous. Some are poisonous, others are flammable. Always follow the instructions on the particular container. Always open your vehicle's doors or windows when cleaning the inside.

Never use fluids or solvents that are not designed for cleaning your vehicle.

Always lock away cleaning products and keep them out of reach of children.

! When cleaning the vehicle, do not use scouring agents. Never apply strong force and only use a soft, wet cloth or sponge. Otherwise you may scratch or damage the surface to be cleaned.

While in operation, even while parked, your vehicle is subjected to varying external influences which, if gone unchecked, can attack the paintwork as well as the vehicle underbody and cause lasting damage.

Such damage is caused not only by extreme and varying climatic conditions, but also by:

- Air pollution
- Road salt
- Tar
- Gravel and stone chipping

To avoid paint damage, you should immediately remove:

- Grease and oil
- Fuel
- Coolant
- Brake fluid
- Bird droppings
- Insects
- Tree resins etc.

Frequent washing reduces and/or eliminates the aggressiveness and potency of the above adverse influences.

More frequent washings are necessary to deal with unfavorable conditions:

- near the ocean
- in industrial areas (smoke, exhaust emissions)
- during winter operation

You should check your vehicle from time to time for stone chipping or other damage. Any damage should be repaired as soon as possible to prevent corrosion.

In doing so, do not neglect the underbody of the vehicle. A prerequisite for a thorough check is a washing of the underbody followed by a thorough inspection. Damaged areas need to be re-undercoated.

Your vehicle has been treated at the factory with a wax-base rustproofing in the body cavities which will last for the lifetime of the vehicle. Post-production treatment is neither necessary nor recommended by Mercedes-Benz because of the possibility of incompatibility between materials used in the production process and others applied later.

We have selected vehicle-care products and compiled recommendations which are specially matched to our vehicles and which always reflect the latest technology. You can obtain Mercedes-Benz approved vehicle-care products at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Scratches, corrosive deposits, corrosion or damage due to negligent or incorrect care cannot always be removed or repaired with the vehicle-care products recommended here. In such cases it is best to seek aid at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

The following topics deal with the cleaning and care of your vehicle and give important “how-to” information as well as references to Mercedes-Benz approved vehicle-care products.

Power washer

⚠ **Warning!**

Never use a round nozzle to power-wash tires. The intense jet of water can result in damage to the vehicle, especially the tires.

Damaged tires increase the risk of an accident. Always replace a damaged tire. Sudden loss of tire inflation pressure could cause you to lose control over the vehicle and cause an accident resulting into injury to you and/or others.

! Follow the instructions provided by the power washer manufacturer on maintaining a distance between the vehicle and the nozzle of the power washer.

Always keep the jet of water moving across the surface. Do not aim directly at electrical parts, electrical connectors, seals, or other rubber parts.

Tar stains

Quickly remove tar stains before they dry and become more difficult to remove. A tar remover is recommended.

Paintwork, painted body components

! Affixing stickers, magnets, adhesive tape or similar materials to painted body components may damage the paintwork.

Mercedes-Benz approved Paint Care should be applied when water drops on the paint surface do not “bead up”. This should normally be done every 3 to 5 months, depending on the climate and washing detergent used.

Mercedes-Benz approved Paint Cleaner should be applied if the paint surface shows signs of embedded dirt (i.e. loss of gloss).

Do not apply any of these products or wax if your vehicle is parked in the sun or if the hood is still hot.

▶ Use the appropriate MB-Touch-Up Stick for quick and provisional repairs of minor paint damage (i.e. chips from stones, vehicle doors, etc.).

Vehicles with mat paint

Your vehicle is painted with mat clear-coat paint. Observe the following notes to avoid paint damage caused by improper treatment.

ℹ Only use insect remover and car shampoo approved by Mercedes-Benz.

! Do not polish the vehicle. Polishing will brighten the paintwork.

Do not use paintwork cleaning agents, abrasives, polishing compounds, or wax for paintwork care. Such products are intended for use on high-polish surfaces. Using such products on mat paint causes severe damage, such as bright, spotted areas on the respective surface.

Have paintwork repairs performed at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Have stone chipping repairs as soon as possible.

Remove the following immediately if possible. Do not apply strong force.

- Soak insect remains with insect remover and rinse them of with water afterwards. Use a soft bristle toothbrush for remains that have not come off.
- Soak bird droppings with water and rinse them of with water afterwards. Use a soft bristle toothbrush for remains that have not come off.
- Remove tree resins, grease, oil, wax, and gasoline with commercially available benzine.
- Dab off tar splashes or tar stains with tar remover.

Engine cleaning

Prior to cleaning the engine compartment, make sure to protect electrical components and connectors from contact with water and cleaning agents.

Corrosion protection, such as MB Anticorrosion Wax should be applied to the engine compartment after every engine cleaning. Before applying, all control linkage bushings and joints should be lubricated. The poly-V-belt and all pulleys should be protected from any wax.

Vehicle washing

In the winter, thoroughly remove all traces of road salt as soon as possible.

When washing the vehicle underbody, do not forget to clean the inner sides of the wheels.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> After washing the vehicle, braking efficiency may be reduced. Reduced braking efficiency could cause an accident.
>
> Brake the vehicle significantly after washing the vehicle. Observe the traffic situation when doing so. The brake discs will warm up and dry faster. Drive carefully after washing the vehicle until the brakes have dried and you can notice that brake efficiency has been restored.

Hand-wash

- ▶ Do not use hot water or wash your vehicle in direct sunlight.
- ▶ Only use a soft, wet cloth or sponge to clean the vehicle.
- ▶ Only use a mild vehicle wash detergent, such as Mercedes-Benz approved Car Shampoo.
- ▶ Thoroughly spray the vehicle with a diffused jet of water.
- ▶ Do not spray directly towards the ventilation intake.
- ▶ Use plenty of water and rinse the sponge and chamois frequently.
- ▶ Rinse with clean water and dry with a chamois thoroughly.

  Do not allow cleaning agents to dry on the finish.

Automatic car wash

You can have your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash from the start. Brushless car washes are preferable.

- ▶ To protect the filter system, activate the air recirculation mode using button 🚗 on the climate control panel.

! Do not clean your vehicle in an automatic touchless car wash which uses caustic spray. Caustic spray will damage the paint or ornamental moldings.

If the vehicle is very dirty, prewash it before running it through the automatic car wash.

! Make sure the combination switch is set to wiper setting 0. Otherwise, the rain sensor could activate and cause the wipers to move unintentionally. This may lead to vehicle damage.

Due to the width of the vehicle, fold in exterior rear view mirrors prior to running the vehicle through an automatic car wash to prevent damage to the mirrors.

- **When taking the vehicle through an automatic conveyor-type car wash:** Make sure the transmission remains in neutral position **N**. Observe instructions, see "Shifting into neutral position **N**" (▷ page 263).

When leaving the automatic car wash, make sure the mirrors are folded out.

After running the vehicle through an automatic car wash, wipe any wax off of the windshield and the wiper blade inserts. This will prevent smears and reduce wiping noise which can be caused by residual wax on the windshield.

Ornamental moldings

- For regular cleaning and care of ornamental moldings, use a damp cloth.

! Do not use chrome cleaner on ornamental moldings. Although ornamental moldings may have chrome appearance, they could be made of anodized aluminum that will be damaged when cleaned with chrome cleaner. Instead, use a damp cloth to clean those ornamental moldings.

For very dirty ornamental moldings of which you are sure are chrome-plated, use a chrome cleaner. If in doubt whether an ornamental molding is chrome-plated, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

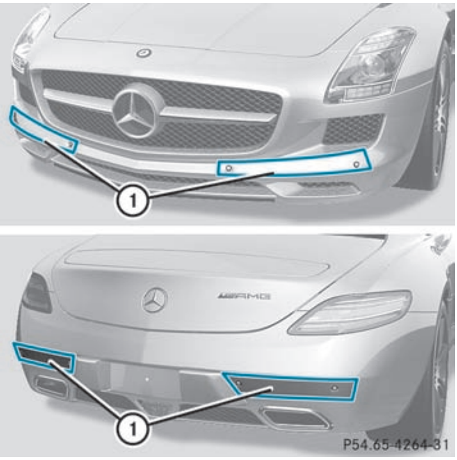
Lamp lenses

- Use a mild vehicle wash detergent, such as Mercedes-Benz approved Car Shampoo, with plenty of water.

! Only use window cleaning solutions that are suitable for plastic lamp lenses. Window cleaning solutions which are not suitable may damage the plastic lamp lenses of the headlamps. Therefore, do not use abrasives, solvents or cleaners that contain solvents.

Cleaning the Parktronic system sensors

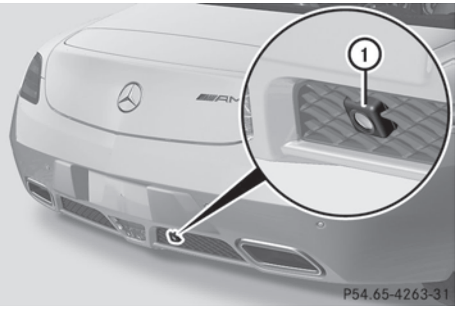
Parktronic system sensors are located in the front and rear bumper.



- Only clean Parktronic system sensors ① by hand.
- Use a mild vehicle wash detergent, such as Mercedes-Benz approved Car Shampoo, with plenty of water and a soft, non-scratching cloth to clean Parktronic system sensors ① on the bumpers.

! Applying strong pressure may damage the sensor covers.

Cleaning the rear view camera lens



- ▶ Only use clean water and a soft, non-scratching cloth to clean rear view camera lens ①.

Be careful not to apply wax to rear view camera lens ① when waxing the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wax using the Mercedes-Benz approved Car Shampoo with plenty of water.

! Do not clean the camera and the area around the camera

- with a high-pressure cleaner
- with a dry cloth and strong pressure
- with aggressive cleaning agents

You could otherwise damage the camera.

Cleaning the windows and the wiper blades

! The windshield wipers must be in a vertical position before folding them away from the windshield. They could otherwise damage the hood.

Never open the hood when the wiper arms are folded forward.

- ▶ Make sure the hood is fully closed.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Turn combination switch to wiper setting ▬ (▷ page 253).
- ▶ With wiper arms in vertical position, switch off the ignition.

⚠ **Warning!**

For safety reasons, switch off wipers and remove SmartKey from starter switch before cleaning the windshield and/or the wiper blades. KEYLESS-GO: Make sure the vehicle's on-board electronics have status **0**. Otherwise, the wiper motor could suddenly turn on and cause injury.

! Do not pull on the wiper blade inserts. They could tear.

- ▶ Fold the wiper arms forward until they snap into place.
- ▶ Clean the windshield and the wiper blade inserts with a clean cloth and mild detergent solution.
- ▶ Use a soft, clean cloth and a mild window cleaning solution on all outside and inside glass surfaces.

  An automotive glass cleaner is recommended.

! Fold the windshield wiper arms back onto the windshield before pressing the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button or turning the SmartKey in the starter switch.

Hold on to the wiper when folding the wiper arm back. If released, the force of the impact from the tensioning spring could crack the windshield.

! To clean the window interior, do not use a dry cloth, abrasives, solvents or cleaners containing solvents. Do not touch the inside of the windows with hard objects such as an ice scraper or ring. Doing so may damage the windows.

Light alloy wheels

If possible, clean wheels once a week.

- ▶ Use Mercedes-Benz approved Wheel Care, a soft bristle brush and a strong spray of water for cleaning the light alloy wheels.

! Only use acid-free cleaning materials. Acid may cause corrosion or damage the clear coat.

! The vehicle should not be parked for an extended period of time immediately after it has been cleaned. This applies especially after the wheel rims have been cleaned with wheel rim cleaner. Wheel rim cleaners can lead to increased corrosion of the brake disks and brake pads. Non-approved wheel cleaners may also damage the wheel paint if the vehicle is not driven after cleaning.

Therefore, the vehicle's brake system should always be warmed-up before it is parked after cleaning. Drive your vehicle for several minutes to allow the brakes to dry. When applying Mercedes-Benz approved Tire Care and Mercedes-Benz approved Wheel Care products, take care not to spray them on the brake disks.

Plastic and rubber parts

- ▶ Use a gentle dishwashing detergent or mild detergent for delicate fabrics as a washing solution.
- ▶ Wipe with a cloth moistened in a lukewarm solution.
  The surface may temporarily change color. If this is the case, wait for it to dry.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not use cleaners or cockpit care sprays containing solvents to clean the cockpit or the steering wheel. Cleaners containing solvents will make the surface porous and vehicle occupants could suffer serious injuries from plastic parts coming loose in the event of air bag deployment.

! Do not use oil, wax or scouring agents.

Otherwise you may scratch or damage the surface.

Hard plastic trim items

- ▶ Use Mercedes-Benz approved Interior Care on a soft, lint-free cloth and apply with light pressure.

COMAND display

! You must switch off the COMAND display and allow it to cool prior to cleaning.

! Do not use any liquids or cleaning agents. These can damage or even destroy the COMAND display screen.

- ▶ Use a standard microfiber cloth and apply with light pressure.

Steering wheel and gear selector lever

- ▶ Wipe with a damp cloth and dry thoroughly or clean with Mercedes-Benz approved Leather Care.

Carpets

- ▶ Use Mercedes-Benz approved Carpet and Fabric Care for cleaning the carpets.

Headliner

- ▶ Use a soft bristle brush or a dry-shampoo cleaner in case of excessive dirt.

Seat belts

- ▶ Only use clear, lukewarm water and soap.

! The seat belts must not be treated with chemical cleaning agents. Do not dry the seat belts at temperatures above 176℉ (80℃) or in direct sunlight.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not bleach or dye seat belts as this may severely weaken them. In a crash they may not be able to provide adequate protection.

Upholstery

Using aftermarket seat covers or wearing clothing that have the tendency to give off coloring (e.g. when wet, etc.) may cause the upholstery to become permanently discolored. By lining the seats with a proper intermediate cover, contact-discoloration will be prevented.

⚠ **Warning!**

Only use seat covers which have been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle model. Using other seat covers may interfere with or prevent the deployment of the side impact air bags. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for availability.

Leather upholstery

Please note that leather upholstery is a natural product and is therefore subject to a natural aging process. Leather upholstery may also react to certain ambient influences such as high humidity or high temperature by showing wrinkles for example.

▶ Wipe leather upholstery with a damp cloth and dry thoroughly or clean with Mercedes-Benz approved Leather Care.

! To avoid damage to leather upholstery:

- Wipe with light pressure only.
- Do not clean with abrasive cleaning agents such as scouring milk or powder.
- Do not soak the leather upholstery.

  As leather is a natural product, it could otherwise harden or become porous.
- Exercise particular care when cleaning perforated leather as its underside should not become wet.

Chrome-plated exhaust tip

Regular cleaning and care of chrome-plated exhaust tips will help to maintain their shine and the classy appearance.

▶ Use Mercedes-Benz approved Chrome Polishing Paste each time the vehicle has been washed, especially during the winter.

! Do not use alkaline cleaners such as wheel cleaners as they could cause corrosion.

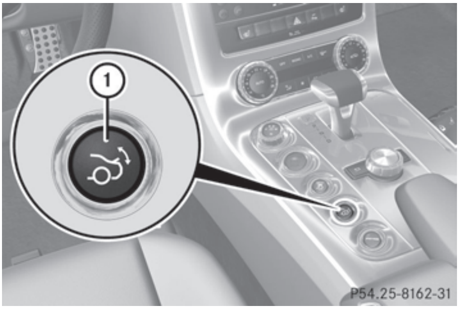
Trunk Wing

You can extend and retract the Trunk Wing manually for cleaning.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> Make sure that nobody can become trapped when you retract the Trunk Wing manually. If there is a risk of entrapment, release the Trunk Wing switch to stop the retraction process. The Trunk Wing will then extend again.
>
> Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. They could inadvertently retract the extended Trunk Wing. Somebody could become trapped and be seriously injured.

! Do not enter an automatic car wash with the Trunk Wing extended. Otherwise, the Trunk Wing could be damaged.

Only extend the Trunk Wing in order to clean it by hand. Retract it again after cleaning.



▶ Close the trunk lid (▷ page 240).

▶ Switch on the ignition.

▶ **To extend:** Press Trunk Wing switch ①.

The Trunk Wing extends.

Trunk Wing switch ① flashes for as long as the Trunk Wing extends. It remains illuminated in red when the Trunk Wing is fully extended.

▶ **To retract:** Press and hold Trunk Wing switch ① until the Trunk Wing has retracted completely.

Trunk Wing switch ① flashes for as long as the Trunk Wing retracts. It goes out when the Trunk Wing is fully retracted.

The message `Rear Spoiler retracts manually` appears in the multifunction display.

ℹ When you release Trunk Wing switch ① during the retraction process, the Trunk Wing extends again automatically.

Practical hints

Vehicle equipment 362
Where will I find...? 362
Vehicle status messages in the multifunction display 364
What to do if... 388
Unlocking/locking manually 397
Replacing SmartKey battery 399
Replacing bulbs 400
Replacing wiper blades 400
Flat tire 402
Wheel change 405
Battery 410
Jump starting 413
Towing the vehicle 415
Fuses 417

Vehicle equipment

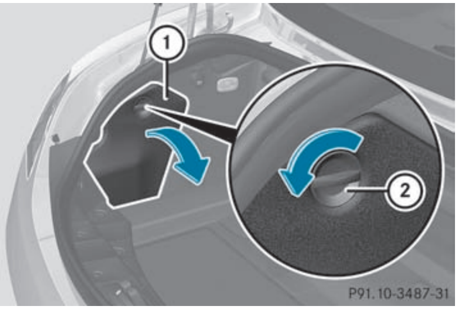
This Operator's Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Where will I find...?

First aid kit

Check expiration dates and contents for completeness at least once a year and replace missing/expired items.

The first aid kit is located in the storage compartment on the driver's side in the trunk.

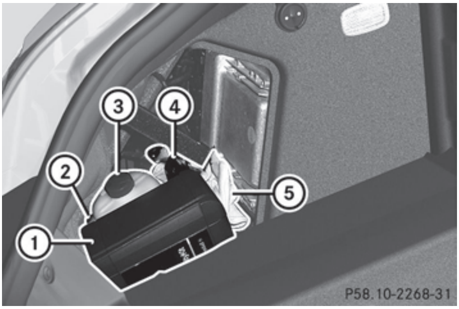


- Turn lock ② by 90° in direction of the arrow.
- Remove cover ①.
- Remove the first aid kit.

Vehicle tool kit

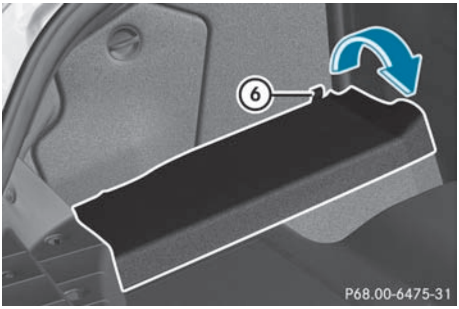
The TIREFIT kit and part of the vehicle tool kit are located in the storage compartment on the driver's side in the trunk.

- Open the storage compartment on the driver's side (▷ page 362).
- Remove the first aid kit.

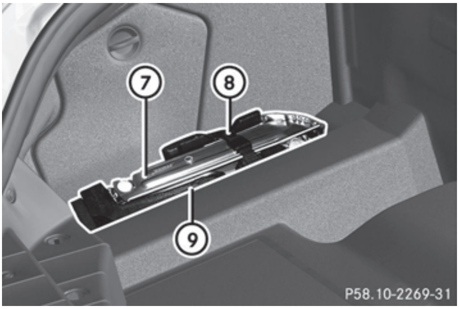


① TIREFIT kit
② Alignment bolt
③ TIREFIT container
④ Collapsible wheel chock
⑤ Pair of gloves

The jack and part of the vehicle tool kit are located in the storage compartment below the trunk floor.

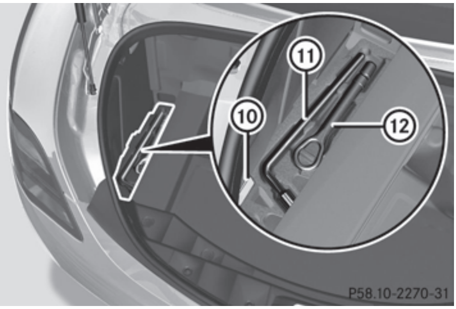


- Pull out the storage compartment cover at strap ⑥.



⑦ Jack
⑧ Hook and loop fastener
⑨ Storage well casing

- ▶ To remove jack ⑦ from storage well casing ⑨, loosen hook and loop fastener ⑧.
- ▶ Remove jack ⑦ with storage well casing ⑨.

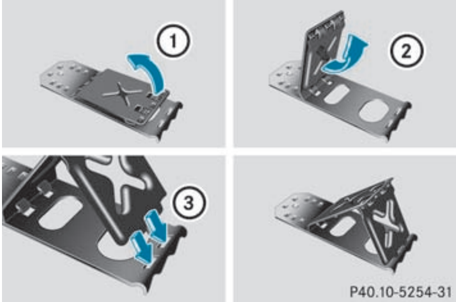


⑩ Fuse chart
⑪ Wheel wrench
⑫ Towing eye bolt

Collapsible wheel chock

The collapsible wheel chock serves to secure the vehicle, e.g. while changing a wheel.

- ▶ Take the collapsible wheel chock from the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362).



- ▶ **Setting up:** Tilt both plates upward ①.
- ▶ Fold the lower plate outward ②.
- ▶ Guide the tabs of the lower plate all the way into the openings of base plate ③.

For information on where to place wheel chocks when changing a wheel, see “Preparing the vehicle” (▷ page 405).

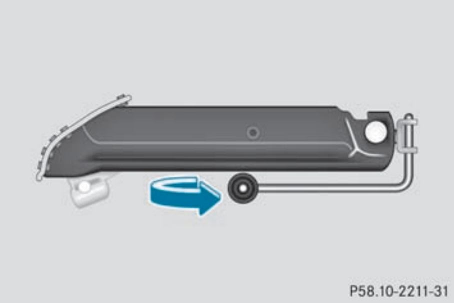
Jack

⚠ Warning!

Only use the jack supplied with your vehicle to lift the vehicle briefly for wheel changes. If you use the jack for any other purpose, you or others could be injured, as the jack is designed only for the purpose of changing a wheel.

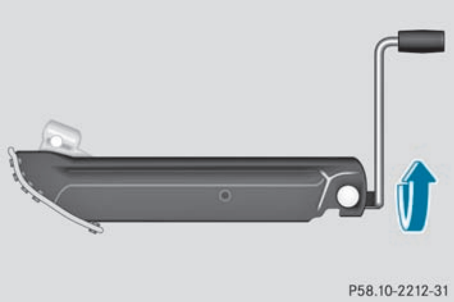
When using the jack, observe the safety notes in the “Removing the wheel” section and the notes on the jack.

- ▶ Take the jack from the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362).



Storage position

- ▶ Turn the crank handle in the direction of arrow as far as it will go.



Operational position

- ▶ Turn the crank handle clockwise.

Before placing the jack back into the vehicle tool kit:

- Fully collapse the jack.
- Fold in the crank handle (storage position).

Vehicle status messages in the multifunction display

Notes

Warning and malfunction messages appear in the multifunction display located in the instrument cluster.

Certain warning and malfunction messages are accompanied by an audible signal.

Address these messages accordingly and follow the additional instructions given in this Operator’s Manual.

High-priority messages appear in the multifunction display in red color.

Certain messages of high priority cannot be cleared from the multifunction display using OK or ↩ on the multifunction steering wheel (▷ page 272).

Other messages of high priority and messages of less immediate priority can be cleared from the multifunction display using OK or ↩. They are then stored in the vehicle status message memory (▷ page 281). Remember that clearing a message will only make the message disappear. Clearing a message will not correct the condition that caused the message to appear.

⚠ **Warning!**

All categories of messages contain important information which should be taken note of and, where a malfunction is indicated, addressed as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Failure to repair the condition noted may cause damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty, or result in property damage or personal injury.

⚠ **Warning!**

No messages will be displayed if either the instrument cluster or the multifunction display is inoperative.

As a result, you will not be able to see information about your driving conditions, such as

- speed
- outside temperature
- warning/indicator lamps
- malfunction/warning messages
- failure of any systems

Driving characteristics may be impaired.

If you must continue to drive, do so with added caution. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

On the pages that follow, you will find a compilation of the most important warning and malfunction messages that may appear.

For your convenience the messages are divided into text messages (▷ page 365) and symbol messages (▷ page 370).

Text messages

Safety systems

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Front Passenger Airbag Enabled See Operator's Manual`	The passenger front air bag and the passenger-side knee bag are activated while driving even though a child, small individual, or object below the system's weight threshold is on the passenger seat, or the passenger seat is empty. Objects on the seat or forces acting on the seat may make the system sense supplemental weight. ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Switch off the ignition. ▶ Open the passenger door. ▶ Remove child and child restraint from passenger seat. ▶ Make sure no objects which apply supplemental weight to the seat are present. The system may recognize such supplemental weight and sense that an occupant on the passenger seat is of a greater weight than actually present. ▶ Keep the seat unoccupied, close the passenger door and switch on the ignition. Monitor the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the center console (▷ page 38) and the multifunction display in the instrument cluster (▷ page 273) for the following: With the seat unoccupied and the ignition switched on, • the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the center console should illuminate and remain illuminated, indicating that the OCS (▷ page 49) has deactivated the passenger front air bag. • the message `Front Passenger Airbag Enabled See Operator's Manual` or the message `Front Passenger Airbag Disabled See Operator's Manual` should not appear in the multifunction display at any time the seat is unoccupied. Wait at least 60 seconds for the system to complete the necessary check cycles and to make sure neither message appears in the multifunction display. If above conditions are met, you can occupy the passenger seat again. Depending on the passenger classification sensed by the OCS, the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will remain illuminated or go out. If above conditions are not met, the system is not working properly. Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning!

If the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp remains out even after performing the above corrective steps, do not have any children 12 years old and under and other small individuals use the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Front Passenger Airbag Disabled See Operator's Manual`	The passenger front air bag and the passenger-side knee bag are deactivated while driving even though an adult or someone larger than a small individual is occupying the passenger seat. Forces acting on the seat may make the system sense a decrease in weight. ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Switch off the ignition. ▶ Have the passenger vacate the seat and exit the vehicle. ▶ Keep the seat unoccupied, close the passenger door and switch on the ignition. Monitor the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the center console (▷ page 38) and the multifunction display in the instrument cluster (▷ page 273) for the following: With the seat unoccupied and the ignition switched on, • the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the center console should illuminate and remain illuminated, indicating that the OCS (▷ page 49) has deactivated the passenger front air bag. • the message `Front Passenger Airbag Enabled See Operator's Manual` or the message `Front Passenger Airbag Disabled See Operator's Manual` should not appear in the multifunction display at any time the seat is unoccupied. Wait at least 60 seconds for the system to complete the necessary check cycles and to make sure neither message appears in the multifunction display. If above conditions are met, you can occupy the passenger seat again. Depending on the passenger classification sensed by the OCS, the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will remain illuminated or go out. If above conditions are not met, the system is not working properly. Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning!

If the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp remains illuminated with an adult occupant on the passenger seat even after performing the above corrective steps, do not have any passenger use the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

Driving systems

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Cruise Control Inoperative`	The cruise control is malfunctioning. In addition an acoustic warning sounds. ▶ Have the cruise control checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Cruise Control - - - mph`	One of the activation conditions for cruise control has not been fulfilled. You may have attempted to set a speed below 20 mph (30 km/h). ▶ Drive faster than 20 mph (30 km/h) if the situation allows and set the speed. ▶ Check the activation conditions for cruise control (▷ page 290).

Vehicle

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Apply Brake to Shift from 'P'`	You have attempted to shift the transmission into drive position **D**, reverse gear **R** or neutral position **N** without depressing the brake pedal. ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
`Door Open Vehicle Not in 'P'`	In addition an acoustic warning sounds. You have opened the driver's door and the transmission is still in drive position **D**, reverse gear **R** or neutral position **N**. ▶ Before you leave the vehicle, make sure the transmission is in park position **P** and the electronic parking brake is engaged.
`Service Required Do Not Shift Gears Visit Dealer`	In addition an acoustic warning sounds. The transmission cannot be shifted out of the current transmission position because of a malfunction. If the transmission is in drive position **D**: ▶ Without shifting the transmission out of drive position **D**, drive to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. If the transmission is set to neutral position **N**, reverse gear **R** or park position **P**: ▶ Do not drive. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Only Shift to 'P' when Vehicle is Stationary`	You have attempted to shift the transmission into park position **P** although the vehicle was still in motion. ▶ Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Shift the transmission to park position **P**.
`Shift to 'P' or 'N' to Start Engine`	You have attempted to start the engine while the transmission was in reverse gear **R** or drive position **D**. ▶ Shift the transmission into park position **P** or neutral position **N**. Make sure the brake pedal is depressed.
`Auxiliary Battery Malfunction`	The backup battery for the transmission is no longer charging. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Tires

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Tire pressures will be displayed after driving a few minutes`	The tire inflation pressure is being checked by the Advanced TPMS. ▶ Drive the vehicle for a few minutes.
`Tire Pressure Monitor Inoperative`	The Advanced TPMS is malfunctioning. ▶ Have the Advanced TPMS checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Tire Pressure Monitor Inoperative No Wheel Sensors`	There are wheels without appropriate wheel sensors mounted (e.g. winter tires). ▶ Have the Advanced TPMS checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ Have the appropriate wheel sensors installed at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`TirePress. Sensor(s)Missing`	At least one sensor is defect (e.g. battery is empty). The respective tire is indicated by – – instead of the tire inflation pressure in the multifunction display. ▶ Have the Advanced TPMS checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ Have the wheel sensors installed at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
	At least one wheel without appropriate wheel sensors is mounted. The respective tire is indicated by – – instead of the tire inflation pressure in the multifunction display. ▶ Have the Advanced TPMS checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ Have the wheel sensors installed at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Tire Press. Monitor Currently Unavailable`	The Advanced TPMS cannot monitor the tire inflation pressure due to a nearby radio interference source or insufficient power supply. As soon as the causes of the malfunction have been rectified, the Advanced TPMS becomes active again automatically after a few minutes of driving.
`Correct Tire Pressure`	The tire inflation pressure is too low in at least one tire. or The tire inflation pressures of the individual tires differ from each other significantly. The tire inflation pressure values are shown in the multifunction display. ▶ Check and correct tire inflation pressure as required (▷ page 329). ▶ Restart the Advanced TPMS (▷ page 329).
`Caution Tire Malfunction`	At least one tire is deflating. The respective tire is indicated in the multifunction display. ▶ Carefully bring the vehicle to a halt, avoiding abrupt steering and braking maneuvers. ▶ If necessary, change the wheel (▷ page 405).
`Check Tires`	The tire inflation pressure in at least one tire is significantly below the reference value. The respective tire is indicated in the multifunction display. ▶ Carefully bring the vehicle to a halt, avoiding abrupt steering and braking maneuvers. ▶ Check and adjust tire inflation pressure as required. ▶ If necessary, change the wheel (▷ page 405).

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not drive with a flat tire. A flat tire affects the ability to steer or brake the vehicle. You may lose control of the vehicle. Continued driving with a flat tire will cause excessive heat build-up and possibly a fire.

⚠ **Warning!**

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.

Symbol messages

Brake

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
◎ `Check Brake Pad Wear`	The brake pads have reached their wear limit. ▶ Have the brake pads replaced as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

! Brake pad thickness must be visually inspected by a qualified technician at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Booklet.

Display messages	**Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions**
BRAKE (USA only) (!) (Canada only) `ABS and ESC Inoperative See Operator's Manual`	In addition, the yellow ESC warning lamp, the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp OFF, and the yellow ABS indicator lamp ABS come on. The brake system is still functioning normally but due to a malfunction, the ABS, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are unavailable. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
BRAKE (USA only) (!) (Canada only) `ABS and ESC Currently Unavailable See Operator's Manual`	In addition, the yellow ESC warning lamp, the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp OFF, and the yellow ABS indicator lamp ABS come on. The brake system is still functioning normally but due to a malfunction, the ABS, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are unavailable. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. When the voltage is above the required value again, the ABS, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are operational again and the message should disappear. If the message does not disappear: ▶ Have the alternator and the battery checked. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
BRAKE (USA only) (!) (Canada only) `EBD, ABS, and ESC Inoperative See Operator's Manual`	In addition, the yellow ESC warning lamp 🚗, the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp OFF, and the yellow ABS indicator lamp (ABS) come on and an acoustic warning sounds. The brake system is still functioning normally but due to a malfunction, the ABS, the BAS, the EBP, and the ESC are unavailable. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
PARK (USA only) (P) (Canada only) `Release Parking Brake`	In addition, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes and an acoustic warning sounds. You are driving with the electronic parking brake engaged, or you are carrying out an emergency brake maneuver with the electronic parking brake (▷ page 261). ▶ Release electronic parking brake. or ▶ Drive off carefully. or ▶ Release the handle for electronic parking brake.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PARK (USA only) (Ⓟ) (Canada only) `Release Parking Brake`	In addition, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes, the yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on and an acoustic warning sounds. The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning. The braking effect is reduced. While driving: ▶ Release the handle for electronic parking brake. While at a standstill: ▶ Switch off ignition and press handle for electronic parking brake until the warning message disappears from the multifunction display. If the warning message does not disappear: ▶ Shift the transmission to park position **P** (▷ page 263). ▶ Protect vehicle from rolling away while parked by using the collapsible wheel chock from the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362). ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
PARK (USA only) (Ⓟ) (Canada only) `Turn On the Ignition to Release the Parking Brake`	In addition, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on. You have tried to release the electronic parking brake, but the ignition was not switched on. ▶ Switch on the ignition.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PARK (USA only) (Ⓟ) (Canada only) `Parking Brake See Oper. Manual`	In addition, the yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on. The red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake may also come on. The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning. To release: ▶ Pull handle of electronic parking brake. or ▶ Drive off carefully. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. To engage: ▶ Switch off the ignition ▶ Press handle for electronic parking brake for at least 10 seconds until the warning message in the multifunction display disappears. If the warning message does not disappear: ▶ Shift the transmission to park position **P** (▷ page 263). ▶ Protect vehicle from rolling away while parked by using the collapsible wheel chock from the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362). ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
PARK (USA only) (Ⓟ) (Canada only) `Parking Brake See Oper. Manual`	In addition, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes. The power supply for the electronic parking brake was interrupted. ▶ Pull handle of electronic parking brake. or ▶ Drive off carefully. or ▶ Press handle for electronic parking brake until the warning message in the multifunction display disappears.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PARK (USA only) Ⓟ (Canada only) `Parking Brake See Oper. Manual`	In addition, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes and the yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on. The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning. ▶ Switch ignition off and back on again, and engage or release electronic parking brake. or ▶ Drive off carefully. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
PARK (USA only) Ⓟ (Canada only) `Parking Brake See Oper. Manual`	When you engage or release the electronic parking brake, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes for approximately 10 seconds. Afterward, it goes out or comes on continuously. The yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on. The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning or overheated for example due to overvoltage or undervoltage. ▶ Drive off carefully. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. In the event of overvoltage or undervoltage: ▶ Remove the cause of the overvoltage or undervoltage, e.g. charge the battery or restart the engine. ▶ Switch ignition off and back on again, and engage or release electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake still cannot be released: ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. If overheated: ▶ Let vehicle cool down, and do not engage electronic parking brake during this time. or ▶ Switch ignition off and back on again, and engage or release electronic parking brake.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PARK (USA only) Ⓟ (Canada only) `Parking Brake Inoperative`	When you engage or release the electronic parking brake, the red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes and goes out after approx. 10 seconds. The yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake comes on. The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning. ▶ Switch ignition off and back on again, and engage or release electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake cannot be engaged: ▶ Shift the transmission to park position **P** (▷ page 263). ▶ Protect vehicle from rolling away while parked by using a chock from the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362). ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
BRAKE (USA only) (!) (Canada only) `Check Brake Fluid Level`	There is insufficient brake fluid in the reservoir. Risk of accident! ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location or as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Do **not** drive any further. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance. Do not add brake fluid! This will not solve the problem.

⚠ **Warning!**

Driving with the message `Check Brake Fluid Level` displayed can result in an accident. Have your brake system checked immediately.

Do not add brake fluid before checking the brake system. Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts and the brake fluid catching fire. You can be seriously burned.

! If you find that the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir has fallen to the minimum mark or below, have the brake system checked for brake pad thickness and leaks.

Safety systems

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`ESC Inoperative See Operator's Manual`	In addition, the yellow ESC warning lamp and the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp OFF come on. The brake system is still functioning normally but due to a malfunction, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are unavailable. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
`ESC Currently Unavailable See Operator's Manual`	In addition, the yellow ESC warning lamp and the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp OFF come on. The self-diagnosis may not be completed yet. The brake system is still functioning normally but without the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system available. ▶ Drive a short distance with added caution at a vehicle speed of above 12 mph (20 km/h). When the message disappears, the ESC is available again. If the message does not disappear: ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
SOS `Tele Aid Inoperative`	One or more main functions of the mbrace system are malfunctioning. ▶ Have the mbrace system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`SRS Malfunction Service Required`	There is a malfunction in the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS). The air bags or Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs) could deploy unexpectedly or fail to activate in an accident. ▶ Drive with added caution to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Front Left SRS Malfunction Service Required`	Components of the driver's supplemental restraint system may not work properly. ▶ Drive with added caution to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Front Right SRS Malfunction Service Required`	Components of the passenger's supplemental restraint system may not work properly. ▶ Drive with added caution to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

⚠ **Warning!**

In the event a malfunction of the SRS is indicated as outlined above, the SRS may not be operational.

For your safety, we strongly recommend that you contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately to have the system checked. Otherwise the SRS may not be activated when needed in an accident, which could result in serious or fatal injury, or it might deploy unexpectedly and unnecessarily which could also result in injury.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
🚗 `Rear Spoiler Control System Inoperative`	The Trunk Wing does not retract to its home position completely and will extend again if possible. If movement of the Trunk Wing is blocked, for example by ice: ▶ Make sure to eliminate the cause for the blockage. ▶ Turn off the engine and lock the vehicle. ▶ After a few minutes, start the engine. The Trunk Wing will move to its home position. If the problem still persists or the cause cannot be identified: ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
🚗 `Rear Spoiler Inoperative Limit 125 mph`	The Trunk Wing does not extend into its end position completely. It will only extend as far as possible. The vehicle speed is limited to 125 mph (200 km/h). If movement of the Trunk Wing is blocked, for example by ice: ▶ Make sure to eliminate the cause for the blockage. ▶ Turn off the engine and lock the vehicle. ▶ After a few minutes, start the engine. The Trunk Wing will move to its home position. If the problem still persists or the cause cannot be identified: ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Vehicle

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
🚗	The trunk is open. ▶ Close the trunk (▷ page 240).
🚗	You are driving with the hood open. ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Close the hood (▷ page 322). There is otherwise danger of an accident.
🚗	You are driving with at least one door open. The display symbol shows you which doors are open. ▶ Close all doors.
🔑 `Take Your Key from Ignition`	You have forgotten to remove the SmartKey. ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

Display messages	**Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions**
`Obtain a New Key`	The SmartKey is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Close Doors to Lock Vehicle`	You tried to lock the vehicle but not all doors were closed. ▶ Close doors and lock the vehicle again.
`Key Does Not Belong to Vehicle`	The SmartKey in the starter switch does not belong to the vehicle. ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.
`Replace Key Battery`	The battery in the SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO is discharged. ▶ Replace the battery (▷ page 399).
`Key Not Detected` (message appears in red)	The SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO is not detected while the engine is running because the SmartKey is not in the vehicle. ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Search for the SmartKey. The vehicle cannot be locked centrally nor can the engine be started again after the engine is stopped.
`Key Not Detected` (message appears in red)	The SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO is not detected while the engine is running because there is strong radio-frequency interference. ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Operate the vehicle with the SmartKey in the starter switch.
`Key Not Detected` (message appears in white)	The SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO is momentarily not detected. ▶ Change the position of the SmartKey in the vehicle. ▶ Operate the vehicle with the SmartKey in the starter switch.
`Insert Key`	The KEYLESS-GO system is malfunctioning. ▶ Operate the vehicle with the SmartKey in the starter switch.
`Check Washer Fluid`	The washer fluid in the washer fluid reservoir has fallen below the minimum level. ▶ Add washer fluid (▷ page 325).

Engine

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Check Coolant Level See Operator's Manual	The coolant level is too low. ▶ Add coolant (▷ page 324). ▶ If you have to add coolant frequently, have the cooling system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not spill antifreeze on hot engine parts. Antifreeze contains ethylene glycol which may burn if it comes into contact with hot engine parts. You could be seriously burned.

! Do not ignore the low engine coolant level warning. Extended driving with the message and symbol displayed may cause serious engine damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Do not drive without sufficient amount of coolant in the cooling system. The engine will overheat causing major engine damage.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Coolant Level Low Stop Vehicle Turn Engine Off	The coolant is too hot. ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Turn off the engine immediately. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Only start the engine again after the message disappears. You could otherwise damage the engine. ▶ Observe the coolant temperature in the multifunction display. ▶ If the temperature rises again: Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately. During severe operation conditions and stop-and-go city traffic, the coolant temperature may rise close to 248℉ (120℃).

⚠ **Warning!**

Driving when your engine is overheated can cause some fluids which may have leaked into the engine compartment to catch fire. You could be seriously burned.

Steam from an overheated engine can cause serious burns which can occur just by opening the engine hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location away from other traffic. Turn off the engine, get out of the vehicle and do not stand near the vehicle until the engine has cooled down.

! The engine should not be operated with the coolant temperature above 248℉ (120℃). Doing so may cause serious damage which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
🌡 `Coolant Level Low Stop Vehicle Turn Engine Off`	The poly-V-belt could be broken. ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Turn off the engine immediately. ▶ Check the poly-V-belt. ▶ **If it is broken:** Do not continue to drive. Otherwise the engine will overheat due to an inoperative water pump which may result in damage to the engine. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ **If it is intact:** Do not continue to drive the vehicle with this message displayed. Doing so could result in serious engine damage that is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty. ▶ Observe the coolant temperature in the multifunction display. ▶ Drive to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately.
🌡	The radiator cooling fan is malfunctioning. ▶ Observe the coolant temperature in the multifunction display. If the coolant temperature is below 248℉ (120℃), you may continue driving to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ Avoid placing heavy loads on the engine (e.g. by driving uphill) as well as stop-and-go traffic. ▶ Have the fan replaced as soon as possible.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
🔋	The battery is no longer charging. Possible causes: • alternator malfunctioning • broken poly-V-belt • a malfunction in the electronic system ▶ Stop immediately in a safe location or as soon as it is safe to do so and check the poly-V-belt. ▶ **If it is broken:** Do not continue to drive. Otherwise the engine will overheat due to an inoperative water pump which may result in damage to the engine. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ **If it is intact:** Drive to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately. Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness.
🛢 `Check Engine Oil At Next Refueling`	The engine oil has dropped to a critical level. ▶ Check the engine oil level (▷ page 323) and add engine oil as required (▷ page 323). ▶ If you must add engine oil frequently, have the engine checked for possible leaks.

If the message `Check Engine Oil At Next Refueling` appears while the engine is running and at operating temperature, the engine oil level has dropped to approximately the minimum level.

The message will be stored in the vehicle status message memory after you have cleared it from the multifunction display.

Visually check for oil leaks. If there are no obvious oil leaks, drive to the nearest service station to refuel your engine oil to the required level.

For information on approved engine oils contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

! Engine oil level warnings should not be ignored. Extended driving with the symbol displayed could result in serious engine damage that is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
⛽	The fuel level is low. ▶ Refuel at the next gas station.
⛽ `Fuel Level Low`	The fuel level has dropped below the reserve mark. ▶ Refuel at the next gas station.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
`Gas Cap Loose`	A loss of pressure has been detected in the fuel system. The fuel cap may not be closed properly or the fuel system may be leaking. ▶ Check the fuel cap (▷ page 321). ▶ **If it is not closed properly:** Close the fuel cap. ▶ **If it is closed properly:** Have the fuel system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Replace Air Filter`	The air filter is clogged. ▶ Have the air filter checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
`Check Fuel Filter`	There is water in the fuel filter. ▶ Have the water drained at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

Lamps

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions

`Check Left Daytime Running Light`
or
`Check Right Daytime Running Light`
	The left or right daytime running lamps are malfunctioning.
	▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

`Check Left Reverse Lamp`
or
`Check Right Reverse Lamp`
	The left or right backup lamp is malfunctioning.
	▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

`Check Center Brake Lamp`	The high-mounted brake lamp is malfunctioning. This message will only appear if all LEDs have stopped working. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Check Front Left Sidemarker Lamp or Check Front Right Sidemarker Lamp	The front left side or right side marker lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Rear Left Sidemarker Lamp or Check Rear Right Sidemarker Lamp	The rear left side or right side marker lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Front Left Parking Lamp or Check Front Right Parking Lamp	The left or right front parking lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Left High Beam or Check Right High Beam	The left or right high-beam lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Left License Plate Lamp or Check Right License Plate Lamp	The left or right license plate lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Replace the bulb as soon as possible (▷ page 400).

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Auto Lamp Function Inoperative	The light sensor is malfunctioning. The headlamps come on automatically. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. To switch off the headlamps (U.S. vehicles only): ▶ Switch off the daytime running lamp mode in the control system (▷ page 284). ▶ Switch off the headlamps using the exterior lamp switch (▷ page 250).
Check Left Low Beam or Check Right Low Beam	The left or right low-beam lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Switch Off Lights	You have removed the SmartKey with KEYLESS-GO from the vehicle and left the headlamps on or removed the SmartKey from the starter switch, opened the driver's door and left the headlamps on. ▶ Turn the exterior lamp switch to A (▷ page 250).
Check Left Tail and Brake Lamps or Check Right Tail and Brake Lamps	The left or right tail lamp/brake lamp is malfunctioning. This message will only appear if all LEDs have stopped working. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Rear Left Turn Signal or Check Rear Right Turn Signal	The left or right rear turn signal lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Check Front Left Turn Signal or Check Front Right Turn Signal	The left or right front turn signal lamp is malfunctioning. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
Check Left Mirror Turn Signal or Check Right Mirror Turn Signal	The turn signal in the left or right exterior rear view mirror is malfunctioning. This message will only appear if all LEDs have stopped working. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.

Tires

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Tire Press. Warning Caution Tire Malfunction	At least one tire is deflating. ▶ Carefully bring the vehicle to a halt, avoiding abrupt steering and braking maneuvers. ▶ If necessary, change the wheel (▷ page 405).
Check Tire Pressure	The tire inflation pressure in at least one tire is significantly below the reference value. ▶ Carefully bring the vehicle to a halt, avoiding abrupt steering and braking maneuvers. ▶ Check and adjust tire inflation pressure as required. ▶ If necessary, change the wheel (▷ page 405).

⚠ Warning!

Do not drive with a flat tire. A flat tire affects the ability to steer or brake the vehicle. You may lose control of the vehicle. Continued driving with a flat tire will cause excessive heat build-up and possibly a fire.

⚠ Warning!

Follow recommended tire inflation pressures.

Do not underinflate tires. Underinflated tires wear excessively and/or unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.

Do not overinflate tires. Overinflated tires can adversely affect handling and ride comfort, wear unevenly, increase stopping distance, and result in sudden deflation (blowout) because they are more likely to become punctured or damaged by road debris, potholes etc.

AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
P Parking Lock Malfunct. Apply Parking Brake	The transmission cannot be shifted to park position **P** anymore. ▶ Make sure the electronic parking brake is engaged. ▶ Block the wheels of the vehicle with suitable objects before leaving the vehicle. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. Have the vehicle transported with all wheels off the ground or towed with the rear axle raised (▷ page 415).
⚙ Stop Engage 'P'	The transmission is malfunctioning. The vehicle is not propelled anymore and will coast to standstill. ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location. ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
⚙ Transmission Oil Cooling Malfunction	The coolant pump of the transmission is malfunctioning. The transmission could overheat. ▶ Select the AMG menu via the control system (▷ page 287) and check the transmission fluid temperature. ▶ Avoid heavy load on the engine and transmission such as a dynamic manner of driving. ▶ When the transmission fluid temperature is below 248℉ (120 ℃), continue to drive to the next authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
⚙ Trans. Oil Overheated Drive on with Care	The transmission fluid is overheated. Manual program mode **M** and limiting the gear range are not available anymore. The engine output is limited according to the degree of the overheating. ▶ Reduce the transmission fluid temperature by moderate driving.

What to do if...

Lamps in the instrument cluster

Notes

If any of the following lamps in the instrument cluster fails to come on during the bulb self-check when switching on the ignition, have the respective bulb checked and replaced if necessary.

When you switch on the ignition, all lamps in the instrument cluster come on. The low-beam headlamp indicator lamp, high-beam headlamp indicator lamp, turn signal indicator lamps, and the indicator lamp for the rear fog lamp will only come on if activated. If a lamp in the instrument cluster fails to come on when the ignition is switched on, have it checked and replaced if necessary.

Brake

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
ABS The yellow ABS indicator lamp comes on while the engine is running.	The brake system is still functioning normally but due to a malfunction, the ABS, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are unavailable. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
OFF ABS The yellow ESC warning lamp, the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp, and the yellow ABS indicator lamp come on while the engine is running and an acoustic warning sounds.	The Electronic Brake Proportioning (EBP) switched off due to a malfunction. The ABS, the BAS, the ESC, and the hill-start assist system are also switched off. The brake system is still functioning normally but without the systems specified above available. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adjust driving to be consistent with reduced braking responsiveness. ▶ Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PARK (USA only) (P) (Canada only) The red indicator lamp for the electronic parking brake flashes and/or the yellow warning lamp for the electronic parking brake is on.	The electronic parking brake is malfunctioning or defective. ▶ Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible.
BRAKE (USA only) (!) (Canada only) The red brake warning lamp comes on while the engine is running and an acoustic warning sounds.	There is insufficient brake fluid in the reservoir. Risk of accident! ▶ Do not drive any further. Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as it is safe to do so. ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake. ▶ Read and observe messages that may appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. Do not add brake fluid! This will not solve the problem.

⚠ Warning!

Driving with the brake warning lamp illuminated can result in an accident. Have your brake system checked immediately if the brake warning lamp stays on. Do not add brake fluid before checking the brake system.

Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts and the brake fluid catching fire. You can be seriously burned.

! If you find that the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir has fallen to the minimum mark or below, have the brake system checked for brake pad thickness and leaks.

Safety systems

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
The red seat belt telltale comes on for a maximum of 6 seconds after starting the engine.	The seat belt telltale reminds you and your passenger to fasten your seat belts before driving off. ▶ Fasten your seat belts. Regardless of whether the seat belts are fastened or not, the seat belt telltale always comes on and remains lit for 6 seconds after starting the engine.
The red seat belt telltale comes on. In addition you hear a warning chime for a maximum of 6 seconds after starting the engine.	You have forgotten to fasten your seat belt. ▶ Fasten your seat belt. The warning chime stops sounding.
The red seat belt telltale comes on while the vehicle is standing still and the engine is running or while driving.	You and/or your passenger have forgotten to fasten your seat belts. ▶ Fasten your seat belts. The seat belt telltale goes out.
	There are items placed on the passenger seat and therefore the system senses the passenger seat as being occupied. ▶ Remove the items from the passenger seat and put them in a safe place. The seat belt telltale goes out.
The red seat belt telltale flashes while driving. In addition, an intermittent warning chime sounds with increasing intensity.	The vehicle's speed once exceeded 15 mph (25 km/h) and you and/or your passenger have forgotten to fasten your seat belts. ▶ Fasten your seat belts. The seat belt telltale goes out and the warning chime stops sounding.
	There are items placed on the passenger seat and therefore the system senses the passenger seat as being occupied. ▶ Remove the items from the passenger seat and put them in a safe place. The seat belt telltale goes out and the warning chime stops sounding.

ℹ After 60 seconds with an unfastened seat belt the warning chime stops sounding and the seat belt telltale illuminates continuously. The seat belt telltale will only go out if both, the driver and passenger’s seat belt are fastened, or the vehicle is standing still and a door is opened.

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
The red SRS indicator lamp comes on while driving.	There is a malfunction in the restraint systems. The air bags or Emergency Tensioning Devices (ETDs) could deploy unexpectedly or fail to activate in an accident. ▶ Drive with added caution to the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

⚠ **Warning!**

In the event a malfunction of the SRS is indicated as outlined above, the SRS may not be operational.

For your safety, we strongly recommend that you contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center immediately to have the system checked. Otherwise the SRS may not be activated when needed in an accident, which could result in serious or fatal injury, or it might deploy unexpectedly and unnecessarily which could also result in injury.

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
SPORT The yellow ESC SPORT warning lamp comes on while the engine is running.	ESC SPORT is activated. Risk of accident! When ESC SPORT is activated it will only stabilize the vehicle to a limited extent if the system recognizes that the vehicle starts to skid or that a wheel is spinning. ▶ Switch ESC SPORT off (▷ page 62). The message `ESC-ON` appears in the multifunction display.
OFF The yellow ESC warning lamp and the yellow ESC OFF warning lamp come on while the engine is running.	The ESC is not operational due to a malfunction. The ABS, the BAS, and the hill-start assist system are also switched off. The brake system is still functioning normally but without the systems specified above available. ▶ Read and observe additional messages that may appear in the multifunction display. ▶ Continue driving with added caution. Wheels may lock during hard braking, reducing steering capability. ▶ Adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road and weather conditions. ▶ Have the system checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible. Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.
The yellow ESC warning lamp flashes while driving.	The ESC or the ETS has come into operation because of detected traction loss in at least one tire. ▶ When driving off, apply as little throttle as possible. ▶ While driving, ease up on the accelerator pedal. ▶ Adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road and weather conditions. ▶ Do not deactivate the ESC. Exceptions: (▷ page 62). Failure to follow these instructions increases the risk of an accident.

Vehicle

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
The yellow fuel tank reserve warning lamp comes on when the engine is running.	The fuel level has gone below the reserve mark. ▶ Refuel at the next gas station.

Engine

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
The yellow engine malfunction indicator lamp comes on when the engine is running.	There may be a malfunction in • the fuel management system • the ignition system • the emission control system • systems which affect emissions Such malfunctions may result in excessive emissions values and may switch the engine to limp-home (emergency operation) mode. ▶ Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ⓘ Some states may by law require you to visit a workshop as soon as the engine malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Check local requirements.
The yellow engine malfunction indicator lamp comes on when the engine is running.	A loss of pressure has been detected in the fuel system. The fuel cap may not be closed properly or the fuel system may be leaky. ▶ Check the fuel cap (▷ page 321). ▶ **If it is not closed properly:** Close the fuel cap. ▶ **If it is closed properly:** Have the fuel system checked by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
The red engine oil temperature warning lamp is on while the engine is running. In addition, an acoustic warning sounds.	The engine oil temperature is above 284℉ (140℃). The engine is not cooled sufficiently and could be damaged. ▶ Stop the vehicle in a safe location or as soon as it is safe to do so and turn off the engine. ▶ Let the engine cool.

⚠ **Warning!**

Driving when your engine is overheated can cause some fluids which may have leaked into the engine compartment to catch fire. You could be seriously burned.

Steam from an overheated engine can cause serious burns which can occur just by opening the engine hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location away from other traffic. Turn off the engine, get out of the vehicle and do not stand near the vehicle until the engine has cooled down.

! The engine should not be operated with the engine oil temperature above 140℃. Doing so may cause serious damage which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Tires

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
(!) USA only: Combination low tire pressure telltale/TPMS malfunction telltale for the Advanced TPMS illuminates continuously. Canada only: Low tire pressure telltale for the Advanced TPMS illuminates continuously.	The Advanced TPMS detects a loss of pressure in at least one tire. ▶ Carefully bring the vehicle to a halt, avoiding abrupt steering and braking maneuvers. Observe the traffic situation around you. ▶ Read and observe messages in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). If the tire inflation pressure in the respective tire(s) has (have) been corrected, the combination low tire pressure/TPMS malfunction telltale goes out after a few minutes of driving.
(!) USA only: Combination low tire pressure telltale/TPMS malfunction telltale for the Advanced TPMS flashes 60 seconds and then stays illuminated.	There is a malfunction in the Advanced TPMS. ▶ Read and observe messages in the multifunction display (▷ page 364). ▶ Have the Advanced TPMS checked at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. After the malfunction has been remedied, the combination low tire pressure/TPMS malfunction telltale goes out after a few minutes of driving.

⚠ Warning!

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked at least once a month when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar or the tire inflation pressure label on the inside of the fuel filler flap. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the Tire and Loading Information placard or the tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

USA only:

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of incompatible replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Lamp in center console

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PASS AIR BAG OFF The passenger front air bag off indicator lamp illuminates and remains illuminated with the weight of a typical adult or someone larger than a small individual on the passenger seat.	The system is malfunctioning. ▶ Have the system checked as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. ▶ Read and observe messages in the multifunction display and follow corrective steps (▷ page 364).

⚠ Warning!

If the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp illuminates and remains illuminated with the weight of a typical adult or someone larger than a small individual on the passenger seat, do not have any passenger use the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PASS AIR BAG OFF The passenger front air bag off indicator lamp does not illuminate and/or does not remain illuminated with the weight of a typical 12-month-old child in a standard child restraint or less on the passenger seat.	The system is malfunctioning. ▶ Make sure there is nothing between seat cushion and child seat and check installation of the child seat. ▶ Make sure no objects applying supplemental weight onto the seat are present. ▶ If the passenger front air bag off indicator lamp remains out, have the system checked as soon as possible at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. Do not transport a child on the passenger seat until the system has been repaired. ▶ Read and observe messages in the multifunction display and follow corrective steps (▷ page 364).

⚠ Warning!

If the PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp does not illuminate or remains out with the weight of a typical 12-month-old child in a standard child restraint or less on the passenger seat, do not transport a child on the passenger seat until the system has been repaired.

Unlocking/locking manually

Mechanical key

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle with the SmartKey, use the mechanical key.

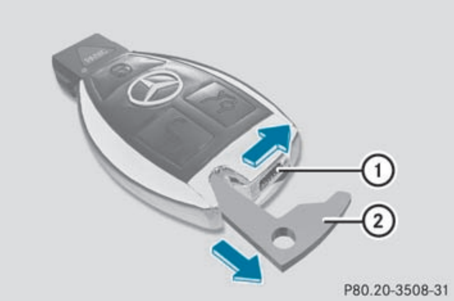
The anti-theft alarm system will be triggered when you

- unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key

  and
- open the driver's door

To cancel the alarm, see "Canceling the alarm" (▷ page 67).

Removing the mechanical key



▶ Move locking tab ① in the direction of the arrow.

▶ Slide mechanical key ② out of the housing.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle centrally with the SmartKey, use the mechanical key.

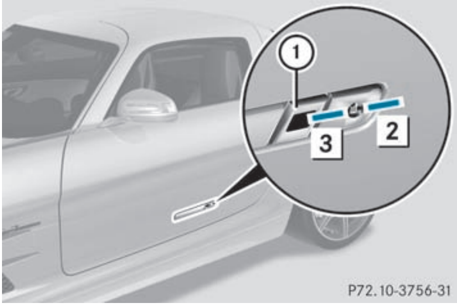
The anti-theft alarm system will be triggered when you

- unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key

  and
- open the driver's door

To cancel the alarm, see “Canceling the alarm” (▷ page 67).

▶ Remove the mechanical key from the SmartKey (▷ page 397).



▶ **Unlocking:** Insert the mechanical key into the driver's door lock.

▶ Turn the mechanical key counterclockwise to position $\boxed{3}$.
The locking knob on the driver's door moves up. The driver's door is unlocked.

▶ Turn the mechanical key back and remove it from the driver's door lock.

▶ **Opening door:** Press and hold release button ①.
The outside door handle moves out slightly.

▶ Pull the outside door handle out as far as it will go.

▶ Lift the door using the outside door handle and swing it up as far as it will go.

! The doors swing up when opened. Make sure there is sufficient space above the vehicle.

▶ **Locking:** Open the driver's door.

▶ Close the passenger door and the trunk.

▶ Press down the locking knob of the passenger door.

▶ Exit the vehicle and close the driver's door.

▶ Insert the mechanical key into the driver's door lock.

▶ Turn the mechanical key clockwise to position $\boxed{2}$.
The vehicle is locked.

▶ Turn the mechanical key back and remove it from the driver's door lock.

▶ Check whether the doors are locked.

ℹ When you lock the vehicle with the mechanical key, the outside door handle remains in extended position.

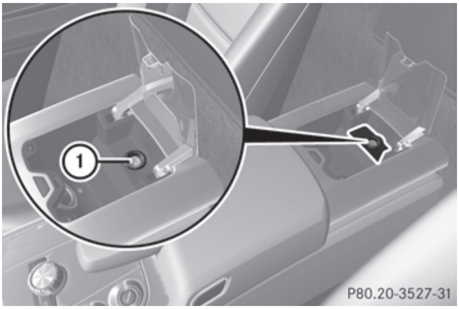
This procedure does not arm the anti-theft alarm system, nor does it lock the fuel filler flap.

Unlocking/locking the trunk

If you cannot lock or unlock the trunk with the SmartKey, use the mechanical key.

▶ Remove the mechanical key from the SmartKey (▷ page 397).

▶ Open the rear storage compartment in the center console (▷ page 304).



▶ Insert the mechanical key into trunk lid lock ①.

▶ **Locking:** Turn the mechanical key clockwise as far as it will go.

- ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the trunk lid lock.
- ▶ Check whether the trunk is locked.
- ▶ **Unlocking:** Insert the mechanical key into trunk lid lock ①.
- ▶ Turn the mechanical key counterclockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the trunk lid lock.
  You can now open the trunk.

Replacing SmartKey battery

If the battery in the SmartKey is discharged, the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked. It is recommended to have the battery replaced at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

⚠ **Warning!**

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive substances. Therefore, keep the batteries out of reach of children.

If a battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.

⚠ **Warning!**

SmartKey batteries contain perchlorate material, which may require special handling and regard for the environment. Check with your local government's disposal guidelines. California residents, see **http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/HazardousWaste/Perchlorate/index.cfm**.

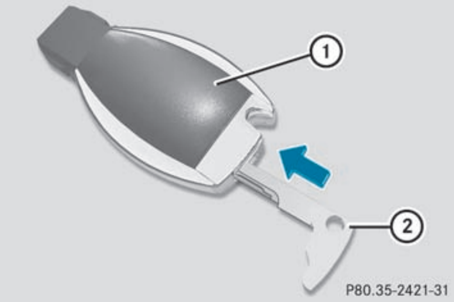
Batteries contain materials that can harm the environment if disposed of improperly. Recycling of batteries is the preferred method of disposal. Many states (USA only) or provinces (Canada only) require sellers of batteries to accept old batteries for recycling.

When inserting the battery, make sure he is clean and free of lint.

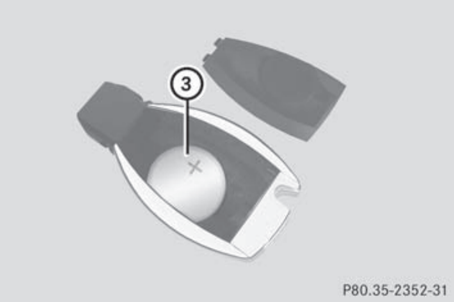
ⓘ The required replacement battery is available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Replacement battery: Lithium, type CR 2025 or equivalent.

- ▶ Remove the mechanical key from the SmartKey (▷ page 397).



- ▶ Press mechanical key ② into the SmartKey opening until battery compartment cover ① opens. Do not keep the cover shut.



- ▶ Remove the battery compartment cover.
- ▶ Pat the SmartKey against the palm of your hand until battery ③ falls out.
- ▶ Insert the new battery with the positive terminal (+) facing up. Use a lint-free cloth.
- ▶ Insert the tabs of the battery compartment cover into the housing and press the cover closed.
- ▶ Check the operation of the SmartKey.

Replacing bulbs

Safety notes

Safe vehicle operation depends on proper exterior lighting and signaling to a large degree.

Correct headlamp adjustment is extremely important. Have headlamps checked and readjusted at regular intervals and when a bulb has been replaced. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for headlamp adjustment.

⚠ **Warning!**

Bulbs and bulb sockets can be very hot. Allow the lamp to cool down before changing a bulb.

Keep bulbs out of reach of children.

Halogen lamps contain pressurized gas. A bulb can explode if you

- touch or move it when hot
- drop the bulb
- scratch the bulb

Wear eye and hand protection.

Because of high voltage in Xenon lamps, it is dangerous to replace the bulb or repair the lamp and its components. We recommend that you have such work done by a qualified technician.

ℹ Since replacing bulbs is a technically highly demanding process, we recommend to have them replaced at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

ℹ If the headlamps are fogged up on the inside as a result of high humidity, driving the vehicle a distance with the lights on should clear up the fogging.

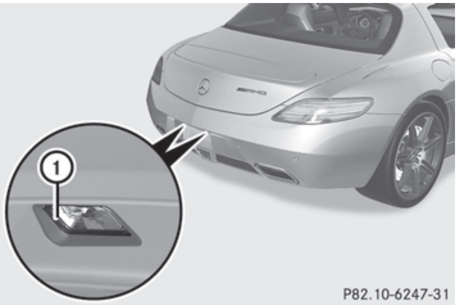
Replacing bulbs for front lamps

You cannot replace the bulbs in the front lamps yourself. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or a qualified workshop.

Replacing bulbs for rear lamps

Except for the license plate lamp bulbs, you cannot replace the bulbs in the rear lamps yourself.

License plate lamps



A bulb of type C 5 W is required.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the exterior lamp switch to position **0**.
- Insert a flat, blunt object into gap ① between the lamp lens and the housing. The latches are released.
- Pull out the lamp lens together with the flat, blunt object out of the housing.
- Replace the bulb.
- Insert the lens of license plate lamp and press it in until it audibly engages.

Replacing wiper blades

Safety notes

⚠ **Warning!**

For safety reasons, switch off the wipers and remove the SmartKey from the starter switch (KEYLESS-GO: Make sure the vehicle's on-board electronics have status **0**) before replacing a wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper motor could suddenly turn on and cause injury.

⚠ Warning!

Wiper blades are components that are subject to wear and tear. Replace the wiper blades twice a year, preferably in the spring and fall. Otherwise the windshield will not be wiped properly. As a result, you may not be able to observe surrounding traffic conditions and could cause an accident.

! To avoid damage to the hood, the wiper arms should only be folded forward when in the vertical position.

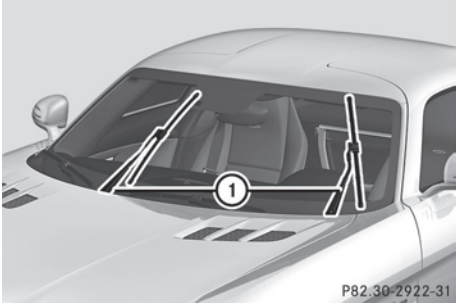
! Never open the hood when a wiper arm is folded forward.

Hold on to the wiper when folding a wiper arm back. If released, the force of the impact from the tensioning spring could crack the windshield.

Do not allow a wiper arm to contact the windshield glass without a wiper blade inserted.

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have this work carried out at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Placing wiper arms in vertical position



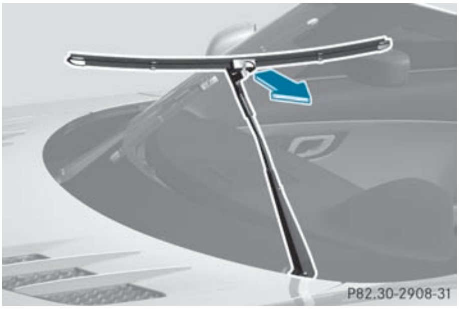
① Wiper arms in vertical position

- Make sure the hood is fully closed.
- Make sure the vehicle's on-board electronics have status **1**.
- Turn the combination switch to wiper setting ⊟.
- Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button repeatedly until the windshield wipers start.
- Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button when the wiper arms are in vertical position ①.

Removing wiper blades

! Do not pull on the wiper blade inserts. They could tear.

- Fold the wiper arm forward until it snaps into place.



- Turn the wiper blade at a right angle to wiper arm.
- Slide the wiper blade sideways out of the retainer.

Installing wiper blades

- Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it locks in place.
- Rotate the wiper blade into a position parallel to the wiper arm.
- Fold the wiper arm backward to rest on the windshield.
  Make sure you hold on to the wiper when folding the wiper arm back.

! Make sure the wiper blades are installed properly. Improperly installed wiper blades may cause windshield damage.

Flat tire

Notes

Your vehicle is equipped with a TIREFIT kit (▷ page 362).

Preparing the vehicle

- ▶ Whenever possible, park the vehicle in a safe distance from moving traffic on a hard, flat surface.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
- ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into park position **P**.
- ▶ Turn off the engine.
- ▶ KEYLESS-GO: Open the driver's door (this puts the starter switch in position **0**, same as with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch). The driver's door can then be closed again. Open doors only when conditions are safe to do so.

or

- ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.
- ▶ Have any passenger exit the vehicle at a safe distance from the roadway. Open doors only when conditions are safe to do so.

Sealing tires with TIREFIT

Small tire punctures, particularly those in the tread, can be sealed with TIREFIT.

TIREFIT can be used in ambient temperatures down to -40℉ (-40℃).

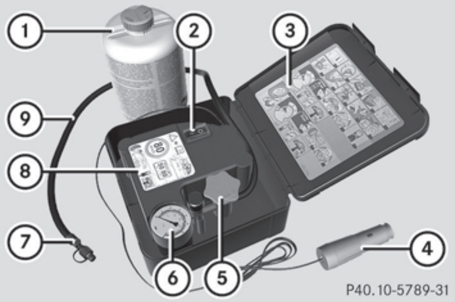
⚠ **Warning!**

TIREFIT is a limited repair device. TIREFIT cannot be used for cuts or punctures larger than approximately 0.16 in (4 mm) and tire damage caused by driving with extremely low tire inflation pressure, or on a flat tire, or a damaged wheel.

Do not drive the vehicle under such circumstances.

Contact the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for assistance or call Roadside Assistance.

- ▶ Foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed from the tire.
- ▶ Take the TIREFIT kit, the sticker, and the electric air pump out of the trunk (▷ page 362).
- ▶ Open the TIREFIT kit.



- ▶ Attach upper part of sticker ⑧ where it will be easily seen by the driver on the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Attach lower part of sticker ⑧ to the damaged tire (close to the tire valve).

⚠ **Warning!**

Take care not to allow the contents of TIREFIT to come in contact with hair, eyes or clothing. TIREFIT is harmful if inhaled, swallowed or absorbed through the skin - causes skin, eye and respiratory irritation.

Any contact with eyes or skin should be flushed immediately with plenty of water.

If clothing comes in contact with TIREFIT, change clothing as soon as possible.

In case of allergic reaction or rash, consult a physician immediately.

⚠ Warning!

Keep TIREFIT out of reach of children. If swallowed, rinse mouth immediately with plenty of water and drink plenty of water.

Do not induce vomiting!

Consult a physician immediately.

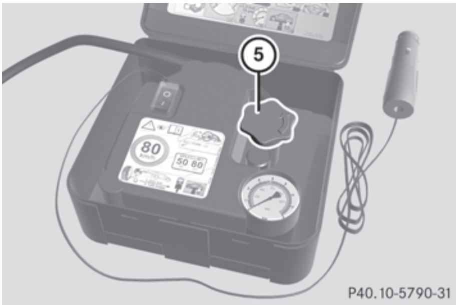
ℹ If sealant has leaked out, let it dry. You can then peel it off.

If clothing has come in contact with TIREFIT, have it dry-cleaned with perchloroethylene as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning!

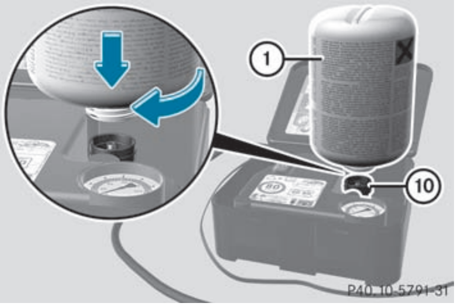
Observe safety instructions on air pump label.

▶ Pull plug ④ and air hose ⑨ out of the pump housing.

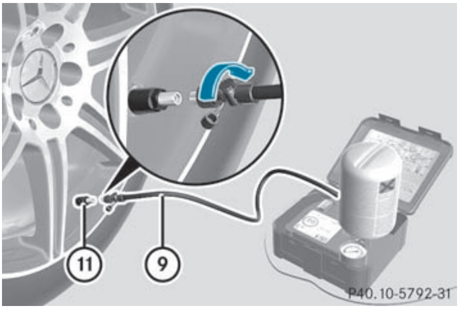


▶ Unscrew flange lid ⑤.

▶ Unscrew lid of TIREFIT container ①. Make sure not to damage the aluminum seal.



▶ Screw TIREFIT container ① clockwise onto flange ⑩.
The aluminum seal is punctured when the TIREFIT container is fastened tightly.



▶ Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tire from tire valve ⑪.

▶ Make sure vent screw ⑦ is closed completely.

▶ Pull off the dust cap from filler hose ⑨.

▶ Screw filler hose ⑨ onto tire valve ⑪.

▶ Make sure electric air pump switch ② is in position **0**.

▶ Insert electrical plug ④ into the cigarette lighter socket (▷ page 307) or a power outlet (▷ page 308).

▶ Press the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button once. Do not depress the brake pedal.

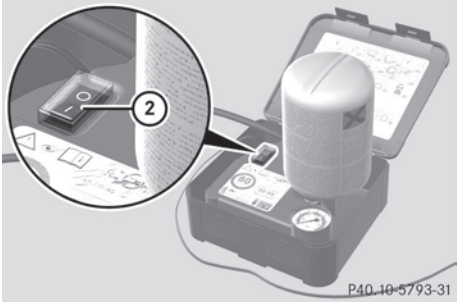
or

▶ Turn the SmartKey in the starter switch to position **1**.

ℹ Using the electrical air pump drains the vehicle battery. When in the open, start the engine while inflating the tire.

⚠ Warning!

Inhalation of exhaust gas is hazardous to your health. All exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), and inhaling it can cause unconsciousness and lead to death. Do not run the engine in confined areas (such as a garage) which are not properly ventilated.



- Press **I** on electric air pump switch ②.
  The electric air pump is switched on and inflates the tire.

ℹ First, the sealing is pumped into the tire. The pressure may briefly rise to up to 500 kPA (5 bar, 73 psi). This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. **Do not switch off the electric air pump.**

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> The air hose can become hot during inflation. Please exercise appropriate caution.

- Let the electric air pump inflate the tire for approximately 10 minutes.
  The tire inflation pressure must be at least 180 kPA (1.8 bar, 26 psi). The maximum tire inflation pressure is 350 kPA (3.5 bar, 50 psi).

  Switch off the electric air pump to read the tire inflation pressure from pressure gauge ⑥.

! Do not operate the electric air pump longer than 10 minutes without interruption. Otherwise it may overheat.

You may operate the air pump again after it has cooled off.

If the tire inflation pressure of at least 180 kPA (1.8 bar, 26 psi) is not attained:

- Turn off the electric air pump by pressing **0** on electric air pump switch ②.
- Detach filler hose ⑨ from tire valve ⑪.
- Leave TIREFIT container ① on flange ⑩.
- Drive vehicle back or forth very slowly approximately 30 ft (10 m).
  This serves to better distribute the TIREFIT sealant material inside the tire.
- Inflate the tire again.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> If a tire inflation pressure of 180 kPA (1.8 bar, 26 psi) is not attained, the tire is too severely damaged for TIREFIT to provide a reliable tire repair.
>
> In this case, TIREFIT cannot properly seal the tire.
>
> Do not drive the vehicle.
>
> Contact the nearest Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

After attaining a tire inflation pressure of at least 180 kPA (1.8 bar, 26 psi):

- Press **0** on electric air pump switch ②.
  The electric air pump is switched off.
- Pull plug ④ from the cigarette lighter/power outlet.

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> The air hose may still be hot. Exercise proper caution to avoid burning yourself when detaching the electric air pump.

! Remaining TIREFIT sealant could escape from the filler hose after it has been detached from the tire valve. TIREFIT sealant may cause stains.

Therefore, cover the filler hose, e.g. by inserting it into the plastic bag the TIREFIT kit was packed in.

- Unscrew filler hose ⑨ from tire valve ⑪ and plug the filler hose with the dust cap. Screw the valve cap back onto the tire valve.

  Leave TIREFIT container ① on flange ⑩.
- Store the TIREFIT kit in the designated storage compartment.
- **Drive off immediately.**

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not exceed a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). A TIREFIT repair is not designed to operate at higher speeds.

The sticker must be attached on the instrument cluster where it will be easily seen by the driver.

Vehicle handling characteristics of a TIREFIT repaired tire may change. Adapt your driving accordingly.

- ▶ After driving for approximately 5 miles (3 km) or 10 minutes, stop the vehicle and check the tire inflation pressure using the electric air pump.

ℹ The TIREFIT sealing may impair the function of the sensors in the tire. Proper operating sensors are necessary to check the tire inflation pressure with the Advanced Tire Pressure Monitoring System. When the sensors are not operating properly, the measured tire inflation pressure may be inaccurate or the tire inflation pressure may not be displayed at all. Error messages may appear. Therefore, check and adjust the tire inflation pressure with pressure gauge ⑥ on the electric air pump.

⚠ **Warning!**

If tire inflation pressure has fallen below 130 kPA (1.3 bar, 20 psi) do not continue to drive the vehicle.

Park your vehicle safely away from the roadway and contact the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or Roadside Assistance.

Have the damaged tire replaced.

If the tire inflation pressure is at least 130 kPA (1.3 bar, 20 psi), inflate or deflate the tire to the correct tire inflation pressure (see Tire and Loading Information placard on the driver's door B-pillar):

- ▶ **To increase tire inflation pressure:** Switch on the electric air pump.
- ▶ **To decrease tire inflation pressure:** Open vent screw ⑦ on air hose ⑨.

- ▶ Drive to the nearest qualified workshop, e.g. an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center, to have the damaged tire replaced.
- ▶ Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center as soon as possible to obtain a new TIREFIT kit.
- ▶ Bring used TIREFIT materials to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for proper disposal.
- ▶ Replace your TIREFIT container every 4 years. Replacement containers are available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Wheel change

Preparing the vehicle

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
- ▶ Engage the electronic parking brake.
- ▶ Shift the transmission into park position **P**.
- ▶ Turn off the engine.
- ▶ KEYLESS-GO: Open the driver's door (this puts the starter switch in position **0**, same as with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch). The driver's door can then be closed again. Open doors only when conditions are safe to do so.

or

- ▶ Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.
- ▶ Take the following out of the vehicle:

- collapsible wheel chock
- jack
- wheel wrench
- alignment bolt

For information on where to find the respective items, see “Where will I find ...?” (▷ page 362).

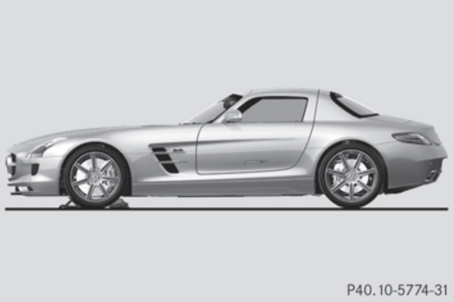
▶ Prevent the vehicle from rolling away by blocking wheels with wheel chocks or other sizeable objects.

One wheel chock is included with the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362). For information on setting up a collapsible wheel chock, see (▷ page 363).

⚠ **Warning!**

Only jack up the vehicle on level ground or on slight inclines/declines. Otherwise, the vehicle could fall off the jack and injure you or others.

Changing a wheel on a level surface

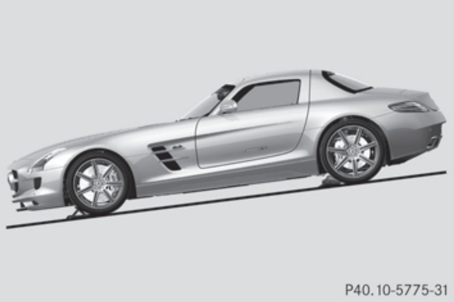


Changing rear wheel on passenger side (example illustration)

▶ Place a wheel chock or other sizeable object in front of and another wheel chock or other sizeable object behind the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed.

Changing a wheel on a slight decline

Always try lifting the vehicle using the jack on a level surface. However, should circumstances require you to do so on a slight decline:

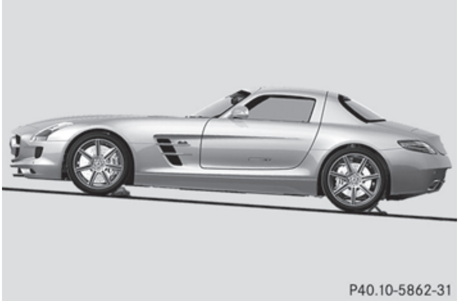


Changing wheel on passenger side (example illustration)

▶ Place wheel chocks or other sizeable objects on the downhill side in front of both wheels on the side opposite to the side on which the wheel is to be changed.

Changing a wheel on a slight incline

Always try lifting the vehicle using the jack on a level surface. However, should circumstances require you to do so on a slight incline:



Changing wheel on passenger side (example illustration)

▶ Place wheel chocks or other sizeable objects on the downhill side in front of both wheels on the side opposite to the side on which the wheel is to be changed.

Removing the wheel

⚠ **Warning!**

When jacking up the vehicle, only use the jack which has been specifically approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle.

The jack is designed exclusively for jacking up the vehicle at the jack take-up brackets built into both sides of the vehicle. Make sure the jack arm is fully seated in the jack take-up bracket. The jack must always be vertical when in use, especially on inclines or declines.

The jack is intended only for lifting the vehicle briefly for wheel changes. It is not suited for performing maintenance work under the vehicle. To help avoid personal injury, use the jack only to lift the vehicle during a wheel change.

Never get beneath the vehicle while it is supported by the jack. Keep hands and feet away from the area under the lifted vehicle. Always lower the vehicle onto sufficient capacity jackstands before working under the vehicle.

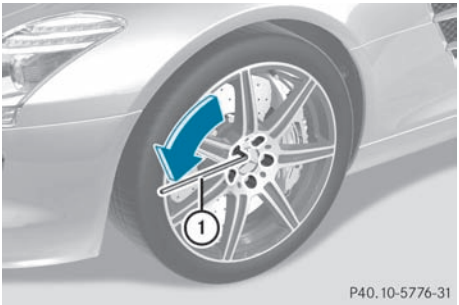
Always make sure the electronic parking brake is engaged. In addition, block the wheels with wheel chocks or other sizeable objects before raising the vehicle with the jack. Do not disengage the electronic parking brake while the vehicle is raised.

Make sure that the ground on which the vehicle is standing and where you place the jack is solid, level and not slippery. If necessary, use a large underlay. On slippery surfaces, such as tiled floors, you should use a non-slip underlay, for example a rubber mat.

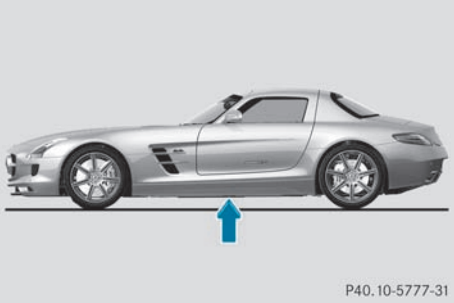
Do not use wooden blocks or similar objects to support the jack. Otherwise the jack may not be able to achieve its load-bearing capacity if it is not at its full height.

Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.

Also observe the notes on the jack.



- ▶ On the wheel to be changed, loosen but do not yet remove the wheel bolts (approximately one full turn with wheel wrench ①).
- ▶ Assemble the jack (▷ page 363).



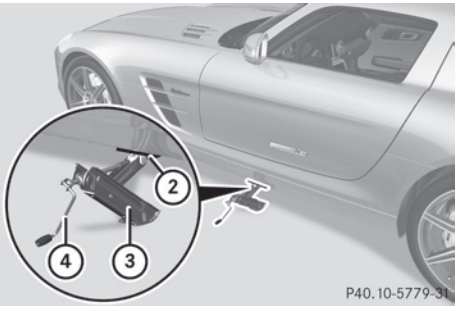
The jack take-up bracket is located centrally between the front and rear wheel housings where indicated by the arrow.

⚠ **Warning!**

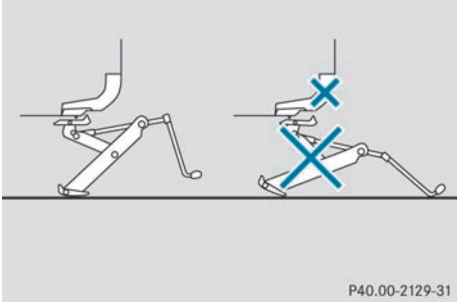
The jack is designed exclusively for jacking up the vehicle at the jack take-up brackets. Make sure the jack arm is fully seated in the jack take-up bracket.

If you do not position the jack correctly in the jack take-up bracket, the vehicle can fall off the jack and seriously or fatally injure you or others.

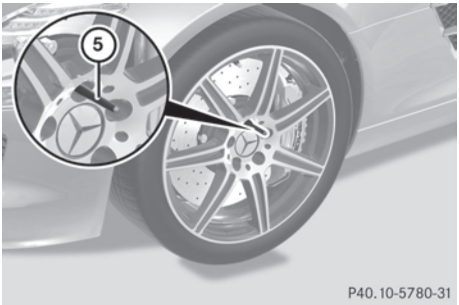
! Do not position the jack on the body of the vehicle, as this may cause damage to the vehicle.



- Place jack ③ on firm ground.
- Position jack ③ under take-up bracket ② so that it is always vertical as seen from the side, even if the vehicle is parked on an incline.



- Turn crank ④ clockwise until jack ③ is fully seated in take-up bracket ② and the jack base evenly meets the ground.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel is a maximum of 1.2 in (3 cm) from the ground.



! The rim could strike the ceramic composite brake disk when removing and attaching the wheel. The ceramic composite brake disk could be damaged. Exercise appropriate care and have a second person assist you if possible or use a second alignment bolt.

- Unscrew the uppermost wheel bolt and remove it.
- Replace this wheel bolt with alignment bolt ⑤.
- Remove the remaining bolts.

! Do not place wheel bolts in sand or dirt. This could result in damage to the wheel bolts and wheel hub threads.

- Remove the wheel.

Mounting the wheel

⚠ **Warning!**

Always replace wheel bolts that are damaged or rusted.

Never apply oil or grease to wheel bolts.

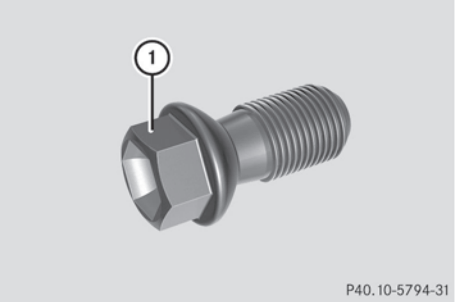
Damaged wheel hub threads should be repaired immediately. Do not continue to drive under these circumstances! Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or call Roadside Assistance.

Incorrect wheel bolts or improperly tightened wheel bolts can cause the wheel to come off. This could cause an accident. Make sure to use the correct wheel bolts.

⚠ **Warning!**

Only use genuine Mercedes-Benz wheel bolts. Other wheel bolts may come loose.

Do not tighten the wheel bolts when the vehicle is raised. Otherwise the vehicle could fall off the jack.

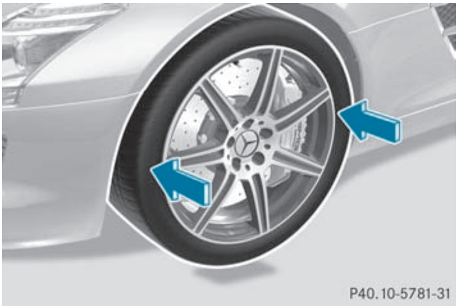


① Wheel bolt

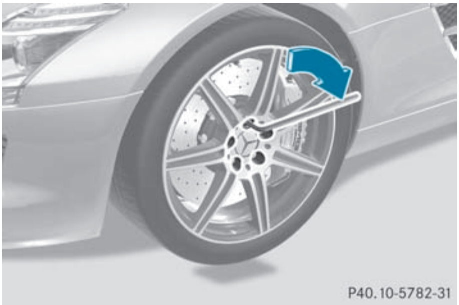
- ▶ Clean contact surfaces of wheel and wheel hub.

! To avoid paint damage, place wheel flat against hub and hold it there while installing first wheel bolt.

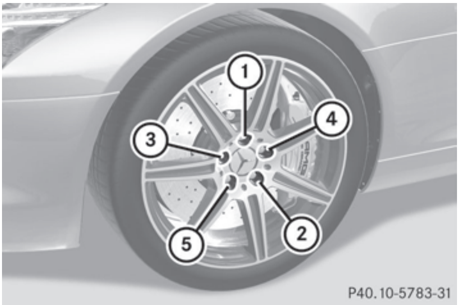
! The rim could strike the ceramic composite brake disk when removing and attaching the wheel. The ceramic composite brake disk could be damaged. Exercise appropriate care and have a second person assist you if possible or use a second alignment bolt.



- ▶ Guide the wheel onto the alignment bolt and push it on.



- ▶ Insert the wheel bolts and tighten them slightly.
- ▶ Unscrew the alignment bolt.
- ▶ Install the last wheel bolt and tighten it slightly.
- ▶ Lower the vehicle by turning the crank counterclockwise until the vehicle is resting fully on its own weight.
- ▶ Remove the jack.



Tighten the five wheel bolts evenly, following the diagonal sequence illustrated (① to ⑤), until all bolts are tight. Observe a tightening torque of 96 lb-ft (130 Nm).

⚠ Warning!

Have the tightening torque checked after changing a wheel. The wheels could come loose if they are not tightened to a torque of 96 lb-ft (130 Nm).

- ▶ Fully collapse the jack, with handle folded in (storage position), see (▷ page 363).
- ▶ Store the jack and the other vehicle tools in the designated storage space.

Battery

Safety notes

A battery should always be sufficiently charged in order to achieve its rated service life. Refer to Maintenance Booklet for battery maintenance intervals.

If you use your vehicle mostly for short-distance trips, you will need to have the battery charge checked more frequently.

When replacing a battery, always use a battery approved by Mercedes-Benz.

If you do not intend to operate your vehicle for an extended period of time, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center about steps you need to observe.

⚠ **Warning!**

Observe all safety instructions and precautions when handling automotive batteries.

Risk of explosion.

Fire, open flames and smoking are prohibited when handling batteries. Avoid creating sparks.

Battery acid is caustic. Do not allow it to come into contact with skin, eyes or clothing.

Wear suitable protective clothing, especially gloves, apron and faceguard.

Wear eye protection.

Rinse any acid spills immediately with clear water. Contact a physician if necessary.

Keep children away.

Follow the instructions in this Operator’s Manual.

A battery contains materials that can harm the environment if disposed of improperly. A large 12 V storage battery contains lead. Recycling of the battery is the preferred method of disposal. Many states (USA only) or provinces (Canada only) require sellers of batteries to accept the old battery for recycling.

⚠ **Warning!**

Failure to follow these instructions can result in severe injury or death.

Never lean over batteries while connecting. You might get injured.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow this fluid to come in contact with eyes, skin or clothing. In case it does, immediately flush affected area with water and seek medical help if necessary.

A battery will also produce hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive. Keep flames or sparks away from battery, avoid improper connection of jumper cables, smoking etc.

⚠ **Warning!**

Do not place metal objects on the battery as this could result in a short circuit.

Use leak-proof batteries only to avoid the risk of acid burns in the event of an accident.

Take care that you do not become statically charged, e.g. by wearing synthetic clothing or rubbing against textiles. For this reason, you also should not pull or push the battery over carpets or other synthetic materials.

Never touch the battery first. First touch the outside body of the vehicle in order to release any possible electrostatic charges.

Do not rub the battery with rags or cloths. The battery could explode if touched due to electrostatic charge or due to spark formation.

! The battery is a **V**alve-**R**egulated **L**ead **A**cid (VRLA) battery, also referred to as “fleece” battery.

Such batteries do not require topping-up of the electrolyte level. VRLA batteries therefore do not have cell caps and the battery cover is non-removable. Do not attempt to open the battery as otherwise the battery will be damaged.

VRLA batteries do not require topping-up of the electrolyte level. They cannot be opened to check the electrolyte level. However, the battery condition must be checked periodically by performing a battery conductance test. Refer to Maintenance Booklet for battery condition testing intervals.

The factory-equipped battery may only be replaced with a battery that

- has the same security features
- is of identical size
- is of identical voltage
- is of identical capacity

! As any other battery, the battery may discharge if you do not operate the vehicle for an extended period of time. Have the battery disconnected at a qualified workshop or an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center in such a case. You may also connect an accessory battery charge unit expressly approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle model to maintain the battery charge. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for further information.

The battery, the battery ventilation hose and the lateral plug must always be securely installed when the vehicle is in operation.

! Never loosen or detach battery terminal clamps while the engine is running or the SmartKey is in the starter switch or KEYLESS-GO button is in position **1**. Otherwise the alternator and other electronic components could be severely damaged.

Have the battery checked regularly at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Refer to Maintenance Booklet for maintenance intervals or contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for further information.

i Make sure the vehicle’s on-board electronics have status **0** when you turn off the engine and no longer require any electrical consumers. The vehicle then uses very little power and the battery is spared.

i If the battery is discharged, you must use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

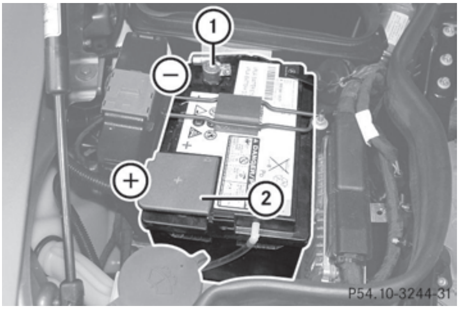
i After battery power was interrupted, do the following:

- Synchronize the power windows (▷ page 256).
- Synchronize the exterior rear view mirrors (▷ page 248).

Battery location

The battery is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side.

▶ Open the hood (▷ page 322).



① Negative terminal

② Positive terminal with positive terminal cover

Charging the battery

⚠ **Warning!**

Never charge a battery while still installed in the vehicle unless the accessory battery charge unit approved by Mercedes-Benz is being used. Gases may escape during charging and could cause an explosion that may result in personal injury, paint damage or corrosion.

An accessory battery charge unit specially adapted for Mercedes-Benz vehicles and tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz is available. It permits the charging of the battery in its installed position. Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for information and availability.

Charge battery in accordance with the separate instructions for the accessory battery charger.

Have the battery charged at an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. If you charge the battery yourself, follow the operating instructions for your charging device.

Only use a battery charge unit with a maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V.

- Charge battery in accordance with the instructions of the battery charger manufacturer.

Jump starting

⚠ Warning!

Failure to follow these directions will cause damage to the electronic components, and can lead to a battery explosion and severe injury or death.

Never lean over batteries while connecting or jump starting. You might get injured.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow this fluid to come in contact with eyes, skin or clothing. In case it does, immediately flush affected area with water, and seek medical help if necessary.

A battery will also produce hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive. Keep flames or sparks away from battery, avoid improper connection of jumper cables, smoking, etc.

Attempting to jump start a frozen battery can result in it exploding, causing personal injury.

Read all instructions before proceeding.

! Do not tow-start the vehicle. You could otherwise seriously damage the transmission which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! Avoid repeated and lengthy starting attempts.

Do not attempt to start the engine using a battery quick-charge unit.

If the engine does not run after several unsuccessful starting attempts, have it checked at the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Excessive unburned fuel generated by repeated failed starting attempts may damage the catalytic converter and may present a fire risk.

Make sure the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation.

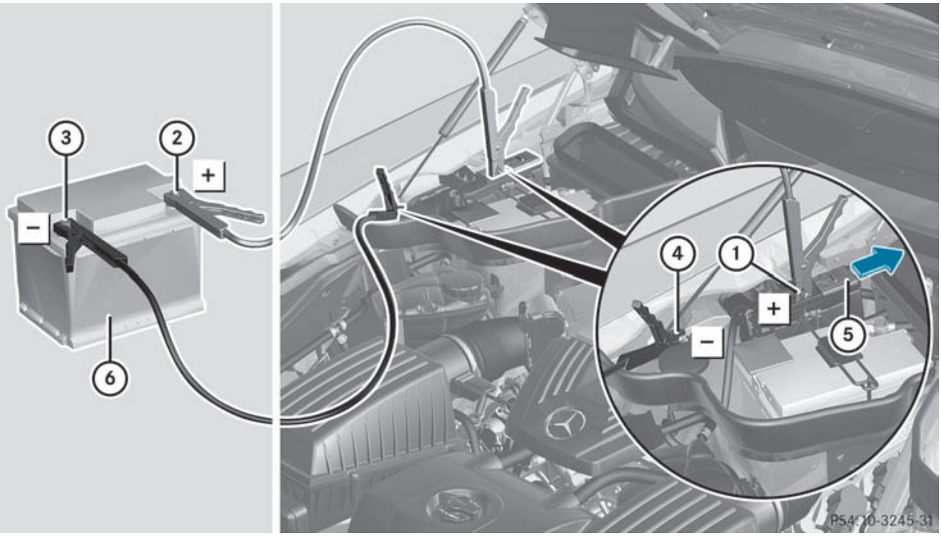
Make sure the cable clamps do not touch any other metal part while the other end is still attached to a battery.

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started with jumper cables and the fully charged battery of another vehicle or an equivalent starter pack. Observe the following:

- Access to the battery is not possible on all vehicles. If you cannot access the battery of the other vehicle, provide jump start power by an external battery or starter pack.
- Jump starting should only be performed when the engine and catalytic converter are cold.
- Do not jump start the engine or charge the battery if the battery is frozen. Let the battery thaw out first.
- Only jump start from batteries with the same voltage rating (12 V). Jump starting with a more powerful battery could damage the vehicle’s electrical system. Such damage will not be covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.
- Only use jumper cables with sufficient cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.
- Always make sure the jumper cables are not on or near pulleys, fans or other parts that move when an engine is started or running.
- Should the battery be drained completely, let the donating power source charge the vehicle for several minutes before reattempting the starting process.

The battery is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side.

- Make sure the two vehicles do not touch.
- Switch off all electrical consumers.
- Engage the electronic parking brake.
- Make sure the transmission is in park position **P**.
- Open the hood (▷ page 322).



Position ⑥ represents the charged battery of another vehicle or an equivalent starter pack.

- Slide cover ⑤ from positive terminal ① in direction of arrow.

! Never invert the terminal connections!

- Connect positive terminal ② of charged battery ⑥ with positive terminal ① with a jumper cable. Clamp the cable to positive terminal ② of charged battery ⑥ first.
- Start engine of the vehicle with charged battery ⑥ and run at idle speed.
- Connect negative terminal ③ of charged battery ⑥ with negative terminal ④ with a jumper cable. Clamp the cable to negative terminal ④ of charged battery ⑥ first.
- Start engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery and run at idle speed.
  You can now turn on the electrical consumers. Do not switch on the headlamps under any circumstances.
- Remove the jumper cables from negative terminals ④ and ③ first.
- Remove the jumper cables from positive terminals ① and ②.
  You can now switch on the headlamps.
- Slide cover ⑤ back onto positive terminal ①.
- Have the battery checked at the nearest authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Towing the vehicle

Safety notes

Mercedes-Benz recommends that the vehicle be transported with all wheels off the ground using flatbed or appropriate wheel lift/dolly equipment. This method is preferable to other types of towing.

! To prevent damage during transport, do not tie down vehicle by its chassis or suspension parts.

If circumstances do not permit the recommended towing methods, the vehicle may be towed with all wheels on the ground or rear axle raised only so far as necessary to have the vehicle moved to a safe location where the recommended towing methods can be employed.

! Before towing the vehicle observe the following instructions:

- Do not tow-start the vehicle. You could otherwise seriously damage the transmission which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Towing with sling-type equipment over bumpy roads will damage radiator and supports.
- Towing of the vehicle should only be done using the properly installed towing eye bolt. Never attach a tow cable, tow rope or tow rod to the vehicle chassis, frame or suspension parts.

⚠ **Warning!**

With the engine not running, there is no power assistance for the brake and steering systems. In this case, it is important to keep in mind that a considerably higher degree of effort is necessary to brake and steer the vehicle. Adapt your driving accordingly.

! Avoid pulling the vehicle abruptly or diagonally, since it could result in damage to the chassis alignment.

! Do not use the towing eye bolt for recovery, as this could damage the vehicle. If in doubt, recover the vehicle with a crane.

ℹ If the battery is disconnected or discharged

- the transmission will remain in park position **P**
- the SmartKey will not turn in the starter switch

For more information see “Battery” (▷ page 410) or “Jump starting” (▷ page 413).

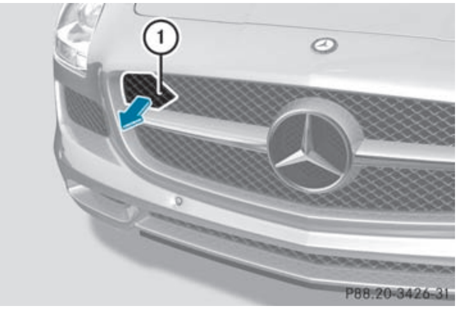
Installing towing eye bolt

The towing eye bolt is supplied with the vehicle tool kit, located in the storage compartment underneath the trunk floor (▷ page 362).

▶ Take the towing eye bolt and the wheel wrench out of the trunk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a front towing eye bolt only. You cannot tow other vehicles with your vehicle.

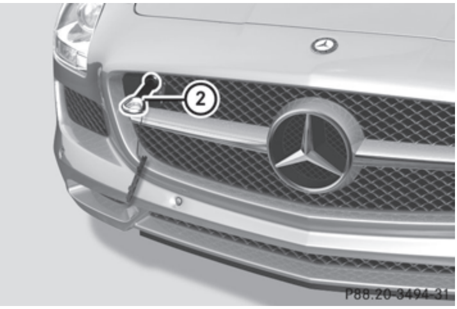
Removing cover in front bumper



▶ Pull off cover ①.

▶ Remove cover ① from the opening. Cover ① is tethered with a plastic strap.

Fixing towing eye bolt



- ▶ Screw towing eye bolt ② clockwise into threaded hole to its stop.
- ▶ Insert wheel wrench into towing eye and tighten towing eye bolt ② by turning it clockwise.

Removing towing eye bolt

- ▶ Loosen towing eye bolt ② by turning it counterclockwise.
- ▶ Unscrew towing eye bolt ②.
- ▶ **Reinstalling cover:** Engage cover ① (▷ page 415) at bottom and press at top.
- ▶ Store the towing eye bolt ② and wheel wrench back into the vehicle tool kit.

Towing with rear axle raised

! The vehicle may be towed only for distances up to 30 miles (50 km) and at a speed not to exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

When towing the vehicle with the rear axle raised, the wheels on the ground have to move freely. Therefore follow the respective steps below, after the rear axle being raised:

- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning flasher (▷ page 252).
- ▶ Make sure the transmission remains in neutral position **N**. Observe instructions, see “Shifting into neutral position **N**” (▷ page 263).

! Because the ESC operates automatically, the engine and ignition must be shut off (KEYLESS-GO start/stop button in position **0** or **1**, or SmartKey in starter switch position **0** or **1**) when the electronic parking brake is being tested on a brake test dynamometer or when the vehicle is being towed with the rear axle raised.

Active braking action through the ESC may otherwise seriously damage the brake system which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

! Keep in mind that it is important for the SmartKey to be left in starter switch with the ignition switched off. As soon as the SmartKey is removed from the starter switch the transmission will shift to park position **P**.

Towing with all wheels on the ground

⚠ **Warning!**

When there is a malfunction in the brake system, the vehicle must be towed using a tow bar.

Before towing make sure the steering wheel is unlocked and can be moved.

The vehicle must not be towed when the power supply or the vehicle’s electrical system are malfunctioning.

⚠ **Warning!**

While the vehicle is being towed,

- the engine may turn off
- the electrical system may fail
- the battery voltage may drop too far.

All or any of this will block the rear axle.

This could cause an accident and injure you and/or others.

! You must not use the KEYLESS-GO start/stop button when towing the vehicle. Use the SmartKey instead.

Leave the engine running under all circumstances.

Removing the SmartKey from the starter switch or opening a door with the ignition switched off will automatically shift the into park position **P**.

- Start the engine (▷ page 259).
- With the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal and keep it pressed.
- Shift the transmission into neutral position **N**.
- Check the transmission position in the instrument cluster (▷ page 265).
- Release the brake pedal.
- If engaged, release the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning flasher (▷ page 252).
- Leave the engine running throughout the entire towing procedure.

! The vehicle may be towed only for distances up to 30 miles (50 km) and at a speed not to exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

! Make sure the electronic parking brake is released. If the electronic parking brake is malfunctioning, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

! While towing, check the temperature of the transmission fluid via the control system in the AMG menu. The transmission fluid temperature may not rise above 248℉ (120℃). Otherwise, the towing procedure must be stopped immediately.

ℹ While being towed with the hazard warning flasher in use, use the combination switch in the usual manner to signal turns. Only the selected turn signal will operate. Upon canceling the turn signal, the hazard warning flasher will operate again.

Fuses

Introduction

The electrical fuses in your vehicle serve to switch off malfunctioning power circuits.

If a fuse is blown, the components and systems secured by that fuse will stop operating.

⚠ **Warning!**

Only use fuses approved by Mercedes-Benz with the specified amperage for the system in question and do not attempt to repair or bridge a blown fuse. Using other than approved fuses or using repaired or bridged fuses may cause an overload leading to a fire, and/or cause damage to electrical components and/or systems. Have the cause determined and remedied by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

A blown fuse must be replaced by an appropriate spare fuse (recognizable by its color or the fuse rating given on the fuse) of the amperage recommended in the fuse chart. Any Mercedes-Benz Center will be glad to advise you on this subject.

ℹ In case of a blown fuse contact Roadside Assistance or an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

If a newly inserted fuse blows again, have the cause determined and rectified by an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

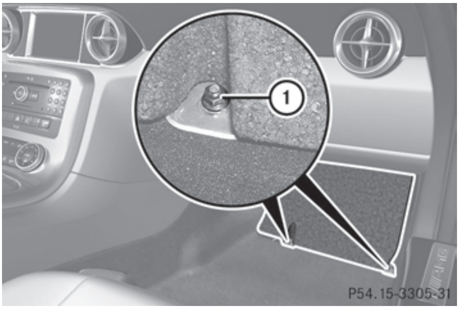
The fuse chart is located in the trunk with the vehicle tool kit (▷ page 362). The fuse chart explains the fuse allocation and fuse amperages.

Before replacing fuses

- Engage the electronic parking brake.
- Make sure the transmission is in park position **P**.
- Switch off all electrical consumers.
- Turn off the engine.

- KEYLESS-GO: Open the driver's door (this puts the starter switch in position **0**, same as with the SmartKey removed from the starter switch). The driver's door then can be closed again.
- Remove the SmartKey from the starter switch.

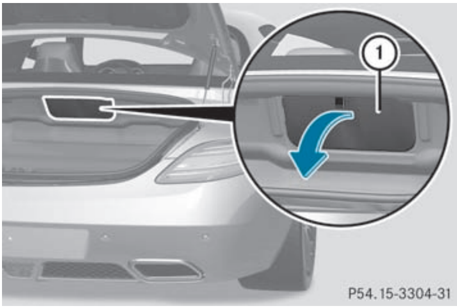
Fuse box in passenger footwell



- **Opening:** Remove the carpet from the footrest.
- Unscrew and remove screws ① from the footrest with a suitable tool.
- Remove the footrest.
- **Closing:** Reinstall the footrest.
- Insert screws ① and fasten them.
- Place the carpet on the footrest and press it in place.

! The footrest must be positioned and installed properly. Otherwise moisture and/or dirt may impair fuse operation.

Fuse box in trunk



- **Opening:** Open the trunk (▷ page 239).
- Fold down cover ① that is located at the rear panel in the direction of the arrow.
- **Closing:** Fold up cover ① in the opposite direction of the arrow and press to close.

! A fuse box cover must be properly positioned as described. Otherwise, moisture or dirt could enter a fuse box and possibly impair fuse operation.

Vehicle equipment 420
Parts service 420
Warranty coverage 420
Identification labels 420
Vehicle specification 421
Rims and tires 422
Fuels, coolants, lubricants, etc. 425

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

ℹ This Operator’s Manual describes all features, standard or optional, potentially available for your vehicle at the time of purchase. Please be aware that your vehicle might not be equipped with all features described in this manual.

Parts service

All authorized Mercedes-Benz Centers maintain a stock of Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts required for maintenance and repair work. In addition, strategically located parts distribution centers provide quick and reliable parts service.

More than 300 000 different parts for Mercedes-Benz models are available.

Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts are subjected to stringent quality inspections. Each part has been specifically developed, manufactured or selected for and adapted to Mercedes-Benz vehicles.

Therefore, Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts should be installed.

! Do not use non-genuine Mercedes-Benz parts and accessories not authorized by Mercedes-Benz. Doing so could damage the vehicle, which is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty. Also, it could compromise the vehicle’s durability or safety.

Warranty coverage

Your vehicle is covered under the terms of the warranties printed in the Service and Warranty Information booklet.

Your authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will exchange or repair any defective parts originally installed in the vehicle in accordance with the terms of the following warranties:

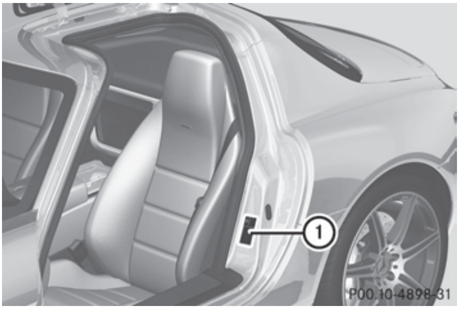
- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Emission System Warranty
- Emission Performance Warranty
- California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, and Vermont Emission Control Systems Warranty
- State Warranty Enforcement Laws (Lemon Laws)

Replacement parts and accessories are covered by the Mercedes-Benz Parts and Accessories warranties, copies of which are available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Loss of Service and Warranty Information booklet

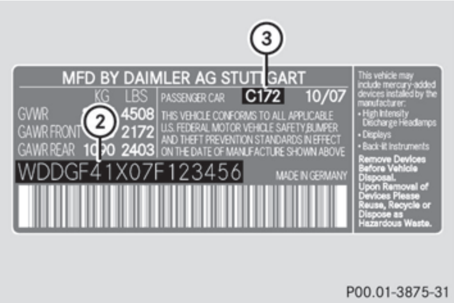
Should you lose your Service and Warranty Information booklet, have an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center arrange for a replacement. It will be mailed to you.

Identification labels



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found

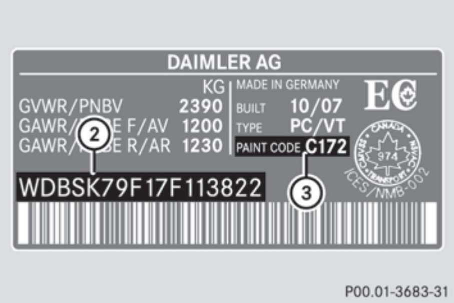
- on certification label ① on the driver's door B-pillar
- embossed underneath the carpet in the passenger footwell (▷ page 421)
- on the lower edge of the windshield (▷ page 421)


③
MFD BY DAIMLER AG STUTTGART
KG LBS
PASSENGER CAR
C172
10/07
GVWR
GAWR FRONT
GAWR REAR
②
4508
2172
2403
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY, BUMPER AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE
WDDGF41X07F123456
MADE IN GERMANY
This vehicle may include mercury-added devices installed by the manufacturer:
• High Intensity Discharge Headlamps
• Displays
• Back-lit Instruments
Remove Devices Before Vehicle Disposal.
Upon Removal of Devices Please Reuse, Recycle or Dispose as Hazardous Waste.
P00.01-3875-31

Example certification label (U.S. vehicles)

② VIN

③ Paintwork code

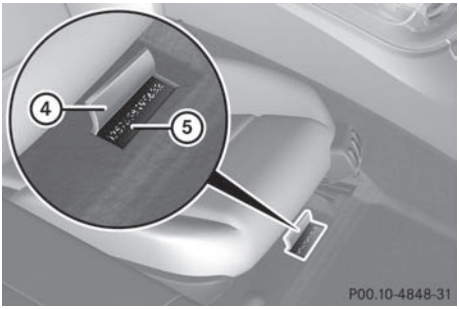

DAIMLER AG
KG
MADE IN GERMANY
GVWR/PNBV 2390
GAWR/PNBE F/AV 1200
GAWR/PNBE R/AR 1230
BUILT 10/07
TYPE PC/VT
PAINT CODE C172
②
③
WDBSK79F17F113822
974
ICES/NMB-002
P00.01-3683-31

Example certification label (Canada vehicles)

② VIN

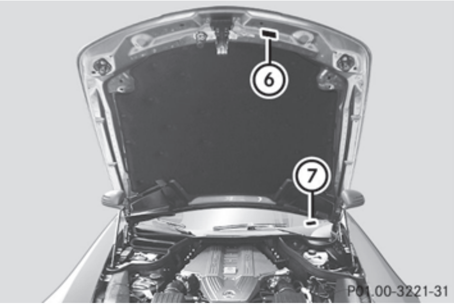
③ Paintwork code

ⓘ Data shown on certification label are for illustration purposes only. These data are specific to each vehicle and may vary from data shown in the illustration. Refer to certification label on vehicle for actual data specific to your vehicle.


④
⑤
P00.10-4848-31

▶ Move the passenger seat backward as far as possible (▷ page 244).

▶ Fold carpet ④ backward.
VIN ⑤ is now visible.


⑥
⑦
P01.00-3221-31

⑥ Emission control information label, includes both federal and California certification exhaust emission standards

⑦ VIN (on lower edge of windshield)

Engine number

The engine number is engraved on the engine block (crankcase). Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for further information.

ⓘ When ordering parts, please specify vehicle identification and engine number.

Vehicle specification

The quoted data apply only to the standard vehicle. Contact an authorized Mercedes-

Benz Center for the corresponding data of all special bodies and special equipment.

Engine SLS AMG (197)	
Engine, type	159
Mode of operation	4-stroke engine, gasoline injection
No. of cylinders	8
Bore	4.02 in (102.20 mm)
Stroke	3.72 in (94.60 mm)
Total piston displacement	378.8 cu in (6 208 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.3:1
Output acc. to SAE J 1349[12]	563 hp/6 800 rpm (420 kW/6 800 rpm)
Maximum torque acc. to SAE J 1349	465 lb-ft/ 5 200 rpm (630 Nm/ 5 200 rpm)
Maximum engine speed	7 200 rpm
Firing order	1-5-4-2-6-3-7-8
Poly-V-belt	2 360 mm

Electrical system SLS AMG (197)	
Alternator	14 V/180 A
Starter motor	12 V/1.7 kW
Battery	12 V/80 Ah
Spark plugs, type	NGK ILZKAR 7A10
Spark plugs, electrode gap	0.039 in (1.0 mm)
Spark plugs, tightening torque	15 - 18 lb-ft (20 - 25 Nm)

Main dimensions SLS AMG (197)	
Overall vehicle length	182.7 in (4 640 mm)
Overall vehicle width[13]	81.8 in (2 078 mm)
Overall vehicle height	49.7 in (1 262 mm)
Wheelbase	105.5 in (2 680 mm)
Track, front	66.2 in (1 682 mm)
Track, rear	65.0 in (1 651 mm)
Ground clearance	3.7 in (95 mm)
Turning circle	36.1 ft (11.0 m)

Weights SLS AMG (197)	
Trunk load	max. 137 lb (62 kg)

Rims and tires

Notes

! Only use tires which have been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz. Tires approved by Mercedes-Benz are developed to provide best possible performance in conjunction with the driving safety systems on your vehicle such as the ABS or the ESC. Tires specially developed for your vehicle and tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz can be identified by finding the following on the tire’s sidewall:

- MO = **M**ercedes-Benz **O**riginal equipment tires

Using tires other than those approved by Mercedes-Benz may result in damage that is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

---

[12] Premium fuel required. Performance may vary with fuel octane rating.

[13] Exterior rear view mirrors folded out.

! Using tires other than those approved by Mercedes-Benz can have detrimental effects, such as

- poor handling characteristics
- increased noise
- increased fuel consumption

Moreover, tires and rims not approved by Mercedes-Benz may, under load, exhibit dimensional variations and different tire deformation characteristics that could cause them to come into contact with the vehicle body or axle parts. Damage to the tires or the vehicle may be the result.

ℹ Further information on tires and rims is available at any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center. The Tire and Loading Information placard with the recommended tire inflation pressures for cold tires is located on the driver’s door B-pillar. Supplemental tire inflation pressure information for driving at high speeds or for vehicle loads less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition can be found on the tire inflation pressure label. The tire inflation pressure label is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. The tire inflation pressure should be checked regularly and should only be adjusted on cold tires. Follow tire manufacturer’s maintenance recommendation included with the vehicle.

For information on recommended tire inflation pressure and supplemental tire inflation pressure information for special driving situations, see (▷ page 327).

ℹ Please keep in mind that the vehicle must be equipped

- with wheels of identical dimensions on each axle (left and right)
- with tires of identical characteristics all around, i.e. summer tires, winter tires, or all-season tires etc.

ℹ The following pages also list the approved rim and tire sizes for equipping your vehicle with winter tires. Winter tires are not available as standard or optional factory equipment, but can be purchased from an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Equipping your vehicle with winter tires approved for your vehicle model may require the purchase of rims of the recommended size for use with these winter tires. This depends on vehicle model and the standard or optional factory-equipped wheel rim/tire configuration on your vehicle. For more information contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Tires

Summer tires

Front axle	
Summer tires	265/35 ZR19 (98Y) XL (Extra Load)
Rims (light alloy) **Wheel offset**	9.5 J x 19 H2 2.36 in (60 mm) or 2.32 in (59 mm)
Rear axle	
Summer tires[14]	295/30 ZR20 (101Y) XL (Extra Load)
Rims (light alloy) **Wheel offset**	11 J x 20 H2 2.68 in (68 mm)

Winter tires

Version 1

Front axle	
Winter tires	265/35 R19 98W XL (Extra Load) M+S ❄
Rims (light alloy) **Wheel offset**	9.5 J x 19 H2 2.36 in (60 mm) or 2.32 in (59 mm)
Rear axle	
Winter tires[14]	295/30 R20 101W XL (Extra Load) M+S ❄
Rims (light alloy) **Wheel offset**	11 J x 20 H2 2.68 in (68 mm)

Version 2

Front and rear axle	
Winter tires	255/35 R19 96V XL (Extra Load) M+S ❄
Rims (light alloy) **Wheel offset**	9.5 J x 19 H2 2.32 in (59 mm)

---

[14] Must not be used with snow chains.

Fuels, coolants, lubricants, etc.

Capacities

Vehicle components and their respective lubricants must match. Therefore only use products tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz.

For information on tested and approved products, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

⚠ **Warning!**

Comply with all valid regulations with respect to handling, storing, and disposing of service fluids. Otherwise you could endanger persons or the environment.

Keep service fluids out of the reach of children.

For health reasons, you should prevent service fluids from coming into direct contact with your skin or clothing.

If a service fluid is swallowed, contact a physician immediately.

	Capacity	Fuels, coolants, lubricants, etc.
Engine with oil filter	9.3 US qt (8.8 l)	Approved engine oils
AMG SPEEDSHIFT DCT 7-SPEED Transmission	9.3 US qt (8.8 l)	Shell DCT F.3 ATF oil
Rear axle	1.3 US qt (1.2 l)	Shell GL.5
Power steering	1.3 US qt (1.2 l)	Chevron Texaco CHF 9109
Brake system	approx. 0.53 US qt (0.5 l)	MB Brake Fluid (DOT 4+)
Cooling system	approx. 11.6 US qt (11.0 l)	MB 325.0 Anticorrosion/ Antifreeze
Fuel tank	22.5 US gal (85.0 l)	Premium unleaded gasoline (Minimum Posted Octane 91 [Avg. of 96 RON/86 MON])
Fuel tank reserve	approx. 3.7 US gal (14.0 l)	
Air conditioning system	–	R134a refrigerant and special PAG lubricant oil (never R 12)
Washer system and headlamp cleaning system	6.3 US qt (6.0 l)	MB Windshield Washer Concentrate[15] (▷ page 429) Washer fluid mixing ratio (▷ page 429)

---

[15] Mixed with water or commercially available premixed washer solvent/antifreeze.

Approved engine oils

Engine oils are specifically tested for their suitability in our engines and durability for our service intervals. Therefore, only use approved engine oils and oil filters required for vehicles with the Maintenance System.

For a listing of approved engine oils and oil filters, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

! Using engine oils and oil filters of a specification other than those expressly required for the Maintenance System, or changing of oil and oil filter at change intervals longer than those called for by the Maintenance System will result in engine or emission control system damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

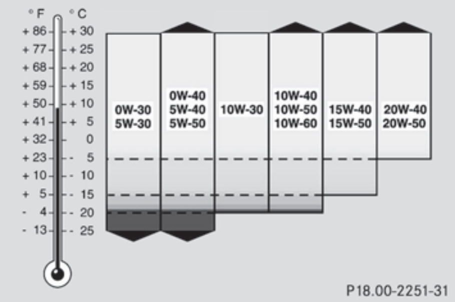
Please follow Maintenance System recommendations for scheduled oil changes. Failure to do so will result in engine or emission control system damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

MB sheet number	229.5[16]

ℹ MB sheet numbers are printed on the outside of oil containers.

Viscosity grades for engine oils

Using the chart below, select oil viscosity according to the lowest air temperature expected before the next oil change.



Engine oil additives

! Do not blend oil additives with engine oil. They may damage the engine. Damage or malfunctions resulting from blending oil additives are not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

Air conditioning refrigerant

R134a (HFC) refrigerant and special PAG lubricating oil are used in the air conditioning system.

! Never use R 12 (CFC) or mineral-based lubricating oil. Otherwise damage to the system will occur.

Brake fluid

⚠ **Warning!**

During vehicle operation, the boiling point of the brake fluid is continuously reduced through the absorption of moisture from the atmosphere.

Under extremely strenuous operating conditions, this moisture content can lead to the formation of bubbles in the system, thus reducing the system's efficiency.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be replaced regularly. Refer to your vehicle's Maintenance Booklet for replacement interval.

---

[16] Restriction: Only SAE 0W-40/SAE 5W-40 engine oils may be used.

Only brake fluid approved by Mercedes-Benz is recommended. Any authorized Mercedes-Benz Center will provide you with additional information.

Premium unleaded gasoline

> ⚠ **Warning!**
>
> Gasoline is highly flammable and poisonous. It burns violently and can cause serious personal injury.
>
> Never allow sparks, flames or smoking materials near gasoline!
>
> Turn off the engine before refueling.
>
> Whenever you are around gasoline, avoid inhaling fumes and any skin or clothing contact. Extinguish all smoking materials.
>
> Direct skin contact with fuels and the inhalation of fuel vapors are damaging your health.

! To maintain the engine's durability and performance, premium unleaded gasoline must be used.

If premium unleaded gasoline is not available and low octane gasoline is used, follow these precautions:

- Have the fuel tank only partially filled with unleaded regular gasoline and fill up with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.
- Avoid full throttle driving and abrupt acceleration.
- Do not exceed an engine speed of 3 000 rpm if the vehicle is loaded with a light load such as two persons and no luggage.
- Do not exceed $^2/_3$ of maximum accelerator pedal position if the vehicle is fully loaded or operating in mountainous terrain.

Fuel requirements

Only use premium unleaded gasoline. The octane number (posted at the pump) must be 91 min. It is an average of both the Research Octane Number (RON) and the Motor Octane Number (MON): (RON+MON)/2. This is also known as the ANTI-KNOCK INDEX.

Reformulated gasolines (RFG) and/or unleaded gasoline containing oxygenates such as ethanol, TAME, ETBE, IPA, IBA, and TBA can be used provided the ratio of any one of these oxygenates to gasoline does not exceed 10%; MTBE must not exceed 15%.

The ratio of methanol to gasoline must not exceed 3% plus additional cosolvents.

Using mixtures of ethanol and methanol is not allowed. Gasohol, which contains 10% ethanol and 90% unleaded gasoline, can be used.

These blends must also meet all other fuel requirements, such as resistance to spark knock, boiling range, vapor pressure, etc.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among engine manufacturers is carbon build-up caused by gasoline. Mercedes-Benz recommends only the use of quality gasoline containing additives that prevent the build-up of carbon deposits.

After an extended period of using fuels without such additives carbon deposits can build up, especially on the intake valves and in the combustion area, leading to engine performance problems such as:

- Warm-up hesitation
- Unstable idle
- Knocking/pinging
- Misfire
- Power loss

In areas where carbon deposits may be encountered due to lack of availability of gasoline which contains these additives, the use of Mercedes-Benz approved additives is recommended.

Contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only) for a listing of approved products. Follow directions on the product label.

Do not blend other fuel additives with fuel. This only results in unnecessary cost and may be harmful to the engine operation.

! Damage or malfunction resulting from poor fuel quality or from blending additional fuel additives other than those tested and approved by us for use on Mercedes-Benz vehicles are not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty or by any pre-owned or Extended Limited Warranties.

Coolants

The engine coolant is a mixture of water and anticorrosion/antifreeze, which provides:

- Corrosion protection
- Freeze protection
- Boiling protection (by increasing the boiling point)

The cooling system was filled at the factory with a coolant providing freeze protection to approximately -35℉ (-37℃) and corrosion protection.

! Add premixed coolant solution only. Adding water and MB 325.0 Anticorrosion/Antifreeze separately from each other, could cause engine damage not covered by the Mercedes-Benz Limited Warranty.

If the antifreeze mixture is effective to -35℉ (-37℃), the boiling point of the coolant in the pressurized cooling system is reached at approximately 266℉ (130℃).

The coolant solution must be used year round to provide the necessary corrosion protection and increase boil-over protection. Refer to the Maintenance Booklet for replacement interval.

Coolant system design and coolant used determine the replacement interval. The replacement interval published in the Maintenance Booklet is only applicable if MB 325.0 Anticorrosion/Antifreeze solution or other Mercedes-Benz approved products of equal specification are used to renew the coolant concentration or bring it back up to the proper level.

For information on other Mercedes-Benz approved products of equal specification, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center or visit **http://www.MBUSA.com** (USA only).

To provide important corrosion protection, the solution must be at least 50% anticorrosion/antifreeze (equivalent to freeze protection to approximately -35℉ [-37℃]).

If you use a solution that is more than 55% anticorrosion/antifreeze (freeze protection to approximately -49℉ [-45℃]), the engine temperature will increase due to the lower heat transfer capability of the solution. Therefore, do not use more than this amount of anticorrosion/antifreeze.

If the coolant level is low, water and MB 325.0 Anticorrosion/Antifreeze should be used to bring it up to the proper level (have cooling system checked for signs of leakage). Please make sure the mixture is in accordance with label instructions.

The water in the cooling system must meet minimum requirements, which are usually satisfied by normal drinking water.

If you are not sure about the water quality, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

Anticorrosion/antifreeze

Your vehicle contains a number of aluminum parts. The use of aluminum components in motor vehicle engines necessitates that anticorrosion/antifreeze coolant used in such engines be specifically formulated to protect the aluminum parts. Failure to use such anticorrosion/antifreeze coolant will result in a significantly shortened service life.

Therefore, the following product is strongly recommended for use in your vehicle:
MB 325.0 Anticorrosion/Antifreeze agent.

Before the start of the winter season (or once a year in hot southern regions), you should have the anticorrosion/antifreeze concentration checked.

The coolant is also regularly checked each time you bring your vehicle to an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center for service.

Approximate freeze protection	
-35°F (-37°C)	**-49°F (-45°C)**
5.8 US qt (5.5 l)	6.3 US qt (6.0 l)

Washer system and headlamp cleaning system

⚠ **Warning!**

Washer solvent/antifreeze is highly flammable. Do not spill washer solvent/antifreeze on hot engine parts, because it may ignite and burn. You could be seriously burned.

- Use MB Windshield Washer Concentrate “MB SummerFit”.
- Mix with water for temperatures above freezing point.
- Mix with commercially available premixed washer solvent/antifreeze for temperatures below freezing point.

Washer fluid mixing ratio

For temperatures above the freezing point:
1 part “MB SummerFit” to 100 parts water (1.34 fl oz [40 ml] “MB SummerFit” to 1 gal [4.0 l] water)

For temperatures below freezing point:
1 part “MB SummerFit” to 100 parts solvent (1.34 fl oz [40 ml] “MB SummerFit” to 1 gal [4.0 l] solvent)

Service and Literature

Your authorized Mercedes-Benz Center has trained technicians and Genuine Mercedes-Benz Parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

If you are interested in obtaining service literature for your vehicle, please contact an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.
We consider this the best way for you to obtain accurate information for your vehicle.

For further information you can find us on the Mercedes-Benz web site **www.MBUSA.com** (USA only) or **www.mercedes-benz.ca** (Canada only).

⚠ **Warning!**

To help avoid personal injury, be extremely careful when performing any service work or repairs. Improper or incomplete service or the use of incorrect or inappropriate parts or materials may damage the vehicle or its equipment, which may in turn result in personal injury.

If you have any questions about carrying out any type of service, turn to the advice of an authorized Mercedes-Benz Center.

We reserve the right to make changes in design and equipment.
Therefore, information, illustrations and descriptions in this Operator's Manual might differ from your vehicle.
Reprinting, translation and copying, even of excerpts, is not permitted without our prior authorization in writing.

As at 01.03.2010

1975840381

Order no. 6515 4854 13   Part no. 197 584 03 81   Edition Edition A 2011